

---

# OWNER'S MANUAL

Operation

Maintenance

Specifications

All information in this Owner's Manual is current at the time of publication. However, GENESIS reserves the right to make changes at any time so that our policy of continual product improvement may be carried out.

This manual applies to all models of this vehicle and includes descriptions and explanations of optional as well as standard equipment.

As a result, you may find material in this manual that does not apply to your specific vehicle.

## **CAUTION: MODIFICATIONS TO YOUR GENESIS VEHICLE**

Your GENESIS vehicle should not be modified in any way. Such modifications may adversely affect the performance, safety or durability of your GENESIS vehicle and may, in addition, violate conditions of the limited warranties covering the vehicle. Certain modifications may also be in violation of regulations established by the Department of Transportation and other government agencies in your country.

## **TWO-WAY RADIO OR CELLULAR TELEPHONE INSTALLATION**

Your vehicle is equipped with electronic components. It is possible for an improperly installed/adjusted two-way radio or cellular telephone to adversely affect electronic systems. For this reason, we recommend that you carefully follow the radio manufacturer's instructions or consult your authorised GENESIS repairer for precautionary measures or special instructions if you choose to install one of these devices.



## SAFETY AND VEHICLE DAMAGE WARNING

This manual includes information titled as DANGER, WARNING, CAUTION and NOTICE. These titles indicate the following:



### DANGER

---

DANGER indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.

---



### WARNING

---

WARNING indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.

---



### CAUTION

---

CAUTION indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in minor or moderate injury.

---

### NOTICE

---

NOTICE indicates a situation which, if not avoided, could result in vehicle damage.

---



# Table of Contents

|                                                     |            |
|-----------------------------------------------------|------------|
| <b>1. Foreword</b>                                  | <b>1</b>   |
| <b>2. Vehicle information</b>                       | <b>11</b>  |
| Exterior overview (Front view)                      | 11         |
| Exterior overview (Rear view)                       | 12         |
| Interior overview                                   | 13         |
| Centre console overview                             | 14         |
| Steering wheel control overview                     | 16         |
| Engine compartment                                  | 17         |
| Dimensions                                          | 19         |
| Engine                                              | 20         |
| Bulb wattage                                        | 21         |
| Tyres and wheels                                    | 22         |
| Air conditioning system                             | 23         |
| Vehicle weight and luggage volume                   | 24         |
| Reference weight and distance when towing a trailer | 25         |
| Recommended lubricants and capacities               | 26         |
| Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)                 | 29         |
| Vehicle certification label                         | 30         |
| Tyre specification and pressure label               | 31         |
| Engine number                                       | 32         |
| Air conditioner compressor label                    | 33         |
| Fuel label                                          | 34         |
| Open Source Software Notice                         | 35         |
| <b>3. Safety system</b>                             | <b>37</b>  |
| Important safety precautions                        | 37         |
| Seats                                               | 39         |
| Seat belts                                          | 63         |
| Child Restraint System (CRS)                        | 75         |
| Supplemental restraint system - airbags             | 83         |
| Active Bonnet lift system                           | 103        |
| <b>4. Instrument cluster</b>                        | <b>107</b> |
| Instrument cluster                                  | 107        |
| Instrument cluster display                          | 135        |
| Vehicle settings (infotainment system)              | 140        |
| <b>5. Convenience features</b>                      | <b>143</b> |
| Accessing your vehicle                              | 143        |

|                                               |     |
|-----------------------------------------------|-----|
| Fingerprint authentication system .....       | 151 |
| Door locks .....                              | 155 |
| Theft alarm system .....                      | 162 |
| Rear Occupant Alert (ROA) .....               | 164 |
| Advanced Rear Occupant Alert (ROA) .....      | 166 |
| Integrated memory system .....                | 169 |
| Steering wheel .....                          | 172 |
| Mirrors .....                                 | 178 |
| Windows .....                                 | 187 |
| Panoramic sunroof .....                       | 192 |
| Bonnet .....                                  | 197 |
| Power tailgate .....                          | 199 |
| Smart tailgate .....                          | 206 |
| Fuel filler door .....                        | 208 |
| Head-Up Display (HUD) .....                   | 211 |
| OTA software update .....                     | 214 |
| Exterior lights .....                         | 217 |
| Intelligent Front-lighting System (IFS) ..... | 222 |
| High Beam Assist (HBA) .....                  | 226 |
| Welcome system .....                          | 230 |
| Interior lights .....                         | 232 |
| Wipers and washers .....                      | 237 |
| Automatic climate control system .....        | 241 |
| Windscreen defrosting and defogging .....     | 259 |
| Climate control additional features .....     | 262 |
| Storage compartment .....                     | 266 |
| Interior features .....                       | 269 |
| Exterior features .....                       | 282 |
| Infotainment system .....                     | 284 |

## **6. Driving your vehicle ..... 289**

|                                                              |     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Before driving .....                                         | 289 |
| Engine start/stop button .....                               | 291 |
| Remote start .....                                           | 295 |
| Automatic transmission .....                                 | 296 |
| Braking system .....                                         | 305 |
| All Wheel Drive (AWD) .....                                  | 322 |
| Electronic limited slip differential .....                   | 328 |
| Electronic control suspension .....                          | 330 |
| Electronically controlled suspension with road preview ..... | 331 |

|                                                  |     |
|--------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Launch Control .....                             | 333 |
| Coasting .....                                   | 335 |
| Drive Mode Integrated Control System (AWD) ..... | 337 |
| Active Air Flap (AAF) .....                      | 340 |
| Active sound design .....                        | 341 |
| Special driving conditions .....                 | 342 |
| Winter driving .....                             | 346 |
| Trailer towing .....                             | 350 |
| Vehicle weight .....                             | 357 |

## **7. Driver assistance systems ..... 359**

|                                                                     |     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Before Using Driver Assistance Systems .....                        | 359 |
| Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA) .....                      | 363 |
| Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) .....                                     | 394 |
| Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist (BCA) .....                   | 402 |
| Safe Exit Warning (SEW) .....                                       | 413 |
| Safe Exit Assist (SEA) .....                                        | 419 |
| Manual Speed Limit Assist (MSLA) .....                              | 426 |
| Intelligent Speed Limit Assist (ISLA) .....                         | 430 |
| Driver Attention Warning (DAW) .....                                | 437 |
| Forward Attention Warning (FAW) .....                               | 443 |
| Blind-Spot View Monitor (BVM) .....                                 | 447 |
| Smart Cruise Control (SCC) .....                                    | 449 |
| Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control (NSCC) .....                  | 468 |
| Lane Following Assist (LFA) .....                                   | 474 |
| Highway Driving Assist (HDA) .....                                  | 480 |
| Rear View Monitor (RVM) .....                                       | 493 |
| Surround View Monitor (SVM) .....                                   | 498 |
| Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist (RCCA) .....          | 505 |
| Parking Distance Warning (PDW) .....                                | 517 |
| Forward/Side/Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist (PCA) ..... | 523 |
| Remote Smart Parking Assist 2 (RSPA 2) .....                        | 530 |
| Declaration of conformity .....                                     | 558 |

## **8. Emergency situations ..... 559**

|                                              |     |
|----------------------------------------------|-----|
| Hazard warning flasher .....                 | 559 |
| In case of an emergency whilst driving ..... | 560 |
| If the engine does not start .....           | 561 |
| Jump starting .....                          | 562 |
| If the engine overheats .....                | 567 |

|                                                 |     |
|-------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) .....    | 569 |
| If you have a flat tyre (with spare tyre) ..... | 574 |
| Towing .....                                    | 581 |

## **9. Maintenance .....587**

|                                                        |     |
|--------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Engine compartment .....                               | 587 |
| Maintenance services .....                             | 589 |
| Owner maintenance .....                                | 590 |
| Scheduled maintenance services .....                   | 593 |
| Explanation of scheduled maintenance items .....       | 599 |
| Engine oil .....                                       | 602 |
| Engine coolant/liquid-cooled intercooler coolant ..... | 606 |
| Brake fluid .....                                      | 610 |
| Washer fluid .....                                     | 611 |
| Air cleaner .....                                      | 612 |
| Cabin air filter .....                                 | 614 |
| Wiper blades .....                                     | 617 |
| Battery .....                                          | 620 |
| Tyres and wheels .....                                 | 626 |
| Fuses .....                                            | 634 |
| LED Lights .....                                       | 657 |
| Appearance care .....                                  | 666 |
| Emission control system .....                          | 673 |

# 1. Foreword

## Introduction

Congratulations, and thank you for choosing Genesis. We are pleased to welcome you to the growing number of discerning people who drive a Genesis vehicle. We are very proud of the advanced engineering and high-quality construction of each Genesis vehicle we build.

Your Owner's Manual will introduce you to the features and operation of your new Genesis vehicle. To become familiar with your new Genesis vehicle, so that you can fully enjoy it, read this Owner's Manual carefully before driving your new vehicle.

This manual contains important safety information and instructions intended to familiarize you with your vehicle's controls and safety features so you can safely operate your vehicle.

This manual also contains information on maintenance designed to enhance safe operation of the vehicle. It is recommended that all service and maintenance on your car be performed by an authorised Genesis repairer. An authorised Genesis repairer are prepared to provide high-quality service, maintenance, and any other assistance that may be required.

## Hyundai Motor Company

Copyright 2024 Hyundai Motor Company. All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in any retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means without the prior written permission of Hyundai Motor Company.

## Australian design rules

The compliance plate shows that your vehicle has been tested and found to comply with all relevant Australian Design Rules (ADR's) applicable at its date of manufacture.

Any part, that is subject to these ADR's, must not be removed or altered and is to be maintained in good order at all times for the vehicle to be roadworthy and re-registerable by all registerable authorities.

We recommend that you consult an authorised Genesis repairer before conducting any repairs that may affect these areas or if requiring further classification on design rules or safety features. Failure to observe the above warning may render the vehicle compliance invalid and result in personal injury which may have otherwise been avoided.

## Safety messages

Your safety, and the safety of others, are very important. This Owner's Manual provides you with many safety precautions and operating procedures. This information alerts you to potential hazards that may hurt you or others, and may damage your vehicle.

Safety messages found on vehicle labels and in this manual describe these hazards and what to do to avoid or reduce the risks.

Warnings and instructions contained in this manual are for your safety. Failure to follow safety warnings and instructions can lead to serious injury or death.

Throughout this manual DANGER, WARNING, CAUTION, NOTICE, and the SAFETY ALERT SYMBOL will be used.



This is the safety alert symbol. It is used to alert you to potential physical injury hazards. Obey all safety messages that follow this symbol to avoid possible injury or death. The safety alert symbol precedes the signal words DANGER, WARNING, and CAUTION



### **DANGER**

---

DANGER indicates a hazardous situation that, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.

---



### **WARNING**

---

WARNING indicates a hazardous situation that, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.

---



### **CAUTION**

---

CAUTION indicates a hazardous situation that, if not avoided, could result in minor or moderate injury.

---

### **NOTICE**

---

NOTICE indicates a situation that, if not avoided, could result in vehicle damage.

---



## Fuel requirements

### Petrol engine

#### *Unleaded*

For the optimal vehicle performance, we recommend you use unleaded petrol which has an octane rating of RON (Research Octane Number) 95 or higher. You may use unleaded petrol with an octane rating of RON 91-94 but it may result in slight performance reduction of the vehicle. (Do not use methanol blended fuels.)

Your new vehicle is designed to obtain maximum performance with UNLEADED FUEL, as well as minimise exhaust emissions and spark plug fouling.

#### NOTICE

---

NEVER USE LEADED FUEL. The use of leaded fuel is detrimental to the catalytic converter and will damage the engine control system's oxygen sensor and affect emission control.

---



#### WARNING

---

- Do not "top off" after the nozzle automatically shuts off when refuelling.
  - Always check that the fuel cap is installed securely to prevent fuel spillage in the event of an accident.
- 

#### *Petrol containing ethanol and methanol*

Ethanol [E-10], a mixture of petrol and ethanol (also known as grain alcohol), and petrol or gasohol containing methanol (also known as wood alcohol) are being marketed along with or instead of leaded or unleaded petrol.

Do not use gasohol containing more than 10 % ethanol, and do not use petrol or gasohol containing any methanol. Both these fuels may cause drivability problems and damage to the fuel system, engine control system, and emission control system.

Discontinue using gasohol of any kind if drivability problems occur.

Vehicle damage or driveability problems may not be covered by the manufacturer's warranty if they result from the use of:

- 1 Gasohol containing more than 10 % ethanol.
- 2 Petrol or gasohol containing methanol.
- 3 Leaded fuel or leaded gasohol.

#### NOTICE

---

Never use gasohol which contains methanol. Discontinue use of any gasohol product which impairs drivability.

---

#### *Other fuels*

Using fuel additives such as:

- Silicone fuel additive
- MMT (Manganese, Mn) fuel additive
- Ferrocene (iron-based) fuel additive

- Other metallic-based fuel additives

may result in cylinder misfire, poor acceleration, engine stalling, damage to the catalyst, or abnormal corrosion, and may cause damage to the engine resulting in a reduction in the overall life of the powertrain.

## NOTICE

---

Damage to the fuel system or performance problem caused by the use of these fuels may not be covered by your New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

---

### ***Use of MTBE***

Genesis vehicle recommends avoiding fuels containing MTBE (Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether) over 15.0 % vol. (Oxygen Content 2.7 % weight) in your vehicle.

Fuel containing MTBE over 15.0 % vol. (Oxygen Content 2.7 % weight) may reduce vehicle performance and produce vapour lock or hard starting.

## NOTICE

---

Your New Vehicle Limited Warranty may not cover damage to the fuel system and any performance problems that are caused by the use of fuels containing methanol or fuels containing MTBE (Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether) over 15.0 % vol. (Oxygen Content 2.7 % weight.)

---

### ***Do not use methanol***

Fuels containing methanol (wood alcohol) should not be used in your vehicle. This type of fuel can reduce vehicle performance and damage components of the fuel system, engine control system, and emission control system.

### ***Fuel additives***

Genesis vehicle recommends that you use unleaded petrol which has an octane rating of RON (Research Octane Number) 95 or higher.

For customers who do not use good quality petrols including fuel additives regularly, and have problems starting or the engine does not run smoothly, adding one bottle of additives to the fuel tank is recommended according to the maintenance schedule (refer to chapter 9, “**Normal maintenance schedule (Petrol engine)**”).

Additives are available from your authorised Genesis repairer along with information on how to use them. Do not mix other additives.

## NOTICE

---

Never add any fuel system cleaning agents or other additives to the fuel tank other than those specified to prevent damage to the engine and engine components. We recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer for additional information.

---

### ***Operation in foreign countries***

If you are going to drive your vehicle in another country, be sure to:

- Observe all regulations regarding registration and insurance.
- Determine that acceptable fuel is available.

## Vehicle modifications

- This vehicle should not be modified. Modification of your vehicle could affect its performance, safety or durability and may even violate governmental safety and emissions regulations.

In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from any modification may not be covered under warranty.

- If you use unauthorised electronic devices, it may cause the vehicle to operate abnormally, wire damage, battery discharge, and fire. For your safety, do not use unauthorised electronic devices.

### NOTICE

---

Some vehicle interior sounds (including welcome sound, navigation alerts, or warning sounds) may be generated from the interior speakers and amplifier. We recommend that you do not replace these components with anything other than the original Genesis/Hyundai factory parts. Any unauthorised product may cause a malfunction of the vehicle interior sounds that may affect the intended operation of the vehicle.

---

## Vehicle break-in process

By following a few simple precautions for the first 1,000 km you may add to the performance, economy and life of your vehicle.

- Do not race the engine.
- Whilst driving, avoid sudden acceleration.
- Do not maintain a single speed for long periods of time, either fast or slow. Varying engine speed is needed to properly break-in the engine.
- Avoid hard stops, except in emergencies, to allow the brakes to seat properly.
- Fuel economy and engine performance may vary depending on the vehicle break-in process and be stabilized after 6,000 km. New engines may consume more oil during the vehicle break-in period.
- Do not tow a trailer during the first 2,000 km of operation.

## Vehicle data collection and event data recorders

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

How various systems in your vehicle were operating.

- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened.
- How far (if at all) the driver was pressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal.
- How fast the vehicle was travelling.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

### Information

---

EDR data is recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (for example, name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

---

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties that have the special equipment, such as law enforcement, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.



# 2. Vehicle information

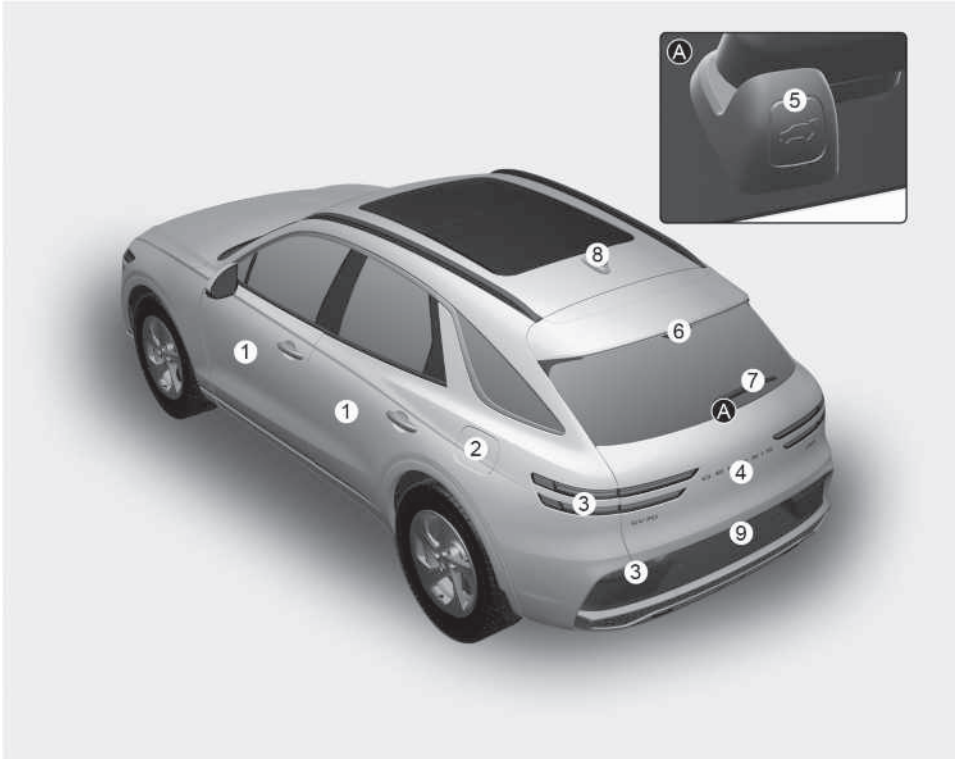
## Exterior overview (Front view)



The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

|                                       |          |
|---------------------------------------|----------|
| 1. Bonnet.....                        | 197      |
| 2. Headlamp.....                      | 217, 658 |
| 3. Tyres and wheels.....              | 626      |
| 4. Outside rear-view mirror.....      | 183      |
| 5. Panoramic sunroof.....             | 192      |
| 6. Front windscreen wiper blades..... | 237, 617 |
| 7. Windows.....                       | 187      |
| 8. Front radar.....                   | 359      |

Exterior overview (Rear view)

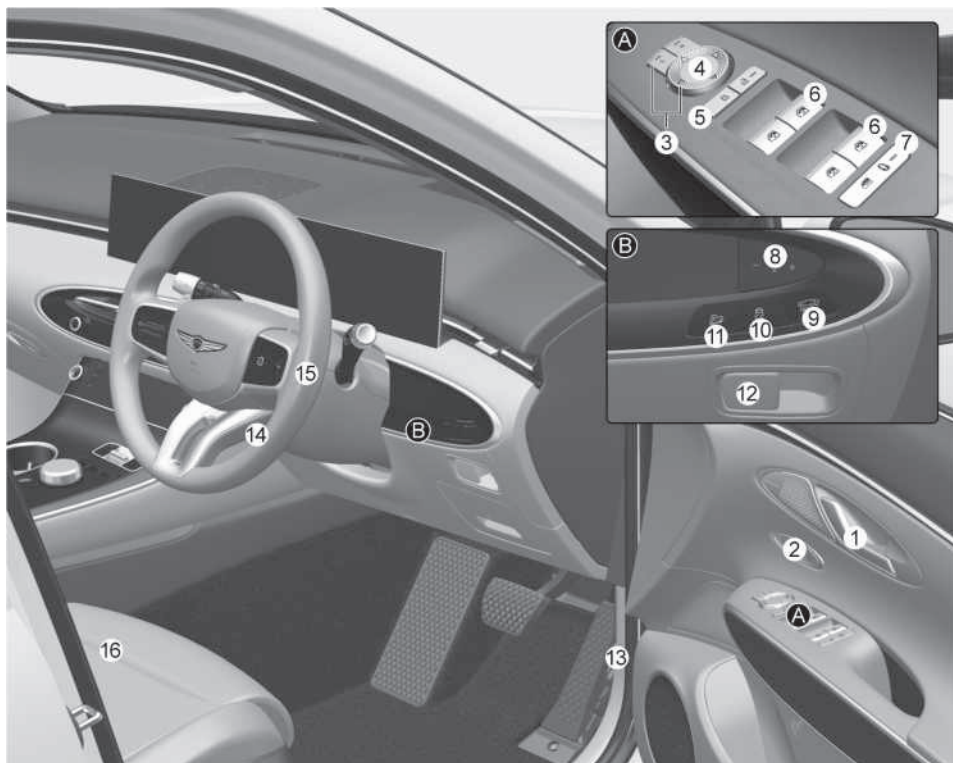


The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

|                                          |          |
|------------------------------------------|----------|
| 1. Door.....                             | 155      |
| 2. Fuel filler door.....                 | 208      |
| 3. Rear combination lamp.....            | 660      |
| 4. Tailgate.....                         | 199      |
| 5. Power tailgate open/close button..... | 201      |
| 6. High mounted stop lamp.....           | 661      |
| 7. Rear window wiper blades.....         | 239, 618 |
| 8. Antenna.....                          | 284      |
| 9. Wide-rear view camera.....            | 359, 493 |



## Interior overview



The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

|                                                                       |          |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| 1. Inside door handle.....                                            | 156      |
| 2. Integrated memory system.....                                      | 169      |
| 3. Outside rear-view mirrors control switch.....                      | 184      |
| 4. Outside rear-view mirrors folding button.....                      | 184      |
| 5. Central door lock switch.....                                      | 157      |
| 6. Power window switches.....                                         | 187      |
| 7. Power window lock button, Electronic child safety lock button..... | 190, 160 |
| 8. Instrument panel illumination control switch.....                  | 108      |
| 9. Power tailgate open/close button.....                              | 201      |
| 10. ESC (Electronic Stability Control) OFF button.....                | 313      |
| 11. DBC (Downhill Brake Control) button.....                          | 319      |
| 12. EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) switch.....                        | 306      |
| 13. Bonnet release lever.....                                         | 197      |
| 14. Steering wheel tilt/telescopic switch.....                        | 173      |
| 15. Steering wheel.....                                               | 172      |
| 16. Seat.....                                                         | 39       |

# Centre console overview



The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

|                                                  |          |
|--------------------------------------------------|----------|
| 1. Instrument cluster.....                       | 107      |
| 2. Horn.....                                     | 174      |
| 3. Driver's front airbag.....                    | 86       |
| 4. Engine Start/Stop button.....                 | 291      |
| 5. Infotainment system.....                      | 284      |
| 6. Hazard warning flasher button.....            | 559      |
| 7. Automatic climate control system.....         | 241      |
| 8. Passenger's front airbag.....                 | 86       |
| 9. Glove box.....                                | 266      |
| 10. Terrain mode button.....                     | 322, 337 |
| 11. Parking/View button.....                     | 494, 499 |
| 12. Parking Safety button.....                   | 518      |
| 13. Fingerprint authentication system.....       | 151      |
| 14. Auto Hold button.....                        | 309      |
| 15. P-release cap-cover.....                     | 296      |
| 16. Rotary shifter (Rotary gear shift dial)..... | 296      |

17. Wireless charging system..... 275

18. USB port..... 284

19. USB charger..... 274

20. Power outlet..... 272

21. UV-C sterilizer system..... 270

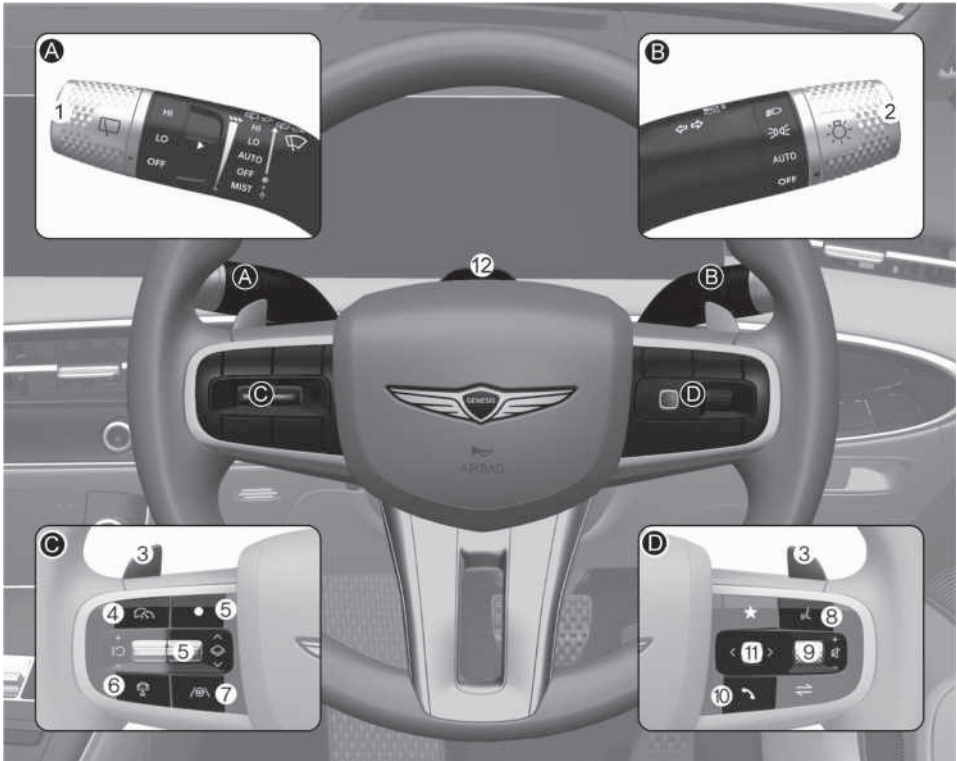
22. Rear seat climate control system..... 242

23. Rear seat USB charger..... 274

24. Centre console storage..... 266

25. Cup holder..... 269

# Steering wheel control overview

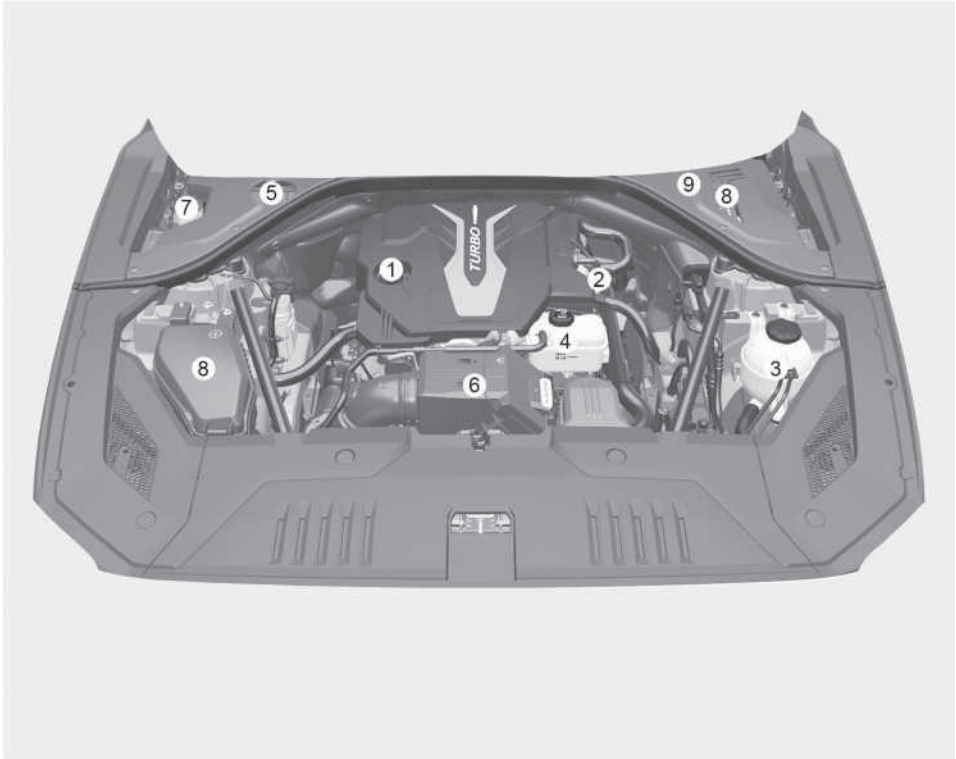


The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

|                                             |          |
|---------------------------------------------|----------|
| 1. Wiper and washer control lever.....      | 237      |
| 2. Lighting control lever.....              | 217      |
| 3. Paddle shifter.....                      | 302      |
| 4. Driving Assist button.....               | 451      |
| 5. Instrument cluster display control.....  | 135      |
| 6. Vehicle Distance button.....             | 452      |
| 7. Lane Driving Assist button.....          | 395, 475 |
| 8. Voice recognition button.....            | 286      |
| 9. Audio remote control buttons.....        | 285      |
| 10. Bluetooth® hands-free phone button..... | 287      |
| 11. Optical mouse .....                     | 135      |
| 12. Forward Attention Warning camera.....   | 443      |

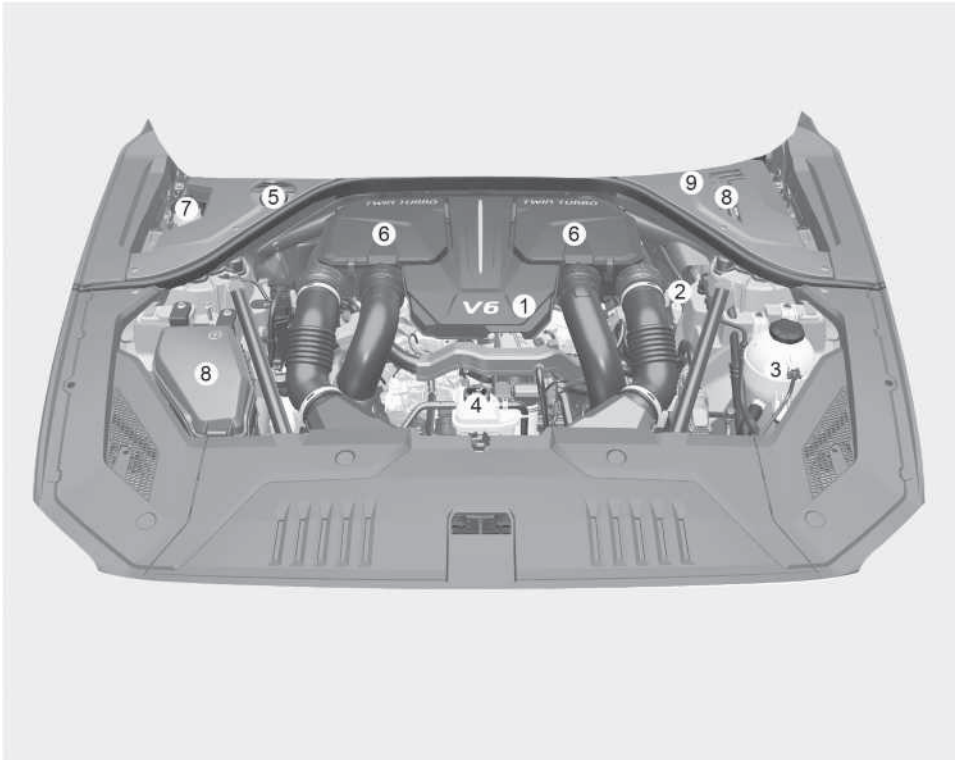
# Engine compartment

2.5 T-GDI



The actual engine compartment in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

|                                                     |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 1. Engine oil filler cap.....                       | 602 |
| 2. Engine oil dipstick.....                         | 602 |
| 3. Engine coolant reservoir.....                    | 606 |
| 4. Liquid-cooled intercooler coolant reservoir..... | 606 |
| 5. Brake fluid reservoir.....                       | 610 |
| 6. Air cleaner.....                                 | 612 |
| 7. Windscreen washer fluid reservoir.....           | 611 |
| 8. Fuse box.....                                    | 634 |
| 9. Cabin air filter.....                            | 614 |



The actual engine compartment in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

|                                                     |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 1. Engine oil filler cap.....                       | 602 |
| 2. Engine oil dipstick.....                         | 602 |
| 3. Engine coolant reservoir.....                    | 606 |
| 4. Liquid-cooled intercooler coolant reservoir..... | 606 |
| 5. Brake fluid reservoir.....                       | 610 |
| 6. Air cleaner.....                                 | 612 |
| 7. Windscreen washer fluid reservoir.....           | 611 |
| 8. Fuse box.....                                    | 634 |
| 9. Cabin air filter.....                            | 614 |

# Dimensions

| Items            |           | mm       |
|------------------|-----------|----------|
| Overall length   |           | 4,715 mm |
| Overall width    |           | 1,910 mm |
| Overall height   |           | 1,630 mm |
| Track<br>(Front) | 235/60R18 | 1,651 mm |
|                  | 235/55R19 | 1,649 mm |
|                  | 255/40R21 | 1,641 mm |
| Track<br>(Rear)  | 235/60R18 | 1,667 mm |
|                  | 235/55R19 | 1,665 mm |
|                  | 255/40R21 | 1,657 mm |
| Wheelbase        |           | 2,875 mm |

# Engine

| Engine    | Displacement | Bore x Stroke   | Firing order | No. of cylinders |
|-----------|--------------|-----------------|--------------|------------------|
| 2.5 T-GDI | 2,497 cc     | 88.5 x 101.5 mm | 1-3-4-2      | 4                |
| 3.5 T-GDI | 3,470 cc     | 92 x 87 mm      | 1-2-3-4-5-6  | 6                |



## Bulb wattage

| Light bulb |                                                           |                       | Bulb type | Wattage |
|------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|-----------|---------|
| Front      | Headlamp                                                  | Low                   | LED       | LED     |
|            |                                                           | High, Low beam assist | LED       | LED     |
|            | Turn signal lamp                                          |                       | LED       | LED     |
|            | Parking lamp                                              |                       | LED       | LED     |
|            | Daytime Running Lamp (DRL)                                |                       | LED       | LED     |
|            | Puddle lamp                                               |                       | LED       | LED     |
| Rear       | Stop lamp                                                 |                       | LED       | LED     |
|            | Tail lamp                                                 |                       | LED       | LED     |
|            | Turn signal lamp                                          |                       | LED       | LED     |
|            | Reverse lamp                                              |                       | LED       | LED     |
|            | Licence plate lamp                                        |                       | LED       | LED     |
|            | High mounted stop lamp                                    |                       | LED       | LED     |
| Interior   | Front seat map and interior lamp                          |                       | LED       | LED     |
|            | Rear seat interior lamp (without sunroof)                 |                       | LED       | LED     |
|            | Rear seat personal lamp (with sunroof)                    |                       | LED       | LED     |
|            | Vanity mirror lamp                                        |                       | LED       | LED     |
|            | Glove box lamp                                            |                       | LED       | LED     |
|            | Inner door handle lamp/Foot lamp/Door foot lamp/Mood lamp |                       | LED       | LED     |
|            | Door foot lamp                                            |                       | Bulb      | 5 W     |
|            | Luggage compartment lamp                                  |                       | LED       | LED     |
|            | Tailgate emergency lamp                                   |                       | LED       | LED     |

# Tyres and wheels

| Items              | Tyre size  | Wheel size | Inflation pressure kPa (psi) |          |              |          | Wheel bolt torque kgf·m (N·m) |
|--------------------|------------|------------|------------------------------|----------|--------------|----------|-------------------------------|
|                    |            |            | Normal load                  |          | Maximum load |          |                               |
|                    |            |            | Front                        | Rear     | Front        | Rear     |                               |
| Full size tyre     | 235/60R18  | 8.0J X 18  | 230 (33)                     | 250 (36) | 240 (35)     | 260 (38) | 14-16<br>(101~116, 137~157)   |
|                    | 235/55R19  | 8.0J X 19  | 230 (33)                     | 250 (36) | 240 (35)     | 260 (38) |                               |
|                    | 255/40R21  | 9.0J X 21  | 230 (33)                     | 260 (38) | 240 (35)     | 280 (41) |                               |
| Compact spare tyre | T155/90R18 | 4.0T X 18  | 420 (60)                     | 420 (60) | 420 (60)     | 420 (60) |                               |
|                    | T155/80R19 | 4.0T X 19  | 420 (60)                     | 420 (60) | 420 (60)     | 420 (60) |                               |

## NOTICE

- It is permissible to add 20 kPa (3 psi) to the standard tyre pressure specification if colder temperatures are expected soon. Tyres typically lose 7 kPa (1 psi) for every 7 °C temperature drop. If extreme temperature variations are expected, recheck your tyre pressure as necessary to keep them properly inflated.
- Tyre inflation pressures may vary depending on changes in elevation. If driving in areas of higher or lower elevation, be sure to check and adjust for proper tyre inflation.
- Do not exceed the maximum inflation pressure, as found on the sidewall of the tyre(s).



## CAUTION

When replacing tyres, ALWAYS replace with the same size, type, brand, construction, and tread pattern as those supplied with the vehicle. If not, it can damage the related parts or make the vehicle work irregularly.

# Air conditioning system

| Items                | Weight of volume | Classification |
|----------------------|------------------|----------------|
| Refrigerant          | 675±25g          | R-134a         |
| Compressor lubricant | 100±10g          | PAG            |

We recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer for more details.

Vehicle weight and luggage volume

| Item                 | 2.5 T-GDI |          | 3.5 T-GDI |
|----------------------|-----------|----------|-----------|
|                      | 2WD       | AWD      | AWD       |
| Gross vehicle weight | 2,470 kg  | 2,535 kg | 2,630 kg  |

| Luggage volume |           |
|----------------|-----------|
| 2.5 T-GDI      | 3.5 T-GDI |
| 542 ℓ          |           |

# Reference weight and distance when towing a trailer

| Item                                                            |                      | With trailer package |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| Maximum trailer weight                                          | With brake system    | 2,500 kg             |
|                                                                 | Without brake system | 750 kg               |
| Maximum permissible static vertical load on the coupling device |                      | 159 kg               |
| Recommended distance from rear wheel centre to coupling point   |                      | 1,070 mm             |

## Recommended lubricants and capacities

To help achieve proper engine and powertrain performance and durability, use only lubricants of the proper quality. The correct lubricants also help promote engine efficiency that results in improved fuel economy.

These lubricants and fluids are recommended for use in your vehicle.

| Lubricant                                                                                                                     |           | Volume                                                   | Classification                                                                                      |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Engine oil <sup>*1*2</sup><br>Recommends<br> | 2.5 T-GDI | 6.2 ℓ                                                    | API SN PLUS/SP or ILSAC GF-6 <sup>*3</sup><br>SAE: 0W-30                                            |
|                                                                                                                               | 3.5 T-GDI | 7.0 ℓ                                                    | API SN PLUS/SP or ILSAC GF-6 <sup>*3</sup><br>SAE: 0W-30                                            |
| Automatic transmission fluid                                                                                                  |           | 9.2 ℓ                                                    | GS ATF SP-IV-RR, Genesis/Hyundai genuine ATF SP-IV-RR                                               |
| Engine coolant                                                                                                                | 2.5 T-GDI | 8.6 ℓ                                                    | Mixture of antifreeze and water<br>(Phosphate-based Ethylene glycol coolant for aluminium radiator) |
|                                                                                                                               | 3.5 T-GDI | 9.7 ℓ                                                    |                                                                                                     |
| Liquid-cooled intercooler coolant                                                                                             | 2.5 T-GDI | 1.48 ℓ                                                   |                                                                                                     |
|                                                                                                                               | 3.5 T-GDI | 1.48 ℓ                                                   |                                                                                                     |
| Brake fluid <sup>*4</sup>                                                                                                     |           | As required                                              | SAE J1704 DOT-4LV, FMVSS116 DOT-4, ISO4925 CLASS-6                                                  |
| Front differential oil (AWD) <sup>*5</sup>                                                                                    |           | 0.67±0.025 ℓ                                             | HYPOID GEAR OIL API GL-5 SAE 75W/85<br>(SK HK SYN GEAR OIL 75W85 FM PLUS OR EQUIVALENT)             |
| Rear differential oil <sup>*5</sup>                                                                                           |           | 1.2±0.05 ℓ                                               | HYPOID GEAR OIL API GL-5 SAE 75W/85<br>(SK HK SYN GEAR OIL 75W85 FM PLUS OR EQUIVALENT)             |
| Transfer case oil (AWD)                                                                                                       |           | Gear/Clutch: 0.42 ± 0.021 ℓ<br>Actuator : 0.27 ± 0.010 ℓ | SHELL TF0870B                                                                                       |

| Lubricant | Volume         | Classification                                      |
|-----------|----------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| e-LSD oil | 0.41 ± 0.015 ℓ | SHELL TF0870C                                       |
| Fuel      | 66 ℓ           | Refer to “ <b>Fuel requirements</b> ” in chapter 1. |

- \*1: Refer to the recommended SAE viscosity numbers.
- \*2: Engine oils labelled Energy Conserving Oil are now available. Along with other additional benefits, they contribute to fuel economy by reducing the amount of fuel necessary to overcome engine friction. Often, these improvements are difficult to measure in everyday driving, but in a year's time, they can offer significant cost and energy savings.
- \*3: Requires <API SN PLUS (or above) Full synthetic> grade engine oil. If a lower grade engine oil (mineral oil including Semi-synthetic) is used, then the engine oil and engine oil filter must be replaced as indicated severe maintenance condition.
- \*4: To maintain the best braking performance and ABS/ESC performance, we recommend that you use genuine brake fluid that conform to specifications.
- \*5: If the front/rear differential is submerged, we recommend that you visit an authorised Genesis repairer to replace the differential oil.

## NOTICE

Severe engine and transmission damage may result from the use of poor quality fuels and lubricants that do not meet Genesis vehicle specifications. Always use high quality fuels and lubricants that meet the specifications listed in the recommended table.

## Recommended SAE viscosity number

### NOTICE

- Always be sure to clean the area around any filler plug, drain plug, or dipstick before checking or draining any lubricant. This is especially important in dusty or sandy areas and when the vehicle is used on unpaved roads. Cleaning the plug and dipstick areas will prevent dirt and grit from entering the engine and other mechanisms that could be damaged.
- Never add any additives to the engine oil. Engine oil additives can change the properties of engine oil and may cause serious engine failure.

Engine oil viscosity (thickness) has an effect on fuel economy and cold weather operating (engine start and engine oil flowability). Lower viscosity engine oils can provide better fuel economy and cold weather performance, however, higher viscosity engine oils are required for satisfactory lubrication in hot weather. Using oils of any viscosity other than those recommended may result in engine damage.

When choosing an oil, consider the range of temperature your vehicle is operated in before the next oil change. Proceed to select the recommended oil viscosity from the chart.

| Temperature Range for SAE Viscosity Numbers |      |     |     |     |    |    |    |    |     |     |
|---------------------------------------------|------|-----|-----|-----|----|----|----|----|-----|-----|
| Temperature                                 | °C   | -30 | -20 | -10 | 0  | 10 | 20 | 30 | 40  | 50  |
|                                             | (°F) |     | -10 | 0   | 20 | 40 | 60 | 80 | 100 | 120 |

## Temperature Range for SAE Viscosity Numbers

Petrol Engine Oil\*<sup>1</sup>

0W-30

\*1: Requires <API SN PLUS (or above) Full synthetic> grade engine oil. If a lower grade engine oil (mineral oil including Semi-synthetic) is used, then the engine oil and engine oil filter must be replaced as indicated severe maintenance condition.

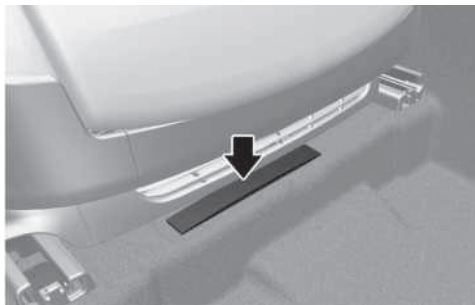


An engine oil displaying this American Petroleum Institute (API) Certification Mark conforms to the International Lubricant Specification Advisory Committee (ILSAC). It is recommended to only use engine oils that uphold this API Certification Mark.



## Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

Frame number



The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the number used in registering your vehicle and in all legal matters pertaining to its ownership, etc.

The number is punched on the floor under the right front seat. To check the number, open the cover.

Vin label (if equipped)



The VIN is also on a plate attached to the top of the left side instrument panel. The number on the plate can easily be seen through the windscreen from outside.

## Vehicle certification label



The vehicle certification label attached on the driver's (or front passenger's) side centre pillar also gives the vehicle identification number (VIN).

## Tyre specification and pressure label

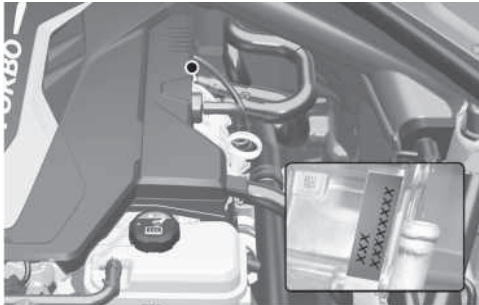


The tyres supplied on your new vehicle are chosen to provide the best performance for normal driving.

The tyre label located on the driver's side centre pillar gives the tyre pressures recommended for your vehicle.

# Engine number

2.5 T-GDI

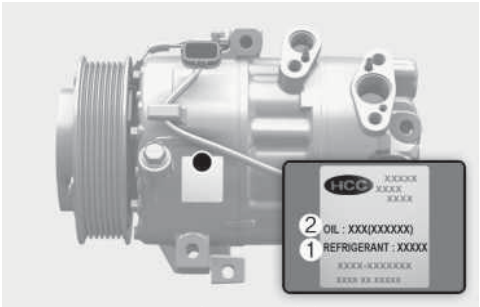


3.5 T-GDI



The engine number is stamped on the engine block as shown on the image.

# Air conditioner compressor label



A compressor label identifies the type of compressor your vehicle is equipped with such as model, supplier part number, production number, refrigerant (1) and refrigerant oil (2).

## Fuel label

### Petrol engine

The fuel label is attached on the fuel filler door.



- Octane rating of unleaded petrol
  - RON/ROZ: Research Octane Number
  - (R+M)/2, AKI: Anti Knock Index
- Identifiers for Petrol-type fuels

#### Information

---

This symbol means usable fuel. Do not use any other fuel.

---

- For more information, refer to the "**Fuel requirements**" section in chapter 1.

## Open Source Software Notice

This vehicle contains software with open source licences.

Open source software information including the source code, copyright notices and referred licence terms may be obtained on the website <https://www.genesis.com/worldwide/en/opensource.html>.

Hyundai Motor Company will provide the open source code to you in storage medium such as CD-ROM for minimum charge covering the cost of performing source distribution upon email request to [opensource@genesis.com](mailto:opensource@genesis.com) within a period of 3 years from the date of product purchase.





## 3. Safety system

### Important safety precautions

You will find many safety precautions and recommendations throughout this section, and throughout this manual. The safety precautions in this section are among the most important.

#### Always wear your seat belt

A seat belt is your best protection in all types of accidents. Airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with airbags, always make sure you and your passengers wear your seat belts, and wear them properly.

#### Restrain all children

All children under age 13 should travel in your vehicle properly restrained in a rear seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in an appropriate Child Restraint System. Larger children should use a booster seat with the lap/shoulder belt until they can use the seat belt properly without a booster seat.

#### Airbag hazards

Whilst airbags can save lives, they can also cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or who are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk of being injured by an inflating airbag. Follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

#### Driver distraction

Driver distraction presents a serious and potentially deadly danger, especially for inexperienced drivers. Safety should be the first concern when behind the wheel and drivers need to be aware of the wide array of potential distractions, such as drowsiness, reaching for objects, eating, personal grooming, other passengers, and using mobile phones.

Drivers can become distracted when they take their eyes and attention off the road or their hands off the wheel to focus on activities other than driving. To reduce your risk of distraction and an accident:

- Set up your mobile devices (i.e. MP3 players, phones, navigation units, etc.) when your vehicle is parked or safely stopped.
- ONLY use your mobile device when allowed by laws and conditions permit safe use. NEVER text or email whilst driving. Most countries have laws prohibiting drivers from texting. Some countries and cities also prohibit drivers from using handheld phones.
- NEVER let the use of a mobile device distract you from driving. You have a responsibility to your passengers and others on the road to always drive safely, with your hands on the wheel as well as your eyes and attention on the road.

#### Never drink or take drugs and drive

Drinking alcohol or taking drugs can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions and emergencies. Do not drink or take drugs and drive, and do not let your friends drink or take drugs and drive.

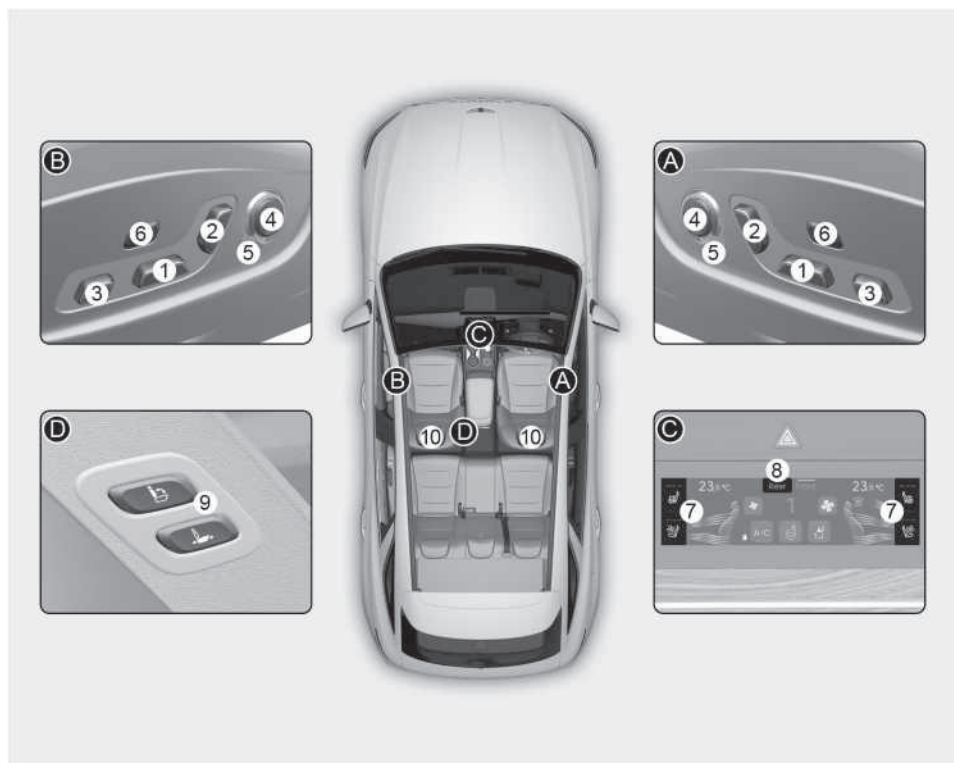
## **Control your speed**

Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

## **Keep your vehicle in safe condition**

Having a tyre blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous. To reduce the possibility of a tyre hazard whilst driving, check your tyre pressures regularly and also inspect the condition of your tyres (tread depth, uneven wear, etc.). Be sure to perform all regularly scheduled maintenance as indicated in your Owner's Manual.

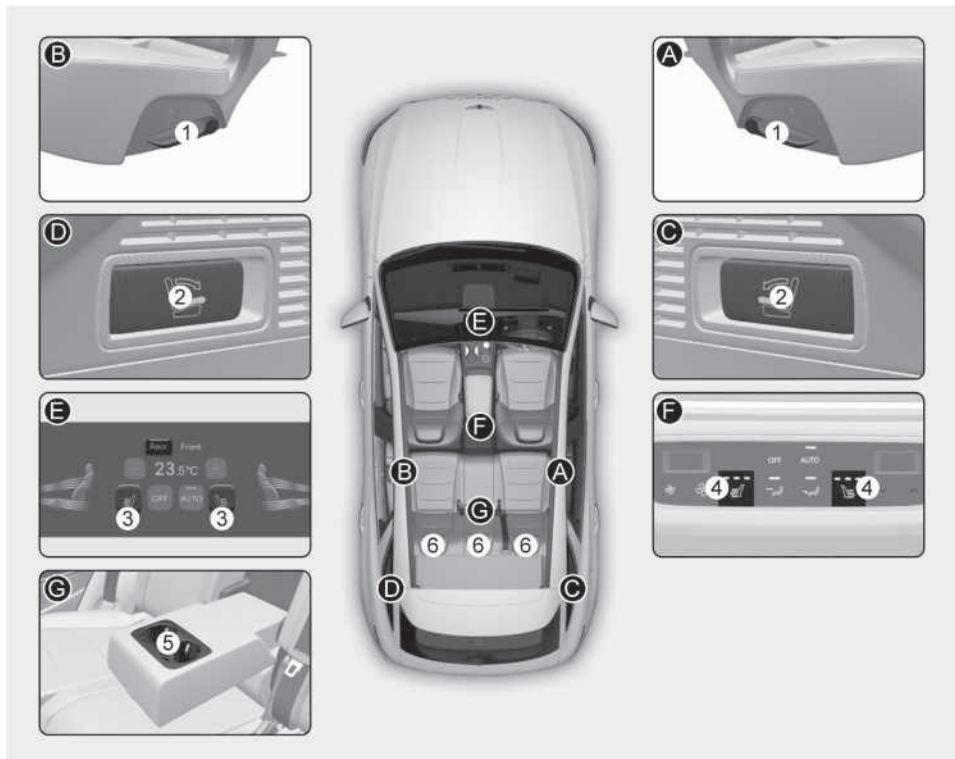
## Seats



The position of the switches may vary depending on the feature available to your vehicle.

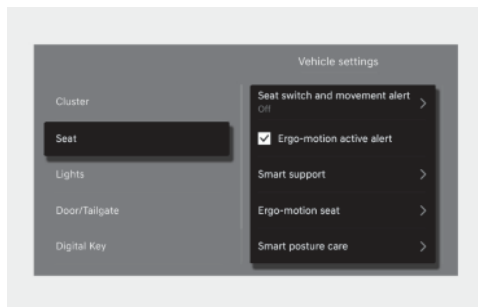
### ***Front seat***

1. Seat sliding forward or rearward / Seat cushion tilt / Seat cushion height
2. Seatback angle
3. Seat cushion extension / Seat cushion support
4. Lumbar support
5. Seatback bolster
6. Comfortable stretch
7. Seat warmer / Air ventilation seat
8. Rear adjustment
9. Walk-in seat switch
10. Headrest adjustment



### ***Rear seat***

1. Seatback angle
2. Seatback remote folding lever
3. Seat warmer (from the front seat)
4. Seat warmer (from the rear seat)
5. Armrest
6. Headrest adjustment



Select **Setup > Vehicle > Seat** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system, you may use various convenience functions.

- **Seat Switch Alert:** Detailed information of the seat switch and image is displayed when the switch is touched or the switch is moved.
- **Warmer/Ventilated Features or Heating/Ventilation**
  - **Automatic Controls Linked to Climate Control Settings**(for driver's seat): The seat temperature is automatically controlled.
  - **Seat heater balance:** When the seat heater is on, you may lower the seat heater (warmer) setting, or may turn the seat heater off for either the seatback or seat cushion.
- **Seating easy access**
  - **Steering wheel easy access:** Moves the steering wheel when the driver enters or leaves the vehicle.
  - **Driver seat easy access:** The distance (Normal/Extended/Off) the seat automatically moves when the driver enters or leaves the vehicle may be selected.
  - **Passenger seat easy access:** Moves the passenger seat when the passenger enters or leaves the vehicle.
- **Ergo-Motion Seat**
  - **Comfortable stretch:** The operation intensity and operation time for Comfortable Stretch may be selected.
  - **Smart posture assist:** The seat is adjusted to assist the driver's posture after driving for an hour.
  - **Smart support:** The driver's seat bolster is increased when SPORT mode is selected or when driving at high speed.

### Information

---

- The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.
  - The information provided may differ depending on which functions are applicable to your vehicle.
-

## Safety precautions

Adjusting the seats to sit in a safe and comfortable position plays an important role for the safety of the driver and passengers. Proper seating positions, secured seat belts, and protection from airbags work together to provide a measure of safety in the event of a collision.



### WARNING

---

Do not use a cushion that reduces friction between the seat and the passenger. The passenger's hips may slide under the lap portion of the seat belt during an accident or a sudden stop.

Serious or fatal internal injuries could result because the seat belt cannot operate properly.

---

## Airbags

You can take steps to reduce the risk of being injured by an inflating airbag. Sitting too close to an airbag greatly increases the risk of injury in the event the airbag inflates. Move your seat as far back as possible from front airbags, whilst still maintaining control of the vehicle.



### WARNING

---

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death from an inflating airbag:

- Adjust the driver's seat as far to the rear as possible whilst maintaining your ability to control the vehicle.
  - Adjust the front passenger seat as far to the rear as possible.
  - Hold the steering wheel with hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to minimise the risk of injuries to your hands and arms.
  - Never place anything or anyone between you and the airbag.
  - Do not allow the front passenger to place feet or legs on the instrument panel to minimise the risk of leg injuries.
- 

## Seat belts

Always fasten your seat belt before starting any trip. At all times, passengers should sit upright and be properly restrained with a seat belt. Infants and small children must be restrained in appropriate Child Restraint Systems.



### WARNING

---

To prevent serious injury or death:

- Never use one seat belt for more than one occupant.
  - Always position the seatback upright with the lap portion of the seat belt snug and low across the hips.
  - Never allow children or small infants to travel on a passenger's lap.
  - Do not route the seat belt across your neck, across sharp edges, or reroute the shoulder strap away from your body.
  - Do not allow the seat belt to become caught or jammed.
-

## Front seats



### WARNING

---

Take the following precautions when adjusting your seat:

- Never attempt to adjust the seat whilst the vehicle is moving. The seat could respond with unexpected movement and may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in a collision
  - Do not place anything under the front seats. Loose objects, including unsecured floor mats, in the driver's foot area could interfere with the operation of the foot pedals.
  - Do not allow anything to interfere with the normal position and proper locking of the seatback.
  - Do not place a cigarette lighter on the floor or seat.
  - Use extreme caution when picking up small objects trapped under the seats or between the seat and the centre console. Your hands might be cut or injured by the sharp edges of the seat mechanism.
  - If there are occupants in the rear seats, be careful when adjusting the front seat.
  - Make sure that the seat is locked in place after the adjustment. If not, the seat might move unexpectedly resulting in an accident.
- 

## Reclining seatback

Sitting in a reclined position when the vehicle is moving can be dangerous. Even when buckled up, the protections of your restraint system (seat belts and/or airbags) is greatly reduced by reclining your seatback.

Seat belts must be snug against your hips and chest to work properly.

The more the seatback is reclined, the greater the chance for the passenger's hips to slide under the lap belt or the passenger's neck to strike the shoulder belt.



### WARNING

---

Never travel with a reclined seatback when the vehicle is moving.

Travelling with a reclined seatback increases your chance of serious or fatal injuries in the event of a collision or sudden stop.

Driver and passengers should always sit well back in their seats, properly restrained, and with the seatbacks upright.

---

Seat belts must be snug against your hips and chest to work properly. When the seatback is reclined, the shoulder belt cannot do its job because it will not be snug against your chest. Instead, it will be in front of you. During a collision, you could be thrown into the seat belt, causing neck or other injuries.

The more the seatback is reclined, the greater chance the passenger's hips will slide under the lap belt or the passenger's neck will strike the shoulder belt.

## Power seats

The front seat can be adjusted by using the control switches located on the outside of the seat cushion.



## WARNING

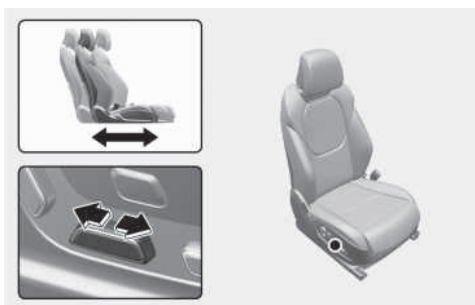
NEVER allow children to remain in the vehicle unsupervised. The power seats are operable when the vehicle is turned off.

## NOTICE

To prevent damage to the seats:

- Always stop adjusting the seats when the seat has been adjusted as far forward or rearward as possible.
- Do not adjust the seats longer than necessary when the vehicle is turned off. This may result in unnecessary battery drain.
- Do not operate two or more seats at the same time. This may result in an electrical malfunction.

### Forward and rearward



To move the seat forward or rearward:

- 1 Push the control switch forward or rearward.
- 2 Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.

### Seatback angle



To recline the seatback:

- 1 Push the control switch forward or rearward.
- 2 Release the switch once the seatback reaches the desired position.



## Seat cushion tilt/Seat height



- **Seat cushion tilt (1)**

To change the angle of the front part of the seat cushion:

- 1 Push the front portion of the control switch up to raise or down to lower the front part of the seat cushion.
- 2 Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.

- **Seat height (2)**

To change the height of the seat:

- 1 Push the rear portion of the control switch up to raise or down to lower the height of the seat.
- 2 Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.

## Seat cushion extension

**+** if equipped



To move the front part of the cushion forward or rearward:

- 1 Push the control switch forward or rearward.
- 2 Release the switch once the seat cushion reaches the desired length.

## Seat cushion support

 if equipped

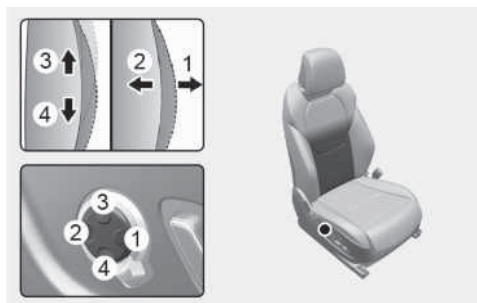


To adjust cushion support:

- 1 Push the control switch up to increase cushion support or down to decrease cushion support.
- 2 Release the switch once the seat cushion support reaches the desired position.

## Lumbar support

 if equipped

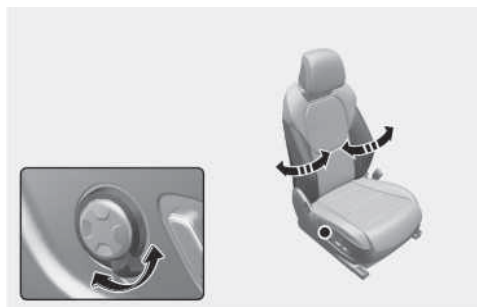


To adjust the lumbar support:

- 1 Press the front portion of the switch (1) to increase support or the rear portion of the switch (2) to decrease support.
- 2 Press switch (3) or (4) to move the support position up or down.
- 3 Release the switch once the lumbar support reaches the desired position.

## Seat bolster

 if equipped



To adjust seat bolster:

- 1 Push the adjustment lever clockwise, the seatback bolster is adjusted inward. Push the switch anti-clockwise, the seatback bolster is adjusted outward.
- 2 Release the lever once the bolster reaches the desired position.

## *Ergo-motion seat*

 if equipped

Select **Setup > Vehicle > Seat > Ergo-Motion Seat** from the infotainment system's Settings menu to select and set up supplemental functions.

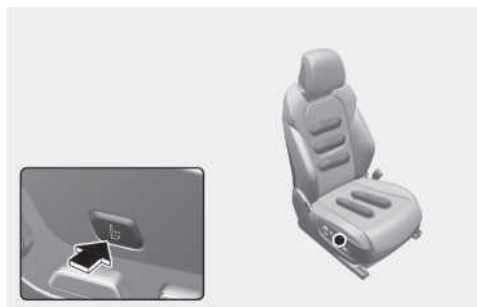


## WARNING

Before actually using each function, try the functions with the vehicle parked.

## Comfortable stretch

Comfortable stretch is a function that helps relieve fatigue of the driver's pelvis and lower back due to driving.



Every time you press the button, you may select a mode or turn off the function in the following order.

- Pelvic stretching: The cushion portion moves, helping the left and right movement of the pelvis.

- Lumbar stretching: The seatback portion moves, helping back and forth movement of the lower back.
- Whole Body stretching: The cushion and seatback moves in sequence, helping the whole body reduce fatigue.
- Off: Turns off Comfortable Stretch.

Also, you can change the operation intensity and operation time from the Settings menu in the infotainment system.

- Intensity: **Setup > Vehicle > Seat > Ergo-Motion Seat > Comfortable Stretch > Intensity > High/Moderate**
- Time: **Setup > Vehicle > Seat > Ergo-Motion Seat > Comfortable Stretch > Session Length > Long (20 min)/Medium (15 min)/Short (10 min)**

### Smart posture assist

After driving for an hour, Smart Posture Assist automatically adjusts the pelvis and back portion of the seat to assist the posture.

You can activate or deactivate Smart Posture Assist function from the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select:

- **Setup > Vehicle > Seat > Ergo-Motion Seat > Smart Posture Assist**

### Smart support

The driver's seat bolster support increases when SPORT mode is selected for Drive Mode and when driving at high speed.

You can activate or deactivate Smart Support function from the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select:

- **Setup > Vehicle > Seat > Ergo-Motion Seat > Smart Support**

## Information

---

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

---

### *Walk-in switch*

 If equipped



The rear seat passenger may use the switches to control the front passenger seat.

- Sliding forward or rearward:

Press the switch (1) or (2) to move the front passenger seat forward or rearward.

- **Seatback angle:**

Press the switch (3) or (4) to recline the front passenger seatback forward or rearward.



## **WARNING**

---

The rear passenger should not adjust the front seat when a passenger is seated.

---

### ***Seatback pocket***



The seatback pocket is provided on the back of the front seats.



## **CAUTION**

---

Do not put heavy or sharp objects in the seatback pockets. In a collision, they can come loose from the pocket and injure occupants.

---

## Rear seats



### WARNING

---

To prevent serious injury or death:

- Adjusting the seats
    - Never attempt to adjust the seat whilst the vehicle is moving.  
The seat could respond with unexpected movement and may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in a collision.
    - Make sure that the seat is locked in place after the adjustment. If not, the seat might move unexpectedly.
    - Use extreme caution when adjusting the rear seats. Your hands might be cut or injured by the sharp edges of the seat mechanism.
  - Folding the seats
    - Do not fold the seatback when the seat is occupied.
    - Never allow passengers to sit on top of the folded down seatback whilst the vehicle is moving. This is not a proper seating position and no seat belts are available for use. This could result in serious injury or death in a collision or sudden stop.
    - Objects carried on the folded down seatback should not extend higher than the top of the front seatbacks. This could allow luggage to slide forward and property damage or serious injury or even death during a collision or sudden stop.
    - Lock the seatback properly. In a collision or sudden stop, an unlocked seatback may allow luggage to move forward with great force and may result in serious injury or death.
  - Loading luggage
    - Make sure the engine is off, the gear shifted to P (Park), and the parking brake is applied before loading or unloading luggage to prevent unintended movement of the vehicle.
    - Luggage should always be secured to prevent it from moving in a collision and causing serious injury or death to the vehicle occupants.
    - Do not place objects in the rear seats, because they cannot be properly secured and may hit the front seat occupants in a collision.
-

## NOTICE

---

To prevent damage to the vehicle:

- Rear seat belts

Before folding the seatback, insert the seat belt buckle in the holder between the seatback and cushion. And insert the seat belt webbing in the guide.



- Luggage

Be careful when loading luggage through the rear passenger seats.

---

## ***Manual adjustment***

### Seatback angle



To recline the seatback:

- 1 Pull up the seatback recline lever.
- 2 Carefully lean back on the seat and adjust the seatback to the desired position.
- 3 Release the lever and make sure the seatback is locked in place. The lever MUST return to its original position for the seatback to lock.

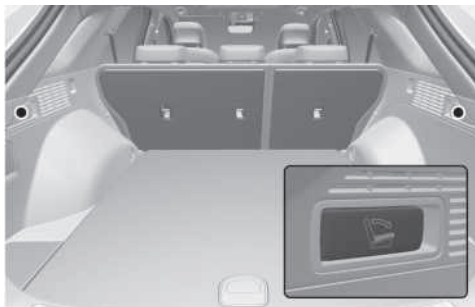
## Information

---

The seatbacks can be folded with the seatback recline lever.

---

### ***Seatback remote folding (luggage compartment)***



Pull the rear seat back folding lever located in the both sides of the luggage compartment.

### ***Armrest***



The armrest is located in the centre of the rear seat.

### **Headrests**

The vehicle's front and rear seats have adjustable headrests. The headrests are designed to help protect passengers from whiplash and other neck and spinal injuries during a collision, especially a rear impact collision. When there are no occupants in the rear seats, adjust the rear headrests to the lowest height to improve the driver's visibility.

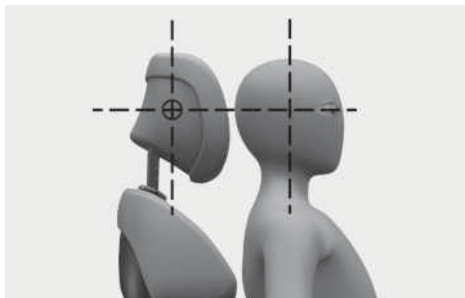


## WARNING

---

To help reduce the risk of serious injury or death in an accident, take the following precautions when adjusting your headrests:

- Always adjust the headrests properly for all passengers BEFORE starting the vehicle.
- Never let anyone travel in a seat with the headrest removed or reversed.
- Adjust the headrests so that the middle of the headrest is at the same height as the top of the eyes.



- Never adjust the driver's headrest when the vehicle is moving.
- Adjust the headrest as close to the passenger's head as possible.
- Make sure the headrest is locked in place after adjustment.

---

## WARNING

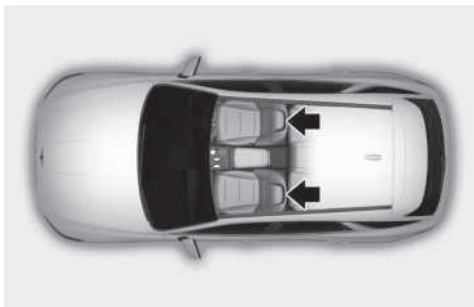
---



When passengers are sitting on the rear seats, always raise the headrests above the lowest stored position.

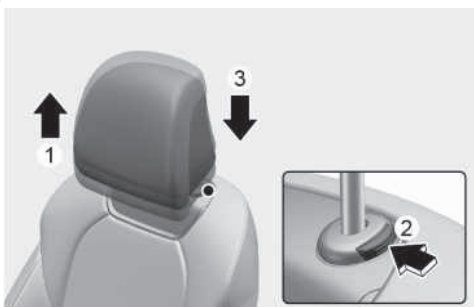
---

## ***Front seat headrests***



The driver's and front passenger's seats are equipped with adjustable headrests for passenger safety and comfort.

### **Adjusting the height up and down**



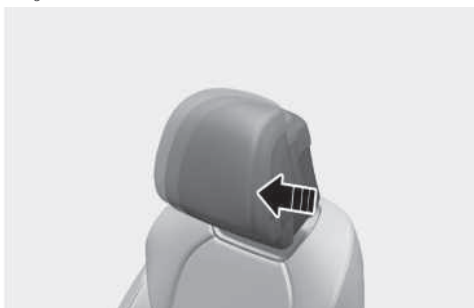
To raise the headrest:

- 1 Pull it up to the desired position (1).

To lower the headrest:

- 1 Push and hold the release button (2) on the headrest support.
- 2 Lower the headrest to the desired position (3).

### **Forward and rearward adjustment**



The headrest may be adjusted forward to 3 different positions by pulling the headrest forward to the desired detent. To adjust the headrest to it's furthest rearwards position, pull it fully forward to the farthest position and release it.

## NOTICE

---



If you adjust the seatback towards the front with the headrest and seat cushion raised, the headrest may come in contact with the sunvisor or other parts of the vehicle.

---

## Removal/Reinstall



To remove the headrest:

- 1 Recline the seatback (2) with the seatback angle switch (1).
- 2 Raise the headrest as far as it can go.
- 3 Press the headrest release button (3) whilst pulling the headrest up (4).



To reinstall the headrest:

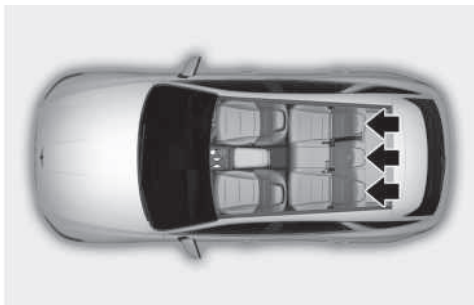
- 1 Recline the seatback.
- 2 Put the headrest poles (2) into the holes whilst pressing the release button (1).
- 3 Adjust the headrest to the appropriate height.
- 4 Return the seatback (4) with the seatback angle switch (3).



## **WARNING**

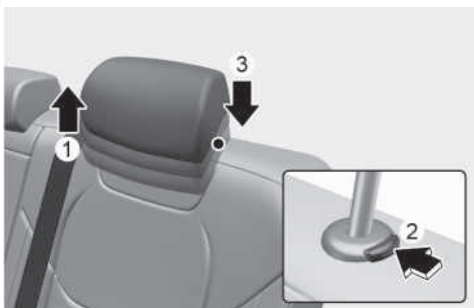
Always make sure the headrest is locked in place and properly adjusted for the passenger.

### ***Rear seat headrests***



The rear seats are equipped with headrests in all the seating positions for the passenger's safety and comfort.

#### **Adjusting the height up and down**



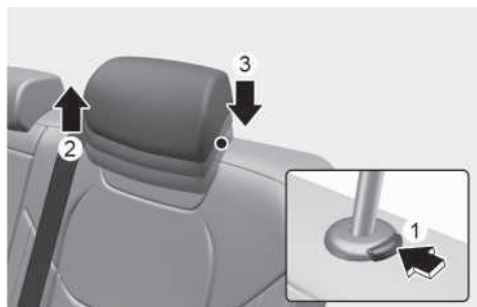
To raise the headrest:

- 1 Pull it up to the desired position (1).

To lower the headrest:

- 1 Push and hold the release button (2) on the headrest support.
- 2 Lower the headrest to the desired position (3).

## Removal/Reinstallation



To remove the headrest:

- 1 Raise the headrest as far as it can go.
- 2 Press the headrest release button (1) whilst pulling the headrest up (2).

To reinstall the headrest:

- 1 Put the headrest poles into the holes (3) whilst pressing the release button (1).
- 2 Adjust the headrest to the appropriate height.

## Seat warmers

Seat warmers are provided to warm the seats during cold weather.

During mild weather or under conditions where the operation of the seat warmer is not needed, keep the seat warmers off.



### WARNING

The seat warmers may cause serious burns, even at low temperatures and especially if used for long periods of time.

Passengers must be able to feel if the seat is becoming too warm so they can turn it off, if needed.

People who cannot detect temperature change or pain to the skin should use extreme caution, especially the following types of passengers:

- Infants, children, elderly or disabled persons, or hospital outpatients.
- People with sensitive skin or who burn easily.
- Fatigued individuals.
- Intoxicated individuals.
- People taking medication that may cause drowsiness or sleepiness.



### WARNING

Never place anything on the seat that insulates against heat when the seat warmer is operating, such as a blanket or seat cushion.

## NOTICE

---

To prevent damage to the seat warmers and seats:

- Never use a solvent such as paint thinner, benzene, alcohol, or petrol to clean the seats.
  - Do not place heavy or sharp objects on seats equipped with seat warmers.
  - Do not change the seat cover.
- 

### ***Front seat warmers***



- 1 Whilst the engine is running, press **Front** on the upper part of the climate control information screen.
  - The climate control information screen for the front seats are displayed.
- 2 Press the button to warm the driver's seat or front passenger's seat.
  - The seat warmer temperature changes from high, medium, low, and to off each time the button is pressed.

## Information

---

- The seat warmer automatically turns off if the seat temperature goes above a certain level. The seat warmer turns on again if the temperature is low.
- The armrest warmer automatically turns on when the function is enabled from the infotainment system and the seat warmer turns on. (if equipped)
- Automatic Controls Linked to Climate Control Settings (for driver's seat)

The seat warmer automatically controls the seat temperature depending on the ambient temperature when the engine is running.

To use this function, enable it from the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select:

- **Setup > Vehicle > Seat > Warmer/Ventilated Features (or Heating/Ventilation) > Automatic Controls Linked to Climate Control Settings > Driver Seat Warmer/Ventilation (or Seat heating/ventilation)**
- Seat Heater Balance  
The seat warmer temperature can be adjusted or turned off for the seatback or seat cushion, when the seat warmer is on.  
To use this function, enable it from the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select:
  - **Setup > Vehicle > Seat > Warmer/Ventilated Features (or Heating/Ventilation) > Seat Warmer Balance (or Seat heater balance)**
- The seat warmer defaults to the OFF position whenever the Engine Start/ Stop button is pressed to the ON position. However, if the Automatic Controls Linked to Climate Control Settings function is on, the driver's seat warmer turns on and off depending on the ambient temperature.

---

### *Rear seat warmers*

 if equipped

Type A



Type B



Whilst the engine is running, press the button to warm the rear seats.

- The seat warmer temperature changes from high, medium, low, and to off each time the button is pressed.

### Information

---

- The seat warmer temperature is lowered automatically after a certain time to prevent low temperature burns.
  - The seat warmer defaults to the OFF position whenever the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position.
- 

### *Operating the rear seat warmer from the front seat*

 If equipped



Rear seat warmers can be turned on or off from the front seats.

- 1 Press **Rear** on the upper part of the climate control information screen whilst the engine is running.
  - The climate control information screen for the rear seats are displayed.
- 2 Press the button next to the seat which requires warming from the climate control information screen.
  - The temperature changes from high, medium, low, and to off each time the button is pressed.



## Air ventilation seats

The air ventilation seats cool the front seats by blowing air through small vent holes on the surface of the seat cushions and seatbacks.

When air ventilation is not desired, keep the air ventilation seats off.

### NOTICE

---

To prevent damage to the air ventilation seats:

- Never use a solvent such as paint thinner, benzene, alcohol or petrol to clean the seats.
  - Avoid spilling liquids on the surface of the front seats and seatbacks. This may cause the air vent holes to become blocked and not work properly.
  - Do not place materials such as plastic bags or newspapers under the seats. They may block the air intake causing the air vents not to work properly.
  - Do not change the seat covers.
  - If the air vents do not operate, restart the vehicle. If there is no change, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.
- 

### *Front air ventilation seats*

 if equipped



- 1 Whilst the engine is running, press **Front** on the upper part of the climate control information screen.
  - The climate control information screen for the front seats are displayed.
- 2 Press the button to cool the driver's seat or front passenger's seat.
  - The blower speed changes from high, medium, low, and to off each time the button is pressed.

## Information

---

- If the air ventilation seat is positioned to high, blower speed increases depending on the vehicle speed and driving time.
- Use the air ventilation seat with the air conditioning on for more effective ventilation.
- After the air ventilation seat is turned on, it takes 3-5 minutes for the passengers to notice the temperature change.
- Automatic Controls Linked to Climate Control Settings (for driver's seat)

The air ventilation seat automatically controls the seat temperature depending on the ambient temperature when the engine is running.

To use this function, enable it from the Settings menu in the infotainment system.  
Select:

- **Setup > Vehicle > Seat > Heated/Ventilated Features > Automatic Controls Linked to Climate Control Settings > Driver Seat Warmer/Ventilation** (or **Seat heating/ventilation**)
  - The air ventilation seats default to the OFF position whenever the Engine Start/Stop button is pressed to the ON position. However, if the Automatic Controls Linked to Climate Control Settings function is on, the driver's air ventilation seat turns on and off depending on the ambient temperature.
-

## Seat belts

### Seat belt safety precautions

Always fasten your seat belt and make sure all passengers have fastened their seat belts before starting any trip. Airbags are designed to supplement the seat belt as an additional safety device, but they are not a substitute. Most countries require all occupants of a vehicle to wear seat belts.



#### WARNING

---

Seat belts must be used by ALL passengers whenever the vehicle is moving. To prevent serious injury or death:

- Children under the age of 13 should be properly restrained in the rear seats.
  - Never allow children to travel in the front passenger seat. If a child age 13 or older must be seated in the front passenger seat, move the seat as far back as possible and ensure the child is properly restrained.
  - Never allow an infant or child to be carried on an occupant's lap.
  - Never travel with the seatback reclined when the vehicle is moving.
  - Do not allow children to share a seat or seat belt.
  - Do not wear the shoulder belt under your arm or behind your back.
  - Do not use the seat belt if it is twisted. A twisted seat belt may not protect you properly in an accident.
  - Do not latch the seat belt into the buckles intended for other seating positions.
  - Never unfasten the seat belt whilst driving. This may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in a collision.
  - Make sure there is nothing in the buckle that could prevent the seat belt latch mechanism from fastening securely.
  - Never modify seat belt or install devices that may prevent seat belt assembly from removing slack.
  - Do not use a seat belt if the webbing or hardware is damaged. We recommend that the seat belt be replaced by an authorised Genesis repairer.
  - No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.
- 



#### WARNING

---

Damaged seat belts and seat belt assemblies do not operate properly. Always replace:

- Frayed, contaminated, or damaged webbing.
  - Damaged hardware.
  - The entire seat belt assembly after it has been worn in an accident, even if damage to webbing or assembly is not apparent.
-

## **WARNING**

Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed.

A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer. Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water.

The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged. It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious. Belts should not be worn with straps twisted. Each seat belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

### **Seat belt warning light**

Instrument cluster



#### ***Driver's seat belt warning***

As a reminder to the driver, the seat belt warning light will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds each time the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position regardless of belt fastening.

If the driver's seat belt is not fastened, the warning chime will sound for about 6 seconds and the warning light will stay ON until the driver's seat belt is fastened.

If the seat belt is not fastened, when vehicle speed is between 9 km/h and 20 km/h the warning light will continue to illuminate and warning chime will sound until the seat belt is fastened.

If the seat belt is not fastened, when vehicle speed is above 20 km/h, the warning light will blink and warning chime will sound for approximately 100 seconds (warning chime will sound in three stages).

#### ***Front passenger's seat belt warning***

As a reminder to the front passenger, the front passenger's seat belt warning light will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds each time the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position regardless of belt fastening.

If the passenger's seat belt is not fastened, the warning light will stay ON until the passenger's seat belt is fastened.

If the seat belt is not fastened, when vehicle speed is above 20 km/h, the warning light will blink and warning chime will sound for approximately 100 seconds (warning chime will sound in three stages).



## **WARNING**

Travelling in an improper position may adversely affect the front passenger's seat belt warning system. Instruct the passenger to sit properly when the vehicle is moving.

## **Information**

- If the front passenger seat is not occupied, the seat belt warning light blinks or illuminates for 6 seconds.
- The front passenger's seat belt warning may operate when luggage is placed on the front passenger seat.

### ***Rear passenger's seat belt warning***

 if equipped



### **Rear left and right side seatbelt**

As a reminder to the rear seat passengers, the corresponding seat belt warning lights will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds each time the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position regardless of belt fastening.

And then, if the seat belt is still not fastened whilst driving, or unfastened whilst driving, it will operate as follows depending on vehicle speed.

Below 20 km/h:

The corresponding seat belt warning light will illuminate.

Above 20 km/h:

The corresponding seat belt warning light will blink and the warning chime will sound for approximately 35 seconds, and the warning light will continue to illuminate until the seatbelt is fastened.

### Rear centre seatbelt

With the Engine Start/Stop button in the ON position, if the rear centre seat passenger's seat belt is not fastened, the corresponding seat belt warning light will illuminate for 70 seconds. But, if the seatbelt is fastened after 6 seconds, the corresponding seat belt warning light will immediately turn off.

If the seat belt is fastened, and then unfastened whilst driving below 20 km/h, the corresponding seat belt warning light will illuminate for about 70 seconds.

If the seat belt is fastened, and then unfastened whilst driving above 20 km/h, the corresponding seat belt warning light will blink and the warning chime will sound for approximately 35 seconds.

### Seat belt restraint system



#### WARNING

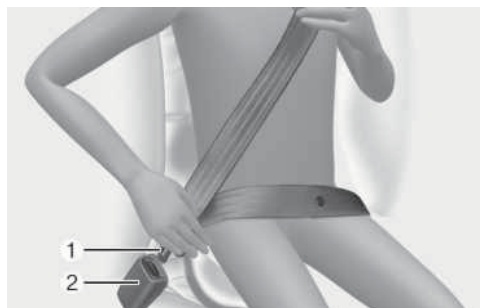
---



Improperly positioned seat belts may increase the risk of serious injury in an accident. Take the following precautions when adjusting the seat belt:

- Position the lap portion of the seat belt as low as possible across your hips, not on your waist, so that it fits snugly. This allows your strong pelvic bones to absorb the force of a collision, reducing the chance of internal injuries.
  - Position one arm under the shoulder belt and the other over the belt, as shown in the illustration.
  - Always position the shoulder belt anchor into the locked position at an appropriate height.
  - Never position the shoulder belt across your neck or face.
-

## ***Lap/shoulder belt***



### **To fasten your seat belt:**

Pull the seat belt out of the retractor and insert the metal tab (1) into the buckle (2). An audible “click” sounds when the tab locks into the buckle. Make sure the seat belt is not twisted.



Place the lap belt (1) portion across your hips and the shoulder belt (2) portion across your chest.

The seat belt automatically adjusts to the proper length after the lap belt portion is adjusted manually so that it fits snugly around your hips. If you lean forward in a slow, easy motion, the belt extends and moves with you.

If there is a sudden stop or collision, the belt is locked in place. It also locks if you try to lean forward too quickly.

### **NOTICE**

---

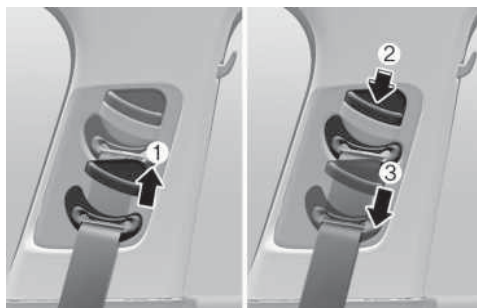
If you cannot smoothly pull the seat belt out from the retractor, firmly pull the seat belt out and release it. After release, the belt may be pulled out smoothly.

---

### **Height adjustment**

Adjust the height of the shoulder belt so that it lies across your chest and midway over your shoulder nearest the door, not over your neck.

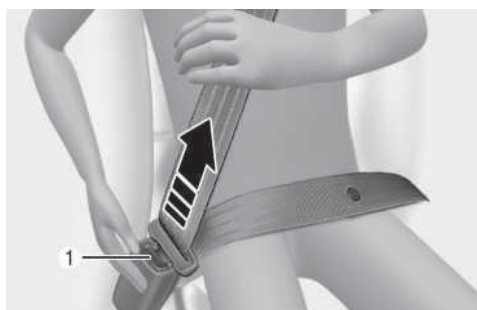
Front seat



To adjust the height of the seat belt anchor:

Pull it up (1) to raise the height. To lower it, push it down (3) whilst pressing the height adjuster button (2).

Release the button to lock the anchor in place. Try pushing the height adjuster down to make sure that it is locked in place.

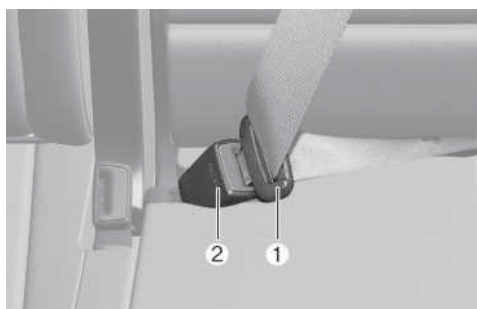


**To release your seat belt:**

Press the release button (1) in the locking buckle.

The belt should automatically draw back into the retractor. If this does not happen, check the belt to be sure it is not twisted, then try again.

***Rear centre seat belt (3-point rear centre seat belt)***





Insert the tongue plate (1) into the buckle (2) until an audible "click" is heard, indicating the latch is locked. Pull the shoulder portion of the belt to snug the belt across your hips and remove slack. Make sure the seat belt is not twisted.

When using the rear centre seat belt, use the buckle with the "CENTER" mark.

## Information

---

If you cannot pull out the safety belt from the retractor, firmly pull the belt out and release it. After release, pull out the belt smoothly.

---



## WARNING

---

Make sure the seatback is locked in place when using the rear centre seat belt.

If not secure, the seatback may move if there is a sudden stop or collision and result in serious injury or death.

---

## *Pretensioner seat belt*



Your vehicle is equipped with driver's, front passenger's and rear passenger's (except for the rear centre seat) pretensioner seat belts (retractor pretensioner). The pretensioner makes sure the seat belts fit tightly against your body in certain frontal or side collisions. The pretensioner seat belts may be activated in some crashes where the frontal or side collisions are severe enough, together with the airbags.

When the vehicle stops suddenly, or if you try to lean forward too quickly, the seat belt retractor locks in place. In some frontal collisions, the pretensioner activates and pulls the seat belt against your body.

If the system senses excessive tension on the driver or passenger's seat belt when the pretensioner system activates, the load limiter inside the retractor pretensioner releases some of the pressure on the driver's or passenger's seat belt. (for vehicles equipped with load limiter)

## **WARNING**

---

To prevent serious injury or death:

- Always wear your seat belt and sit properly in your seat.
  - Do not use the seat belt if it is loose or twisted.
  - Do not place anything near the buckle.
  - Always replace your pretensioner after activation or an accident.
  - We recommend that the pretensioner be inspected, serviced, repaired, or replaced by an authorised Genesis repairer.
  - Do not hit the seat belt assemblies.
- 

## **WARNING**

---

Do not touch the pretensioner seat belt assemblies for several minutes after they have been activated. When the pretensioner seat belt mechanism deploys during a collision, the pretensioner can become hot and can burn you.

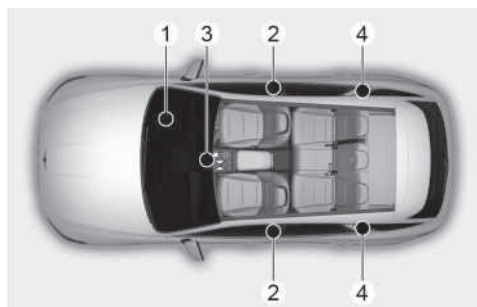
---

## **WARNING**

---

We recommend that the system be serviced by an authorised Genesis repairer. Body work on the front of the vehicle may damage the pretensioner seat belt system.

---



The Pretensioner Seat Belt System consists mainly of the following components. Their locations are shown in the image above:

1. SRS airbag warning light
2. Front retractor pretensioner
3. SRS control module
4. Rear retractor pretensioner

## NOTICE

---

The sensor that activates the SRS control module is connected with the pretensioner seat belts. The SRS airbag warning light on the instrument cluster illuminates for about 3-6 seconds after the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position, and then it turns off.

If the pretensioner is not working properly, the warning light illuminates even if the SRS airbag is not malfunctioning. If the warning light does not illuminate when starting the engine or stays illuminated or illuminates whilst driving, we recommend the pretensioner seat belts and/or SRS control module be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer as soon as possible.

---

## Information

---

- The pretensioner seat belts may be activated in certain frontal or side collisions or rollover situations (if equipped with rollover sensor).
  - When the pretensioner seat belts are activated, a loud noise may be heard and fine dust, which may appear to be smoke, may be visible in the passenger compartment.
  - Although it is non-toxic, the fine dust may cause skin irritation and should not be inhaled for prolonged periods. Wash all exposed skin areas thoroughly after an accident in which the pretensioner seat belts were activated.
- 

### Pre-Active Seat Belt (PSB)

 if equipped

The purpose of the Pre-Active Seat Belt is to tighten the seat belt when a collision is sensed, during emergency braking, or when a loss of control is sensed.

## NOTICE

---

Pre-Active Seat Belt is a supplementary system. Pre-Active Seat Belt activates only when the passenger is wearing their seat belt.

---

### *Pre-Active Seat Belt operation*

In order to maximise the safety of the passenger, Pre-Active Seat Belt system operates as below:

- Full retraction  
The seat belt is tightened when:
  - Emergency braking situation occurs
  - Losing control of the vehicle
  - The vehicle detects a collision
  - Driving on a slippery frozen road
  - Unstable rolling of the vehicle occurs
- Slack removal  
Tightens a loose seat belt when the seat belt is fastened.
- Belt parking  
Tightens a loose seat belt when the seat belt is unfastened.

## ***Warning message***

The "**Check pre-active seat belt**" warning message appears if there is a problem with your Pre-Active Seat Belt.

We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer if the warning message comes on whilst the vehicle is moving. When the Pre-Active Seat Belt warning message disappears, the master (△) warning light illuminates.

## **Additional seat belt safety precautions**

### ***Seat belt use during pregnancy***

The seat belt should always be used during pregnancy. The best way to protect your unborn child is to protect yourself by always wearing the seat belt.

Pregnant women should always wear a lap-shoulder seat belt. Place the shoulder belt across your chest, routed across your chest and away from your neck. Place the lap belt below your belly and pull the shoulder portion so that it fits **SNUGLY** across your hips and pelvic bone, under the rounded part of your belly.

### **WARNING**

---

- Pregnant women and patients are more vulnerable to any impacts on the abdomen during an abrupt stop or collision. If you are in an accident whilst pregnant, consult your doctor.
  - To reduce the risk of serious injury or death to an unborn child during an accident, pregnant women should **NEVER** place the lap portion of the seat belt above or over the area of the abdomen where the unborn child is located.
- 

### ***Seat belt use and children***

#### **Infant and small children**

Most countries have Child Restraint System laws that require children to travel in approved Child Restraint System devices, including booster seats. The age at which seat belts can be used instead of Child Restraint System may be different, so you should be aware of the specific requirements in the country where you are living, and where you are travelling. Infant and Child Restraint System must be properly placed and installed in a rear seat.

For more information, refer to the "**Child restraint system (CRS)**" section in this chapter.

### **WARNING**

---

Always properly restrain infants and small children in a Child Restraint System appropriate for the child's height and weight.

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death to a child and other passengers. Never hold a child in your lap or arms when the vehicle is moving. Violent forces created during a collision will tear the child from your arms and throw the child against the interior or to be ejected from the vehicle.

---

Small children are best protected from injury in an accident when properly restrained in the rear seat by a Child Restraint System that meets the requirements of the Australian/New Zealand standards. Before buying any Child Restraint System, make sure

that it has a label certifying that it meets the requirements of the Australian/New Zealand standards.

The Child Restraint System must be appropriate for your child's height and weight. Check the label on the Child Restraint System for this information. Refer to "**Child restraint system (CRS)**" in this chapter.

### **Larger children**

Children under age 13 and who are too large for a booster seat should always occupy the rear seat and use the available lap/shoulder belts. A seat belt should be snug against the hips and be snug across the shoulder and chest to restrain the child safely. A child's squirming could move the belt out of position. Adults should frequently check belt fit. In a collision, the safest place for children is in the rear seats, using a Child Restraint System appropriate for the child.

If a larger child over age 13 must be seated in the front seat, the child must be securely restrained by the available seat belt and the seat should be placed in the rearmost position.

If the shoulder belt portion slightly touches the child's neck or face, try placing the child closer to the centre of the vehicle. If the shoulder belt still touches their face or neck, the child needs to return to an appropriate booster seat in the rear seat.



### **WARNING**

---

- Always make sure larger children's seat belts are buckled and properly adjusted.
  - Never allow the shoulder belt to contact the child's neck or face.
  - Do not allow more than one child to use a single seat belt.
- 

### ***Seat belt use and injured people***

A seat belt should still be used when an injured person is being transported. Consult a physician for specific recommendations.

### ***One person per belt***

When two people (children or adults) are sitting together, never attempt to use a single seat belt. This could increase the severity of injuries in a collision.

### ***Do not lie down***

Sitting in a reclined position when the vehicle is moving, can be dangerous. Even when buckled up, the protections of your restraint system (seat belts and/or airbags) is greatly reduced by reclining your seatback.

Seat belts must be snug against your hips and chest to work properly.

During a collision, you could be thrown into the seat belt, causing neck or other injuries.

The more the seatback is reclined, the greater the chance for the passenger's hips to slide under the lap belt or the passenger's neck to strike the shoulder belt.



## WARNING

---

- Never travel with a reclined seatback when the vehicle is moving.
  - Travelling with a reclined seatback increases your chance of serious or fatal injuries in the event of a collision or sudden stop.
  - The driver and all passengers should always sit well back in their seats, properly restrained, and with the seatbacks upright.
- 

### **Care of seat belts**

Seat belt systems should never be disassembled or modified. In addition, care should be taken to ensure that seat belts and belt hardware are not damaged by seat hinges, doors or other abuse.

#### ***Periodic inspection***

All seat belts should be inspected periodically for wear or damage of any kind. Any damaged parts should be replaced as soon as possible.

#### ***Keep belts clean and dry***

Seat belts should be kept clean and dry. If belts become dirty, they can be cleaned by using a mild soap solution and warm water. Bleach, dye, strong detergents, or abrasives should not be used because they may damage and weaken the fabric.

#### ***When to replace seat belts***

The entire seat belt assembly or assemblies should be replaced if the vehicle has been involved in an accident. This should be done even if no damage is visible. We recommend that you consult an authorised Genesis repairer for assistance.

## Child Restraint System (CRS)

### Our recommendation: Children always in the rear



#### WARNING

---

Always properly restrain children in the vehicle. Children of all ages are safer when travelling in the rear seats. Never place a rearward-facing Child Restraint System on the front passenger seat.

---

Children under age 13 should always travel in the rear seats and must always be properly restrained to minimise the risk of injury in a collision, sudden stop, or sudden manoeuvre.

According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seat than in the front seat. Children too large for a Child Restraint System must use the seat belts provided.

Most countries have child restraint regulations that require children to travel in approved Child Restraint Systems.

The laws governing the age or height/weight restrictions at which seat belts can be used instead of Child Restraint System differs among countries, so you should be aware of the specific requirements where you are travelling.

Child Restraint Systems must be properly installed in the vehicle seat. Always use a commercially available Child Restraint System that meets the requirements of the Australian/New Zealand standards.

Child Restraint Systems are generally designed to be secured in a vehicle seat by a lap/shoulder seat belt, or by a top tether and/or ISOFIX anchorage in the rear seats of the vehicle.

### *Child Restraint System*

Infants and younger children must be restrained in an appropriate rearward-facing or forward-facing CRS that has first been properly secured to the seats of the vehicle. Read and comply with the instructions for installation and use provided by the manufacturer of the Child Restraint System.



#### WARNING

---

Do not use an improperly secured Child Restraint System. It may increase the risk of serious injury or death in a collision. When using a Child Restraint System:

- Always follow the Child Restraint System manufacturer's instructions for installation and use.
  - Always properly restrain your child in the Child Restraint System.
  - Do not use an infant carrier or a child safety seat that "hooks" over a seatback. It may not provide adequate protection in an accident.
  - After an accident, we recommend that an authorised Genesis repairer check the Child Restraint System, seat belts, ISOFIX anchorages, and top tether anchorages.
- 

### Selecting a Child Restraint System

When selecting a Child Restraint System for your child, always:

- Make sure the Child Restraint System has a label certifying that it meets applicable Safety Standards of your country. A Child Restraint System may only be installed if it was approved in accordance with the requirements of relevant regulations.
- Select a Child Restraint System based on your child's height and weight. The required label or the instructions for use typically provide this information.
- Select a Child Restraint System that fits the vehicle seating position where it is to be used.
- Read and comply with the warnings and instructions for installation and use provided with the Child Restraint System.

### ***Child Restraint System types***

There are three main types of Child Restraint Systems: rearward-facing, forward-facing, and booster seat Child Restraint Systems. They are classified according to the child's age, height, and weight.

#### **Rearward-facing Child Restraint System**



#### **WARNING**

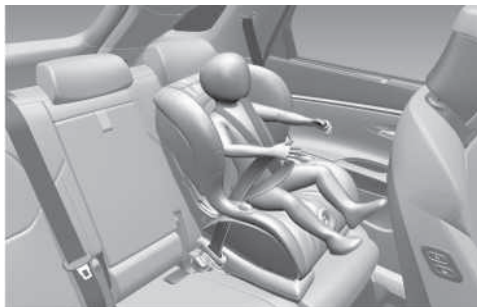
- Extreme hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!
- Never install a child or infant restraint in the front passenger's seat. Placing a rear-facing child restraint in the front seat can result in **SERIOUS INJURY** or **DEATH** if the child restraint is struck by an inflating airbag.

With a rearward-facing Child Restraint System, the collision forces are absorbed by its shell instead of the child's body. The shell also supports the system's cradles and protects the head, neck and spine of the child. All children under the age of one year must always travel in a rearward-facing Child Restraint System. Convertible and 3-in-1 Child Restraint Systems typically have higher height and weight limits for the rearward-facing position, allowing you to keep your child rearward-facing for a longer period of time.

Continue using the Child Restraint Systems in the rearward-facing position as long as the child is within the height and weight limits allowed by the Child Restraint System's manufacturer. It's the best way to keep them safe. Once your child has outgrown the rearward-facing Child Restraint System, your child is ready for a forward-facing Child Restraint System with a harness.



## Forward-facing Child Restraint System



A forward-facing Child Restraint System provides restraint for the child's body with a harness. Keep children in a forward-facing Child Restraint System with a harness until they reach the height or weight limit allowed by your Child Restraint System's manufacturer.

Once your child outgrows the forward-facing Child Restraint System, your child is ready for a booster seat.

### Booster seats

A booster seat is a Child Restraint System designed to improve the fit of the vehicle's seat belt system. A booster seat positions the seat belt so that it fits properly over the stronger parts of your child's body. Keep your children in booster seats until they are big enough to fit in a seat belt properly.

For a seat belt to fit properly, the lap belt must lie snugly across the upper thighs, not the abdomen. The shoulder belt should lie snug across the shoulder and chest and not across the neck or face. Children under age 13 must always be properly restrained to minimise the risk of injury in an accident, sudden stop, or sudden manoeuvre.

## Installing a Child Restraint System



### WARNING

Before installing your Child Restraint System, always read and follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the Child Restraint System and in this manual to prevent serious injury or death if a collision occurs.



### WARNING

If the vehicle headrest prevents proper installation of a Child Restraint System (as described in the Child Restraint System manual), readjust or remove the headrest for that seating position.

After selecting a proper Child Restraint System for your child and checking that the Child Restraint System fits properly in a seating position, there are three general steps for a proper installation:

- **Properly secure the Child Restraint System to the vehicle.** All Child Restraint Systems must be secured to the vehicle with the lap belt or lap part of a lap/shoulder belt or with the ISOFIX top tether and/or ISOFIX anchorage and/or with a support leg.

- **Make sure the Child Restraint System is firmly secured.** After installing a Child Restraint System to the vehicle, push and pull the seat forwards and rearwards and from side to side to verify that it is securely attached to the seat. Install a Child Restraint System secured with a seat belt as tightly as possible. Some side-to-side movement can be expected.
- **Secure the child in the Child Restraint System.** Make sure the child is properly strapped in the Child Restraint System according to the Child Restraint System manufacturer's instructions.



## CAUTION

---

Check the seating surface and buckles before placing your child in the Child Restraint System to prevent burns. A Child Restraint System in a closed vehicle can become very hot.

---

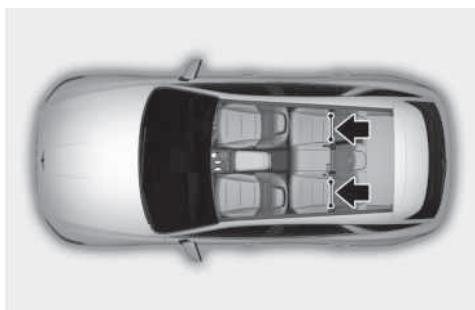
### ***ISOFIX anchorage and top tether anchorage (ISOFIX anchorage system) for children***

The ISOFIX system connects a Child Restraint System to the vehicle during driving and in a collision. This system is designed to make installation of the Child Restraint System easier and reduce the possibility of improperly installing your Child Restraint System. The ISOFIX system uses anchors in the vehicle and attachments on the Child Restraint System. The ISOFIX system eliminates the need to use seat belts to secure the Child Restraint System to the rear seats.

ISOFIX anchorages are metal bars built into the vehicle. There are two lower anchors for each ISOFIX seating position that accommodates a Child Restraint System with lower attachments.

To use the ISOFIX system in your vehicle, install a Child Restraint System with ISOFIX attachments. (An ISOFIX-seat may only be installed if it has vehicle-specific or universal approval in accordance with the requirements of relevant regulation.)

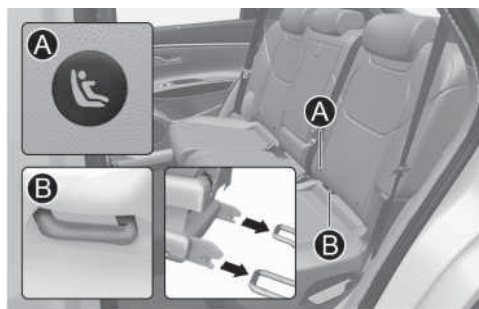
The Child Restraint System manufacturer will provide you with instructions on how to use the Child Restraint System with its attachments for the ISOFIX anchorages. (CRS with universal approval to relevant regulation need to be fixed additionally with a top-tether strap connected to the corresponding top-tether anchorage point on the back side of the rear seats.)



ISOFIX anchorages have been provided in the left and right outboard rear seating positions. Their locations are shown in the image. There are no ISOFIX anchorages provided for the centre rear seating position.

## WARNING

Do not attempt to install a Child Restraint System using ISOFIX anchorages in the rear centre seating position. There are no ISOFIX anchorages provided for this seat. Do not use the outboard seat anchors for the centre seat. It may damage the anchorages that may then break or fail in a collision resulting in serious injury or death.



[A] ISOFIX Anchorage Position Indicator

[B] ISOFIX Anchorage

The ISOFIX anchorage position indicator symbols are located on the left and right rear seatbacks to identify the positions of the lower anchors in your vehicle.

Both rear outboard seats are equipped with a pair of ISOFIX anchorages as well as corresponding top tether anchorage on the back side of the rear seats.

The ISOFIX anchorages are located between the seatback and the seat cushion of the rear seat left and right outboard seating positions, indicated by the symbols.

## WARNING

Before installing the Child Restraint System, make sure that there are no objects (e.g. toys, pens, wires) near the ISOFIX anchorage area. Those objects may damage either the seat belt system or the Child Restraint System during installation. If necessary, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

### ***Securing a Child Restraint System with the "ISOFIX Anchorage System"***

To install an ISOFIX-compatible Child Restraint System in either of the rear outboard seating positions:

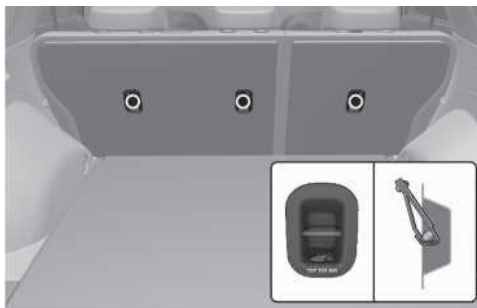
- 1 Move the seat belt buckle away from the ISOFIX anchorages.
- 2 Move any other objects away from the anchorages that could prevent a secure connection between the Child Restraint System and the ISOFIX anchorages.
- 3 Place the Child Restraint System on the vehicle seat, then attach the seat to the ISOFIX anchorages according to the instructions provided by the Child Restraint System manufacturer.
- 4 Follow the instructions of the Child Restraint System's manufacturer for proper installation and connection of the ISOFIX attachments on the Child Restraint System to the ISOFIX anchorages.

## **WARNING**

Take the following precautions when using the ISOFIX system:

- Read and follow all installation instructions provided with your Child Restraint System.
- To prevent the child from reaching and taking hold of unretracted seat belts, buckle all unused rear seat belts and retract the seat belt webbing behind the child. The child can be strangled if a shoulder belt becomes wrapped around their neck and the seat belt tightens.
- Never attach more than one Child Restraint System to a single anchorage. This may cause the anchor or attachment to come loose or break.
- Always have the ISOFIX system inspected by your dealer after a collision. A collision can damage the ISOFIX system and may not properly secure the Child Restraint System.

### ***Securing a Child Restraint System seat with "Top Tether Anchorage" system***



First secure the child restraint with the ISOFIX anchorages or the seat belt. If the child restraint manufacturer recommends that the top tether strap be attached, attach and tighten the top tether strap to the top tether strap anchorage.

Top tether anchorages are located on the rear of the seatbacks.



- 1 Route the Child Restraint System top tether strap over the seatback. Placing the top tether strap, follow the instructions of the Child Restraint System manufacturer.
- 2 Connect the top tether strap to the top tether anchorage, then tighten the top tether strap according to the instructions of your Child Restraint System's manufacturer to firmly secure the Child Restraint System.

- 3 Check the Child Restraint System is secure by pushing and pulling the seat forward and back and side-to-side.



## **WARNING**

---

Take the following precautions when installing the top tether anchorage:

- Read and follow all installation instructions provided with your Child Restraint System.
- Never attach more than one Child Restraint System to a single ISOFIX top tether anchorage. This could cause the anchorage or attachment to come loose or break.
- Do not attach the top-tether to anything other than the System correct top-tether anchorage. It may not work properly if attached to something else.
- Child Restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted Child Restraints.

Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

---

### ***Securing a Child Restraint System with a lap/shoulder belt***

When not using the ISOFIX system, all Child Restraint Systems must be secured to a rear seat using the lap part of a lap/shoulder belt.



## **WARNING**

---

Always place a rear-facing child restraint in the rear seat of the vehicle.

Placing a rear-facing child restraint in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the child restraint is struck by an inflating airbag.

Extreme hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!

---

### **Installing a Child Restraint System with a lap/shoulder belt**

To install a Child Restraint System on the rear seats:

- 1 Place the Child Restraint System on a rear seat and route the lap/shoulder belt around or through the Child Restraint System, following the Child Restraint System manufacturer's instructions. Make sure the seat belt webbing is not twisted.

- 2 Fasten the lap/shoulder belt latch into the buckle. Listen for the distinct "click" sound.



### Information

---

Position the release button so it is easy to access in an emergency.

---

- 3 Remove as much slack from the belt as possible by pushing down on the Child Restraint System whilst feeding the shoulder belt back into the retractor.
- 4 Push and pull on the Child Restraint System to confirm that the seat belt is holding it firmly in place.



If your Child Restraint System manufacturer recommends the use of a top tether anchorage with the lap/shoulder belt, refer to the **"Securing a Child Restraint System seat with "Top Tether Anchorage" system"** section for more information.

To remove the Child Restraint System, press the release button on the buckle and then pull the seat belt out of the Child Restraint System and allow the seat belt to retract fully. If the child seat moves, readjust the length of the seat belt. In Australia/New Zealand the child restraint manufacturer's instructions must be followed when fitting the unit to the vehicle.

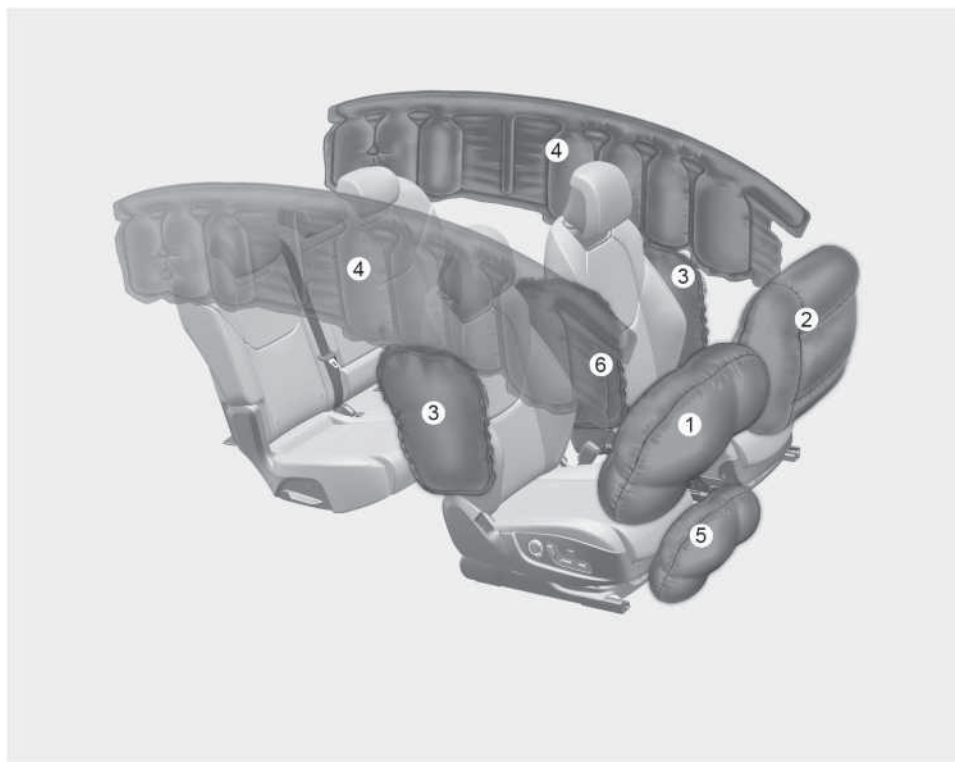
### WARNING

---

If a child restraint is installed in the second row centre seat, move the second row seat far back as possible, to minimise contact with the front centre side airbag (if equipped with front centre side airbag).

---

## Supplemental restraint system - airbags



**The actual airbags in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.**

1. Driver's front airbag
2. Passenger's front airbag
3. Side airbag
4. Curtain airbag
5. Driver's knee airbag
6. Front centre side airbag

Your vehicle is equipped with a Supplemental Airbag System for the driver's seat and front passenger's seats.

The front airbags are designed to supplement the three-point seat belts. For these airbags to provide protection, the seat belts must be properly worn at all times when driving.

You can be severely injured or killed in an accident if you are not wearing a seat belt. Airbags are built into the vehicle as a supplementary system. They are not intended as a replacement for wearing 3-point seat belts. Also, airbags are not designed to deploy in every collision. In some accidents, the seat belts are the only restraint protecting you.



## WARNING

---

### AIRBAG SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

Always use seat belts and Child Restraint Systems - every trip, every time, everyone! Even with airbags, you can be seriously injured or killed in a collision if you are improperly restrained or not wearing your seat belt when the airbag inflates.

NEVER place a child in any Child Restraint System or booster seat in the front passenger seat. An inflating airbag could forcefully strike the infant or child causing serious or fatal injuries.

ABC - Always Buckle Children under age 13 in the back seat. It is the safest place for children of any age to travel. If a child age 13 or older must be seated in the front seat, he or she must be properly restrained and the seat should be moved as far back as possible.

Make sure that all occupants sit upright with the seatback in an upright position, centred on the seat cushion with their seat belt on, legs comfortably extended, and their feet on the floor until the vehicle is parked and the vehicle is turned off. If an occupant is out of position during an accident, the rapidly deploying airbag may forcefully contact the occupant causing serious or fatal injuries.

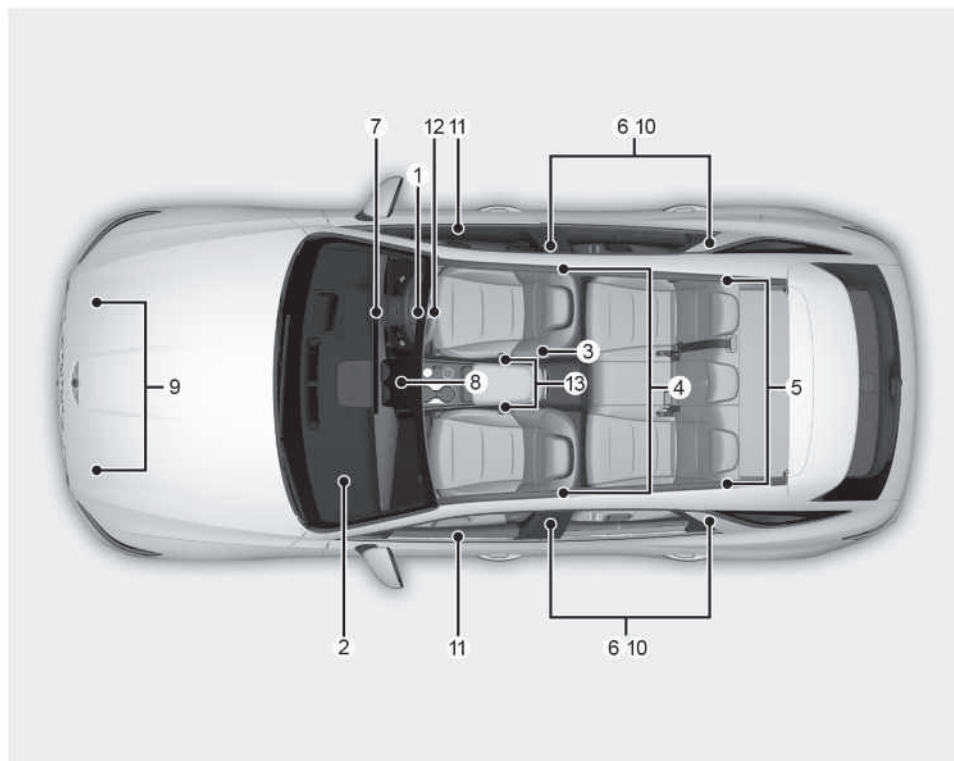
Never sit or lean unnecessarily close to the airbags or lean against the door or centre console.

Move your seat as far back as possible from front airbags, whilst still maintaining control of the vehicle.

---



## SRS components



The SRS consists of the following components:

1. Driver's front airbag module
2. Passenger's front airbag module
3. Front centre side airbag module
4. Side airbag modules
5. Curtain airbag modules
6. Front/Rear(if equipped) retractor pretensioner
7. Airbag warning light
8. SRS control module (SRSCM) / Rollover sensor
9. Front impact sensors
10. Side impact sensors (acceleration)
11. Side impact sensors (pressure)
12. Driver's knee airbag module
13. Driver's and front passenger's seat belt buckle sensors.

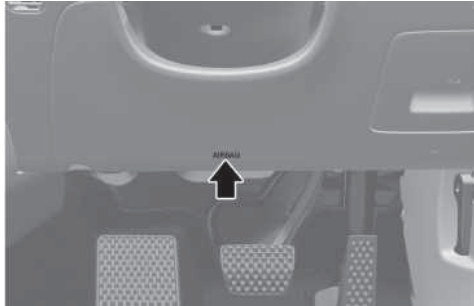
## Where are the airbags?

### *Driver's and passenger's front airbags*

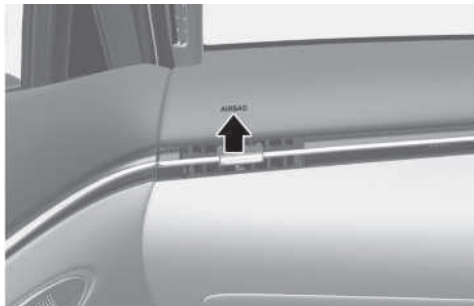
Driver's front airbag



Driver's knee airbag



Passenger's front airbag



The SRS consists of airbags located in the centre of the steering wheel, in the driver's side lower crash pad below the steering wheel, and the passenger's side front panel pad above the glove box.

The airbag locations are embossed with the letters "AIRBAG".

The purpose of the SRS is to provide the vehicle's driver and front passengers with additional supplemental protection than that the seat belt system does not provide in case of a frontal impact of sufficient severity.



## **WARNING**

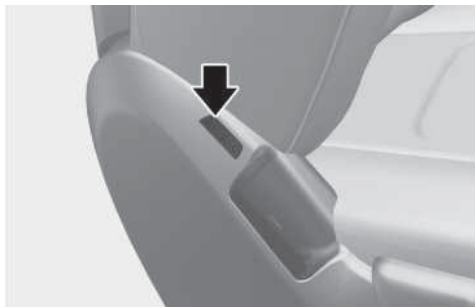
---

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death from inflating front airbags:

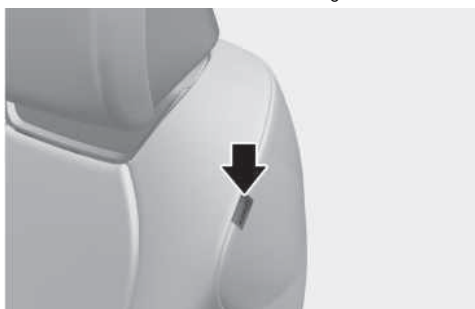
- Seat belts must be worn at all times to help keep occupants positioned properly.
  - Move your seat as far back as possible from front airbags, whilst still maintaining control of the vehicle.
  - Never lean against the door or centre console.
  - Hold the steering wheel at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions, to minimise the risk of injuries to your hands and arms.
  - Do not allow the front passenger to place their feet or legs on the instrument panel.
  - Never place any objects (such as instrument panel cover, mobile phone holder, cup holder, perfume or stickers) over or near the airbag modules on the steering wheel, instrument panel, windscreen glass, and the front passenger's panel above the glove box. Such objects may cause harm if the vehicle is in a crash severe enough to cause the airbags to deploy.
  - Do not attach any objects on the front windscreen and inside mirror.
- 

### ***Side airbags and front centre side airbag***

Side airbag (Front row)



Front centre side airbag





Your vehicle is equipped with a side air bag in each front seat. Additionally, a front centre side air bag is provided in the inboard side of the driver seatback. The purpose of the air bag is to provide the vehicle's additional protection than that offered by the seat belt alone.

The side airbags and front centre side airbag are designed to deploy during certain side impact collisions, depending on the crash severity.

For vehicles equipped with a rollover sensor the front centre side airbag, side and/or curtain airbags and pretensioners on both sides of the vehicle may deploy if a rollover or possible rollover is detected.

The side airbags and front centre side airbag are not designed to deploy in all side impact or rollover situations.



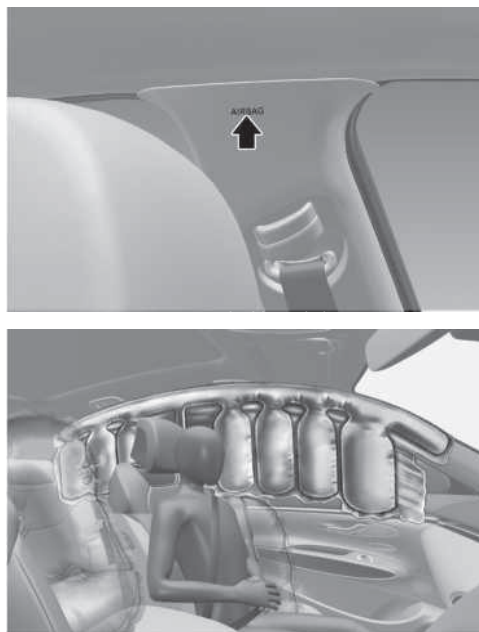
## **WARNING**

---

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death from an inflating side airbag:

- Seat belts must be worn at all times to help keep occupants positioned properly.
  - Do not allow passengers to lean their heads or bodies onto doors, put their arms on the doors, stretch their arms out of the window, or place objects between the doors and seats.
  - Do not use any accessory seat covers. It may reduce or prevent the effectiveness of the system.
  - Do not hang other objects except clothes. In an accident it may cause vehicle damage or personal injury especially when airbag is inflated.
  - Do not place any objects over the airbag or between the airbag and yourself. Also, do not attach any objects around the area the airbag inflates such as the door, side door glass, front and rear pillar.
  - Do not place any objects between the door and the seat. They may become dangerous projectiles if the side airbag inflates.
  - Do not install any accessories on the side or near the side airbags.
  - Do not cause impact to the doors when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON or START position as this may cause the side airbags to inflate.
  - If the seat or seat cover is damaged, we recommend that the system be serviced by an authorised Genesis repairer.
-

## *Curtain airbags*



Curtain airbags are located along both sides of the roof rails above the front and rear doors.

They are designed to help protect the heads of the front seat occupants and the rear outboard seat occupants in certain side impact collisions.

The curtain airbags are designed to deploy during certain side impact collisions, depending on the crash severity.

For vehicles equipped with a rollover sensor the side and/or curtain airbags and pretensioners on both sides of the vehicle may deploy if a rollover or possible rollover is detected.

The curtain airbags are not designed to deploy in all side impact or rollover situations.

## **WARNING**

---

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death from an inflating curtain airbag:

- Seat belts must be worn at all times to help keep occupants positioned properly.
  - Properly secure Child Restraint System as far away from the door as possible.
  - Do not place any objects over the airbag. Also, do not attach any objects around the area the airbag inflates such as the door, side door glass, front and rear pillar, and roof side rail.
  - Do not hang other objects except clothes, especially hard or breakable objects near airbag locations. In an accident, it may cause vehicle damage or personal injury.
  - Do not allow passengers to lean their heads or bodies onto doors, put their arms on the doors, stretch their arms out of the window, or place objects between the doors and seats.
  - Do not open or repair the side curtain airbags yourself. If necessary, we recommend that the airbag be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.
- 

### **How does the airbags system operate?**

The SRSCM (Supplemental Restraint System Control Module) continually monitors all SRS components whilst the Engine Start/Stop button is ON to determine if a crash impact is severe enough to require airbag deployment or pretensioner seat belt deployment.

During a moderate to severe frontal collision, sensors detect the vehicle's rapid deceleration. If the rate of deceleration is high enough, the SRSCM inflates the front airbags with the force needed.

The front airbags help protect the driver and front passenger by responding to frontal impacts in which seat belts alone cannot provide adequate restraint. When needed, the side airbags help provide protection in the event of a side impact or rollover by supporting the side upper body area.

- Airbags are activated (able to inflate if necessary) only when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON or START position, and it can be activated within about 3 minutes after the engine is turned off.
- Airbags inflate in the event of certain frontal or side collisions to help protect the occupants from serious physical injury.
- The front airbags completely inflate and deflate in an instant. It is virtually impossible for you to see the airbags inflate during an accident. It is much more likely that you simply see the deflated airbags hanging out of their storage compartments after the collision.
- In addition to inflating in serious side collisions, vehicles equipped with a rollover sensor, side and/or curtain airbags and front centre side airbag inflate if the sensing system detects a rollover.

When a rollover is detected, curtain airbags remain inflated longer to help provide protection from ejection, especially when used in conjunction with the seat belts.

- To help provide protection, the airbags must inflate rapidly. The speed of airbag inflation is a consequence of the extremely short time in which the airbag inflates between the occupant and the vehicle structures before the occupant impacts those structures. This speed of inflation reduces the risk of serious or life-threatening injuries and is thus a necessary part of airbag design.

However, the rapid airbag inflation can also cause injuries which can include facial abrasions, bruises, and broken bones because the inflation speed also causes the airbags to expand with great force.

- There are even circumstances under which contact with the airbag may cause fatal injuries, especially if the occupant is positioned excessively close to the airbag.

You can take steps to reduce the risk of being injured by an inflating airbag. The greatest risk is sitting too close to the airbag. An airbag needs space to inflate. It is recommended that drivers sit as far as possible from the centre of the steering wheel whilst still maintaining control of the vehicle.

Driver's front airbag (1)



When the SRSCM detects a sufficiently severe impact to the front of the vehicle, it automatically deploys the front airbags.

Driver's front airbag (2)



Upon deployment, tear seam in the pad cover separates from the expansion of the airbags.

A fully inflated airbag, in combination with a properly worn seat belt, slows the driver's or the front passenger's forward motion, reducing the risk of head and chest injury.

Driver's front airbag (3)



Passenger's front airbag



After complete inflation, the airbag immediately starts deflating, enabling the driver to maintain forward visibility and the ability to steer or operate other controls.



## **WARNING**

---

To prevent objects from becoming dangerous projectiles when the passenger's airbag inflates:

- Do not install or place any objects (drink holder, CD holder, stickers, etc.) on the front passenger's panel above the glove box where the passenger's airbag is located.
  - Do not install a container of liquid air freshener near the instrument cluster or on the instrument panel surface.
- 

## **What to expect after an airbag inflates**

After a frontal or side airbag inflates, it will deflate very quickly. Airbag inflation will not prevent the driver from seeing out of the windscreen or being able to steer. Curtain airbags may remain partially inflated for some time after they deploy.



## **WARNING**

---

After an airbag inflates, take the following precautions:

- Open your windows and doors as soon as it is safe to do so after impact to reduce prolonged exposure to the smoke and powder released by the inflating airbag.
  - Do not touch the airbag storage area's internal components immediately after an airbag has inflated. The parts that come into contact with an inflating airbag may be very hot.
  - Always wash exposed skin areas thoroughly with cold water and mild soap.
  - We recommend that an authorised Genesis repairer replace the airbag immediately after deployment. airbags are designed to be used only once.
- 

### ***Noise and smoke from inflating airbag***

When the airbags inflate, they make a loud noise and may produce smoke and powder in the air inside of the vehicle. This is normal and is a result of the ignition of the airbag inflator. After the airbag inflates, you may feel substantial discomfort in breathing because of the contact of your chest with both the seat belt and the airbag, as well as from breathing the smoke and powder. The powder may aggravate asthma for some people. If you experience breathing problems after an airbag deployment, seek medical attention immediately.

Though the smoke and powder are nontoxic, they may cause irritation to the skin, eyes, nose, throat, etc. If this is the case, wash and rinse with cold water immediately and seek medical attention if the symptoms persist.

### **SRS warning light**



The SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) airbag warning light on the instrument panel displays the airbag symbol in the illustration. The light indicates if there is a potential problem with your airbag system, which could include your side and/or curtain airbags used for rollover protection.

## **WARNING**

---

If your SRS malfunctions, the airbags may not inflate properly during a collision increasing the risk of serious injury or death.

Your SRS malfunctions in the following conditions:

- The light does not turn on for about three to six seconds when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position.
- The light stays on after illuminating for about three to six seconds.
- The light comes on whilst the vehicle is moving.
- The light blinks when the engine is running.

We recommend that an authorised Genesis repairer inspect the SRS as soon as possible.

---

## Do not install a Child Restraint System on the front passenger seat



Never install a Child Restraint System in the front passenger seat.

### **WARNING**

- Extreme hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an air bag in front of it!
- NEVER use a rearward facing Child Restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.
- Never put a child restraint in the front passenger's seat. If the front passenger air bag inflates, it would cause serious or fatal injuries.

### **Why didn't my airbag go off in a collision?**

There are certain types of accidents in which the airbag would not deploy including rear impacts and second or third collisions in multiple impact accidents, as well as low speed impacts. Damage to the vehicle indicates a collision energy absorption, and is not an indicator of whether or not an airbag should have inflated.

## ***Airbag collision sensors***



### **WARNING**

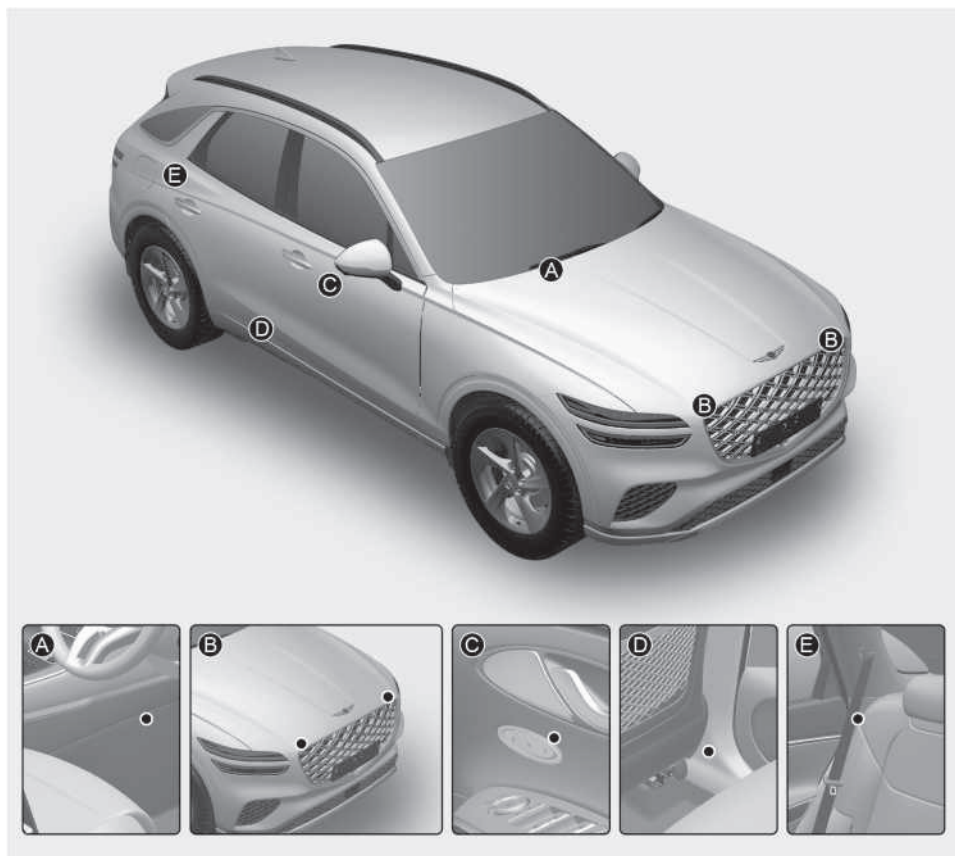
---

To reduce the risk of an airbag deploying unexpectedly and causing serious injury or death:

- Do not hit or allow any objects to impact the locations where airbags or sensors are installed.
- Do not perform maintenance on or around the airbag sensors. If the location or angle of the sensors is altered, the airbags may deploy when they should not or may not deploy.
- Do not install bumper guards with non-genuine Genesis or non-equivalent parts. It may adversely affect the collision and airbag deployment performance.

To ensure correct function of the airbag system, we recommend that you replace the bumper with genuine Genesis part or the equivalent (of the genuine part) specified for your vehicle.

- Press the Engine Start/Stop button to the OFF or ACC position and wait for 3 minutes when the vehicle is being towed to prevent unintended airbag deployment.
  - We recommend that all airbag repairs be performed by an authorised Genesis repairer.
-



[A] SRS control module / Rollover sensor

[B] Front impact sensor

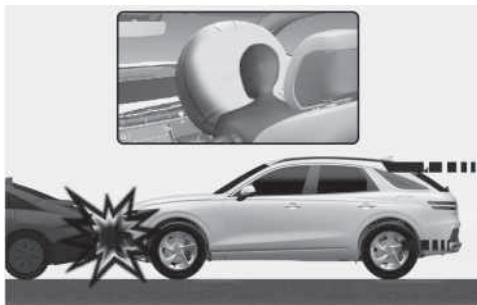
[C] Side impact sensor (Pressure)

[D] Side impact sensor (Acceleration)

[E] Side impact sensor (Acceleration)

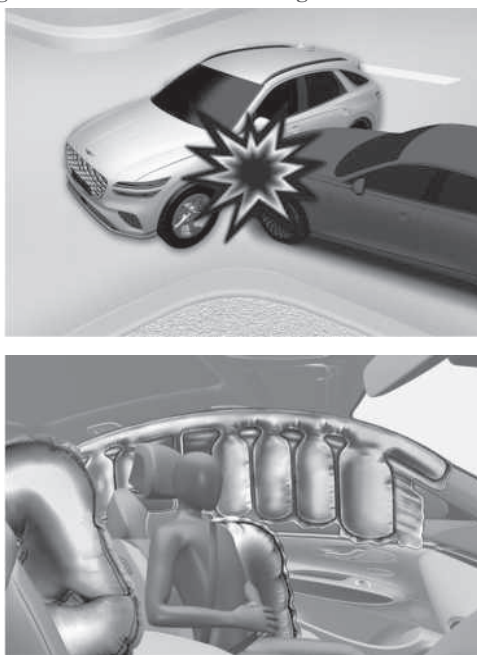
## ***Airbag inflation conditions***

### **Front airbags**



Front airbags are designed to inflate in a frontal collision depending on the severity of impact.

### **Side and curtain airbags and front centre side airbag**



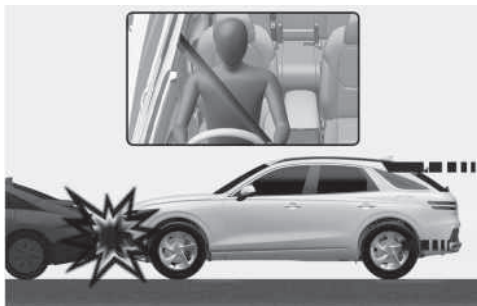
Side and curtain airbags and the front centre side airbag are designed to inflate when an impact is detected by side collision sensors depending on the severity of impact resulting from a side impact collision.

Although the driver's and front passenger's airbags are designed to inflate in frontal collisions and side and curtain airbags and front centre side airbag are designed to inflate in side impact collisions, airbags may inflate in other types of collisions if the sensors detect a sufficient impact.

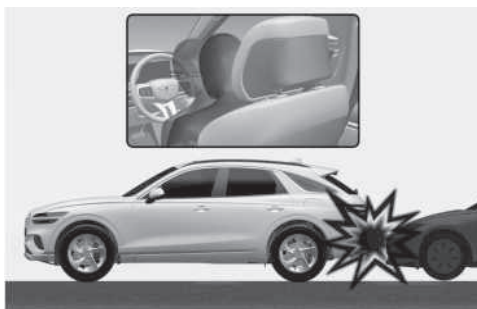
Also, the side and curtain airbags and the front centre side airbag are designed to inflate when a rollover is detected by a rollover sensor.

If the vehicle chassis is impacted by bumps or objects on unimproved roads, the airbags may deploy. Drive carefully on unimproved roads or on surfaces not designed for vehicle traffic to prevent unintended airbag deployment.

### ***Airbag non-inflation conditions***



In certain low-speed collisions, the airbags may not deploy. The airbags are designed not to deploy in such cases because they may not provide benefits beyond the protection of the seat belts.



Front airbags are not designed to inflate in rear collisions, because occupants are moved rearward by the force of the impact. In this case, inflated airbags would not provide any additional benefit.



Front airbags may not inflate in side impact collisions, because occupants move in the direction of the collision, and thus in side impacts, front airbag deployment would not provide additional occupant protection.

Side and curtain airbags and the front centre side airbag may inflate depending on the severity of impact.



In an angled collision, the force of impact may direct the occupants in a direction where the airbags would not be able to provide any additional benefit, and thus the sensors may not deploy any airbags.



Just before impact, drivers often brake heavily. Such heavy braking lowers the front portion of the vehicle causing it to "ride" under a vehicle with a higher ground clearance.

airbags may not inflate in this "underride" situation because deceleration forces that are detected by sensors may be significantly reduced by such "underride" collisions.



Front airbags may not inflate in rollover accidents because front airbag deployment would not provide additional occupant protection.

The side and curtain airbags and the front centre side airbag may inflate in a rollover situation, when it is detected by the rollover sensor.



Airbags may not inflate if the vehicle collides with objects such as utility poles or trees, where the point of impact is concentrated and the collision energy is absorbed by the vehicle structure.

### **SRS care**

The SRS is virtually maintenance-free and there are no parts you can safely service by yourself. If the SRS airbag warning light does not illuminate when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position, or continuously remains on, we recommend that the system be immediately inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

We recommend any work on the SRS system, such as removing, installing, repairing, or any work on the steering wheel, the front passenger's panel, front seats, and roof rails should be performed by an authorised Genesis repairer. Improper handling of the SRS system may result in serious personal injury or death.



## **WARNING**

---

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death:

- Do not attempt to modify or disconnect the SRS components or wiring, including the addition of any kind of badges to the pad covers or modifications to the body structure.
  - Do not place objects over or near the airbag modules on the steering wheel, instrument panel, and the front passenger's panel above the glove box.
  - Clean the airbag pad covers with a soft cloth moistened with plain water. Solvents or cleaners could adversely affect the airbag covers and proper deployment of the system.
  - We recommend that inflated airbags be replaced by an authorised Genesis repairer.
  - If components of the airbag system must be discarded, or if the vehicle must be scrapped, observe safety precautions. We recommend that you consult an authorised Genesis repairer for the necessary information. Failure to follow these precautions could increase the risk of personal injury.
- 

### **Additional safety precautions**

**Passengers should not move out of or change seats whilst the vehicle is moving.** A passenger who is not wearing a seat belt during a collision or emergency stop can be thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against other occupants, or be ejected from the vehicle.

**Do not use any accessories on seat belts.** Devices claiming to improve occupant comfort or reposition the seat belt can reduce the protection provided by the seat belt and increase the chance of serious injury in a collision.

**Do not modify the front seats.** Modification of the front seats may interfere with the operation of the Supplemental Restraint System sensing components or side airbags.

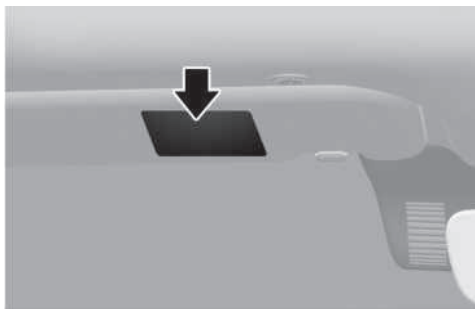
**Do not place items under the front seats.** Placing items under the front seats may interfere with the operation of the Supplemental Restraint System sensing components and wiring harnesses.

**Do not cause impact to the doors.** Impact to the doors when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON or START position may cause the airbags to inflate.

### ***Adding equipment to or modifying your airbag equipped vehicle***

If you modify your vehicle by changing your vehicle's frame, bumper system, front end or side sheet metal, or ride height, this may affect the operation of your vehicle's Supplemental Restraint System.

## Airbag warning labels



Airbag warning labels are attached to alert the driver and passengers of potential risks of the airbag system. Be sure to read all of the information about the airbags that are installed on your vehicle in this Owner's Manual.

## Active Bonnet lift system

The active bonnet lift system can reduce a risk of injury to pedestrians by raising the bonnet in certain accident situations. The active bonnet lift system has the additional deformation space under the bonnet, which is made available for subsequent head impact.

### System activation

#### *Prerequisite for activation*

The Engine Start/Stop button is in the START position and the vehicle speed is between about 25 km/h and 50 km/h.

### Information

---

#### **Active bonnet lift system repair**

- If the active bonnet lift system has been activated, do not place the bonnet back by yourself. We recommend that the system be repaired by an authorised Genesis repairer.
  - If you change or repair the front bumper, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Genesis repairer.
- 

#### *System activation*

The active bonnet lift system is designed to work in a frontal collision depending on the intensity, speed or angles of impact of the front collision.

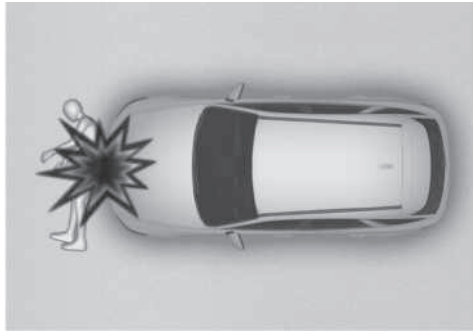


The system may activate when:

- The vehicle falls in the gutter or from a high place.
- An impact is detected by a frontal collision without pedestrians in front.
- Certain high-speed frontal or angled collision with a vehicle or barrier.

### **System limitation**

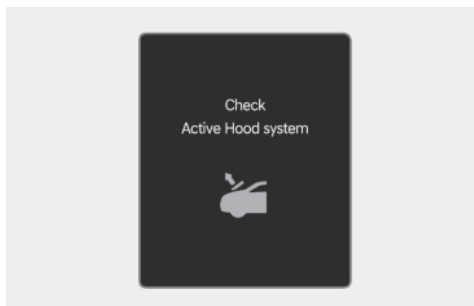




The system will not activate when:

- On side collisions, rear collision, and rollover accident. The vehicle can detect only frontal collision.
- The front bumper is damaged or modified.
- The vehicle is in an angled frontal collision with pedestrians.
- A pedestrian is laying on the road.
- A pedestrian has an object to absorb the shock such as a suit case, buggy or cart.

### **System malfunction**



If there is a problem with the system a message will appear on the instrument cluster display.

This warning message means that the protection of pedestrians by the active bonnet lift system is not working properly.

If the warning message is displayed, we recommend that the system be checked as soon as possible by an authorised Genesis repairer.

### Information

---

- Do not remove or change the components and the wiring of the active bonnet system.
- Do not change the front bumper or the body structure.
- Do not install or assemble any aftermarket accessory on the front bumper or cover.
- When replacing tyres, make sure they are the same size as your original tyres. If you drive with different tyre or wheel sizes, the active bonnet lift system may not work normally.

The above situations may cause a malfunction of the active bonnet lift system.

---

## 4. Instrument cluster

### Instrument cluster

Type A



Type B



The actual instrument cluster in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

For more information, refer to the "Gauges and meters" section in this chapter.

1. Speedometer
2. Tachometer
3. Fuel gauge
4. Engine coolant temperature gauge
5. Warning and indicator lights
6. Instrument cluster display
7. Widget

## Information

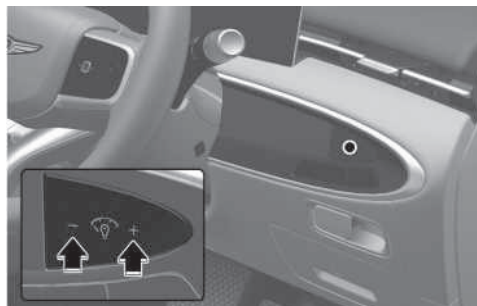
---

Press the mode (◊) button on the steering wheel to select between instrument cluster Type A or Type B.

---

### Instrument cluster control

#### *Instrument panel illumination*



Press the illumination control switch to adjust the brightness of the instrument panel illumination.

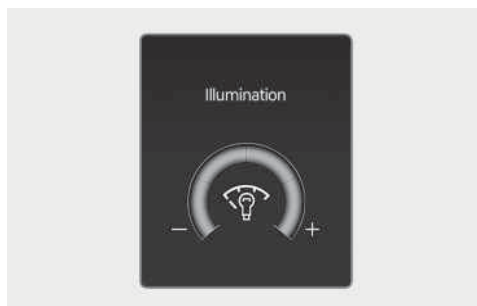
When pressing the illumination control switch, the interior switch illumination intensity is also adjusted.

#### **WARNING**

---

Never adjust the instrument panel illumination whilst driving to prevent death, serious injury, or vehicle damage.

---



- The brightness of the instrument panel illumination is displayed.
- When the brightness setting reaches either the minimum or maximum level, a chime sounds.



Gauges and meters

Speedometer

Type A



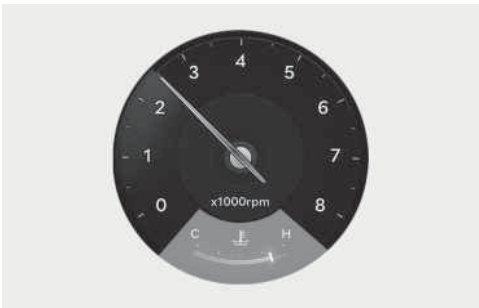
Type B



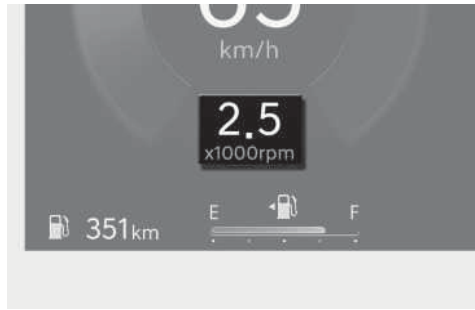
The speedometer indicates the speed of the vehicle and is calibrated in kilometres per hour (km/h).

Tachometer

Type A



Type B



The tachometer indicates the approximate number of engine revolutions per minute (RPM).

Use the tachometer to select the correct shift points and to prevent lugging and/or over-revving the engine.

## NOTICE

Do not operate the engine within the tachometer's RED ZONE to prevent severe engine damage.

## *Engine coolant temperature gauge*

Type A



Type B



The engine coolant temperature gauge indicates the temperature of the engine coolant when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position.

## NOTICE

If the gauge pointer moves beyond the normal range area toward the H (Hot) or 130 position, it indicates overheating that may damage the engine.

Do not continue driving with an overheated engine. If your vehicle overheats, refer to the "If the engine overheats" section in chapter 8.

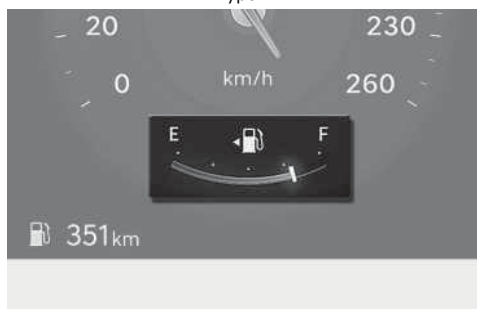


## WARNING

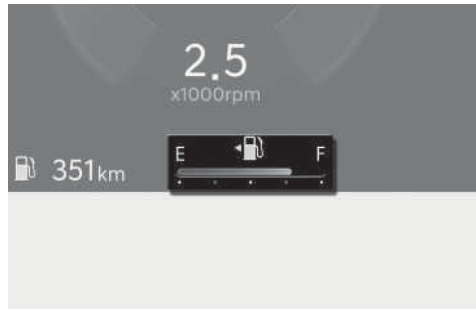
Never remove the engine coolant reservoir cap when the engine is hot. The engine coolant is under pressure and may cause burn or injury. Wait until the engine is cool before adding coolant to the reservoir.

## Fuel gauge

Type A



Type B



The fuel gauge indicates the approximate amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank.

### Information

---

- The fuel tank capacity is given in chapter 2.
  - The fuel gauge is supplemented by a low fuel warning light, that illuminates when the fuel tank is nearly empty.
  - On inclines or curves, the fuel gauge pointer may fluctuate or the low fuel warning light may come on earlier than usual due to the movement of fuel in the tank.
- 



### WARNING

---

Always refuel the vehicle as soon as possible after the warning light comes on or when the gauge indicator comes close to E (Empty) or 0 level.

---

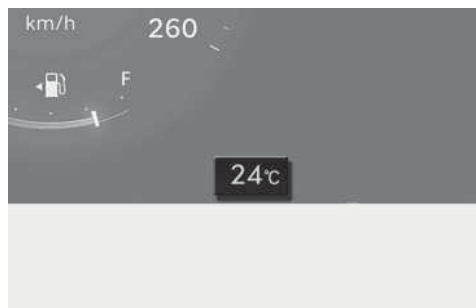
### NOTICE

---

Avoid driving with an extremely low fuel level. Running out of fuel may cause the engine to misfire and cause damage to the catalytic converter.

---

### *Outside temperature gauge*



The outside ambient temperature appears in the lower portion of the instrument cluster display. The temperature reads in Celsius or Fahrenheit depending on the units selected from the Settings menu in the infotainment system.

The temperature indicated on the instrument cluster may not change as quickly as the outside temperature.

Select:

- **Setup > General > Units > Temperature unit > °C/°F**

For vehicles equipped with Automatic Climate Control, you can also:

- Press the **AUTO** button for 3 seconds, and then within 5 seconds press the driver's side mode (air flow) selection for more than 3 seconds.

Both the temperature unit on the instrument cluster and climate control information screen is changed.

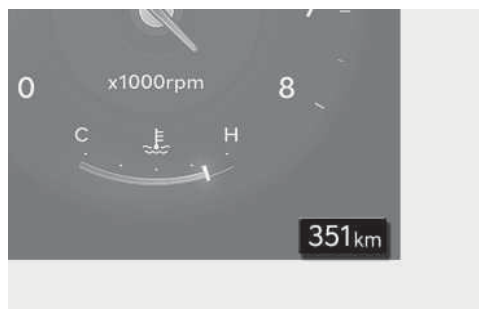
## NOTICE

---

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

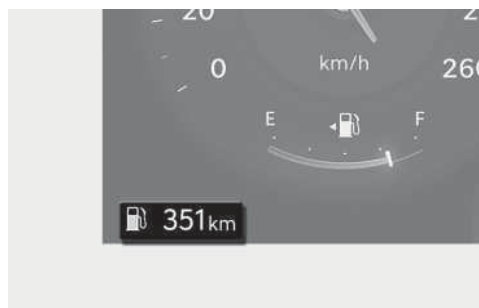
---

### *Odometer*



The odometer indicates the total distance that the vehicle has been driven and is used to determine when periodic maintenance should be performed.

### *Distance to empty*



- The distance to empty is the estimated distance the vehicle can be driven with the remaining fuel.
- If the estimated distance is below 1 km, the trip computer displays "---" as the distance to empty. When this occurs, refuel the vehicle immediately.
- The trip computer may not register additional fuel if less than 9 litres of fuel are added to the vehicle.

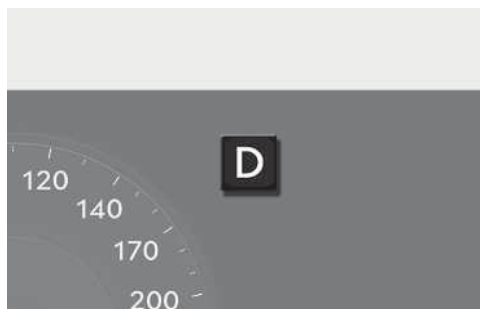
## Information

---

- The distance to empty may differ from the actual driving distance because it is only an estimate of the available driving distance.
  - The distance to empty may differ significantly based on driving conditions, driving habits, and condition of the vehicle.
  - If the vehicle is not on level ground or the battery power has been interrupted, the distance to empty function may not operate correctly.
  - The distance to empty indicator may not change accurately if less than 9 litres of fuel are added to the vehicle.
- 

## Transmission shift indicator

### *Automatic transmission shift indicator*



The automatic transmission shift indicator in the upper corner of the instrument cluster display indicates the current gear or P (Park).

## Warning and indicator lights

## Information

---

Make sure that all warning lights are OFF after starting the engine. If any light is still ON, this indicates a situation that needs attention.

---

### *Seat belt warning light*



This warning light informs the driver that the seat belt is not fastened.  
For more information, refer to the "**Seat belt warning light**" section in chapter 3.

### ***Airbag warning light***



**This warning light illuminates:**

- When the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position. It illuminates for 3-6 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction with the SRS.

If the Airbag warning light remains illuminated whilst driving, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

### ***Parking brake & Brake fluid warning light***



**This warning light illuminates:**

- When the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position. It illuminates for 3 seconds and then goes off once the parking brake is released.
- Whenever the parking brake is applied.
- Whenever the brake fluid level in the reservoir is low.
  - If the warning light illuminates with the parking brake released, it indicates the brake fluid level in the reservoir is low.

**If the brake fluid level in the reservoir is low:**

- 1 Drive carefully to the nearest safe location and stop your vehicle.
- 2 With the engine stopped, check the brake fluid level immediately and add fluid as required. For more information, refer to the "**Brake fluid**" section in chapter 9. After adding brake fluid, check all brake components for fluid leaks. If a brake fluid leak is found, or if the warning light remains on, or if the brakes do not operate properly, do not drive the vehicle. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

### **Dual-diagonal braking system**

Your vehicle is equipped with the dual-diagonal braking system. This means you still have braking on two wheels even if one of the dual systems should fail.

With only one of the dual systems working, more than normal pedal travel and greater pedal force are required to stop the vehicle.

Also, the vehicle does not stop in as short a distance if only a portion of the brake system is working.

If you experience a malfunction with the braking system whilst driving, attempt to slow your vehicle by coasting or by using engine braking. You may be able to reduce your vehicle speed by manually downshifting to a lower gear. Use the paddle shifters to shift to a lower gear.



## WARNING

---

If the Parking Brake & Brake Fluid warning light illuminates with the parking brake released, it indicates that the brake fluid level is low. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

---

### *Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) warning light*



#### **This warning light illuminates:**

- When the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position. It illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Whenever there is a malfunction with the ABS.

The hydraulic braking system still operates even if there is a malfunction with the ABS.

If the ABS warning light remains illuminated whilst driving, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

### *Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD) system warning light*



When the ABS warning and Parking Brake warning lights are on simultaneously, it may indicate a problem with the Electronic Brake Force Distribution system.

If both the ABS warning light and the Parking Brake warning light remain illuminated whilst driving, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.



## WARNING

---

When both ABS and Parking Brake & Brake Fluid warning lights are on, the braking system will not work normally and you may experience an unexpected and dangerous situation during sudden braking.

Avoid high speed driving and abrupt braking.

We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer as soon as possible.

---



## NOTICE

---

When the ABS warning light is on or both ABS and Parking Brake & Brake Fluid warning lights are on, the speedometer, odometer, or tripmeter may not work. Also, the MDPS warning light may illuminate and the steering effort may increase or decrease.

---

### ***Motor Driven Power Steering (MDPS) warning light***

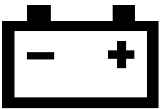


**This warning light illuminates:**

- When the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position. It illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Whenever there is a malfunction with the Motor Driven Power Steering.

If the MDPS warning light remains illuminated whilst driving, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

### ***Charging system warning light***



**This warning light illuminates:**

- When the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position. It illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction with either the alternator or electrical charging system.

**If there is a malfunction with either the alternator or electrical charging system:**

- 1 Drive carefully to the nearest safe location and stop your vehicle.
- 2 Turn the engine off and check the alternator drive belt for looseness or breakage.

If the belt is adjusted properly, there may be a problem in the electrical charging system.

If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer as soon as possible.

### ***Engine oil pressure warning light***



**This warning light illuminates:**

When the engine oil pressure is low.

### If the engine oil pressure is low:

- 1 Drive carefully to the nearest safe location and stop your vehicle.
- 2 Turn the engine off and check the engine oil level (For more information, refer to the "**Recommended lubricants and capacities**" section in chapter 2). If the level is low, add oil as required.

If the warning light remains on after adding oil or if oil is not available, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer as soon as possible. Continued driving with the warning light on may cause engine failure.

### Information

---

When engine oil pressure decreases due to insufficient engine oil, etc., the Engine Oil Pressure warning light will illuminate. In addition, the enhanced engine protection system which limits engine power will be activated. If the engine oil pressure is restored, the Engine Oil Pressure warning light and the enhanced engine protection system will turn off. However, when the engine oil pressure is restored, the warning light and the enhanced engine protection system will turn off after the engine is restarted.

---

### NOTICE

---

If the engine is not stopped immediately after the Engine Oil Pressure warning light is illuminated, severe damage could occur.

---

### *Low fuel level warning light*



#### **This warning light illuminates:**

When the fuel tank is nearly empty.

Refuel the vehicle as soon as possible.

### NOTICE

---

Driving with the Low Fuel Level warning light on or with the fuel level below "E" may cause the engine to misfire and damage the catalytic converter.

---

### *Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)*



#### **This indicator light illuminates:**

- When the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position. It illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.

- Whenever there is a malfunction with either the emission control system or the engine or the vehicle powertrain.

If the MIL warning light remains illuminated whilst driving, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

## NOTICE

---

- Driving with the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) on may cause damage to the emission control system that may affect drivability and/or fuel economy.
  - If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) illuminates, catalytic converter damage is possible and may result in loss of engine power.
  - If the enhanced engine protection system becomes activated due to lack of engine oil, engine power will be limited. If such condition continues repeatedly, the Malfunction Indicator Lamp will illuminate.
- 

### *Master warning light*



#### **This warning light illuminates:**

If a malfunction is detected in any of the following:

- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist radar blocked
- Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction
- Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist radar blocked
- LED headlamp malfunction (if equipped)
- High Beam Assist malfunction (if equipped)
- Smart Cruise Control malfunction
- Smart Cruise Control radar blocked
- Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) malfunction

If the issue is resolved, the Master warning light turns off.

### *Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) warning light*

# EPB

#### **This warning light illuminates:**

- When the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position. It illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Whenever there is a malfunction with EPB.

If the EPB warning light remains illuminated whilst driving, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

## Information

---

The Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) warning light may illuminate when the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) indicator light comes on to indicate that ESC is not working properly. This does not indicate malfunction of EPB.

---

### *Low tyre pressure warning light*



**This warning light illuminates:**

- When the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position. It illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When one or more tyres are significantly underinflated. (The location of the under-inflated tyre appears on the instrument cluster display.)

For more information, refer to the "**Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)**" section in chapter 8.

**This warning light remains ON after blinking for about 60 seconds, or repeatedly blinks ON and OFF at 3 second intervals:**

When there is a malfunction with the TPMS.

If this occurs, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer as soon as possible.

For more information, refer to the "**Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)**" section in chapter 8.



## WARNING

---

- The TPMS cannot alert you to severe and sudden tyre damage caused by external factors.
  - If you notice any vehicle instability, immediately take your foot off the accelerator pedal, apply the brakes gradually with light force, and slowly move to a safe position off the road.
- 

### *Forward Safety warning light*



**This warning light illuminates:**

- When the Start/Stop button is in the ON position. It illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.

- Yellow: When Forward Safety of Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist is deselected, disabled, or a malfunction is detected.

If the yellow warning light remains on after the sensor has been uncovered or unblocked when the Forward Safety is set, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

**This warning light blinks:**

- Red: When Forward Safety function is operating.

For more information, refer to the "**Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)**" section in chapter 7.

***Emergency steering warning light***

 If equipped



**This warning light illuminates:**

- When the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position, the yellow warning light illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Continuously Yellow: When Forward/Side Safety is deselected or Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist is disabled or a malfunction is detected.
- Blinking Red: When Forward/Side Safety of Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist is operating.

If the yellow warning light is still on even after removing foreign material from the front of the sensors after Forward Safety is set, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

For more information, refer to the "**Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)**" section in chapter 7.

***Lane Safety indicator light***



**This indicator light illuminates:**

- Green: When Lane Keeping Assist operating conditions are satisfied.
- Grey: When Lane Keeping Assist operating conditions are not satisfied.
- Yellow: When Lane Safety is deselected, disabled, or a malfunction is detected.

If the yellow warning light remains on after the sensor has been uncovered or unblocked when Lane Safety is set, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

For more information, refer to the "**Lane Keeping Assist (LKA)**" section in chapter 7.

### *Inattentive Driving warning light*



#### **This indicator light illuminates:**

- When the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position. It illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Yellow: When Driver Attention Warning is disabled or a malfunction is detected.  
If the yellow indicator light remains on after the front view camera has been uncovered or unblocked, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

#### **This indicator light blinks:**

- Yellow: When Driver Attention Warning recommends to take a break.

For more information, refer to the "**Driver Attention Warning (DAW)**" section in chapter 7.

### *Forward Attention Warning light*

 if equipped



#### **This warning light illuminates:**

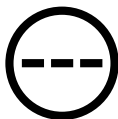
- When the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position. It illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Red: When Forward Attention Warning is disabled or a malfunction is detected.  
If the red warning light remains on after the in-cabin camera has been uncovered or unblocked, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

#### **This warning light blinks:**

- Red: When Forward Attention Warning warns the driver to keep eyes on the road.

For more information, refer to the "**Forward Attention Warning (FAW)**" section in chapter 7.

### *Intelligent Speed Limit Assist indicator light*



**This indicator light illuminates:**

- When the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position. It illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Yellow: When Intelligent Speed Limit Assist is off, disabled, or a malfunction is detected.

If the yellow indicator light remains on after the front view camera has been uncovered or unblocked, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

For more information, refer to the "Intelligent Speed Limit Assist (ISLA)" section in chapter 7.

***Lane Following Assist indicator light***



**This indicator light illuminates:**

- Green: When Lane Following Assist is operating.
- Grey: When Lane Following Assist operating conditions are not satisfied.

**This indicator light blinks:**

- White: When the steering wheel assist is cancelled.

For more information, refer to the "Lane Following Assist (LFA)" section in chapter 7.

***All Wheel Drive (AWD) warning light***



**This warning light illuminates:**

Whenever a malfunction with the AWD system is detected.

If this occurs, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

For more information, refer to the "All Wheel Drive (AWD)" section in chapter 6.

***Intelligent Front-Lighting System warning light***

 if equipped

# AFS

**This warning light illuminates:**

- When the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position. It illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Whenever a malfunction with the Intelligent Front-Lighting System is detected.  
If this occurs, drive your vehicle to the nearest safe location, and turn the engine off and restart the engine. If the warning light remains on, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

***LED headlamp warning light***



**This warning light illuminates:**

- When the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position. It illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Whenever there is a malfunction with a LED headlamp.  
If the LED headlamp warning light remains illuminated whilst driving, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

**NOTICE**

---

Driving with the LED headlamp warning light on may reduce LED headlamp life.

---

***Icy road warning light***

 if equipped



**This warning light illuminates:**

To warn the driver the road may be icy.

When the outside temperature on the outside temperature gauge is below 4 °C (40 °F), a single chime sounds, both the outside temperature gauge and Icy Road Warning indicator blink several times and then illuminates.

You can activate or deactivate the Icy Road Warning function from the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select:

- **Setup > Vehicle > Cluster > Content selection > Icy road warning**



## Information

---

- If the Icy Road warning light appears whilst driving, avoid speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden braking, or sharp turning.
  - The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.
- 

### ***Electronic Stability Control (ESC) indicator light***



#### **This indicator light illuminates:**

- When the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position. It illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Whenever there is a malfunction with ESC system.  
If this occurs, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

#### **This indicator light blinks:**

Whilst ESC is operating.

For more information, refer to the "Electronic Stability Control (ESC)" section in chapter 6.

### ***Electronic Stability Control (ESC) OFF indicator light***



#### **This indicator light illuminates:**

- When the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position. It illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When you deactivate ESC system by pressing the ESC OFF button.

For more information, refer to the "Electronic Stability Control (ESC)" section in chapter 6.

### ***Immobiliser indicator light***



#### **This indicator light illuminates for up to 30 seconds:**

When the vehicle detects the smart key in the vehicle with the Engine Start/Stop button in the ACC or ON position.

- At this time, you can start the engine.
- The indicator light goes off after starting the engine.

**This indicator light blinks for a few seconds:**

When the smart key is not in the vehicle, you cannot start the engine.

**This indicator light illuminates for 2 seconds and goes off:**

If the smart key is in the vehicle and the Engine Start/Stop button is ON, but the vehicle cannot detect the smart key.

If this occurs, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

**This indicator light blinks:**

Whenever there is a malfunction with the immobiliser system.

If this occurs, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

***Door open indicator light***



**This indicator light illuminates:**

When any door or the tailgate is left open.



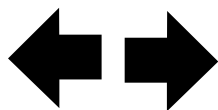
**WARNING**

Before driving the vehicle, confirm all doors and the tailgate are fully closed.

**NOTICE**

The 12 V battery may discharge if you leave the vehicle with the Door Open indicator light illuminated.

***Turn signal indicator light***



**This indicator light blinks:**

When you operate the turn signal lever.

If any of the following occur, there may be a malfunction with the turn signal system.

- The turn signal indicator light illuminates but does not blink.
- The turn signal indicator light blinks rapidly.
- The turn signal indicator light does not illuminate at all.

If any of these conditions occur, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

### *High beam indicator light*



#### **This indicator light illuminates:**

- When the headlamps are on and the turn signal lever is moved to the high beam position.
- When the turn signal lever is pulled into the Flash-to-Pass position.

### *Low beam indicator light*



#### **This indicator light illuminates:**

When the headlamps are on.

### *Light ON indicator light*



#### **This indicator light illuminates:**

When the parking lamps or headlamps are on.

### *High Beam Assist indicator light*

 If equipped



#### **This indicator light illuminates:**

When the high beam is on with the light switch in the AUTO position.

- White: When High Beam Assist is ready to operate.
- Green: When High Beam Assist is operating.

If your vehicle detects oncoming or preceding vehicles, High Beam Assist switches the high beam to low beam automatically.

For more information, refer to the "**High Beam Assist (HBA)**" section in chapter 5.

## *Intelligent Front-Lighting System indicator light*

 if equipped



### **This indicator light illuminates:**

When the high beam is on with the light switch in the AUTO position.

- White: When Intelligent Front-Lighting system is ready to operate.
- Green: When Intelligent Front-Lighting system is operating.

If your vehicle detect oncoming or preceding vehicles, the Intelligent Front-Lighting system partially turns off the high beam LED lamps.

For more information, refer to the "**Intelligent Front-lighting System (IFS)**" section in chapter 5.

## *Downhill Brake Control (DBC) indicator light*



### **This indicator light illuminates:**

- When the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position. It illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When you activate the system by pressing the DBC button.

### **This indicator light blinks:**

When Downhill Brake Control system is operating.

### **This indicator light illuminates yellow:**

Whenever there is a malfunction with Downhill Brake Control system.

If this occurs, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

For more information, refer to the "**Downhill Brake Control (DBC)**" section in chapter 6.

## *AUTO HOLD indicator light*



### **This indicator light illuminates:**

- White: When you activate Auto Hold by pressing the AUTO HOLD switch.

- Green: When you stop the vehicle completely by pressing the brake pedal with Auto Hold activated.
- Yellow: Whenever a malfunction with the Auto Hold is detected.

If the AUTO HOLD indicator light remains yellow whilst driving, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

For more information, refer to the "**Auto Hold**" section in chapter 6.

### *Cruise Indicator Light*



**This indicator light illuminates:**

When the cruise control system is enabled.

For more information, refer to the "**Smart Cruise Control (SCC)**" section in chapter 7.

### *Speed Limiter indicator light*



**This indicator light illuminates:**

When the speed limiter is enabled.

For more information, refer to the "**Manual Speed Limit Assist (MSLA)**" section in chapter 7.

## **Instrument cluster display messages**

### *Low key battery*

When the Engine Start/Stop button is pressed to the OFF position, a message may appear, indicating the internal battery of the smart key is low. Replace the smart key battery.

### *Press START button whilst turning wheel*

 if equipped

This message appears if the steering wheel does not unlock normally when the Engine Start/Stop button is pressed.

Press the Engine Start/Stop button whilst turning the steering wheel right and left.

### *Check steering wheel lock system*

 if equipped

This message appears if the steering wheel does not lock normally whilst the Engine Start/Stop button is pressed to the OFF position.

### ***Press brake pedal to start engine***

This message appears if the Engine Start/Stop button is pressed repeatedly without pressing the brake pedal.

Start the vehicle by pressing the brake pedal and then pressing the Engine Start/Stop button.

### ***Key not in vehicle***

This message appears if the smart key is not in the vehicle when you left the vehicle with the Engine Start/Stop button in the ON or Start position.

Always turn off the engine before leaving your vehicle.

### ***Key not detected***

This message appears if the smart key is not detected when you press the Engine Start/Stop button.

### ***Press START button again***

If you cannot start the vehicle after the Engine Start/ Stop button is pressed, attempt to start the engine by pressing the Engine Start/ Stop button again.

If the warning message appears each time you press the Engine Start/Stop button, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

### ***Press START button with key***

 if equipped

This message appears and the immobiliser indicator blinks if you press the Engine Start/Stop button whilst the warning message, "Key not detected" appears.

### ***Check BRAKE SWITCH fuse***

This message appears if the brake switch fuse is disconnected.

Replace the fuse before starting the engine.

If that is not possible, start the engine by pressing the Engine Start/Stop button for 10 seconds in the ACC position.

### ***Shift to P or N to start engine***

This message appears if you try to start the engine in any other position except P (Park) or N (Neutral).

Start the engine with the the vehicle in P (Park) with your foot pressing the brake pedal.

### ***Authenticated. The vehicle can now be started***

 if equipped

This message appears for 4 seconds when you place your finger on the fingerprint sensor, and it is verified whilst the engine is off.

You can start the vehicle by pressing the brake pedal and then pressing the Engine Start/ Stop button. However, the engine starts when the Engine Start/ Stop button is pressed within 30 seconds after your fingerprint is verified and the immobiliser () indicator light is illuminated. If the immobiliser indicator light is off, your fingerprint must be verified again.

## ***Fingerprint authentication is locked out. Try again in XX min.***

 if equipped

This message appears for 4 seconds when fingerprint authentication has failed more than five times whilst the engine is off. When this message is displayed, fingerprint authentication does not work even if you place your finger on the fingerprint sensor, and the engine does not start even if the Engine Start/Stop button is pressed.

Try again after the time indicated in the message has passed. Start the engine with the smart key.

If fingerprint authentication still does not work, refer to the "**Fingerprint authentication system**" section in chapter 5.

## ***Scan an authorised fingerprint to keep the vehicle running***

 if equipped

If the vehicle is remotely started and **Start Vehicle** is selected from the Settings menu in the infotainment system for Driver 1 or Driver 2, this message appears for up to 30 seconds when a door is opened after unlocking the doors with the Genesis Connected Services app.

To drive your vehicle, have an authorised fingerprint verified on the fingerprint sensor when this message appears.

## ***Vehicle is On (started by fingerprint)***

 if equipped

This message appears for up to 10 seconds if the driver's door is opened and the driver's seat belt is not fastened after turning on the engine with a fingerprint. After the message appears, a warning sounds when the door is closed.

## **Information**

---

When the engine was started with a fingerprint, if the engine is turned off, and there is no smart key or a registered fingerprint in the vehicle, it may be difficult to start the engine again.

---

## ***Check user authentication system***

 if equipped

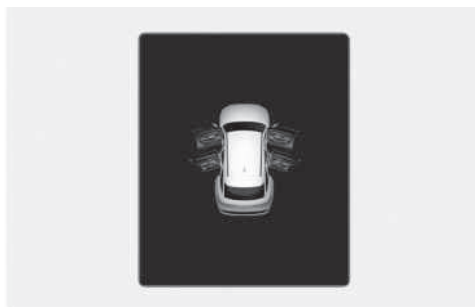
This message appears if there is a problem with the Fingerprint Authentication System. We recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer.

## ***12 V battery discharging due to additional electrical devices***

This message appears if the 12 V battery voltage is low or if a current draw is detected that could drain the vehicle battery. Do not connect any external electronic devices to the battery system or battery discharge may occur.

If this message appears on the instrument cluster and there are no other external electronic devices connected to the vehicle, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

### ***Door, Bonnet, Tailgate open indicator***



This warning appears if any door or bonnet or tailgate is left open. The warning will indicate which door is open on the display.

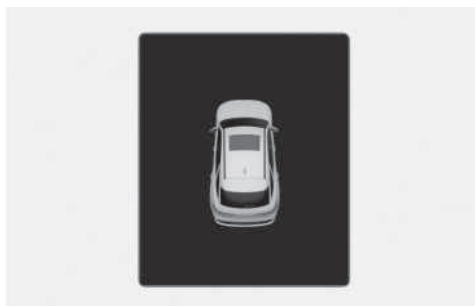


#### **CAUTION**

Before driving the vehicle, confirm that all doors, bonnet and tailgate are fully closed.

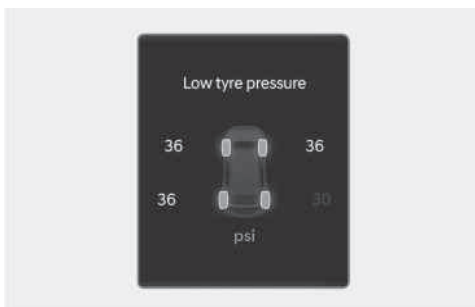
### ***Sunroof open indicator***

 if equipped



This warning appears if you turn off the engine when the sunroof is open. Close the sunroof securely before leaving your vehicle.

### ***Low tyre pressure***

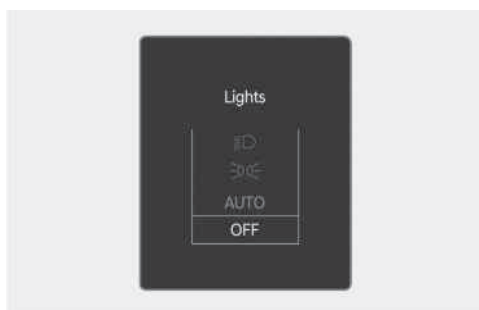




This warning message appears if the tyre pressure is low. The corresponding tyre on the vehicle illuminates.

For more information, refer to the "**Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)**" section in chapter 8.

### ***Lights***

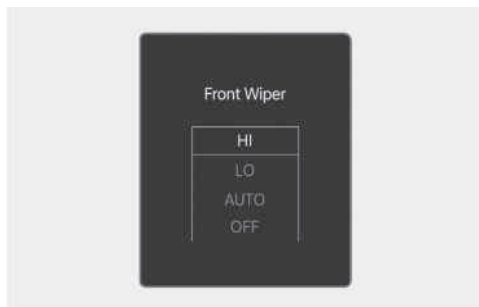


This indicator displays which exterior light is selected using the lighting control.

You can activate or deactivate Wiper/Lights display function from the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select:

- **Setup > Vehicle > Cluster > Content selection > Wiper/Lights display**

### ***Wiper***



This indicator displays which wiper speed is selected using the wiper control.

You can activate or deactivate Wiper/Lights display function from the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select:

- **Setup > Vehicle > Cluster > Content selection > Wiper/Lights display**

### ***Low washer fluid***

This message appears if the washer fluid level in the reservoir is nearly empty. Have the washer fluid reservoir refilled.

### ***Low fuel***

This message appears if the fuel tank is almost out of fuel.

When this message appears, the low fuel level warning light on the instrument cluster comes on.

Refuel as soon as possible.

### ***Low engine oil***

 if equipped

This warning message appears when the engine oil level should be checked.

Check the engine oil level as soon as possible and add engine oil as required.

Slowly pour the recommended oil into a funnel.

Refer to the "**Recommended lubricants and capacities**" section in chapter 2.

Do not overfill the engine oil. Make sure the oil level is not above F (Full) mark on the dipstick.

### **Information**

---

After adding engine oil, if you travel about 50-100 km after the engine warms up, the warning message should disappear. If the warning message remains on, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer as soon as possible.

---

### ***Engine has overheated***

This message appears when the engine coolant temperature is above about 120 °C (248 °F). The engine is overheated and may be damaged.

If your vehicle is overheated, refer to the "**If the engine overheats**" section in chapter 8.

### ***Check haptic steering wheel system***

 if equipped

This message appears if there is a problem with the haptic steering wheel system. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

### ***Check turn signal***

 if equipped

This message appears if the turn signal lamps are not operating properly.

Replace the burned out bulb with a new one with the same wattage rating.

### ***Check headlamp LED***

 if equipped

This message appears if there is a problem with the LED headlamp. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

### ***Check Active Air Flap system***

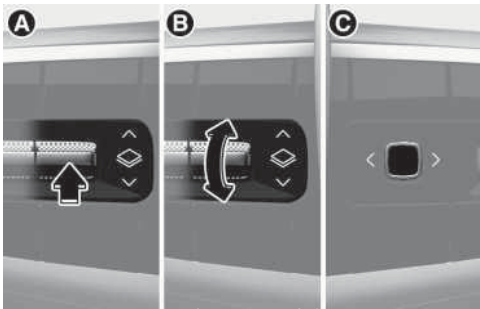
This warning message appears in the following situations:

- There is a malfunction with the actuator flap.
- There is a malfunction with the actuator air flap controller.
- The air flap does not open.

When all of the above conditions are fixed, the warning disappears.

# Instrument cluster display

## Instrument cluster display control

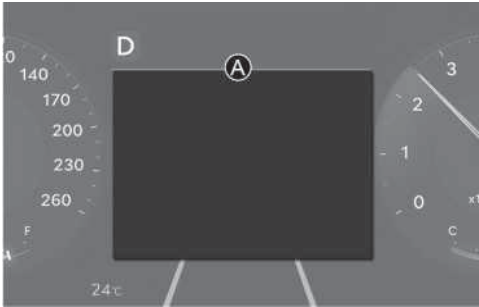


| Switch | Operation                 | Function                                                                                                                                            |
|--------|---------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| [A]    | Press                     | MODE button for changing gauge mode.                                                                                                                |
| [B]    | Press                     | UP, DOWN switch for changing View modes.                                                                                                            |
| [C]    | Press                     | SELECT/RESET switch for selecting pop up.<br>SELECT/RESET switch for entering or exiting widget navigation mode.                                    |
|        | Press and hold            | SELECT/RESET switch for selecting certain pop up.<br>SELECT/RESET switch for hiding or showing widget mode.                                         |
|        | Press 2 times             | SELECT/RESET switch for resetting the selected Normal view mode.                                                                                    |
|        | Tap up, down, left, right | When in widget mode, the switch is used to navigate the widgets.<br>When not in widget mode, the switch is used to change to previous or next song. |

## View modes

| View modes          | Explanation                                                                         |
|---------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Normal view         | Show trip computer or widget on centre without background information.              |
| Driving Assist view | Driving Assist view displays the status of the vehicle's Driver Assistance systems. |
| Map view            | Show map and navigation related information.                                        |
| Wide Map view       | Show map and navigation related information.                                        |

The information provided may differ depending on which functions are available on your vehicle.



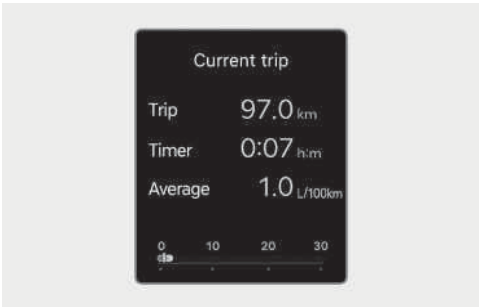
Normal view, Driving Assist view, Map view, Wide Map view, and AR view mode are displayed in the instrument cluster [A].

Normal view is also shown in the widget mode.

**Normal view**

In the Normal view, using the  (Optical mouse), you may change through items in the following order.

**Current trip**



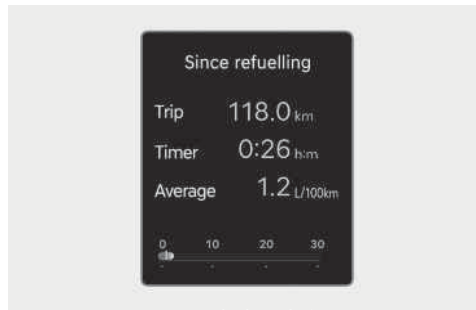
Trip distance, total driving time, average fuel economy, and instant fuel economy are displayed.

The information is combined for each ignition cycle.

Current trip is initialized when the vehicle is turned off and the driver's door is open, or when the vehicle is turned on 3 minutes after the vehicle is turned off.

To reset manually, press the  button two times on the steering wheel when "Current trip" appears.

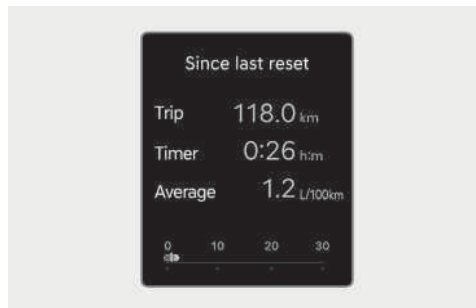
## Since refuelling



After the vehicle has been refueled, the trip distance, total driving time, average fuel economy, and instant fuel economy are displayed.

To reset manually, press the  button two times on the steering wheel when "**Since refuelling**" appears.

## Since last reset



Accumulated trip distance, driving time, average fuel economy, and instant fuel economy are displayed.

The information is accumulated starting from the last reset.

To reset manually, press the  button two times on the steering wheel when "**Since last reset**" appears.

## Drive power distribution

 if equipped



Displays information related to AWD driving force distribution.

For more information, refer to the "**Drive Mode Integrated Control System (AWD)**" section in chapter 6.

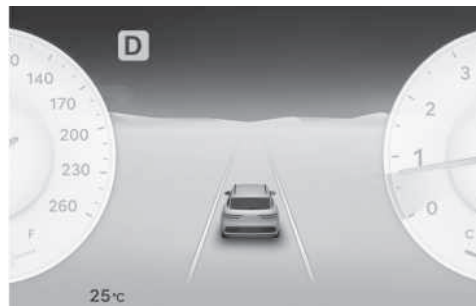
## Tyre pressure



The tyre pressure of each tyre is displayed.

For more information, refer to the "**Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)**" section in chapter 8.

## *Driving Assist view*



Displays the state of Smart Cruise Control, Lane Following Assist, Lane Keeping Assist, Highway Driving Assist, etc., when Driving Assist view is selected.

For more information, refer to each system information section in chapter 7.

## Vehicle settings (infotainment system)



Vehicle Settings in the infotainment system provide user options for the settings including door lock/unlock features, convenience features, driver assistance, etc.

### Vehicle Settings menu

- Driver Assistance
- Drive Mode
- Active Sound Design
- Head-Up Display
- Instrument cluster
- Climate
- Seat
- Lights
- Door
- Convenience



### **WARNING**

---

Do not operate the Vehicle Settings whilst driving. You may be distracted from the driving task and could cause a collision.

---

### **Information**

---

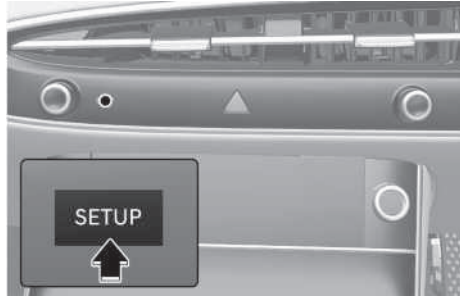
The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

---

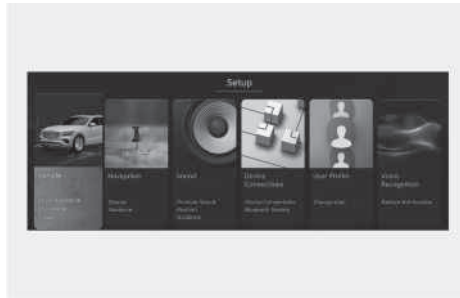


## Setting your vehicle

- 1 Press the **SETUP** button on the main keyboard.



- 2 Select **Vehicle** and change the settings for features.



## Information

---

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

---



## 5. Convenience features

### Accessing your vehicle

#### Smart key

Your Genesis vehicle uses a Smart Key, which you can use to lock or unlock the driver's and passenger's doors and the rear tailgate, and start the engine.



1. Door lock
2. Door unlock
3. Tailgate open/close
4. Remote start
5. Remote Smart Parking Assist (Forward/Rearward) (if equipped)

#### *Locking your vehicle*



To lock:

- 1 Close all doors, bonnet, and tailgate.
- 2 Have the smart key with you.
- 3 Touch the door handle touch sensor or press the Door lock button (1) on the smart key. The hazard warning lights blink.
- 4 Make sure the doors are locked by pulling the door handle.

## Information

---

- The outside rearview mirrors will fold if **On Door Unlock** is selected from the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select:
  - **Setup > Vehicle > Lights > Welcome mirror/light > On door unlock**
- The door handle touch sensor only operates when the smart key is within 1 m from the outside door handle.
- If you lock the doors using the door handle button or touch sensor, the doors will not lock under the following circumstances:
  - The smart key is in the vehicle.
  - The Engine Start/Stop button is in the ACC or ON position.
  - Any door is open.

If this occurs, a chime sounds for a few seconds. Check the vehicle before attempting to lock the vehicle again.

---

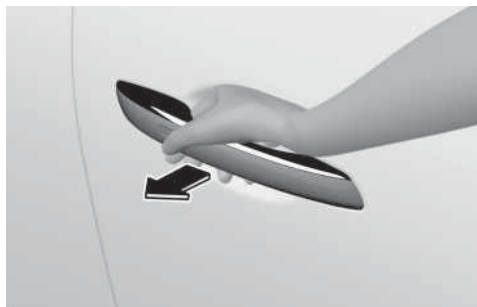
## WARNING

---

Do not leave the Smart Key in your vehicle with children that are unsupervised or unsupervised. Children could unintentionally press the Engine Start/Stop button or could operate the power windows or other vehicle controls or even cause the vehicle to move. This may result in serious injury or death.

---

## *Unlocking your vehicle*



To unlock:

- 1 Have the smart key with you.
- 2 Put your hand in the door handle or press the Door unlock button (2) on the smart key. All doors unlock and the hazard warning lights blink two times.

## Information

---

- The outside rearview mirrors will unfold if **On Door Unlock** is selected from the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select:
    - **Setup > Vehicle > Lights > Welcome mirror/light > On door unlock**
  - The door handle touch sensor only operates when the smart key is within 1 m from the outside door handle.
  - After unlocking the doors, the doors are locked automatically after 30 seconds unless a door is opened.
  - The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.
- 

### Setting the door lock/unlock prevention feature

The doors may lock or unlock if the touch sensor on the outer door handle is recognised whilst washing your car or due to heavy rain.

To prevent unintentional door lock or unlock, press the lock button on the smart key and immediately press the unlock button along with the lock button for more than 4 seconds. The hazard warning lights blink four times.

At this time, the doors will not lock or unlock even though the touch sensor is touched on the outside door handle.

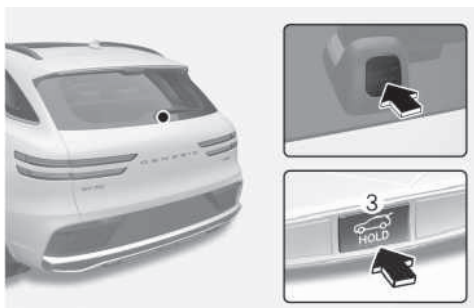
To deactivate the function, press the door lock or unlock button on the smart key.

## Information

---

- During a car wash or rain, in order to minimise unintentional operation of the touch sensor, the touch sensor may become insensitive. This is not a malfunction.
  - The doors may not lock or unlock in the following situations.
    - If the touch sensor is touched with gloves on
    - If the door is suddenly approached
- 

### *Opening the tailgate*



To open the tailgate:

- 1 Have the smart key with you.

- 2 Press the tailgate open/close button on the vehicle or press and hold the Tailgate open/close button (3) on the smart key for more than one second. The hazard warning lights blink two times and the tailgate opens.

## Information

---

The tailgate open/close button only operates when the smart key is within 1 m from the tailgate.

---

### ***Remotely starting vehicle***

To start the vehicle remotely:

- 1 Press the door lock button on the smart key within about 10 m from the vehicle.
- 2 Press and hold the Remote start button (4) on your smart key within 4 seconds from when you have pressed the door lock button. The engine starts.
- 3 To turn off the engine, press the Remote start button (4) once.

## Information

---

- The vehicle must be in P (Park) for the remote start function to start.
  - The engine turns off if you get inside the vehicle without a registered smart key.
  - The engine turns off if you do not get inside the vehicle within 10 minutes after remotely starting the vehicle.
  - The Remote start button (4) may not operate if the smart key is not within 10 m from the vehicle.
  - The vehicle does not remotely start if the bonnet or tailgate is open.
  - Do not idle the engine for a long time.
- 

### ***Remotely moving vehicle forward or rearward***

 if equipped

Some models are equipped with the Remote Smart Parking Assist feature. With the smart key, the vehicle can be moved forward or rearward remotely using the Forward or Rearward button (5) on the smart key.

For more information, refer to the "**Remote Smart Parking Assist 2 (RSPA 2)**" section in chapter 7.

### ***Starting the vehicle***

Your vehicle is equipped with a Engine Start/Stop button instead of a key cylinder. You can leave your smart key in your pocket or purse when you start your vehicle.

For more information, refer to the "**Engine start/stop button**" section in chapter 6.

## Information

---

If the smart key is not moved for some time, the detection function for smart key operation will pause. Lift the smart key to activate the detection function again.

---

## NOTICE

---

To prevent damaging the smart key:

- Keep the smart key in a cool, dry place to avoid damage or malfunction. Exposure to moisture or high temperature may cause the internal circuits of the smart key to malfunction. This may not be covered under warranty.
  - Avoid dropping or throwing the smart key.
  - Protect the smart key from extreme temperatures.
- 

### *Using mechanical key*

If the smart key does not operate normally, you can lock or unlock the driver's door by using the mechanical key.



- 1 Press the **GENESIS** text section of the Mechanical key to remove the case.
- 2 Remove the mechanical key from the case.



- 3 After use, reinstall the mechanical key in the reverse order of removal.

### *Loss of a smart key*

A maximum of two smart keys can be registered to a single vehicle. If you happen to lose your smart key, it is recommended that you should immediately take the vehicle and remaining keys to your authorised Genesis repairer or tow the vehicle, if necessary.

### *Smart key precautions*

The smart key may not work if any of the following occur:

- The smart key is close to a radio transmitter such as radio station or airport that may interfere with normal operation of the transmitter.
- The smart key is near a mobile two way radio system or a mobile phone.
- Another vehicle's smart key is being operated close to your vehicle.
- The smart key is near any normal electronic devices or credit cards.
- If your windows are tinted, especially with metallic window tint, this may cause frequency interference, reducing the smart key operating range.
- The vehicle battery is discharged.
- Connecting an external device to the power outlet and placing the smart key near the external device.
- Make sure the smart key battery is inserted in the correct polarity before use. Using an improperly positioned battery may cause smart key failure or premature discharge of the battery.

If the smart key does not work correctly, open and close the door with the mechanical key. To start the engine, press the Engine Start/Stop button directly with the smart key. If you have a problem with the smart key, it is recommended that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer.

If the smart key is in close proximity to your mobile phone, the signal could be blocked by your mobile phone's normal operational signals. This is specifically relevant when the phone is active such as making and receiving calls, text messaging, and/or sending/receiving emails. If possible, avoid keeping the smart key and your mobile phone in the same location such as pants or jacket pocket to avoid interference between the two devices.



## **WARNING**

---

People with medical devices such as implanted pacemakers or cardiac defibrillators should not carry the smart key near the heart. The smart key system may affect the operation of such implanted medical devices. Failure to do so may result in interference with the medical device, which could result in serious injury.

---

## **NOTICE**

---

- Keep the smart key away from electromagnetic materials that blocks electromagnetic waves to the key surface.
  - Always have the smart key with you when leaving the vehicle. If the smart key is left near the vehicle, the vehicle battery may be discharged.
- 

### ***Replacing the battery***

If the smart key is not working properly, replace the battery.

Battery Type: CR2032

To replace the battery:



- 1 Press the button [A] to remove the keyring fixed appliance.



- 2 Insert a flat head screwdriver into the inner groove to remove the smart key cover.
- 3 Remove the old battery.



- 4 Install a new battery and reinstall the smart key cover in the reverse order of removal. Make sure the battery position is correct. An improperly positioned battery may discharge the battery, causing smart key failure.

If you suspect your smart key might have sustained some damage, or you feel your smart key is not working correctly, it is recommended that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer.



## **WARNING**

This product contains a button battery.

If swallowed, a lithium button battery can cause severe or fatal injuries within 2 hours. Keep batteries out of reach of children.

If you think batteries may have been swallowed or placed inside any part of the body, seek immediate medical attention.

## Information

---



An inappropriately disposed battery may be harmful to the environment and human health. Always dispose used batteries in accordance with local law(s) or regulations.

---

### Immobiliser system

The immobiliser system helps protect your vehicle from theft. If an improperly coded key (or other device) is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled.

When the Engine Start/Stop button is pressed to the ON position, the immobiliser system indicator should come on briefly, then go off. If the indicator starts to blink, the system does not recognise the coding of the key.

Press the Engine Start/Stop button to the OFF position, then press the Engine Start/Stop button to the ON position again.

In some circumstances, the vehicle system may not recognise your smart key if another smart key device is nearby or a metal object such as a key chain is causing interference with the smart key.

If this occurs, your vehicle may not start. Remove any metal objects or additional keys near the smart key before attempting to start the vehicle again.

If the system repeatedly does not recognise the coding of the key, it is recommended that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer.

Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems could result that may make your vehicle inoperable.

## Information

---

To prevent theft of your vehicle, do not leave spare keys anywhere in your vehicle.

---

### NOTICE

---

Avoid exposing the key to moisture, static electricity, and rough handling. The immobiliser system may malfunction.

---

## Fingerprint authentication system

Fingerprint Authentication system provides features such as starting the engine, having access to personal information, unlocking profile, and exiting valet mode with a registered fingerprint.

A fingerprint must be registered in the User Profile Settings from the infotainment system to use the system.

The maximum of two fingerprints can be registered. Driver 1 and Driver 2 can register one fingerprint each.

### Information

---

If no fingerprint is registered in the infotainment system, Fingerprint Authentication system does not operate.

---

## Fingerprint authentication system settings

You can set or delete a fingerprint through the infotainment system.

Follow the following procedure.

### *Registering fingerprint*



[A] Fingerprint sensor

- 1 Have both of your smart keys with you in the vehicle.
- 2 Turn on the engine and select **Setup > User profile > Driver 1 > Fingerprint identification** from the infotainment system.
- 3 After entering the profile password, select **Set/Delete fingerprint > Set**.
- 4 Place your finger that you wish to register on the fingerprint sensor according to the instruction.
- 5 Following the instructions, place several parts of your fingerprint until the scanning process is complete.

When scanning is complete, the "**Saving fingerprint....**" appears and the fingerprint registering process is proceeded.

Information

- Remove all substances including protection film on the fingerprint sensor, and then register your fingerprint.
- The fingerprint registering process is cancelled when the following conditions occur.
  - The infotainment system screen is altered.
  - The Engine Start/Stop button turns on or off.
  - The gear is shifted, and the vehicle is driven.

Deleting fingerprint

- 1 Have one of your smart keys with you in the vehicle.
- 2 Turn on the engine and select **Setup > User profile > Driver 1 > Fingerprint identification** from the infotainment system.
- 3 After entering the profile password, select **Set/Delete fingerprint > Delete**.
- 4 Delete the registered fingerprint according to the message **"Delete all driver 1 fingerprints?"**.



CAUTION

Do not participate in duplicating your fingerprint with anyone.

Fingerprint authentication system operation

Using features with touch control

Convenience features such as starting the engine, accessing personal information, unlocking profile, and exiting valet mode are available with the Fingerprint Authentication system.

When the fingerprint shape appears on the infotainment system screen, you should place your finger on the fingerprint sensor in the vehicle according to the instruction message for authorization and then you can operate the linked features without entering the password.

If the Fingerprint Authentication system does not work, pull your finger away from the fingerprint authentication sensor and then try again.

Fingerprint linked features can be turned on or off from the Settings menu.

Select: **Setup > User profile > Driver 1 (or Driver 2) > Fingerprint identification**

| Fingerprint linked features | Characteristic                                                                                                    |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Starting engine             | Start engine with fingerprint but without smart key.<br><br>Use features with fingerprint but without a password. |
| Personal information access |                                                                                                                   |
| Profile unlock              |                                                                                                                   |
| Valet mode exit             |                                                                                                                   |

Information

If the same fingerprint is registered for Driver 1 and Driver 2, the authentication result is linked to Driver 1, when authentication is successful.

Starting the engine

Place your finger on the fingerprint sensor (1) to verify your fingerprint. After it is successfully verified, start the engine by pressing the Engine Start/Stop button (2) within 30 seconds.



| Fingerprint authentication status     | Light colour | Message on instrument cluster                                  |
|---------------------------------------|--------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| Standby                               | White        | -                                                              |
| Succeed                               | Blue         | "Authenticated. The vehicle can now be started"                |
| Fail                                  | Yellow       | -                                                              |
| Restricted due to consecutive failure | Red          | "Fingerprint authorization is locked out. Try again in XX min" |

Information

- Fingerprint authorization is restricted for 1 minute, 3 minutes, or 5 minutes when failed after 5 attempts.
- For more information on how to start your vehicle with the Engine Start/Stop button, refer to the "**Engine start/stop button**" section in chapter 6.
- If you are in the vehicle for an extended period without starting the engine, the fingerprint sensor may turn off. If this occurs, press the brake pedal and verify your fingerprint again when the fingerprint sensor illuminates.

Limitations of the system

- Fingerprint Authentication system may not work when:
  - Fingerprint authentication is performed with an unregistered fingerprint.
  - The fingerprint is not placed on the centre of the fingerprint sensor.
  - The fingerprint sensor or fingerprint is wet or dirty.

- The film on the sensor is not removed.
- The registered fingerprint is wounded or swollen.
- The hand is overly dry.
- The sensor is touched briefly.
- If fingerprint authentication fails repeatedly, fingerprint recognition is temporarily restricted. You should try it later or try other methods such as inputting your password.
- All registered fingerprints may be deleted during repair due to a malfunction of the fingerprint authentication system or related parts. Have your smart key when you visit an authorised Genesis repairer.
- You cannot use the fingerprint sensor when the vehicle battery is discharged.
- Gently place your finger on the fingerprint sensor. Fingerprint authentication attempts with excessive force may fail.



## **WARNING**

---

Do not register children's fingerprints in the vehicle.

If you register children's fingerprints and leave them in the vehicle, unexpected accidents may occur.

---

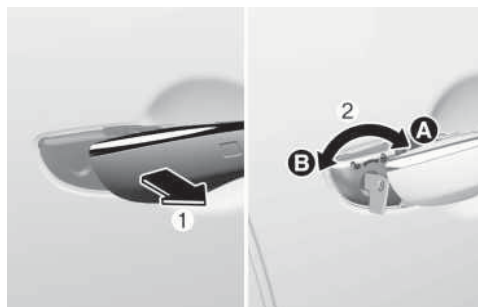
### **When purchasing a used vehicle**

If you purchase a used vehicle, you should confirm and delete all of the registered fingerprints in Driver 1 and Driver 2 profile.

## Door locks

### Operating door locks from outside the vehicle

#### *Using mechanical key*



[A] Lock

[B] Unlock

- 1 Pull the door handle (1).
- 2 Insert the mechanical key into the key cylinder and rotate (2) anti-clockwise to lock [A] the vehicle and clockwise to unlock [B] the vehicle.

Once the doors are unlocked, they may be opened by pulling the door handle.

#### **NOTICE**

---

Do not apply excessive force to the door and door handle.

---

#### *Using smart key*

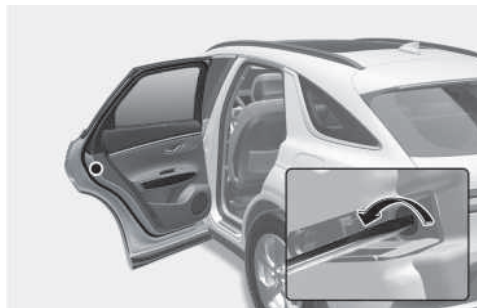
For more information, refer to the "**Smart key**" in the previous pages.

#### **Information**

---

- In cold and wet climates, door lock and door mechanisms may not work properly due to freezing conditions.
  - If the door is locked/unlocked multiple times in rapid succession with either the vehicle key or door lock switch, the system may stop operating temporarily in order to protect the circuit and prevent damage to system components.
-

## ***In case of an emergency***



Doors without an outside key hole can be locked as follows:

- 1 Open the door.
- 2 Insert a small flat blade tool (like a screwdriver or similar) into the emergency door lock hole and turn it to the lock position.
- 3 Close the door securely.

### **Information**

---

If the electrical power door lock switch does not operate (ex. dead car battery) and the tailgate is closed, you will not be able to open the tailgate until power is restored.

---

## **Operating door locks from inside the vehicle**

### ***With the door inside handle***



#### **Front door**

If the inner door handle is pulled when the door is locked, the door is unlocked and opened.

#### **Rear door**

If the inner door handle is pulled once when the door is locked, the door is unlocked. If the inner door handle is pulled once more, the door is opened.



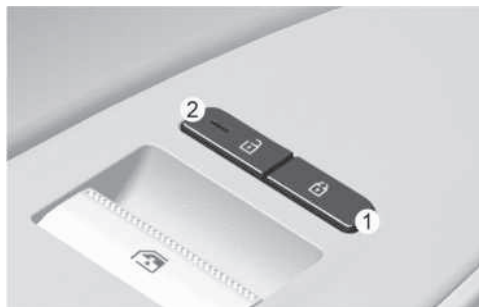
## *With the central door lock/unlock switch*

### Driver and passenger door

Driver's door



Front passenger's door



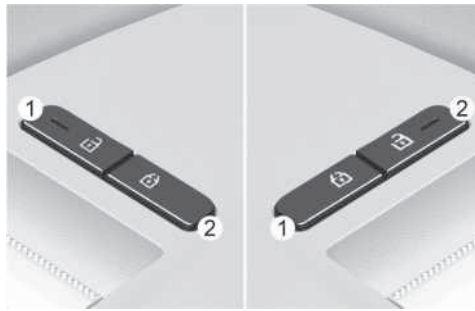
When pressing the  portion (1) on the switch, all vehicle doors are locked.

- If any door was open, the doors are not locked even though the lock switch (1) of the door is pressed.
- If the smart key is in the vehicle and any door was open, the doors are not locked even though the lock switch (1) of the door is pressed.

When pressing the  portion (2) on the switch, all vehicle doors are unlocked.

When all vehicle doors are locked, the indicator lights on the driver's door and passenger's door turn off. If any door is unlocked, the indicator turns on.

## Rear door



When the lock switch (1) is pressed, all the vehicle doors will lock.

When the unlock switch (2) is pressed (door indicator light ON), all the vehicle doors will unlock.

### Information

---

If all doors are locked with the rear door lock button, and the electronic child safety lock button (if equipped) in the driver's seat is turned ON (indicator light ON), the rear doors cannot be opened. If you want to open the rear doors:

- Unlock the door with the smart key from outside.
- Press the electronic child safety lock button on the driver's door to turn it off (indicator light OFF), then unlock the doors with the driver's or passenger's central door lock switch. (Electronic child lock OFF → Door unlocked)
- Press the electronic child safety lock button on the driver's door to turn it off (indicator light OFF), then pull the rear inner door handle twice.



### WARNING

---

- Always close and lock the doors whilst the vehicle is moving. If the doors are unlocked, the risk of being thrown from the vehicle in a collision increases.
- Do not pull the inner door handle of the driver's or passenger's door whilst the vehicle is moving.



### WARNING

---

Do not leave the elderly, children, or animals unsupervised in your vehicle. An enclosed vehicle can become extremely hot and the elderly, unsupervised children or animals who cannot escape the vehicle may be seriously injured or killed.



### WARNING

---

Always park your vehicle properly.

Press the brake, shift the gear to the P (Park), apply the parking brake, press the Engine Start/Stop button to the OFF position, close all windows, lock all doors, and always take the key with you.



## WARNING

---

Be careful when opening doors and watch for vehicles, motorcycles, bicycles, or pedestrians approaching the vehicle to prevent serious injury or death.

---

### **Automatic door lock and unlock features**

Your vehicle is equipped with features that will automatically lock or unlock your vehicle based on settings you select in the infotainment system.

#### ***Impact sensing door unlock system***

All doors are automatically unlocked when an impact causes the airbags to deploy in the POWER ON or DRIVE READY position.

#### ***Auto Lock Enable on speed***

When this feature is set in the infotainment system, all the doors will be locked automatically when the vehicle exceeds 15 km/h.

#### ***Auto Lock Enable on shift***

When this feature is set in the infotainment system, all the doors will be locked automatically when the vehicle is shifted out of P (Park) whilst the engine is running.

#### ***Auto Unlock on shift to P***

When this feature is set in the infotainment system, all the doors will be unlocked automatically when the vehicle is shifted back into P (Park) whilst the engine is running.

#### ***Auto Unlock upon vehicle off***

When this feature is set in the infotainment system, all the doors will be unlocked automatically when the vehicle is turned off.

### **Information**

---

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

---

#### ***Additional unlock safety feature airbag deployment***

As an additional safety feature, all doors will be automatically unlocked when an impact causes the airbags to deploy.

## Child-protector rear door locks

 if equipped



The child safety lock is provided to help prevent children seated in the rear from accidentally opening the rear doors. The rear door safety locks must be used whenever children are in the vehicle.

The child safety lock is located on the edge of each rear door. When the child safety lock is in the lock position, the rear door does not open if the inner door handle is pulled.

To lock the child safety lock, insert a small flat blade tool (e.g. screwdriver or similar) into the slot and turn it to the lock position as shown.

To allow a rear door to be opened from inside the vehicle, unlock the child safety lock.

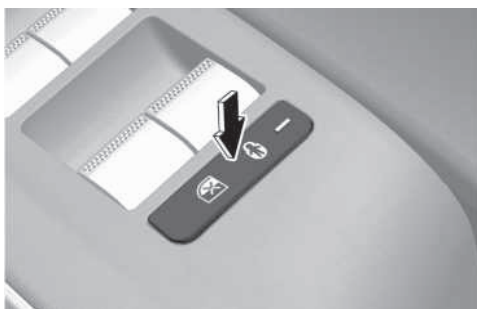


### WARNING

Never allow children to open the rear doors whilst the vehicle is moving. They may fall out of the vehicle. Be sure to use the rear door safety locks whenever children are in the vehicle.

## Electronic child safety lock

 if equipped



When the electronic child safety lock button is pressed and the indicator light on the button illuminates, the rear doors cannot be opened from inside the vehicle.

- The rear door window cannot be opened or closed whilst the electronic child safety lock button is in the LOCK position (indicator light ON).

For more information, refer to the "**Windows**" section in this chapter.

- Electronic child safety lock does not automatically turn on unless the driver presses the electronic child safety lock button.
- If 3 minutes passes after the Engine Start/Stop button is pressed to the OFF or ACC position, the indicator on the button turns off, and the driver cannot turn off electronic child safety lock by pressing the button. To turn off the function, press the Engine Start/Stop button to the ON position, and then press the electronic child safety lock button.
- If the power is supplied again after removing the battery or battery is discharged whilst the electronic child safety lock button is in the LOCK position, press the button once more to match the state of the indicator on the electronic child safety lock button and the actual state of the electronic child safety lock function.
- If the airbag is activated whilst the electronic child safety lock button is in the LOCK position (indicator light ON), the rear doors will unlock automatically.
- Vehicles equipped with the electronic child safety lock feature are not provided with a manual child safety lock.



## WARNING

---

Never allow children to open the rear doors whilst the vehicle is moving. They may fall out of the vehicle. Be sure to use the electronic child safety lock whenever children are in the vehicle.

---

## NOTICE

---

### Child safety lock error

When electronic child safety lock does not work even though the button is pressed, the message "**Child safety lock error**" may be displayed and an alarm sounds. If this occurs, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

---

### *Safe Exit Assist (with electronic child safety lock)*



Safe Exit Assist helps prevent the rear occupant from opening the rear door. When an approaching vehicle from the rear area is detected after the vehicle stops, the rear doors will not unlock even when the driver tries to unlock the rear doors using the electronic child safety lock button.

For more information, refer to the "**Safe Exit Assist (SEA)**" section in chapter 7.

## Theft alarm system

This system helps protect your vehicle and valuables. The horn sounds and the hazard warning lights blink continuously if any of the following occur:

- A door is opened without using the smart key.
- The tailgate is opened without using the smart key.
- The bonnet is opened.

The alarm continues for 30 seconds, then the system resets. To turn off the alarm, unlock the doors with the smart key.

The Theft Alarm System automatically sets 30 seconds after you lock the doors and the tailgate. For the system to activate, you must lock the doors and the tailgate from outside the vehicle with the smart key or by touching the touch sensor on the outside of the door handle with the smart key in your possession.

The hazard warning lights blink and the chime sounds once to indicate the system is armed.

Once the security system is set, opening any door, tailgate, or bonnet without using the smart key causes the alarm to activate.

The Theft Alarm System is not set if the bonnet, tailgate, or a door is not fully closed. If the system is not set, check the bonnet, tailgate, and doors are fully closed.

Do not attempt to modify this system or add other devices to it.

### Information

---

- Do not lock the doors until all passengers have left the vehicle. If a door is opened after the system is armed, the alarm is activated.
  - If the vehicle is not disarmed with the smart key, open the doors by using the mechanical key and start the engine by directly pressing the Engine Start/Stop button with the smart key.
  - If the system is disarmed by unlocking the vehicle, but a door or tailgate is not opened within 30 seconds, the doors are relocked and the system is rearmed automatically.
-



Vehicles equipped with a theft alarm system have a label attached to the vehicle with the following words:

- WARNING
  - SECURITY SYSTEM
-

## Rear Occupant Alert (ROA)

 if equipped

Rear Occupant Alert is provided to help prevent the driver from leaving the vehicle with the rear passenger left in the vehicle.

### System setting

To use Rear Occupant Alert, enable it from the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select:

- **Setup > Vehicle > Convenience > Rear Occupant Alert**

### Information

---

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

---

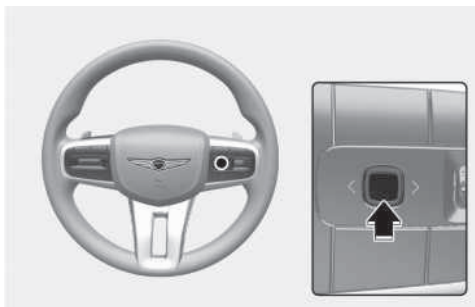
### System operation

When you turn off the engine and open the driver's door after opening and closing the rear door, the "**Check rear seat for passengers and belongings**" warning message appears on the instrument cluster display.

### Information

---

To turn the warning message off, press the **OK** button.



### WARNING

---

Always check the rear seats before you leave the vehicle.

The Rear Occupant Alert system does not actually detect the presence of objects or occupants in the rear seat but just informs you to check the rear seat by using the record of the rear door opening and closing.

---



## Information

---

The record of the rear door opening and closing resets only when the driver turns the vehicle off and locks the vehicle door. Even if the rear door has not been reopened, an alert may occur if the door record is not reset. For example, if the driver opens the door and exits the vehicle again without locking the door after the Rear Occupant Alert operates, the alert may occur again.

---

## Advanced Rear Occupant Alert (ROA)

 if equipped

Advanced Rear Occupant Alert is provided to help prevent the driver from leaving the vehicle with the rear passenger left in the vehicle.

The system is designed to help detect an infant and child's presence.

### System setting

To use Rear Occupant Alert, enable it from the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select:

- **Setup > Vehicle > Convenience > Rear occupant alert**

### Information

---

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

---

### System operation

- First alert

When you turn off the engine and open the driver's door after opening and closing the rear door, the "**Check rear seats for passengers or belongings**" warning message appears on the instrument cluster.

- Second alert

After the first alert, the second alert operates when it detects an infant or child's presence after the driver's door is closed and all the doors are locked. The horn sounds for about 25 seconds. If the system continues to detect a movement, the alert operates up to 8 times.

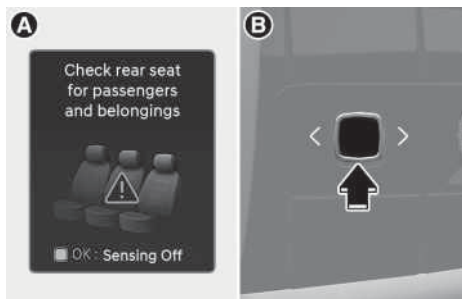
Unlock the doors with the smart key to stop the alert.

- The system detects movement in the vehicle for 10 minutes after the door is locked.

## Information

---

- The second alert is available for vehicles equipped with the ROA sensor.
- The second alert is activated only after the prior activation of the first alert.
- If you do not want to use Rear Occupant Alert, press the **OK** button on the steering wheel when the first alert is displayed on the instrument cluster. Doing so deactivates the second alert one time.



[A] Instrument cluster

[B] Steering wheel

- If the vehicle is started remotely (if equipped with Remote Start), inside movement detection stops.

---

## Rear Occupant Alert precautions

- Make sure that all the windows are closed. If the window is open, the alert may operate by the sensor detecting an unintended movement (for example, wind or bugs).
- The system is intended to detect the movement of infants sitting in the rear seats. But a movement detected in the driver or passenger seats may cause a false alert.
- If the rear door is opened, and an infant or child is in the rear seat, then the alert may operate after the vehicle is locked.
- An alert can occur if there is an impactor strong movement on the vehicle.
- If boxes or objects are stacked in the vehicle, the system may not detect passengers.
- The alert may operate if the vehicle is pushed, shaken, being washed, or in an environment with noise/vibration after the vehicle is locked.
- The alert may operate when there are metallic or liquid objects in the vehicle.

## WARNING

---



Even if your vehicle is equipped with Rear Occupant Alert, always check the rear seats before you leave the vehicle.

Rear Occupant Alert may not operate when:

- Movement does not continue for a certain period of time.
- A child is not seated in a child restraint system.
- The detection may be weak if the signal is obstructed by the vehicle seat or Child Restraining System (for example, child is restrained in the forward facing position).
- The rear passenger is a child over 6 years.
- The rear passenger is covered with a fabric containing metallic substance such as a blanket.
- An object in the vehicle blocks the sensor.
- The sensor is contaminated by foreign material.
- An animal at the rear seat is not large enough to be detected by the sensor or there is hardly any movement.
- Attaching objects or modifying the interior ceiling, or the interior ceiling is deformed or damaged.
- There are electronic interference around the vehicle.
- Other environmental reasons that may affect the system.

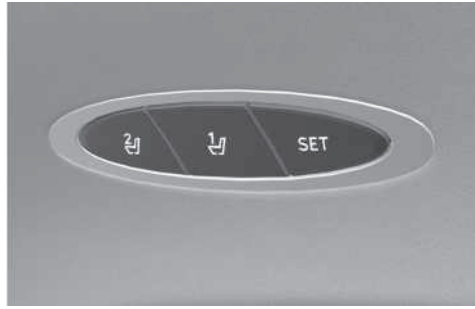
---

### Declaration of Conformity

The radio frequency components (ROA Radar Sensor) complies:



## Integrated memory system



The Integrated Memory System for the driver's seat and the front passenger's seat allows the driver and front passenger to store and recall the following memory settings with a simple button operation.

- Driver's or front passenger's seat position
- Steering wheel position (power adjustment)
- Outside rearview mirrors position
- Head-Up Display (HUD) position (if equipped)



### WARNING

Never attempt to operate the Integrated Memory System whilst the vehicle is moving to prevent serious injury or death.

### Information

- If the battery is disconnected, the memory settings are erased.
- If Integrated Memory System does not operate normally, we recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer.

### Storing memory positions

- 1 Make sure the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position and the gear is in P (Park).
- 2 Adjust the driver's seat or front passenger's seat, side view mirror, steering wheel, and head-up display to the desired position.
- 3 Press the **SET** button. The system beeps once. And then press one of the memory buttons (1 or 2) within 4 seconds when "**Press button to save settings**" appears on the cluster display.
  - Or just press and hold one of the memory buttons (1 or 2) without using the **SET** button.
- 4 "**Driver 1 (or 2) settings saved**" appears on the infotainment system.

The system beeps twice when successfully stored and "**Settings 1 (or 2) saved**" appears on the cluster display.

## Recalling memory positions

- 1 Make sure the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position and the gear is in P (Park).
- 2 Press the desired memory button (1 or 2). The system beeps once, and then the seat position, outside rearview mirrors position, steering wheel position, and head-up display position are automatically adjusted to the stored positions.
- 3 **"Driver 1 (or 2) settings applied"** appears on the cluster display.

## Information

---

- If you press the **SET** button or the corresponding IMS memory (1 or 2) for which the settings are being recalled, the IMS temporarily deactivates.  
If you press the **SET** button or the number 1 button with the number 1 setting in operation, the IMS temporarily deactivates.  
If you press the number 2 button, the IMS memory settings activate according to number 2.
  - If you adjust the driver seat whilst IMS is adjusting the seat and the mirrors, the system stops the adjustments.
- 

## Resetting the system

Use the following procedures to reset integrated memory system, when it does not operate properly.

### *Resetting the Integrated Memory System*

- 1 Make sure that the gear is in P (Park) and the engine is ON, and then open the driver's door.
- 2 Adjust the driver's seat and seatback to the foremost position.
- 3 Press and hold both the number **1** button and the driver's seat movement switch for about two seconds.
- 4 Release the number **1** button and the driver's seat switch when a beep sounds.

### *Whilst resetting the Integrated Memory System*

A notification sound is heard and the seat is adjusted to the most rearward position. Then the seat and seatback move to the default centre position.

The resetting procedure and the notification sound may stop if:

- The memory button is pressed.
- The seat control switch is operated.
- The gear is shifted out of P (Park).
- The driving speed exceeds 5 km/h.
- The driver's door is closed.

## NOTICE

---

- If the seat movement or notification sound stops before the process is complete, restart the resetting procedure.
  - Before resetting the IMS, make sure there are no objects on or around the driver's seat.
-

## Seat easy access

The system moves the driver's seat and the front passenger's seat automatically as follows:

- Exiting the vehicle:

The driver's seat and steering wheel move as follows when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the OFF position with the gear in P (Park), and the driver's door open.

- Driver seat: Moves rearward depending on the distance selected from the Settings menu in the infotainment system.
- Steering wheel: Moves upward

## Information

---

- On a regular basis, the steering wheel moves forward to adjust its location by itself.
  - The driver's seat or the front passenger's seat may not move rearward if there is not enough space between the driver's seat or the front passenger's seat and the second row seats.
- 

- Entering the vehicle:

The driver's seat and steering wheel move back to its original position when the Engine Start/Stop button is pressed to the ACC, ON or START position or whilst carrying the smart key, the driver's door is closed with the Engine Start/Stop button in the OFF position.

- The passenger seat moves forward or rearward when the passenger side door is closed or opened. (if equipped)
- You can set the Seat Easy Access function from the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select:

- Driver seat

**Setup > Vehicle > Seat > Seating easy access > Driver seat easy access > Normal/Extended/Off**

- Steering wheel

**Setup > Vehicle > Seat > Seating easy access > Steering easy access**

- Passenger seat (if equipped)

**Setup > Vehicle > Seat > Seating easy access > Front passenger seat**

## Information

---

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

---

## Steering wheel

### Motor Driven Power Steering (MDPS)

The system assists you with steering the vehicle. If the vehicle is turned off or if the power steering system becomes inoperative, you can still steer the vehicle, but it requires increased steering effort.

If you notice any change in the effort required to steer during normal vehicle operation, we recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer.

#### NOTICE

---

- If Motor Driven Power Steering (⚠) warning light and the message "**Check motor driven power steering**" appears on the instrument cluster, you can continue to steer the vehicle, but it requires increased effort. We recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer and have the system inspected as soon as possible.
  - If you continue to operate the steering wheel all the way to the left or right whilst the vehicle is stopped, the steering wheel operation becomes stiff. This is only to prevent overload and is not a malfunction. It returns to its initial state over time.
  - If you jump start due to a discharged battery, the steering wheel may not operate smoothly. This is a temporary phenomenon caused by low battery voltage. The steering wheel will operate normally once the battery is charged. Move the steering wheel to check that there is no problem before driving the vehicle.
  - When the battery voltage is low, you might have to use more steering effort. However, it is a temporary condition that will return to normal condition after charging the battery.
- 

#### Information

---

During normal vehicle operation:

- The steering effort may be high immediately after pressing the Engine Start/Stop button to the ON position.  
This happens as the system performs the MDPS system diagnostics. When the diagnostics are completed, the steering wheel effort returns to its normal condition.
  - When the battery voltage is low, you may have to use more effort to steer. This is a temporary condition and returns to normal condition after charging the battery.
  - A click noise may be heard from the MDPS relay after the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON or OFF position.
  - Motor noise may be heard when the vehicle is at a stop or at low speeds.
  - When you operate the steering wheel in low temperatures, abnormal noise may occur. When the temperature rises, the noise disappears.
  - When an error is detected from MDPS, the steering effort assist function is not activated. Instrument cluster warning lights may illuminate or the steering effort may be high. If these symptoms occur, drive the vehicle to a safe location as soon as possible. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer as soon as possible.
-



## Tilt / Telescopic steering

Adjust the steering wheel toward your chest, not toward your face. Make sure you can see the instrument cluster warning lights and gauges. After adjusting, push the steering wheel up and down to be in the locked position.



### WARNING

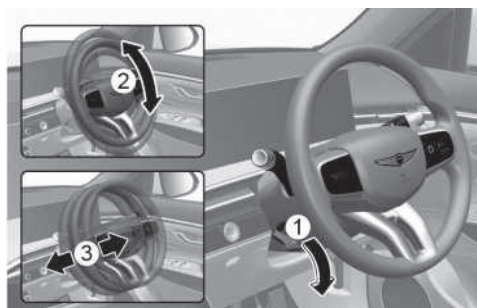
---

Never adjust the steering wheel whilst driving. This may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in a collision.

---

## Manual adjustment

 if equipped



To adjust:

- 1 Pull down the lock-release lever (1).
- 2 Adjust the steering wheel to the desired angle (2) and distance forward/back (3).
- 3 Pull the lock-release lever up to lock the steering wheel in place.

## Information

---

Sometimes the lock-release lever may not engage completely. Pull down on the lock-release lever, readjust the steering wheel again, and then pull back up on the lock-release lever to lock the steering wheel in place.

---

## Power adjustment

 if equipped



To adjust:

- Push the switch (1) up and down to adjust the angle (2).
- Push the switch forward or rearward to adjust the height (3).

### NOTICE

Do not adjust the steering wheel longer than necessary when the engine is turned off. This may result in unnecessary battery drain.

### Resetting the steering wheel power adjustment

If adjustment is no longer possible within the operable range whilst adjusting the steering wheel position (angle or height), reset as follows:

- 1 From the position the steering wheel has stopped, push the control switch (1) for 10 seconds in the direction you were adjusting the steering wheel. The steering wheel moves in the direction the control switch is pushed.
- 2 Continue pushing the switch (1) for at least 2 seconds after the steering wheel has stopped. Resetting is completed after the operational range is recognised.

If the adjustment is still not possible after resetting the steering wheel power adjustment, we recommend that the system be inspected by authorised Genesis repairer.

### Horn



To sound the horn, press the area indicated by the horn symbol on your steering wheel (see illustration). The horn operates only when this area is pressed.

## NOTICE

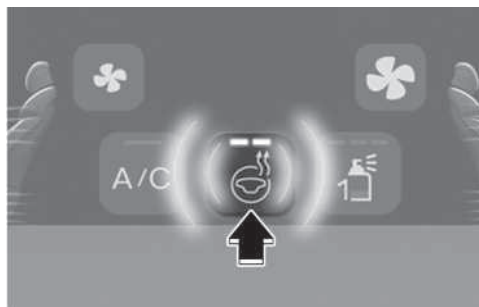
---

Do not strike the horn severely or hit it with your fist. Do not press on the horn with a sharp-pointed object.

---

## Heated steering wheel

 if equipped



Whilst the engine is running, touch the heated steering wheel icon to warm the steering wheel.

### ***Manually adjusting temperature***

Each time you press the heated steering icon, the temperature changes as follows:

- Off > High > Low
- Pressing the icon when temperature is low, the heated steering wheel turns off.

### ***Automatically adjusting temperature***

- When high is manually selected, the heated steering wheel automatically changes to the low position after 30 minutes. You can turn off the heated steering wheel by pressing the icon to the OFF position.
- When low is manually selected, the heated steering wheel is not controlled manually.

### ***Automatic Controls Linked to Climate Control Settings***

The heated steering wheel automatically controls the steering wheel temperature depending on the ambient temperature when the engine is running.

- To use this feature, enable it from the Settings menu in the infotainment system.  
Select: **Setup > Vehicle > Seat > Heating/Ventilation > Automatic controls linked to climate control settings > Steering wheel heating**
- If you press the heated steering wheel icon when the feature is set, you must control the heated steering wheel manually.
- The heated steering wheel defaults to the OFF position whenever the Engine Start/Stop button is pressed to the ON position. However, if the Automatic Controls Linked to Climate Control Settings feature is ON, the heated steering wheel turns on and off depending on the outside temperature.

## Information

---

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

---

## NOTICE

---

- Do not install any cover or accessories on the steering wheel to prevent damage to the heated steering wheel system.
  - Do not strike the steering wheel grip surface with sharp sharp-pointed objects. This may damage the heating element in the steering wheel.
  - Do not clean the steering wheel surface using the following products.
    - Organic solvents such as thinner, alcohol, and petrol
    - Chemical products such as leather cleaner, coating agent, and wax
- 

### Steering wheel grip sensor

Whilst driving the vehicle with the Driver Assistance systems on, the sensor detects whether the driver is holding the steering wheel and displays the Hands-off warning when the driver is not holding the steering wheel. Refer to "Hands-off warning" from "**Lane Keeping Assist (LKA)**", "**Lane Following Assist (LFA)**", and "**Highway Driving Assist (HDA)**" sections in chapter 7 for details.

In the following situations, the sensor may fail to detect the driver's hands although the driver is holding the steering wheel.

- When the driver is wearing gloves.
- When accessories such as a cover is attached on the steering wheel.
- When electronic device is touching the steering wheel.
- When the steering wheel is wet.



### CAUTION

---

The steering wheel sensor may not work properly if the following precautions are not followed.

- Do not modify the steering wheel cover.
  - Do not attach accessories on the rim of the steering wheel.
  - Do not touch the steering wheel with electronic devices. (e.g. laptop, tablet PC, etc.)
  - Do not touch the steering wheel with metallic or conductive objects. (e.g. tumbler, soda can, etc.)
  - Do not excessively wet the steering wheel. (e.g. spilled water, wet tissue, vapour from steam wash)
- 

### Haptic warning / Steering Wheel Vibration Warning

If equipped with haptic steering wheel, the Driver Assistance system vibrates the steering wheel to warn the driver when the system indicates hazardous situations.

#### *Setting haptic warning*

Whilst the engine is running, select:

**Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Warning methods> Haptic warning** in the infotainment system.

See description of each function from "**Driver assistance systems**" in chapter 7 for details.

## Mirrors

### Inside rear-view mirror

Before driving your vehicle, check to see that your inside rear-view mirror is properly positioned. Adjust the rear-view mirror so that the view through the rear window is properly centred.



#### WARNING

Make sure your line of sight is not obstructed. Do not place objects on the rear seat or in the luggage compartment that may interfere with your vision through the rear window.



#### WARNING

To prevent serious injury during a collision or deployment of the airbag, do not modify the rear-view mirror and do not install a wide mirror.



#### WARNING

Never adjust the mirror whilst driving. This may cause loss of vehicle control and result in a collision.

### NOTICE

When cleaning the mirror, use a paper towel or similar material dampened with glass cleaner. Do not spray glass cleaner directly on the mirror as this may cause the liquid cleaner to enter the mirror housing.

### *Electric Chromic Mirror (ECM)*



If equipped



[A] Indicator

When the engine is running, the glare from vehicle headlamps behind you is automatically controlled by the sensor mounted in the rear-view mirror.

Whenever the gear is shifted to R (Reverse), the mirror automatically goes to the brightest setting in order to improve the driver's view behind the vehicle.

## Digital centre mirror (DCM)

 if equipped

The digital centre mirror is a system that uses the camera on the rear of the vehicle and displays the rear image on the screen of the digital centre mirror. The digital centre mirror allows the driver to see the rear view despite obstructions, such as the headrest or luggage, ensuring rear visibility.

### WARNING

Be sure to read the precautions and instructions before using the digital centre mirror. Failure to follow the precautions and instructions for proper use of digital centre mirror may result in serious injury:

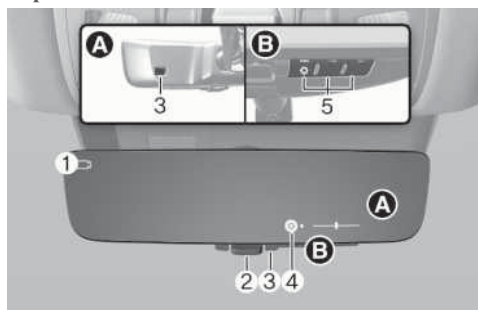
- The driver is responsible for driving safely when using the digital centre mirror. It is not a substitute for safe driving practices. Always check the blind spot of the digital centre mirror before driving.
- Never operate the digital centre mirror whilst driving. This may cause loss of vehicle control and result in a collision.
- Never disassemble or modify the digital centre mirror's camera unit or wirings.

If you notice smoke or any smell coming from the digital centre mirror, stop using the system immediately. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

### CAUTION

- The image areas displayed in the conventional rear-view mirror mode and the digital centre mirror mode are different. Check the image areas displayed in different modes before driving the vehicle.
- Switch to the conventional rear-view mirror mode when the digital centre mirror is not functioning normally. A light beam or flash may appear if strong light sources such as direct sunlight or vehicle headlamps obstruct the rear-view camera.
- Always keep the rear view camera lens clean. If the lens is blocked or covered, the digital centre mirror may not operate normally. Clean with a damp soft cloth.

## Digital centre mirror components

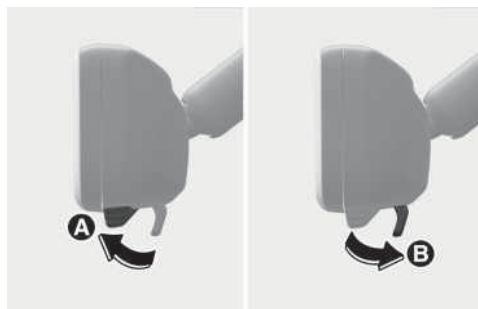


1. Camera indicator

2. Mode selection lever (conventional rear-view mirror/digital centre mirror)
3. Sensor
4. Icon display area
5. Menu/Adjustment button

### Changing modes

Pull the lever towards you to use the digital centre mirror mode or push the lever towards the front windscreen to use the conventional rear-view mirror mode.



[A] Digital centre mirror mode

[B] Conventional rear-view mirror mode

### Information

---

- If the digital centre mirror mode is selected, the rear view is shown on the inside rear-view mirror and the camera (📷) indicator appears on the top left side of the mirror.
  - The digital centre mirror turns on when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON or START position and turns off when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ACC or OFF position.
  - The conventional rear-view mirror can be used when the digital centre mirror mode is turned off.
  - Use the conventional rear-view mirror mode when the display of the digital centre mirror mode seems blurred due to strong light sources.
  - If the display is difficult to see due to reflected light, close the sunshade of the sunroof (if equipped).
  - When driving at night, the colour of the objects displayed on the digital centre mirror may differ from the actual colour.
  - Depending on your physical condition or age, it may take longer than usual to focus on the displayed image. If this occurs, use the conventional rear-view mirror mode.
- 

### Adjusting the mirror height

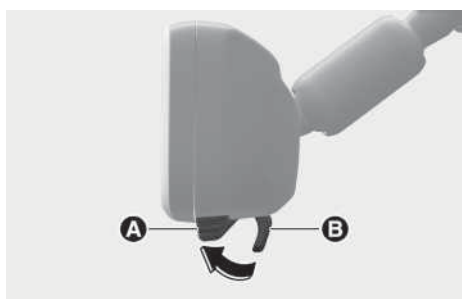
Select the conventional rear-view mirror mode, adjust the height of the rear-view mirror so that the view through the rear window is properly centred.





### Setting the digital centre mirror

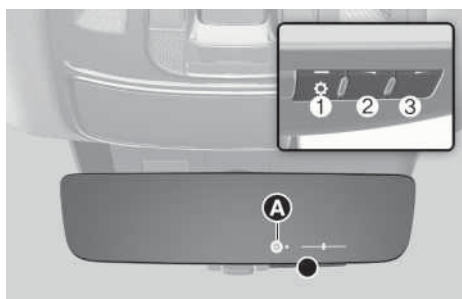
- 1 Press the Engine Start/Stop button to the ON or START position and pull the lever towards you to use the digital centre mirror mode [A].



[A] Digital centre mirror mode

[B] Conventional rear-view mirror mode

- 2 Press the menu button (1), and then press the adjustment button (2 or 3) to adjust the brightness and vertical angle of the display.



- Each time the menu button (1) is pressed the brightness (⊕) icon or angle (⬆) icon appears in the icon display area [A].
- The brightness and vertical angle can be adjusted by using the adjustment button (2 or 3) when the icon is displayed.

- If a button is not operated for about 5 seconds or more, the icon disappears, and the display cannot be adjusted.



## CAUTION

---

- Make sure the tailgate is closed before driving. When the tailgate is open, the rear image may not be displayed normally on the digital centre mirror.
  - Do not let the passengers stare at the displayed image when the vehicle is being driven. It may cause motion sickness.
  - Adjust the digital centre mirror to an appropriate brightness. If your eyes become tired, change the to conventional rear-view mirror mode.
  - Do not block or cover the light sensors. If the light sensors are blocked or covered, the brightness may not be displayed normally.
- 

### Precautions whilst using the digital centre mirror

- Do not clean the mirror with cleaning agents containing thinners, benzene, alcohol, or other petroleum based cleaning products.
- Do not contaminate the rear view camera lens with organic solvent, vehicle wax, window cleaner, or glass coating when washing the vehicle. If contaminated, wipe it off as soon as possible.
- Clean the camera lens with a damp soft cloth. Scratching or damaging the lens surface may reduce digital centre mirror performance.
- Never disassemble or modify the digital centre mirror's camera unit or wirings, and never apply any impact on it.
- To prevent the battery from discharging, do not use the digital centre mirror when the engine is not running.
- Do not attach an antenna of a wireless device near the digital centre mirror. Electronic waves from a wireless device may cause disturbed images.
- Never rotate the body of digital centre mirror more than 90 degrees or excessively press the adjustment buttons.

## CAUTION

---

If you suspect a malfunction whilst using the digital centre mirror, push the mode selection lever towards the front windscreen to switch to the conventional rear-view mirror mode. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.



- If the error () icon appears, the digital centre mirror may not be working properly. Change to conventional rear-view mirror mode.
  - If the digital centre mirror gets extremely hot, the high temp () icon appears, and the display gradually becomes dimmer.
    - If the temperature continues to increase, the digital centre mirror turns off.
    - The icon disappears when the mirror cools down.
- 

## Outside rear-view mirrors



Your vehicle is equipped with both left-hand and right-hand outside rearview mirrors. The mirrors can be adjusted remotely with the mirror adjustment control switch. Adjust the outside rearview mirrors to your desired position before driving.

## WARNING

---

The left and right outside rearview mirrors are convex. Objects seen in the mirror are closer than they appear.

Use the inside rear view mirror or turn your head and look directly to determine the actual distance of other vehicles prior to changing lanes.

---



## WARNING

---

Do not adjust or fold the outside rearview mirrors whilst driving. This may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in a collision.

---

## NOTICE

---

- Do not scrape ice off the mirror face. This may damage the surface of the glass.
  - If the mirrors are jammed with ice, do not adjust them by force. Use an approved de-icer (not radiator antifreeze) spray, or a sponge or soft cloth with very warm water, or move the vehicle to a warm place and allow the ice to melt.
  - Do not clean the mirrors with harsh abrasives, fuel, or other petroleum based cleaning products.
- 

### *Adjusting the rear-view mirrors*



- 1 Press the L (Left side) or R (Right side) button (1) to select the rear-view mirror you want to adjust.
- 2 Use the mirror adjustment control (2) to position the selected mirror up, down, left, or right.
- 3 After adjustment, press both L and R button off (indicator light off) to prevent unintended adjustment.

## NOTICE

---

- The mirrors stop moving when they reach the maximum adjusting angles, but the motor continues to operate whilst the switch is pressed. Do not press the switch longer than necessary, because this can damage the motor.
  - Do not adjust the outside mirror by hand to prevent damage to the motor.
- 

### *Folding the rear-view mirrors*

#### **Folding button**

Press the button to fold or unfold the outside rearview mirrors.



### Infotainment system setting

- Enable on door unlock

If **Setup > Vehicle > Welcome mirror/light > Enable on door unlock** is selected from the Settings menu in the infotainment system,

- The mirrors fold or unfold when the door is locked or unlocked by the smart key.
- The mirrors fold or unfold when the door is locked or unlocked by the touch sensor on the outside door handle.

- Enable on driver approach

If **Setup > Vehicle > Welcome mirror/light > Enable on driver approach** is selected from the Settings menu in the infotainment system, the mirrors fold or unfold when the vehicle is approached with the smart key in possession.

### Information

---

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

---

### NOTICE

---

The electric type outside rearview mirrors operate even though the Engine Start/Stop button is in the OFF position. However, to prevent unnecessary battery discharge, do not adjust the mirrors longer than necessary whilst the engine is not running.

---

### NOTICE

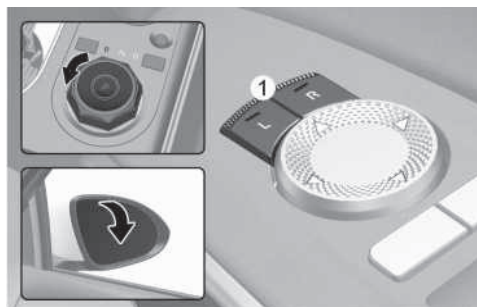
---

Do not fold the electric type outside rearview mirrors by hand. It could cause motor failure.

---

## Reverse parking aid

 if equipped



When the gear is shifted to the R (Reverse) position, the outside rearview mirrors rotate downward to aid with driving in reverse.

The state of the outside rearview mirrors button (1) determines whether or not the mirrors move:

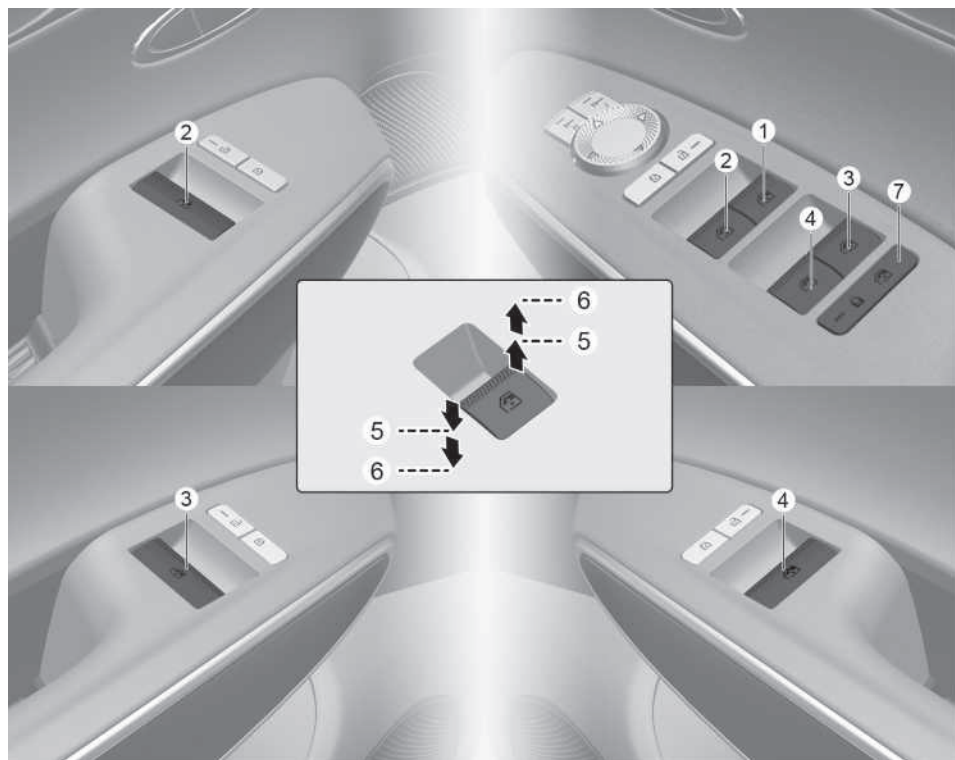
### How it works

- When the L or R button (1) is pressed (indicator lights ON), both outside rearview mirrors move.
- If the L and R buttons (1) are not pressed (indicator lights OFF), both outside rearview mirrors does not move.

The outside rearview mirrors automatically revert to their original positions if any of the following occur:

- The Engine Start/Stop button is pressed to either the OFF position or the ACC position.
- The gear is shifted to any position except R (Reverse).
- The outside rearview mirrors adjustment button is not selected.

## Windows



1. Driver's door power window switch
2. Front passenger's door power window switch
3. Rear door (right) power window switch
4. Rear door (left) power window switch
5. Window opening and closing
6. Automatic power window
7. Power window lock switch

### Power windows

The Engine Start/Stop button must be in the ON position to be able to raise or lower the windows. Each door has a Power Window switch to control the door's window. The driver has a Power Window Lock button that can block the operation of rear passenger windows. The power windows operate for about 3 minutes after the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ACC or OFF position, as long as the front doors remain closed.

If the front doors are opened, the battery power is turned OFF and the Power Windows do not operate.

## ***Window opening and closing***



To open:

Press the window switch down to the first detent position (5). Release the switch when you want the window to stop.

To close:

Pull the window switch up to the first detent position (5). Release the window switch when you want the window to stop.

### ***Auto up/down window***

Pressing or pulling up the power window switch momentarily to the second detent position (6) completely lowers or lifts the window even when the switch is released. To stop the window at the desired position whilst the window is operating, pull up or press down and release the switch.

### ***Resetting the power windows***

If the power windows do not operate normally, the automatic power window system must be reset as follows:

- 1 Press the Engine Start/Stop button to the ON position.
- 2 Close the window and continue pulling up on the power window switch for at least one second.

If the power windows do not operate properly after resetting, we recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer.

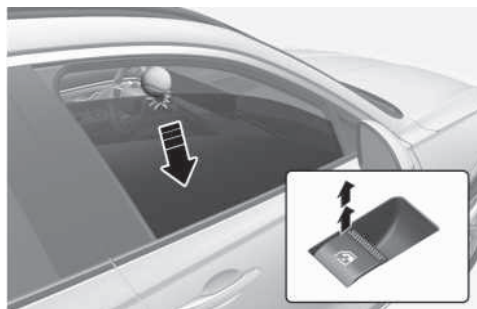


### **WARNING**

Make sure body parts or other objects are out of the way before closing the windows. The automatic reverse feature does not operate whilst resetting the power window system.



## ***Automatic reversal***



If a window senses any obstacle whilst it is closing automatically, it stops and lowers about 30 cm to allow the object to be cleared.

If the window detects any resistance whilst the power window switch is pulled up continuously, the window stops upward movement and then lowers about 2.5 cm.

If the power window switch is pulled up continuously again within 5 seconds after the window is lowered by the automatic window reverse feature, the automatic window reverse does not operate.

### **Information**

---

The automatic reverse feature is active only when the "Auto Up" feature is used by fully pulling up the switch to the second detent.

---

### **NOTICE**

---

Do not install any accessories on the windows. The automatic reverse feature may not operate.

---



### **WARNING**

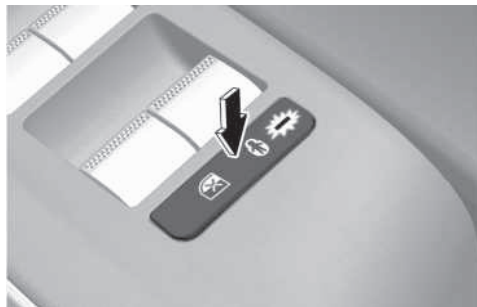
---

Make sure body parts or other objects are safely out of the way before closing the windows to avoid injuries or vehicle damage.

Objects less than 4 mm in diameter caught between the window glass and the upper window channel may not be detected by the automatic reverse window and the window does not stop and reverse direction.

---

## ***Power window lock button***



The driver can disable the power window switches on the rear passenger doors by pressing the power window lock button.

When the power window lock button is pressed:

- The driver's master control can operate all the power windows.
- The front passenger's control can operate the front passenger's power window.
- The rear passenger's control cannot operate the rear passengers' power window.



### **WARNING**

Do not allow children to play with the power windows. Keep the driver's door power window lock button in the LOCK position. Serious injury or death may result from unintentional window operation by a child.

### **NOTICE**

- To prevent possible damage to the power window system, do not open or close two windows or more at the same time. This also ensures the longevity of the fuse.
- Never try to operate the main switch on the driver's door and the individual door window switch in opposite directions at the same time. If this is done, the window stops and cannot be opened or closed.

## **Remote window opening/closing feature (Remote Window Control)**

 if equipped



You can open or close the window remotely with the smart key.

### **Closing the window**

Press and hold the door lock button (2) for more than 3 seconds, whilst the engine is turned off.

- Windows move up after the doors are locked.
- Window movement stops when you release the door lock button.

### **Opening the window**

Press and hold the door unlock button (1) for more than 3 seconds, whilst the engine is turned off.

- Windows move down after the doors are unlocked.
- Window movement stops when you release the door unlock button.



### **CAUTION**

---

- If the distance between the vehicle and your smart key changes whilst the window is being opened or closed, the window may stop operating. Do not stand too far away from the vehicle when remotely opening or closing the window.
  - Windows stop closing if it is encountered by a certain force. After you close the windows remotely, check to make sure all windows are properly closed.
  - The doors are unlocked when you open the windows with the remote opening feature.
-

## Panoramic sunroof

 if equipped

If your vehicle is equipped with a sunroof, you can slide or tilt your sunroof with the sunroof control switch located on the overhead console.



The sunroof can only be operated when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON or START position.

The sunroof can be operated for about 3 minutes after the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ACC or OFF position unless a front door is opened.

### WARNING

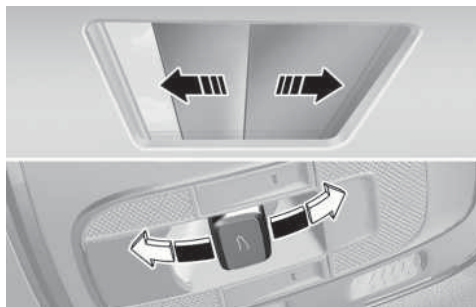
To prevent serious injury or death:

- Adjust the sunroof or sunshade when your vehicle stops.
- Do not leave the engine running and the key in your vehicle with unsupervised children. unsupervised children could operate the sunroof.
- Do not sit on the top of the vehicle.

### NOTICE

Do not operate the sunroof if it contacts any roof rack or luggage.

## Power sunshade



Use the power sunshade to block direct sunlight coming through the sunroof glass.

- Push the sunroof switch rearward to the first detent position, the power sunshade automatically slides open.
- Push the sunroof switch forward to the first detent position, the power sunshade automatically closes. If the sunroof glass is open, the sunroof glass closes and then the sunshade closes.

To stop the power sunshade, push the sunroof switch in any direction.

## NOTICE

---

Do not pull or push the power sunshade by hand to prevent damage.

---

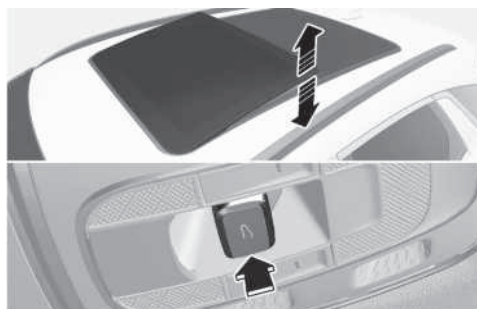
## Information

---

Wrinkles formed on the power sunshade are normal due to material characteristics.

---

### Tilt open/close



- Push the sunroof switch up to tilt the sunroof glass open. If the power sunshade is closed, the sunshade opens first and then the sunroof tilts.
- Push the sunroof switch upward or forward when the sunroof glass is tilt opened. The sunroof glass automatically closes.

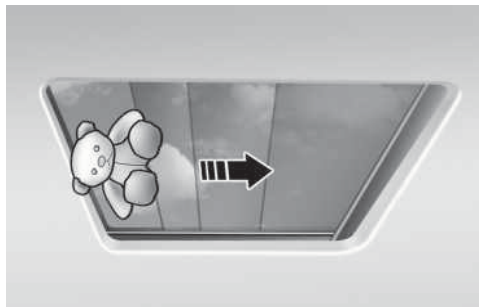
To stop the sunroof movement at any point, push the sunroof switch in any direction.

### Slide open/close



- Push the sunroof switch rearward to the first detent position. The sunroof glass slides open. If the power sunshade is closed, the power sunshade opens first and then the sunroof glass opens.  
Push the sunroof switch forward to the first detent position. The sunroof glass closes. If the sunroof glass is closed, the power sunshade closes.
- Push the sunroof switch forward or rearward to the second detent position. The power sunshade and sunroof glass operate automatically (auto slide feature).  
To stop the sunroof movement, push the sunroof switch in any direction.

### ***Automatic reversal***



If the power sunshade or sunroof glass senses any obstruction whilst closing, it reverses direction then stops.

The automatic reverse feature may not work if a thin or soft object is caught between the sliding power sunshade or sunroof glass and sunroof sash.



### **WARNING**

- Make sure that heads, hands, arms or any other body parts or objects are out of the way before operating the sunroof. Body parts or objects may get caught causing injuries or vehicle damage.
- Never deliberately use your body parts to test the automatic reverse feature.

## NOTICE

---

- Do not continue to push the sunroof switch after the sunroof is fully opened, closed, or tilted. Damage to the sunroof motor may occur or may cause the sunroof system to malfunction.
  - Using the sunroof for a long time may make noise caused by dust accumulated between the sunroof and vehicle body. Open the sunroof and remove dust regularly using a clean cloth on the sunroof rail.
  - Do not try to open the sunroof when the temperature is below freezing or the sunroof is covered with snow or ice. Otherwise, the motor may be damaged. In a cold and wet weather, the sunroof may not work properly.
  - Do not open or drive with the sunroof glass open immediately after rain or washing the vehicle. Water may wet the interior of the vehicle.
  - Do not try to open the sunroof when the temperature is below freezing or when the sunroof is covered with snow or ice. The sunroof may not work properly and may break if opened by force.
  - Do not extend any luggage outside the sunroof whilst driving.
- 

## WARNING

---

Do not extend your head, arms, body parts, or objects outside the sunroof whilst driving. Injuries may occur if the vehicle suddenly stops.

---

## Resetting the sunroof



In some circumstances resetting the sunroof operation may need to be performed. Some instances where resetting the sunroof may be required include:

- When the 12-volt battery is either disconnected or discharged
- When the sunroof fuse is replaced
- If the sunroof one-touch Auto open/close operation is not functioning properly

To reset the sunroof:

- 1 Start the vehicle in P (Park).
- 2 Make sure the power sunshade and sunroof glass are in the fully closed position.
- 3 Release the switch when the power sunshade and sunroof glass are fully closed.
- 4 Push the switch forward until the power sunshade and sunroof glass move slightly. Then release the switch.

- 5 Push and hold the sunroof switch forward again until the power sunshade and sunroof glass slide open and close.

Do not release the switch until the operation is completed. If you release the switch, start the procedure again from step 2.

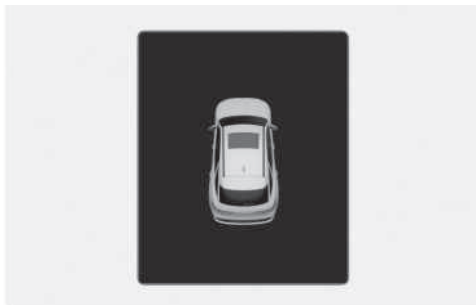
### Information

---

If the sunroof is not reset after the vehicle battery is disconnected or discharged, or the sunroof fuse is blown, the sunroof may not operate normally.

---

### Sunroof open warning



If the driver turns off the engine when the sunroof is not fully closed, the warning chime sounds for several seconds and the sunroof open warning appears on the instrument cluster display. Close the sunroof securely when leaving your vehicle.



### CAUTION

---

Do not leave sunroof open when leaving the vehicle to prevent theft or damage from water entering the vehicle.

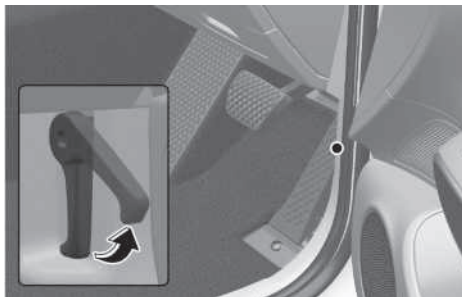
---



## Bonnet

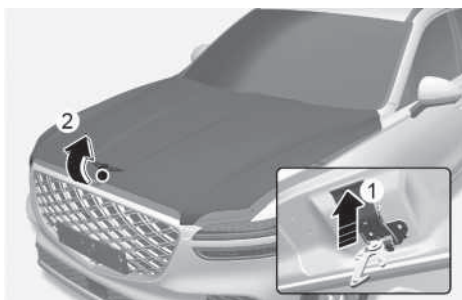
### Opening the bonnet

- 1 Park the vehicle and apply the parking brake.
- 2 Pull the release lever to unlatch the bonnet. The bonnet pops open slightly.



- 3 Go to the front of the vehicle, raise the bonnet slightly, push up the secondary bonnet release lever (1) inside the bonnet centre and lift the bonnet (2).

After the bonnet has been lifted halfway, it is raised completely by itself.



### Closing the bonnet

- 1 Before closing the bonnet, check in and around the engine compartment to ensure the following:
  - Any tools or other loose objects have been removed.
  - All glove, rags, or other combustible material have been removed.
  - All filler caps are tightly and correctly installed.
- 2 Lower the bonnet until it is about 30 cm above the closed position and then let it drop.
- 3 Check the bonnet has locked properly. If the bonnet is raised slightly, open it again and drop it from a little higher. Check again.



## **WARNING**

---

- Before closing the bonnet, ensure all obstructions are removed from around the bonnet opening.
  - Always double check to make sure that the bonnet is firmly latched before driving away. Check there is no bonnet open warning light or message displayed on the instrument cluster. Driving with the bonnet open may cause a total loss of visibility, resulting in a collision.
  - Do not move the vehicle with the bonnet raised. It may block your vision and may result in a collision.
-

## Power tailgate

 if equipped

### Power tailgate operating conditions

The power tailgate operates when the gear is in P (Park) with the engine running. The tailgate operates regardless of the gear position when the engine is off.

For safety, before attempting to open or close the tailgate, make sure the vehicle is in P (Park).

### WARNING

---

- Never leave children or animals unsupervised in your vehicle. Children may operate the power tailgate which could result in serious injury or property damage.
- Make sure that there are no people or objects in the path of the power tailgate or smart tailgate prior to use. Serious injury, damage to the vehicle or damage to surrounding objects (for example, walls, ceilings, vehicles, etc.) may result if contact with the tailgate occurs.



[A] 55 cm

[B] 40 cm

- The tailgate may not open or may close unintentionally injuring people around the tailgate in the following situations:
  - There is a lot of snow on the tailgate.
  - There is a heavy object on the tailgate such as a bicycle carrier, ladder, etc.

Do not open the tailgate before removing snow or heavy object on the tailgate.

---

## NOTICE

---

- Do not close or open the tailgate manually or it may be damaged. If you need to close the tailgate manually, do not apply excessive force.
- Do not operate the power tailgate more than 10 times continuously when the engine is not running. Use the power tailgate with the engine running when the power tailgate is used repeatedly to prevent battery discharge.
- Do not leave the power tailgate open for a long time. This may drain the battery.
- Do not apply excessive force when the power tailgate is operating. Doing so could result in vehicle damage.



- 
- Always close the tailgate before driving. Do not grab or hold on to the tailgate support struts or they may be damaged.  
Deformation of the tailgate support struts may result in vehicle damage and personal injury.
  - Do not modify or repair any part of the power tailgate by yourself. We recommend that you have the power tailgate modified or repaired by an authorised Genesis repairer.
  - Do not operate the power tailgate under the following conditions. The power tailgate may not operate properly.
    - One side of the vehicle is lifted to inspect the vehicle or change a tyre
    - Parking on an uneven road such as a slope, etc.
  - Close the tailgate completely and lock all doors and tailgate using the central door lock button before using an automatic car wash.
  - Do not spray high pressure water directly on the power tailgate outside open/close button. The tailgate may open unintentionally.

## Information

---

- If the tailgate is not fully closed and vehicle speed is at or above 3 km/h, a warning will sound 10 times. Immediately park the vehicle at a safe place, close the tailgate, and check that the tailgate open warning on the instrument cluster is turned off.
  - In cold and wet climates, the outside power tailgate open/close button may not work properly due to freezing conditions. If this occurs, remove the ice before using the outside power tailgate open/close button or use the power tailgate open/close button on the smart key or the instrument panel.
  - Operating the power tailgate more than 5 times continuously could cause damage to the operating motor. If this occurs, the power tailgate will not operate to prevent the motor from overheating. If any of the power tailgate buttons are pressed to try to open the tailgate, the chime will sound 3 times, but the tailgate will remain closed. Allow the power tailgate system to cool for about 1 minute before operating the system again.
- 

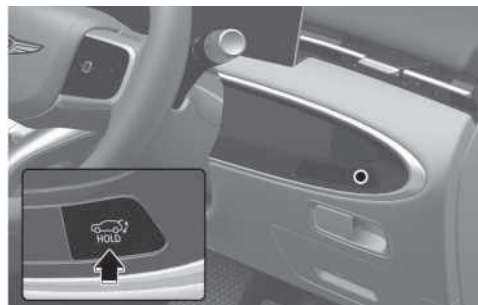
## Operating the power tailgate

### *Power tailgate open/close button (Smart key, Instrument panel)*

Smart key



Instrument panel



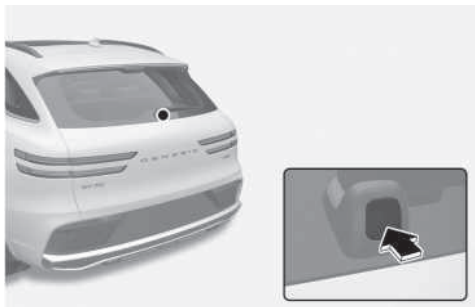
Press the power tailgate open/close button for 1 second. The tailgate opens or closes with a warning sound.

Whilst the tailgate is opening or closing, press the button to stop tailgate operation.

## **WARNING**

Make sure that there are no people or objects in the path of the tailgate before pressing the open/close button inside the power tailgate and the smart key. Otherwise, this may cause serious injury or damage to the vehicle or object.

### ***Power tailgate open/close button (Outside the power tailgate)***



When the tailgate is closed, press the power tailgate open/close button to open the tailgate.

If the vehicle is locked, press the power tailgate open/close button with the smart key in your possession.

If the tailgate is unlocked, the tailgate opens or closes with a warning sound when the power tailgate open/close button is pressed without carrying the smart key.

### ***Power tailgate open/close button (Inside the power tailgate)***



Press the power tailgate open/close button. The tailgate opens or closes automatically.

## ***Power tailgate lock button (Inside the power tailgate)***



Press the power tailgate lock button whilst carrying the smart key. The tailgate closes and locks automatically. Additionally, all doors will lock.

The tailgate can be closed and locked, and all doors are locked only when the button is pressed whilst the engine is off.

### ***Automatic reversal***

During power tailgate operation if the power tailgate senses any obstacle, the tailgate stops or fully opens. The automatic reverse feature may not operate properly, or it may operate unexpectedly under the following circumstances :

- The automatic reverse feature may not detect the resistance if the detected resistance is below a certain level, or if the tailgate is almost fully closed near the latched position.
- The automatic reverse feature may operate if a strong impact is applied with no obstructions placed.



### **WARNING**

Never intentionally place any object or part of your body in the path of the power tailgate to make sure the automatic reverse feature operates. Serious injury, or damage to the vehicle or object may occur.

### **Information**

The power tailgate may stop operating if the automatic reverse feature operates more than two times whilst attempting to open or close the tailgate. If this occurs, carefully open or close the tailgate manually, and then after 30 seconds try to operate the power tailgate automatically again.

### **Setting the power tailgate**

To use each feature, you must select the opening speed or opening height from the settings menu. Deselect the settings when you do not want to use the feature.

#### ***Power tailgate opening speed***

To adjust the power tailgate speed, select **Setup > Vehicle > Door/Tailgate > Power tailgate opening speed > Fast/Slow** in the infotainment system. (Default setting is **Fast**)

## Power tailgate opening height

To adjust the power tailgate opening height, select **Setup > Vehicle > Door/Tailgate > Power tailgate opening height > Full open/Level 3/Level 2/Level 1/User height setting** in the infotainment system.

### User height setting

- 1 Position the tailgate manually to the height you prefer.
- 2 Press the power tailgate open/close button located inside the tailgate for more than 3 seconds.

If **User height setting** is selected for the power tailgate opening height, the power tailgate will automatically open to the height manually set by you.

### Information

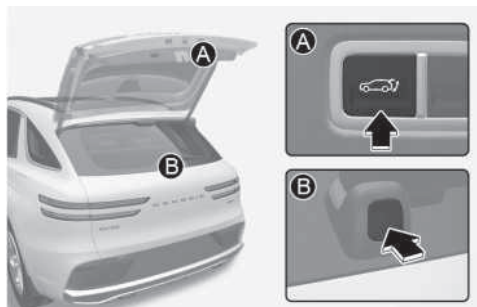
---

- If the power tailgate opening height has not been manually set, the power tailgate will fully open when **User height setting** from the infotainment system is selected.
  - If one of the height setting (**Full open/Level 3/Level 2/Level 1**) is selected from the settings menu in the infotainment system, and then **User height setting** is selected, the tailgate will open to the height manually set by you.
  - The power tailgate opening speed and opening height settings change according to the linked User Profile. If the User Profile is changed, power tailgate opening speed and opening height settings will change accordingly.
  - The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.
- 

## Resetting the power tailgate

In some circumstances resetting the power tailgate operation may need to be performed. Some instances where resetting the power tailgate may be required include:

- When the 12 V battery is recharged
- When the 12 V battery is reinstalled after removal or replacement
- When the related fuse is reinstalled after removal or replacement



- 1 With the engine off or running, put the gear in P (Park).
- 2 Press the power tailgate open/close inner button [A] and outer button [B] simultaneously until a chime sounds.



- 3 Slowly close the tailgate manually.
- 4 Press the power tailgate open/close outer button. The power tailgate will open with a chime sound.  
Wait until the tailgate fully opens to complete resetting. If the tailgate stops before it is fully open, resetting cannot be completed.

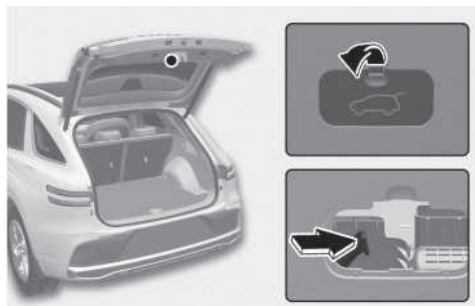
### Information

---

If the power tailgate does not operate properly after the above procedure, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

---

### Emergency tailgate safety release



To unlock and open the tailgate manually from inside the luggage compartment, perform the following procedure:

- 1 Remove the cover at the bottom of the tailgate.
- 2 Slide the latch in the direction of the arrow to unlock the tailgate.
- 3 Push the tailgate to open.

### WARNING

---

- For emergencies, you should be aware of the location of the emergency tailgate safety release latch in the vehicle and how to open the tailgate if you are accidentally locked in the luggage compartment.
  - No one, including animals, should be allowed to occupy the luggage compartment of the vehicle at any time. The luggage compartment is a very dangerous location in the event of a collision.
  - Use the release latch for emergencies only. Use extreme caution, especially whilst the vehicle is moving.
-

## Smart tailgate



### Using smart tailgate

The hands-free smart tailgate system can be used when:

- The smart tailgate option is enabled in the Settings menu in the infotainment system.
- The smart tailgate is activated and ready 15 seconds after all the doors are closed and locked.
- The smart tailgate opens when the smart key is detected in the area behind the vehicle for 3 seconds.

### Information

---

The smart tailgate does not operate when:

- A door is not locked or closed.
- The smart key is detected within 15 seconds from when the doors were closed and locked.
- The smart key is detected within 15 seconds after the doors are closed and locked, and within 1.5 m from the front door handles. (for vehicles equipped with Welcome Light).
- The smart key is in the vehicle.

#### 1 Settings

To use smart tailgate, enable it from the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select:

- **Setup > Vehicle > Door/Tailgate > Smart tailgate**

### Information

---

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

---

## 2 Detect and Alert



The smart tailgate detecting area extends about 50-100 cm behind the vehicle. If you are positioned in the detecting area and are carrying the smart key, the hazard warning lights blink and the chime sounds 6 times before opening.

### Information

---

If you unintentionally enter the detecting area and the hazard warning lights and chime starts, move away from the vehicle with the smart key. The tailgate remains closed.

---

## 3 Automatic opening

After the hazard warning lights blink and the chime sounds 6 times, the smart tailgate opens.

### Deactivating smart tailgate

If you press any button on the smart key during the Detect and Alert stage, the smart tailgate is deactivated.

- If you press the door unlock button, the smart tailgate is deactivated temporarily. If you do not open any door for 30 seconds, the smart tailgate is activated again.
- If you press the tailgate open button for more than 1 second, the tailgate opens.
- The smart tailgate is still activated if you press the door lock button or tailgate open/close button as long as the smart tailgate is not in the Detect and Alert stage.

### Detecting area

#### Information

---

- The smart tailgate may not operate properly if any of the following occur:
    - The smart key is close to a radio transmitter such as radio station or airport that may interfere with normal operation of the transmitter.
    - The smart key is near a mobile two way radio system or a mobile phone.
    - Another vehicle's smart key is being operated close to your vehicle.
  - Smart tailgate detecting area may change when:
    - The vehicle is parked on an incline or slope.
    - One side of the vehicle is lifted or lowered relative to the opposite side.
-

## Fuel filler door

### Opening the fuel filler door

- 1 Shift the gear to the P (Park) position and turn off the engine.
- 2 Make sure that the doors are unlocked.
- 3 Press the rear centre edge of the fuel filler door [A].



- 4 Pull the fuel filler door (1) outward to access the fuel tank cap.
- 5 To remove the fuel tank cap (2), turn it anti-clockwise. Hissing noise is heard because the pressure inside the tank equalizes.



- 6 Place the cap on the fuel filler door.

### Information

---

- The fuel filler door unlocks when the doors are unlocked.

To unlock fuel filler door:

- Press the unlock button on your smart key.
- Press the central door unlock switch on the driver's door.
- Set the auto door unlock feature **Upon vehicle off** in the infotainment system.

When all doors are automatically unlocked when the vehicle is turned off, the fuel filler door is automatically unlocked.

- If the fuel filler door does not open because of electrical failure or other reasons, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.
-

## Information

---

If the fuel filler door does not open because ice has formed around it, tap lightly or push on the door to break the ice and release the door. Do not pry open the door. If necessary, spray around the door with an approved deicer fluid (do not use radiator antifreeze) or move the vehicle to a warm place and allow the ice to melt.

---

### **Closing the fuel filler door**

- 1 To install the fuel tank cap, turn it clockwise until it "clicks" one time.
- 2 Close the fuel filler door until it is latched securely.

## Information

---

To lock the fuel filler door, make sure the fuel filler door is completely closed. Press the lock button on the smart key to lock your vehicle. The fuel filler door also locks.

If the fuel filler door is not completely closed when the vehicle is locked, the fuel filler door is not locked.

---

## **WARNING**

---

Automotive fuel is highly flammable and explosive. Failure to follow these guidelines may result in serious injury or death:

- Read and follow all warnings posted at the service station.
- Before refuelling, note the location of the Emergency Fuel Shut-Off, if available, at the service station.
- Before touching the fuel nozzle, eliminate the potential build-up of static electricity by touching a metal part of the vehicle, a safe distance away from the fuel filler neck, nozzle, or other gas source, with your bare hand.
- Do not use mobile phones whilst refuelling. Electric current and/or electronic interference from mobile phones may potentially ignite fuel vapours and cause a fire.
- Do not get back into a vehicle once you have begun refuelling. You can generate a buildup of static electricity by touching, rubbing, or sliding against any item or fabric capable of producing static electricity. Static electricity discharge may ignite fuel vapours causing a fire. If you must re-enter the vehicle, once again eliminate potentially dangerous static electricity discharge by touching a metal part of the vehicle, away from the fuel filler neck, nozzle, or other fuel source, with your bare hand.
- When using an approved portable fuel container, be sure to place the container on the ground prior to refuelling. Static electricity discharge from the container may ignite fuel vapours causing a fire.

Once refuelling has begun, contact between your bare hand and the vehicle should be maintained until the filling is complete.

- Use only approved portable plastic fuel containers designed to carry and store fuel.
  - When refuelling, always shift the gear to the P (Park) position, apply the parking brake, and press the Engine Start/Stop button to the OFF position. Sparks produced by electrical components related to the engine may ignite fuel vapours causing a fire.
  - Do not use matches or a lighter and do not smoke or leave a lit cigarette in your vehicle whilst at a service station, especially during refuelling.
  - Do not over-fill or top-off your vehicle tank, which may cause fuel spillage.
  - If a fire breaks out during refuelling, get away from the vehicle, and immediately contact a service station employee and then contact the local fire department.
  - If pressurised fuel sprays out, it can cover your clothes or skin and increase the risk of fire and burns. If the cap is venting fuel or if you hear a hissing sound, wait until the condition stops before completely removing the cap.
  - Always check that the fuel cap is installed securely to prevent fuel spillage in the event of a collision.
- 

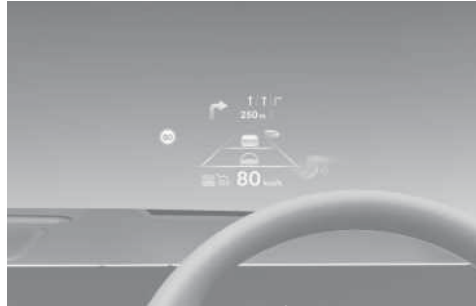
## **NOTICE**

---

- Do not spill fuel on the exterior surfaces. It may damage the paint.
  - If the cap needs to be replaced, we recommend that you only use a genuine Genesis cap or the equivalent (of the genuine part) specified for your vehicle. An incorrect fuel filler cap can result in fuel system or emission control system may malfunction.
-

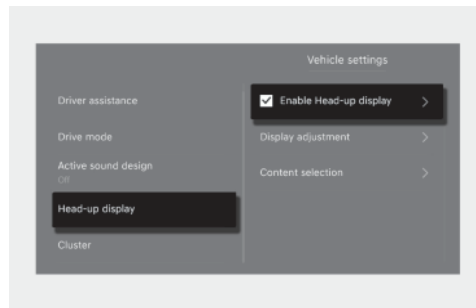
## Head-Up Display (HUD)

 if equipped



The head-up display is an optional feature that allows the driver to view information projected onto a transparent screen whilst still keeping their eyes safely on the road ahead whilst driving.

### Head-up display settings



- Head-up display can be enabled from the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select:
  - **Setup > Vehicle > Head-up display > Enable Head-up display**
- After turning on the head-up display, you can change the settings of **Display adjustment** and **Content selection** of the head-up display.

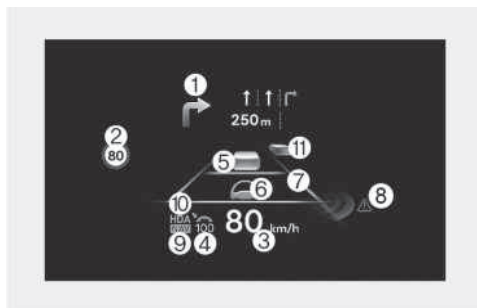
### Information

---

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

---

## Head-up display information



1. Turn by Turn (TBT) navigation
2. Traffic signs or speed limit
3. Speedometer
4. SCC set speed
5. SCC vehicle distance
6. Lane Following Assist
7. Lane Safety
8. Blind-Spot Safety
9. Highway Auto Speed Change
10. Highway Driving Assist
11. Surrounding vehicles (if equipped)

## Precautions whilst using the head-up display

- It may sometimes be difficult to read information on the head-up display in the following situations:
  - The driver is improperly positioned in the driver's seat.
  - The driver wears polarizing-filter sunglasses.
  - An object is located above the head-up display cover.
  - The vehicle is driven on a wet road.
  - Any improper lighting accessory is installed inside the vehicle, or there is incoming light from outside of the vehicle.
  - The driver wears glasses.
  - The driver wears contact lenses.

When it is difficult to read the head-up display information, adjust the image height or brightness level from the Settings menu in the infotainment system.

- Only change the settings after parking your vehicle at a safe location.
- Do not tint the front windscreen glass or add other types of metallic coating. Otherwise, the head-up display image may be invisible.
- Do not place any accessories on the instrument panel or attach any objects on the windscreen glass.



- When replacing the front windscreen glass, replace it with a windscreen glass designed for head-up display operation. Otherwise, duplicated images may be displayed on the windscreen glass.



## **WARNING**

---

The warning information of Blind-Spot Safety on the head-up display is a supplemental function only. Do not solely depend on them to change lanes. Always take a look around before changing lanes.

---

## OTA software update

 if equipped

The OTA (Over-the-Air) software update feature allows you to wirelessly update software to the latest version. Using this feature, you can keep your vehicle system up to date with the latest software.

### Information

---

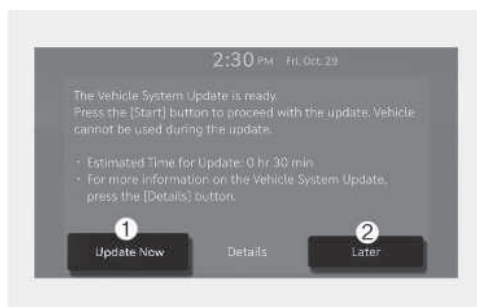
The OTA software update feature is only available for Genesis Connected Services users.

---

### Downloading software

The latest software can be downloaded automatically whilst driving. After the latest software has been successfully downloaded, you will receive a notification on your phone or the vehicle screen that the software update is available.

### Approving software update



After the vehicle is turned off, the vehicle system allows you to start the update.

- To start the update, press **Update Now** (1).
- To postpone the update, press **Later** (2).

### Preparing software update

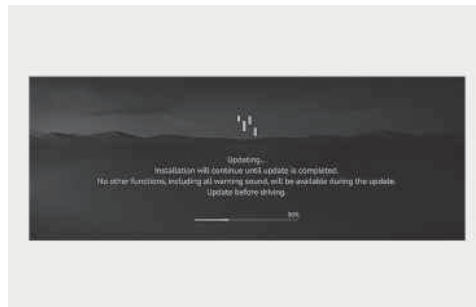
If you press the **Update Now** button on the screen, the vehicle begins installing the update automatically. The following conditions must be satisfied:

- The vehicle must be off.
- The gear must be in P (Park).
- The Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) must be applied.
- The exterior lights must be turned off.
- The bonnet must be closed.
- The battery level must be sufficient.
- The systems to be updated must not be running.



- To update immediately, press **Update Now**.
- To cancel the update, press **Cancel Update**.

## Updating software



You can see the progress of the update on the screen.

After the update is complete, you will receive a notification on your phone, by email or on the vehicle screen that the software update is complete.

## Information

The screen turns off automatically after 3 minutes to save the battery. If the screen turns off automatically, you can check the update progress by pressing the Engine Start/Stop button.

## Information

---

- After the update starts, you can exit the vehicle.
  - The update details may vary depending on the installed software version.
  - Check the notice for the OTA software update on the Genesis brand web.
  - If the update fails, the update recovery will automatically proceed. If you want to retry the software update, even after a successful recovery, we recommend that you to contact Genesis.
  - If the update or recovery fails, we recommend that you contact Genesis Call Centre.
  - After the update is complete, it may provide new functions or improvements. For more information, refer to the "OTA Software Update" page on the Genesis brand web.
- 

## NOTICE

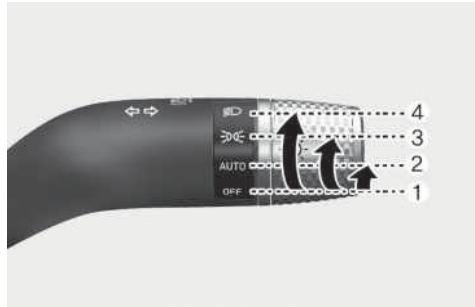
---

- Observe the following restrictions during the update.
    - You cannot use the vehicle during the update. Be sure to have enough time for the update, and safely park the vehicle before starting the update process.
    - You cannot use remote features, including remote start.
    - The Rear Occupant Alert feature may not work. Check if there are any occupants in the rear seat.
  - The update will be automatically cancelled if any vehicle conditions required for the update are changed before starting the update.
  - Once the update has started, you cannot cancel the update.
  - You cannot use the OTA software update feature if you modify or replace any vehicle software.
  - Do not open the bonnet or replace the battery in the vehicle during the update. The update may fail.
  - If a diagnostic tool of any kind is connected to the vehicle OBD (On-Board Diagnostic) terminal, the vehicle cannot be updated. The vehicle can be updated by removing the diagnostic tool connected to the OBD terminal and then restarting the vehicle.
  - If the update is not complete successfully, we highly recommend that you contact Genesis.
-

## Exterior lights

### Lighting control

To operate the lights, turn the switch at the end of the control lever to one of the following positions:



1. OFF
2. AUTO headlamps
3. Parking lamps
4. Headlamps

### *Daytime Running Lights (DRL)*

The Daytime Running Lights (DRL) can make it easier for others to see the front of your vehicle during the day, especially after dawn and before sunset.

The DRL system turns off the dedicated lamp when:

- The headlamps are ON.
- The parking brake is applied.
- The vehicle is turned off.

### *AUTO headlamps*



The parking lamps and headlamps are turned ON or OFF automatically depending on the amount of daylight as measured by the ambient light sensor (1) at the upper end of the windscreen glass.

Even with the AUTO headlamps feature in operation, it is recommended to manually turn ON the headlamps when driving at night or in a fog, driving in the rain, or when you enter dark areas, such as tunnels and parking facilities.

## NOTICE

---

- Do not cover or spill anything on the sensor (1) located at the upper end of the windscreen glass.
  - Do not clean the sensor using a window cleaner, the cleaner may leave a light film which could interfere with sensor operation.
  - If your vehicle has window tint or other types of metallic coating on the front windscreen, the AUTO headlamp system may not work properly.
- 

### *Parking lamps*



The parking lamps, licence plate lamps, and instrument panel lamps are turned ON.

### *Headlamps*



The headlamps, parking lamps, licence plate lamps, and instrument panel lamps are turned ON.

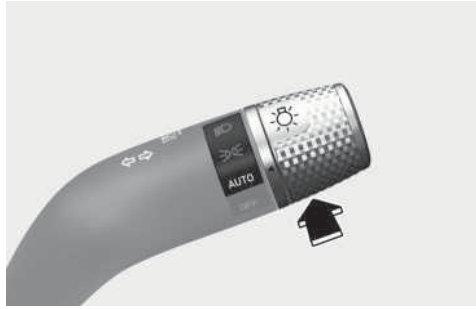
## Information

---

The Engine Start/Stop button must be in the ON position to turn on the headlamps.

---

## High beam operation



To turn on the high beam headlamps, push the lever away from you. The lever returns to its original position.

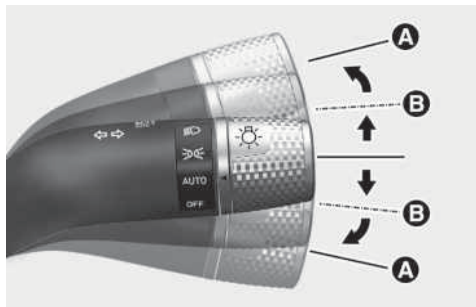
The high beam indicator illuminates when the headlamp high beams are switched on.

To turn off the high beam headlamps, pull the lever toward you. The low beams turn on.



To flash the high beam headlamps, pull the lever toward you, then release the lever. The high beams remain ON as long as you hold the lever.

## Turn signals and lane change signals



To signal a turn, push down on the lever for a right turn or up for a left turn in position [A].

If an indicator stays on and does not flash or if it flashes abnormally, one of the turn signal bulbs may be burned out and require replacement. We recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer.

### ***One touch turn signal***

To use One Touch Turn Signal, push the turn signal lever up or down to position [B] and then release it.

The lane change signals blinks 3, 5 or 7 times.

You can enable the One Touch Turn Signal function or choose the number of blinking by selecting **Setup > Vehicle > Lights > One-touch indicator > 3 flashes/5 flashes/7 flashes/Off** in the infotainment system.

### **Information**

---

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

---

### **Battery saver function**

To prevent the battery discharging, the system automatically turns off the parking lamps when the driver turns the vehicle off and opens the driver's door.

To keep the lamps on when the vehicle is turned off:

- 1 Open the driver's door.
- 2 Turn the parking lamps OFF and ON again using the headlamps switch.

### **Headlamps delay function**

If the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ACC or OFF position with the headlamps ON, the headlamps (and/or parking lamps) remain on for about 5 minutes. If the driver's door is opened and closed, the headlamps are turned off after 15 seconds. Also, with the vehicle off if the driver's door is opened and closed, the headlamps (and/or parking lamps) are turned off after 15 seconds.

The headlamps (and/or parking lamps) can be turned off by pressing the lock button on the smart key twice or turning the headlamp switch to the OFF or AUTO position.

You can enable the headlamps delay function by selecting **Setup > Vehicle > Lights > Headlamp delay** in the infotainment system.

### **Information**

---

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

---

### **NOTICE**

---

If the driver exits the vehicle through another door besides the driver's door, the battery saver function does not operate and the headlamps delay function does not turn OFF automatically.

To avoid battery discharge, turn OFF the headlamps manually before exiting the vehicle.

---



## Headlamps levelling device

Headlamps levelling device automatically adjusts the headlamp beam level according to the number of passengers and loading weight in the luggage compartment.

It also adjusts to the appropriate headlamps beam level for various situations.



### WARNING

---

If the function does not work properly, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer. Do not attempt to inspect or replace the wiring yourself.

---

## Headlamp moisture removal function

When moisture fogs up inside of the headlamp with the headlamps on for a certain period of time, the fan circulates air inside the headlamp to remove moisture. If moisture is not removed, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

## Reverse guide lamp

When the gear is in R (Reverse), the reversing lamp turns on and the reverse guide lamp at the back of the vehicle lights the floor.

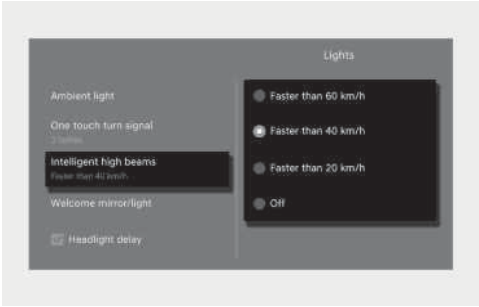
The lamp informs nearby drivers that your vehicle is reversing.

# Intelligent Front-lighting System (IFS)

 if equipped

Intelligent Front-Lighting System secures a clear view for the driver with the high beams on whilst driving at night.

## System settings



With the Engine Start/Stop button in the ON position, select **Setup > Vehicle > Lights > Intelligent high beams** from the Settings menu to turn on Intelligent Front-Lighting System and deselect to turn off the system.

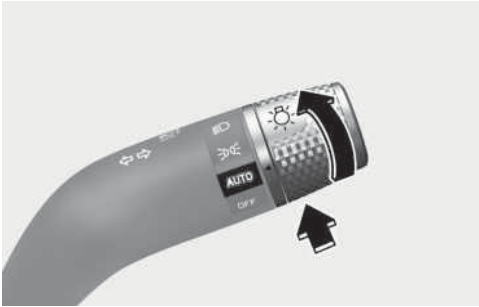
## Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

## WARNING

Only change the settings after parking your vehicle at a safe location.

## System operation



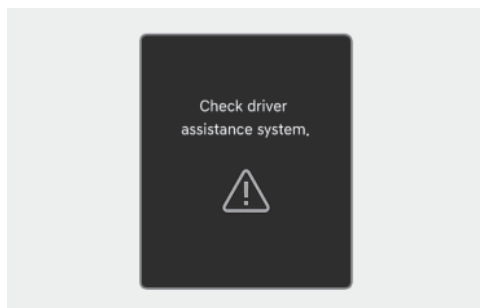
After selecting **Intelligent High Beams** in the Settings menu to operate Intelligent Front-Lighting System:

- Place the headlamps switch in the **AUTO** position and push the headlamp lever toward the instrument cluster. The Intelligent Front-Lighting System () indicator light illuminates on the instrument cluster and the system is enabled.

- When the system is enabled, Intelligent Front-Lighting System operates according to the set speed in the infotainment system. The initial system is set to work when vehicle speed is above 40 km/h.
- The high beam LED partially turns off if an oncoming vehicle or a vehicle ahead is detected by the front view camera.
- If Intelligent Front-Lighting System detects an oncoming vehicle or a vehicle ahead whilst driving at high speed (about above 100 km/h, the driver's side headlamp turns off and only the passenger's side headlamp is controlled by the system.

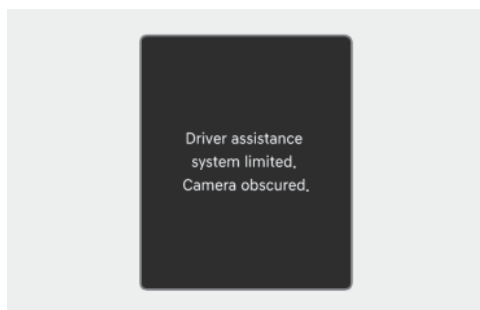
## System malfunction and limitations

### *System malfunction*



When Intelligent Front-Lighting System does not work properly, the "**Check driver assistance system.**" warning message may appear for a few seconds on the instrument cluster. After the message disappears, the **AFS** and  warning lights illuminate on the instrument cluster. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

### *System disabled*



When the front view camera is covered or blocked, the Intelligent Front-Lighting System may temporarily not work properly. The "**Driver assistance system limited. Camera obscured.**" warning message may appear on the instrument cluster.

The system operates normally when such foreign material is removed.



## WARNING

---

- Intelligent Front-Lighting System may not operate properly even if there is no warning message or warning light on the instrument cluster.
  - Intelligent Front-Lighting System may not operate properly in open areas where no objects are detected (e.g. empty car park) or when the detecting sensors are blocked immediately after turning on the engine.
- 

### ***Limitations of the system***

Intelligent Front-Lighting System may not operate normally:

- The headlamps from an oncoming or front vehicle is damaged or out of the detection range.
- The headlamps from an oncoming or front vehicle are covered with dust, snow, or water.
- An oncoming or front vehicle's headlamps are off but the fog lamps are on.
- There are lamps that have a similar shape as a vehicle's lamp ahead.
- The headlamps are not repaired or replaced properly.
- The headlamps are not aimed properly.
- You are driving on a narrow curved road, rough road, uphill, or downhill.
- A front vehicle is partially visible on a crossroad or curved road.
- There is a traffic light, reflecting sign, LED sign, or reflectors ahead.
- There is a temporary reflector or flash ahead (construction area).
- The road is wet or covered with snow or ice.
- A vehicle suddenly appears from a curve.
- The vehicle is tilted due to a flat tyre or being towed.
- There are many street lights or the ambient light is bright.
- Light from another vehicle is not detected because of exhaust fumes, smoke, fog, snow, etc.
- The front windscreen is covered with foreign material.

## NOTICE

---

To prevent damage:

- Never disassemble the camera sensors or camera sensor assemblies.
  - Only have the detecting sensor replaced or repaired by an authorised Genesis repairer.
  - Never install any accessories, stickers, or tint the front windscreen.
  - Always keep the camera dry.
  - Never place any reflective objects (e.g. white paper, mirror) on the instrument panel.
  - Do not use any cleanser containing acid or alkaline detergents when cleaning the camera lenses. Use only a mild soap or neutral detergent, and rinse thoroughly with water.
-



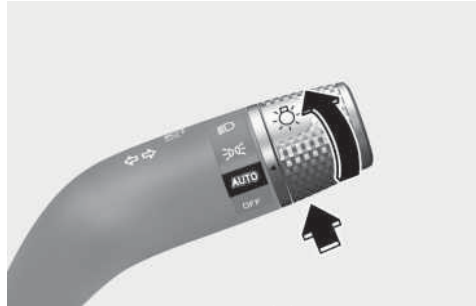
## WARNING

---

- Always check road conditions, and if necessary, take appropriate actions to drive safely. It is the driver's responsibility to operate the vehicle in a safe manner.
  - If Intelligent Front-Lighting System does not operate properly, use the turn signal lever to switch between high beam and low beam.
-

## High Beam Assist (HBA)

 if equipped



High Beam Assist automatically adjust the headlamps between high beam and low beam depending on the light detected from oncoming vehicles or vehicles in front using the front view camera.

### *Detecting sensor*



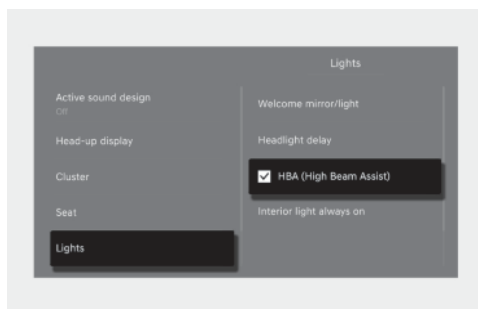
[A] Front view camera

The front view camera is used as a detecting sensor to detect ambient light and brightness whilst driving.

### NOTICE

- Always keep the front view camera in good condition to maintain optimal performance of High Beam Assist.
- Refer to the "**Driver Assistance System sensors**" section in Chapter 7 for the location and the general precautions of front view camera.

## High Beam Assist setting



With the Engine Start/Stop button in the ON position, select **Setup > Vehicle > Lights > HBA (High Beam Assist)** from the Settings menu to turn on High Beam Assist and deselect to turn off the function.



### WARNING

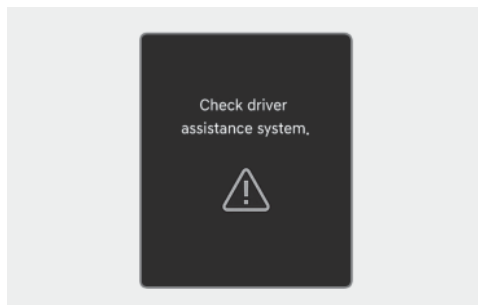
Only change the settings after parking your vehicle at a safe location.

## High Beam Assist operation

- After selecting **HBA (High Beam Assist)** from the settings menu to operate High Beam Assist:
  - Place the headlamps switch in the **AUTO** position and push the headlamp lever toward the instrument cluster. The High Beam Assist () indicator light illuminates on the instrument cluster and the system will be enabled.
  - When High Beam Assist is enabled, high beams turn on when vehicle speed is above 40 km/h and the high beam () indicator illuminates on the instrument cluster.
  - When the vehicle speed is below 25 km/h, high beams do not turn on.
- When High Beam Assist is operating:
  - If the turn signal lever is pulled toward you when the high beams are off, the high beams turn on. When you let go of the turn signal lever, High Beam Assist operates again.
  - If the turn signal lever is pulled towards you when the high beams are on by High Beam Assist, low beams turn on and High Beam Assist turns off.
  - If the headlamps switch is moved from **AUTO** to another position (headlamps/position/off), the corresponding light turns on and High Beam Assist turns off.
- When High Beam Assist is operating, high beam switches to low beam if:
  - The headlamps of an oncoming vehicle are detected.
  - The tail lamps of a vehicle in front are detected.
  - The headlamp or tail lamp of a motorcycle or a bicycle is detected.
  - The surrounding ambient light is bright enough so high beams are not required.
  - Streetlights or other lights are detected.

## High Beam Assist malfunction and limitations

### *High Beam Assist malfunction*



When High Beam Assist is not working properly, the "**Check driver assistance system.**" warning message may appear and  warning light may illuminate on the instrument cluster. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

### *Limitations of High Beam Assist*

High Beam Assist may not operate normally in the following situations if:

- The headlamps from an oncoming or front vehicle is damaged or out of the detection range.
- The headlamps from an oncoming or front vehicle headlamps are covered with dust, snow, or water.
- An oncoming or front vehicle's headlamps are off but the fog lamps are on.
- There are lamps that have a similar shape as a vehicle's lamp ahead.
- The headlamps are not repaired or replaced properly.
- The headlamps are not aimed properly.
- You are driving on a narrow curved road, rough road, uphill, or downhill.
- A front vehicle is partially visible at a crossroad or on a curved road.
- There is a traffic light, reflecting sign, LED sign, or reflectors ahead.
- There is a temporary reflector or flash ahead (construction area).
- The road conditions are bad such as being wet, iced or covered with snow.
- A vehicle suddenly appears from a curve.
- The vehicle is tilted due to a flat tyre or being towed.
- The headlamps from an oncoming or front vehicle are not detected because of exhaust fumes, smoke, fog, snow, blizzard, water spray on the road, or windscreen condensation, etc.

### NOTICE

---

For more information on the limitations of the front view camera, refer to the "**Driver Assistance System sensors**" section in chapter 7.

---





## **WARNING**

---

- Always check road conditions, and if necessary, take appropriate actions to drive safely. It is the driver's responsibility to operate the vehicle in a safe manner.
  - If High Beam Assist does not operate properly, use the turn signal lever to switch between high beam and low beam.
-

## Welcome system



Welcome system helps keep the driver visible by turning on vehicle lights when the driver approaches the vehicle.

### Puddle light and door handle light

When all the doors (and tailgate) are closed and locked, the puddle light and door handle light come on for about 15 seconds:

- When the door unlock button is pressed on the smart key.
- When you put your hand in the outside door handle with the smart key in possession.
- If **Setup > Vehicle > Convenience > Welcome mirror/light > Enable on driver approach** is selected from the Settings menu in the infotainment system, the lights turn on when the vehicle is approached with the smart key in possession.

### Information

---

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

---

### Dynamic welcome light

When the headlamps switch is in the headlamps or **AUTO** position and all doors (and tailgate) are closed and locked, the dynamic welcome light comes on for 15 seconds when the door unlock button is pressed on the smart key.

### Information

---

The dynamic welcome light turns on at night when the headlamps switch is in the **AUTO** position.

---

The dynamic welcome light operates for about 8 seconds, and at the same time the parking lamps come on for about 15 seconds.

If you press the door lock or door unlock button on the smart key, the dynamic welcome light turns off immediately.

- Select **Setup > Vehicle > Lights > Headlamps delay** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to turn on this function.
- Select **Setup > Vehicle > Lights > Dynamic welcome light > Comfort** (default setting)/**Natural/Dynamic** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to change modes.

## Interior light

When the interior light switch is in the  position and all doors (and tailgate) are closed and locked, the room lamp come on for 30 seconds when:

- The door unlock button is pressed on the smart key.
- You put your hand in the outside door handle whilst carrying the smart key.

If you press the door lock or unlock button on the smart key the lights turn off immediately.

## Interior lights



### WARNING

Do not use the interior lights when driving in the dark. The interior lights may obscure your view and result in a collision.

### NOTICE

Do not use the interior lights for extended periods when the vehicle is turned off. Otherwise, the battery discharges.

### Interior light AUTO cut

The interior lights automatically go off about 20 minutes after the vehicle is turned off and the doors are closed. If a door is opened, the lights go off about 25 minutes after the vehicle is turned off. If the doors are locked by the remote key or smart key and the vehicle enters the armed stage of the theft alarm system, the lights go off five seconds later.

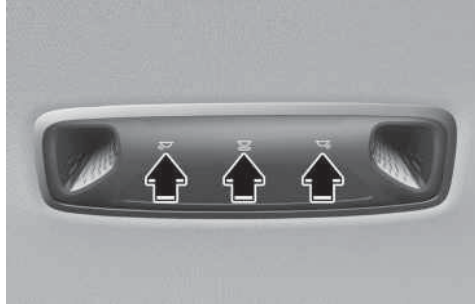
### Front lights



- **Map lamp** (☞, ☜): Touch either icons to turn the map lamp on or off. This light produces a spot beam for convenient use as a map lamp at night or as a personal lamp for the driver and the front passenger.
- **Door lamp** (☞, ☜): The front or rear room lamps come on when the front or rear doors are opened. When doors are unlocked by the smart key, the front and rear lamps come on for approximately 30 seconds as long as any door is not opened. The front and rear interior lamps go out gradually after about 30 seconds when the door is closed. However, if the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position or all doors are locked, the front and rear lamps turn off. If a door is opened with the Engine Start/Stop button in the ACC position or OFF position, the front and rear lamps stay on for about 5 minutes.
- **Interior lamp** (☞): Press the button to turn on the interior lamp for the front and rear seats.

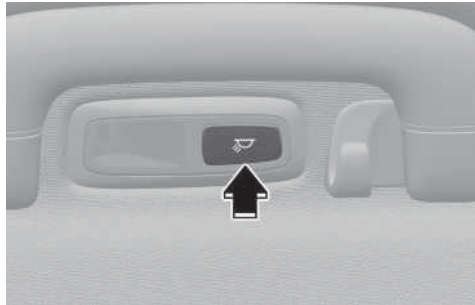
## Rear interior lamp

Rear interior lamp (without sunroof)



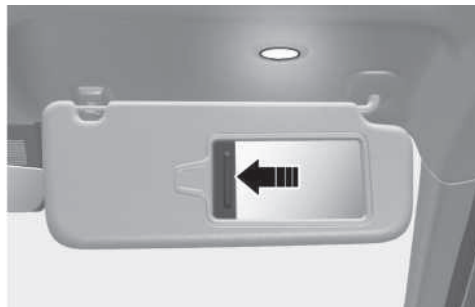
- ☹️, ☹️: Touch the icon to turn either lamp on or off.
- ☹️: Touch the icon to turn the mood lamp on or off.

Personal lamps (with sunroof)



- ☹️: Press the button to turn the lamp on or off.

## Vanity mirror lamp



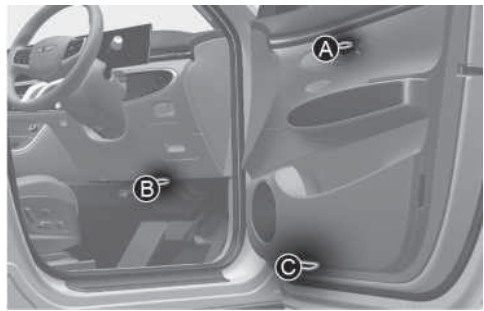
Opening the cover of the vanity mirror. The vanity mirror lamp turns on when the cover is opened and off when the cover is closed.

### Glove box lamp



The glove box lamp turns on when the glove box is opened.

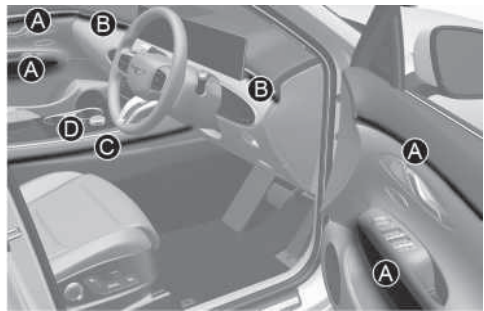
### Door handle lamp/Foot lamp/Door foot lamp



- [A] Door handle lamp
- [B] Foot lamp
- [C] Door foot lamp

The lamp turns on when a door is opened and turns off when the door is closed.

### Mood lamp



- [A] Front/Rear doors
- [B] Instrument panel

[C] Centre console

[D] Rotary gear shift dial

If **Setup > Vehicle > Lights > Ambient light** is selected from the infotainment system, you can adjust the brightness and select colour.

- If **Link to drive mode** is selected, the mood lamps change colour according to the selected drive mode.
- To turn off the mood lamps, set the brightness level to "0" in the infotainment system.

## Information

---

The colour of the mood lamp may seem different under some conditions depending on the colour of the interior and the set mood colour.

---

### Interior lights always on

The Interior Lights Always On function turns on the interior button lights regardless of the day or night condition.

You can enable the Interior Lights Always On function by selecting **Setup > Vehicle > Lights > Interior lights on** in the infotainment system.

After the function is enabled, the interior button lights are turned on or off in the following situations:

- When all doors are closed and locked, if you unlock the door, the interior button lights illuminate for about 5 minutes.
- When the vehicle is turned off, the interior button lights are turned on for about 5 minutes. At this time, if you open and close the door or lock the doors, the interior button lights are turned off immediately.

### Luggage compartment lamp



The luggage compartment lamp turns on when the tailgate is opened and off when the tailgate is closed.

The lamp turns off about 25 minutes after the car is turned off if the tailgate is not completely closed.



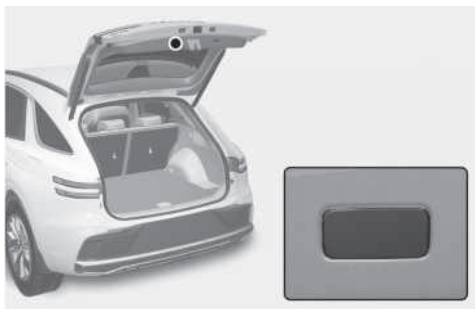
### CAUTION

---

After closing the tailgate, make sure it is completely closed. Otherwise, the battery may be discharged.

---

## Tailgate emergency lamp



The tailgate emergency lamp turns on when the tailgate is opened.

In case of emergency such as a vehicle breakdown, open the tailgate to inform surrounding vehicles of the emergency, and activate the emergency warning lights to prevent accidents.

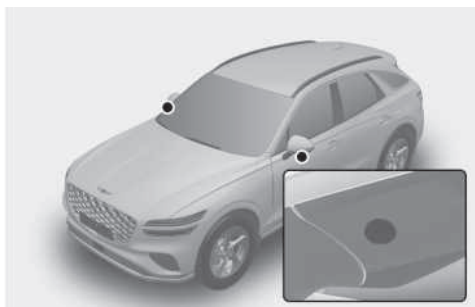
### Information

---

Keep the tailgate open when it is necessary, as it may cause battery discharge.

---

## Puddle light



### *Welcome light*

When all doors (and tailgate) are closed and locked, the puddle light turns on for 15 seconds if the door is unlocked by the smart key or when you put your hand in the outside door handle with the smart key in possession.

For more information, refer to the "**Welcome system**" section in this chapter.

### *Escort light*

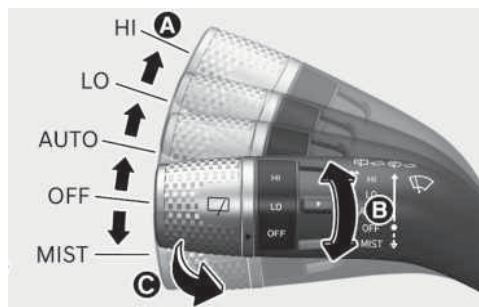
When the Engine Start/Stop button is in the OFF position and the driver's door is opened, the puddle light turns on for 30 seconds. If the driver's door is closed within the 30 second period, the puddle light turns off after 15 seconds. If the driver's door is closed and locked, the puddle light turns off immediately.

The Puddle Light escort light turns on only the first time the driver's door is opened after the engine is turned off.



## Wipers and washers

### Front windscreen wipers



[A] Wiper speed control

[B] Intermittent or Auto control wipe time adjustment

[C] Wash with brief wipes

Operates as follows when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position.

- **HI:** The wiper runs at a higher speed.
- **LO:** The wiper runs at a lower speed
- **AUTO:**

The rain sensor located on the upper end of the windscreen glass senses the amount of rainfall and controls the interval of the wiping cycle.

To change the sensitivity setting, turn the sensitivity control switch.

- **OFF:** Wipers are not in operation.
- **MIST:** For a single wiping cycle, push the lever down and release. The wipers operate continuously if the lever is held in this position.

### NOTICE

If there is heavy accumulation of snow or ice on the windscreen, defrost the windscreen for about 10 minutes, or until the snow and/or ice is removed to prevent damage to the wiper and washer system.

## ***AUTO (Automatic) control***



The rain sensor located on the upper end of the windscreen glass senses the amount of rainfall and controls the interval of the wiping cycle.

To change the sensitivity setting, turn the sensitivity control switch.

If the wiper switch is set in the AUTO mode when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position, the wiper operates once to perform a self-check of the system. Set the wiper to the **OFF** position when the wiper is not used.



### **WARNING**

---

To prevent personal injury:

- Do not touch the top of the windscreen glass near the rain sensor.
  - Do not wipe the top of the windscreen glass with a damp or wet cloth.
  - Do not put pressure on the windscreen glass.
- 

### **NOTICE**

---

To prevent damage:

- When washing the vehicle, set the wiper to the **OFF** position to stop the auto wiper operation.
  - Do not remove the sensor cover located on the top of the passenger side windscreen glass.
- 

## **Front windscreen washers**



In the **OFF** position, pull the lever gently toward you to spray washer fluid on the windscreen and to run the wipers 1-3 cycles. The spray and wiper operation continues until you release the lever. If the washer does not work, you may need to add washer fluid to the washer fluid reservoir.

### ***Recirculating air when washer fluid is used***

When washer fluid is used, in order to reduce any objectionable scent of the washer fluid from entering the cabin, recirculation mode and air conditioning are automatically activated depending on the outside temperature. If you select fresh mode whilst the function is operating, the function resumes after a certain amount of time. It may not work in some conditions such as cold weather or engine OFF.

For more information, refer to the "**Climate control additional features**" section in this chapter.



## **WARNING**

---

When the outside temperature is below freezing, always warm the windscreen using the defroster to help prevent the washer fluid from freezing on the windscreen and obscuring your vision that could lead to a collision and serious injury or death. Always use appropriate washer fluids in the winter season or cold weather.

---

## **NOTICE**

---

To prevent damage:

- Do not operate the washer when the fluid reservoir is empty or when the windscreen is dry.
  - Do not attempt to move the wipers manually.
- 

## **Rear window wiper and washer**

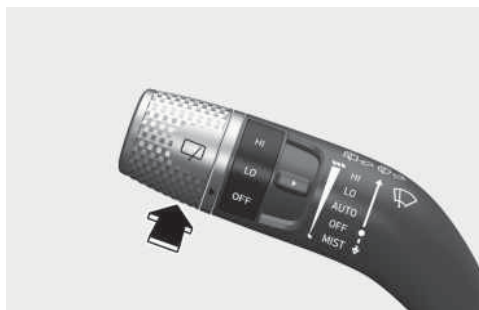


If equipped



The rear window wiper and washer switch is located at the end of the wiper and washer switch lever. Turn the switch to the desired position to operate the rear wiper and washer.

- **HI**: High wiper speed.
- **LO**: Low wiper speed.
- **OFF**: Off



Push the lever away from you to spray rear washer fluid and to run the rear wipers 1-3 cycles. The spray and wiper operation continues until you release the lever.

### ***Auto rear wiper***

The rear wiper operates whilst the vehicle is in reverse with the front wiper on by selecting the function from the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select:

- **Setup > Vehicle > Convenience > Auto rear wiper (reverse)**

### **Information**

---

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

---

## Automatic climate control system

### Front seat control



The actual shape of climate control system may differ from the illustration.

1. Driver's temperature control
2. Passenger's temperature control
3. Blower speed control
4. Driver's mode selection
5. Passenger's mode selection
6. AUTO (automatic control)
7. OFF (system off)
8. Front windscreen defroster
9. Air intake control
10. SYNC
11. Rear window defroster
12. Built in diffuser (if equipped)
13. A/C (air conditioning)
14. Clean air system
15. Rear control

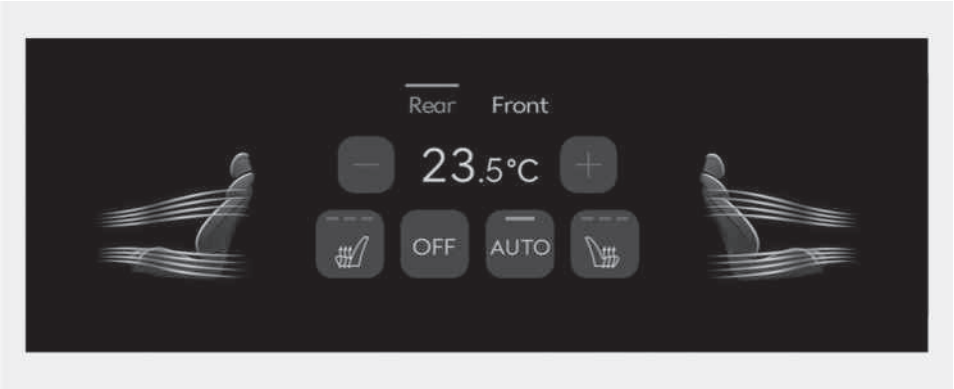
### Information

---

Use microfiber cloth when wiping fingerprints off the touchscreen.

---

*Rear seat control from the front*



The actual shape of climate control system may differ from the illustration.

- 1. Temperature control
- 2. Mode selection
- 3. AUTO
- 4. OFF

**Information**

Use microfiber cloth when wiping fingerprints off the touchscreen.

*Rear seat control*

**+** if equipped



The climate control system may differ depending on vehicle specification.

- 1. Blower speed control
- 2. Temperature control
- 3. OFF (system off)

4. AUTO (automatic control)
5. Mode selection
6. Blower speed display
7. Temperature display

## Information

---

- Temperature and Mode selection (air flow direction) can be controlled from the rear seat. However, if **Setup > Vehicle > Climate > Climate features > Lock the rear climate control** is selected, the rear climate control can be operated only from the front seat.
  - Use the climate control system with the engine running for more effectiveness of the system, and to prevent battery discharge.
- 

## Automatic heating and air conditioning

The Automatic Climate Control System is controlled by setting the desired temperature.

### 1 Press the **AUTO** button.

The mode selection, blower speed, air intake and air conditioning are controlled automatically by the temperature setting.

You can control the blower speed in three stages by pressing the **AUTO** button during automatic operation.

- High: Provides rapid air conditioning and heating with the maximum blower speed setting.
- Medium: Provides air conditioning and heating with the mid-level blower speed setting.
- Low: Blower speed is set to the lowest setting range.

### 2 Turn the temperature control knob to set the desired temperature. If the temperature is set to the lowest setting, the air conditioning system operates continuously. After the interior has cooled sufficiently, adjust the knob to a higher temperature set point whenever possible.

To turn off the automatic operation, select any button of the following buttons:

- Front windscreen defroster button (Press the button one more time to deselect the front windscreen defroster function. The "**AUTO**" illuminates on the information screen once again.)
- Blower speed control icon or knob
- **A/C** (air conditioning) icon

The selected function is controlled manually whilst other functions operate automatically.

For your convenience and to improve the effectiveness of the climate control, use the **AUTO** button and set the temperature to 22 °C (72 °F).



Never place anything near the sensor to ensure better control of the heating and cooling system.

---

### Manual heating and air conditioning

- 1 Start the engine.
- 2 Set the mode to the desired position.  
For improving the effectiveness of heating and cooling, select:
  - Heating: 
  - Cooling: 
- 3 Set the temperature control to the desired position.
- 4 Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.
- 5 Set the blower speed control to the desired speed.
- 6 If air conditioning is desired, turn on the air conditioning system.
- 7 Press the **AUTO** button to convert to full automatic control of the system.

### Mode selection

#### Front seat mode selection

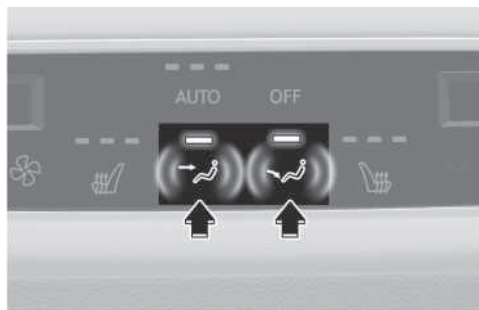


- Touch each air flow direction on the information screen to select the desired flow direction.



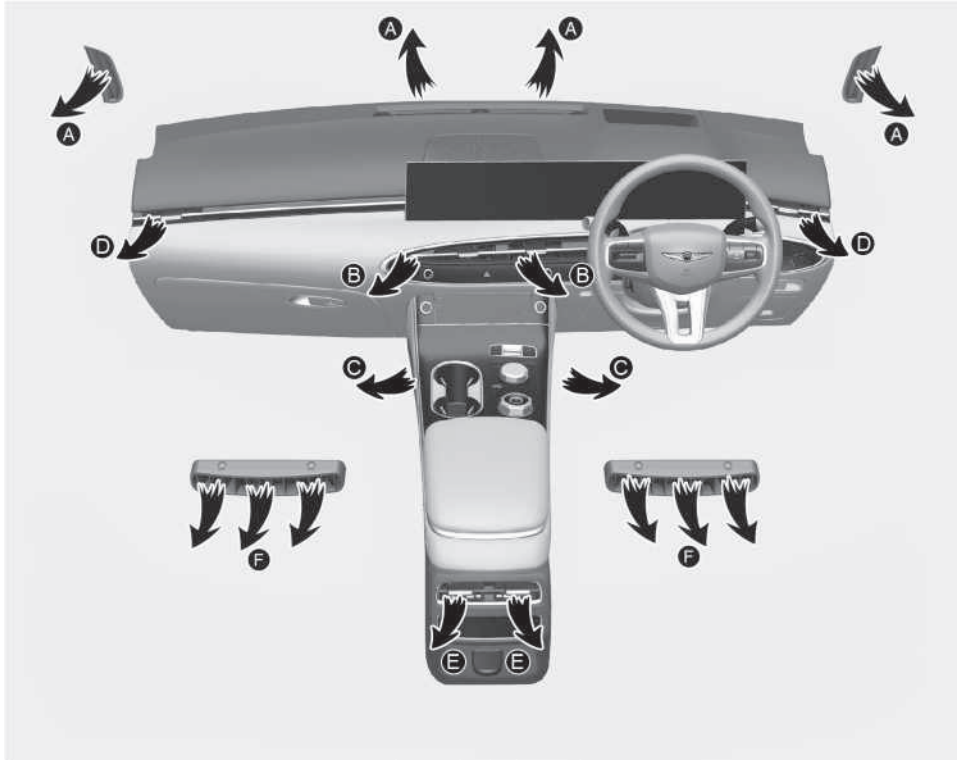
- Press the **SYNC** button and when the indicator light on the button turns off, the air flow direction of the driver's seat, passenger seat, and rear seats can be controlled individually. The front passenger and rear passenger seats cannot select  position.
- Touch **Rear** (1) to control the rear seat's mode selection from the front seats.
- You may select 2-3 modes at the same time.

#### Rear seat mode selection



- Press the button to select the direction of the air flow to the desired position.
- You may select 2 modes at the same time.

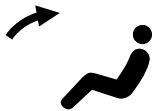
## Air flow direction



The mode selection icon or button controls the direction of the air flow through the ventilation system.

- **Front seat**

**Defrost (A, D)**



Most of the air flow is directed to the windscreen.

**Face-level (B, D)**



Air flow is directed toward the upper body and face. Additionally, each outlet can be controlled to direct the air discharged from the outlet.

### Floor-level (A, C)



Most of the air flow is directed to the floor, with a small amount of the air being directed to the windscreen and side window defrosters.

- **Rear seat**

### Face-level (E)



Air flow is directed toward the upper body and face.

### Floor-level (F)



Most of the air flow is directed to the floor.

### *Front windscreen defroster*



### Defrost-level (A, D)

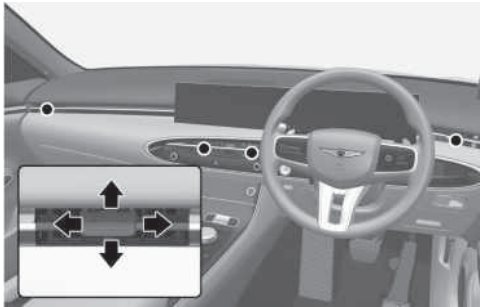
Press the button, and the indicator light on the button illuminates.

Most of the air flow is directed to the windscreen with a small amount of air directed to the side window defrosters.

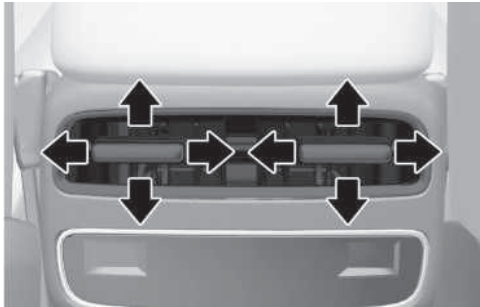
Press the button again, the indicator light turns off and the previous settings are selected.

*Instrument panel vents*

Front seat



Rear seat



The instrument panel vent air flow can be directed up/down or left/right using the vent adjustment lever.

The air flow can be closed using the vent adjustment lever.

Move the lever to ⊗ position to close, and to ☰ position to open.

*Temperature control*

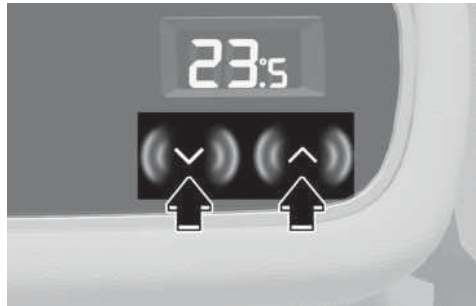
Front seat control from the front



Rear seat control from the front



Rear seat control



The temperature setting increases when you turn the knob to the right or press the  $\wedge$  arrow on the touchscreen.

The temperature setting decreases when you turn the knob to the left or press the  $\vee$  arrow on the touchscreen.

### Temperature conversion

If the battery has been discharged or disconnected, the temperature mode display is reset to Celsius.

To change the temperature unit from  $^{\circ}\text{C}$  to  $^{\circ}\text{F}$  or  $^{\circ}\text{F}$  to  $^{\circ}\text{C}$ :

- For infotainment system, select: **Setup > General > Units > Temperature unit >  $^{\circ}\text{C}/^{\circ}\text{F}$**
- For vehicles equipped with Automatic Climate Control, you can also:

Press the **A/C** button for 3 seconds, and then within 5 seconds press the driver's side face-level (→) position for more than 3 seconds.

Both the temperature unit on the instrument cluster and climate control information screen is changed.

## ***SYNC***



### **Adjusting the temperature, air flow direction, and blower speed equally**

Press the **SYNC** button from the front seat, (indicator light ON), to adjust the driver, front passenger, and rear passenger side temperature, air flow direction, and blower speed equally.

### **Adjusting the temperature, air flow direction, and blower speed individually**

Press the **SYNC** button (indicator light OFF) from the front seat again to adjust the driver, front passenger, and rear passenger side temperature, air flow direction, and blower speed individually.

## ***Air intake control***



To select outside (fresh) air or recirculated air, press this button.

### **Recirculated air position**



With the recirculated air selected, air from the passenger compartment is drawn through the climate control system.

## Outside (fresh) air position



With the outside (fresh) air selected, air enters the vehicle from outside and is drawn through the climate control system.

### Information

---

Using the system in the fresh air position is recommended.

Prolonged operation of the heater in the recirculated air position (without air conditioning selected) can cause fogging of the windscreen and side windows and the air within the passenger compartment will become stale.

In addition, prolonged use of the air conditioning with the recirculated air position selected will result in excessively dry air in the passenger compartment.

---



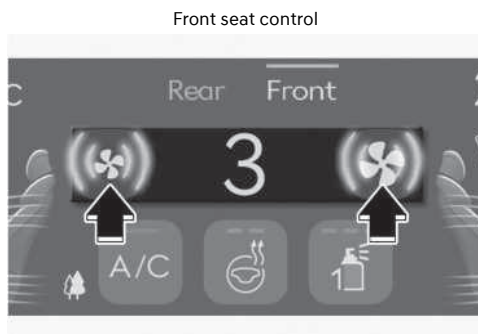
### WARNING

---

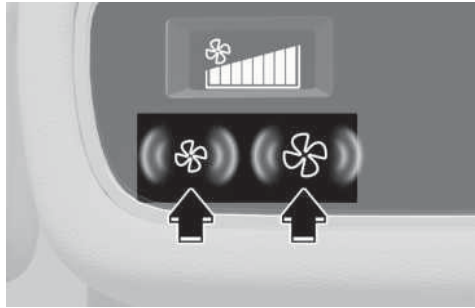
To prevent serious injury or death:

- Continued climate control system operation in the recirculated air position may allow humidity to increase inside the vehicle that could fog the windscreen and the side windows and obscure visibility.
  - Do not sleep in a vehicle with the air conditioning or heating system on.
  - Continued climate use of recirculated air may cause drowsiness or sleepiness, and loss of vehicle control. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position whilst driving.
- 

## Blower speed control



Rear seat control



Press the  button to increase blower speed and airflow. Press the  button to decrease blower speed and airflow.

Pressing the **OFF** button turns off the fan.

## NOTICE

Operating the fan when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the OFF position may cause the battery to discharge.

## *Air conditioning*



Press the **A/C** button to manually turn the air conditioning on (indicator light ON) and off.

## *Clean Air system*





The fine dust concentration in the cabin is measured by the fine dust sensor installed in the vehicle. The cabin air status is displayed on the screen.

If necessary, the system prevents contaminated air from entering the cabin and the cabin air filter purifies the cabin air by filtering the fine dust.

**Cabin air status display**

The air status is displayed in four levels when the climate control system turns on.

| Cabin air system    | Level displayed |        |        |           |                                                                                   |
|---------------------|-----------------|--------|--------|-----------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Cabin Air Condition | Good            | Normal | Poor   | Very poor | Operation Indicator                                                               |
|                     | Green           | Yellow | Orange | Red       |  |

**Information**

- The cabin air filter should be replaced every 15,000 km to maximise performance of the clean air system.
- If the vehicle is being driven in an inner-city area with high air pollution or severe conditions such as dusty or rough roads or the indoor fine dust concentration is not presented as Good on the screen due to prolonged heavy fine dust, more frequent cabin air filter changes are required than every 15,000 km.
  - Driving in an inner-city area with high air pollution
  - Frequently driving on dusty or rough roads
  - Prolong air pollution such as fine dust
- We recommend using genuine cabin air filter to maintain the optimal performance of the clean air system.
- The dust concentration level measured inside the vehicle is in real-time. The measured value differs from the dust concentration in the atmosphere.
- The displayed level may differ depending on the measurement method or location. The displayed levels are for reference only.

**Built in diffuser**

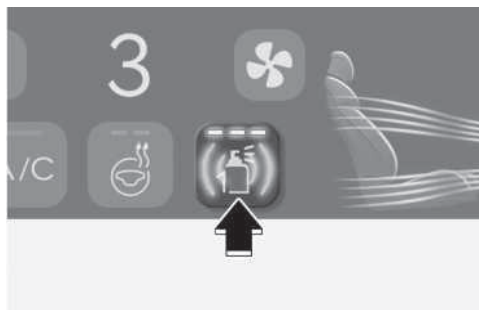
 if equipped

3 types of fragrances are provided. The fragrance type is automatically recognised when the cartridge is installed.

**Diffuser setting**

Fragrance and its intensity can be set as follows in the infotainment system:

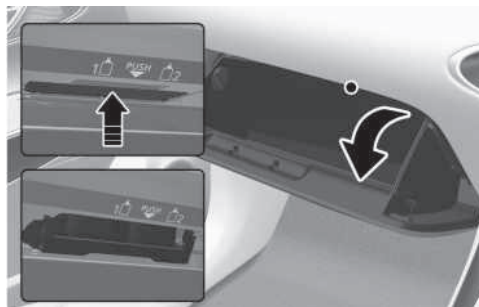
- **Setup > Vehicle > Climate > Fragrance > Intensity/Scent**



Press  button to select the desired fragrance intensity.

- Intensity can be selected among Strong, Medium, and Light. Pressing the button each time changes the intensity in the order of Strong, Medium, Light and Off.
- The fragrance cannot be selected with the button. Fragrance can only be selected from the settings menu in the infotainment system.

### Replacing cartridges



- 1 Turn the engine off, and open the glove box.
- 2 Press the upper part of the diffuser tray.
- 3 Replace the cartridge.

### Information

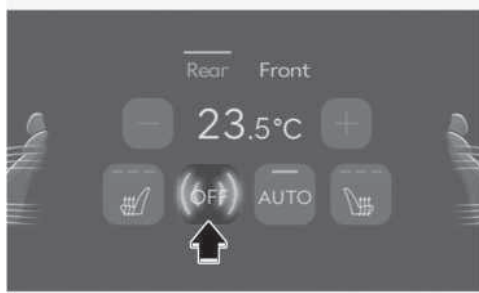
---

- For smooth operation of the diffuser, it is recommended to install 2 cartridges.
  - If the cartridge is empty or has been used for about one year or more replace with a new cartridge.
  - The built-in diffuser may not work if the cartridge is not installed properly. Check whether the cartridge is installed properly.
-

Front seat control from the front



Rear seat control from the front



Rear seat control



Press the **OFF** button to turn off the climate control system. You can still operate the mode buttons and air intake buttons as long as the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position.

- If OFF is pressed from the front seat, the front and rear climate control systems turn off.
- If OFF is pressed from the rear seat, only the rear climate control system turns off.

## System operation

### *Cooling/Ventilation*

- 1 Set the mode to the  position.
- 2 Set the air intake control the outside (fresh) air or recirculated air position.
- 3 Set the temperature control to the desired position.
- 4 Set the blower speed control to the desired speed.

### *Heating*

- 1 Set the mode to the  position.
- 2 Set the air intake control the outside (fresh) air or recirculated air position.
- 3 Set the temperature control to the desired position.
- 4 Set the blower speed control to the desired speed.
- 5 If desired, turn the air conditioning ON with the temperature control knob set to heat in order to dehumidify the air before it enters into the cabin.

If the windscreen fogs up, set the mode to the  position.

### *Operation Tips*

- To keep dust or unpleasant fumes from entering the vehicle through the ventilation system, temporarily set the air intake control to the recirculated air position. Return the control to the outside (fresh) air position when the unpleasant air outside has diminished. This can help keep the driver alert and comfortable.
- To help prevent the inside of the windscreen from fogging, set the air intake control to outside (fresh) air position and the blower speed to the desired position, turn on the air conditioning system, and adjust the temperature control to the desired temperature.

### *Air conditioning*

- 1 Start the engine. Press the air conditioning button.
- 2 Set the mode to the  position.
- 3 Set the air intake control to the recirculated air position temporarily to allow the cabin to cool quickly. When the desired temperature in the cabin is reached, change the air intake control back to the outside (fresh) air position.
- 4 Adjust the blower speed control and temperature control to as desired.

### **NOTICE**

- When using the air conditioning system, monitor the temperature gauge closely whilst driving up hills or in heavy traffic when outside temperatures are high. Continue to use the fan but turn off the air conditioning system if the temperature gauge indicates the engine is overheating.
- Always use the air conditioning with the windows closed. In humid weather, if the windows are open and the air conditioning is running, water droplets may form inside the vehicle and potentially damage electrical equipment.

### Air conditioning system operation tips

- If the vehicle has been parked in direct sunlight during hot weather, open the windows for a short time to let the hot air inside the vehicle escape.
- After sufficient cooling has been achieved, switch back from the recirculated air position to the outside (fresh) air position.
- To help reduce moisture inside of the windows on rainy or humid days, decrease the humidity inside the vehicle by operating the air conditioning system with the windows and sunroof closed.
- Use the air conditioning system every month only for a few minutes to ensure maximum system performance.
- If you operate air conditioner excessively, the difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windscreen may cause the outer surface of the windscreen to fog up, causing loss of visibility. In this case, set the mode selection to the  position and blower speed control to the lowest speed.

## System maintenance

### *Cabin air filter*

The cabin air filter is installed behind the glove box. It filters the dust or other pollutants that enter the vehicle through the heating and air conditioning system.

We recommend that the cabin air filter be replaced by an authorised Genesis repairer according to the maintenance schedule. If the vehicle is being driven in severe conditions such as dusty or rough roads, more frequent cabin air filter inspections and changes are required.

### *Checking the amount of air conditioner refrigerant and compressor lubricant*

If the amount of refrigerant is too low or too high, the performance of the air conditioning is reduced. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

## NOTICE

---

The refrigerant system should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians in a well-ventilated area to ensure proper and safe operation.

---

## WARNING

---

### Vehicles equipped with R-134a

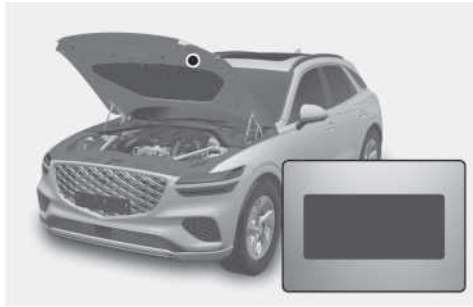


To prevent serious injury, have the air conditioning system be serviced by only trained and certified technicians. R-134a is operated at high pressure.

Reclaim all refrigerants with proper equipment. Venting refrigerants directly to the atmosphere is harmful to individuals and the environment.

---

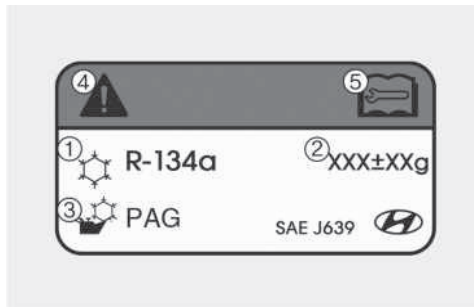
## Air Conditioning refrigerant label



You can find out which air conditioning refrigerant is applied to your vehicle on the label located inside of the hood.

Each symbols and specification on the air conditioning refrigerant label is represented as below:

Example



1. Classification of refrigerant
2. Amount of refrigerant
3. Classification of compressor lubricant
4. Caution
5. Service manual

## Windscreen defrosting and defogging

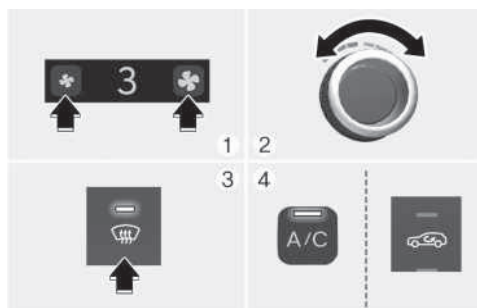


### WARNING

Do not use the defrost-level (🌀) position during the cooling operation in extremely humid weather. The outer surface of the windscreen may fog and reduce visibility, causing a collision that results in serious injury or death. Set the mode selection button to the face-level (👤) position and blower speed control knob to a lower speed.

- For maximum defrost performance, set the temperature control to the highest temperature setting and the blower speed control to the highest setting.
- If warm air to the floor is desired whilst defrosting or defogging, select the floor-defrost position.
- Before driving, clear all snow and ice from the windscreen, rear window, outside rearview mirrors, and all side windows.
- Clear all snow and ice from the bonnet and air inlet to improve heater and defroster efficiency and to reduce the probability of fogging up the inside of the windscreen.

### To defog inside windscreen



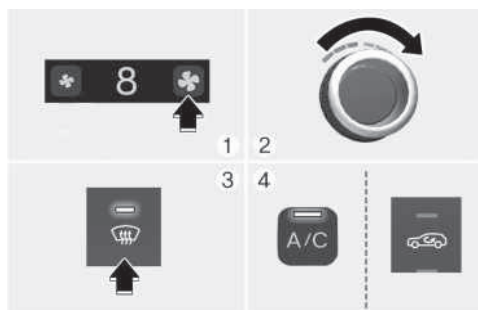
- 1 Select the desired blower speed.
- 2 Select the desired temperature.
- 3 Press the defroster (🌀) button.

The air conditioning turns on according to the detected ambient temperature, the outside (fresh) air position and higher blower speed are selected automatically.

If the air conditioning, outside (fresh) air position and higher blower speed are not selected automatically, adjust the corresponding button or knob.

If the defrost-level (🌀) position is selected, lower blower speed is adjusted to higher blower speed.

## To defrost outside windscreen



- 1 Set the blower speed to the highest position.
- 2 Set the temperature to the hottest position.
- 3 Press the defroster  button.

The air conditioning turns on according to the detected ambient temperature and the outside (fresh) air position is selected automatically.

If the front defrost-level  position is selected, lower blower speed is adjusted to a higher blower speed.

## Rear window defroster

### NOTICE

---

Never use sharp instruments or window cleaners containing abrasives to clean the window to prevent damage to the rear window defroster.

---



The defroster heats the window to remove frost, fog, and thin ice from the interior and exterior of the rear window, whilst the engine is running.

- To activate it press the rear window defroster button located in the centre control panel. The indicator on the rear window defroster button illuminates when the defroster is ON.
- To turn it off press the rear window defroster button again.



## Information

---

- If there is heavy accumulation of snow on the rear window, brush it off before operating the rear defroster.
  - The rear window defroster automatically turns off after about 20 minutes or when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the OFF position.
- 

### ***Outside rearview mirrors defroster***

The outside rear-view mirror defrosters operate when you turn on the rear window defroster.

## Climate control additional features

### Information

---

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

---

### Air conditioning auto-drying

 If equipped

The Air Conditioner Auto Drying feature dries the moisture in the air conditioning and reduces air conditioning odour. The blower motor automatically operates after 30 minutes the engine is turned off.

#### *Turning Air Conditioning Auto Drying on or off*

The Air Conditioning Auto Drying feature can be turned on and off by selecting **Setup > Vehicle > Climate > Air conditioner auto drying**.

If the operating conditions are satisfied after setting the feature, the operating condition appears on the infotainment system and the blower motor automatically operates.

When the Air Conditioning Auto Drying feature is activated, the air conditioning sets the blower speed to the third level, selects outside (fresh) air position, and directs the air flow to the upper body and face.

#### **Operating conditions**

- The engine is turned off after operating the air conditioning for a certain period.
- The battery level is sufficient and the outside temperature is above a certain level.

#### **Non-operating conditions**

- The Air Conditioning Auto Drying feature has operated for 10 minutes.
- The Engine Start/Stop button is pressed, or the engine is on.
- The climate control system is operated remotely.

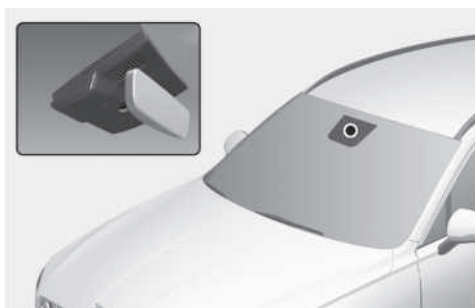
### Information

---

The Air Conditioning Auto Drying feature reduces air conditioning odours but may not remove all odours.

---

### Auto defogging system



Auto defogging helps reduce the likelihood of fogging up the inside of the windscreen by sensing the moisture on the inside of the windscreen.

The Auto Defogging system operates when the heater or air conditioning is on.

## Information

---

The Auto Defogging system may not operate normally, when the outside temperature is below -15 °C (5 °F).

---



If high amount of humidity is detected in the vehicle, the Auto Defogging system is enabled.

The following steps are performed automatically:

- 1 Air conditioning turns on and outside (fresh) air is selected.
- 2 Defrost-level is selected.
- 3 Blower speed is set to MAX.

### *Turning the Auto Defogging System ON or OFF*

#### **Climate control system**

Press the front windscreen defroster button for 3 seconds when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position to turn the system on or off.

To check whether the system is on or off, go to the settings menu in the infotainment system and see if **Auto defog** is selected or not.

#### **Infotainment system**

Auto Defogging system can be turned on and off by selecting **Setup > Vehicle > Climate > Defog/Defrost options > Auto defog** from the Settings menu.

## Information

---

- Do not select recirculated air whilst the Auto defogging system is operating.
  - When Auto Defogging system is operating, blower speed adjustment, temperature adjustment, and air intake control selection are all disabled.
- 

## NOTICE

---

Do not remove the sensor cover located on the top of the windscreen glass. Damage may not be covered by your vehicle warranty.

---

## Auto dehumidify

 if equipped

Recirculated air position switches off automatically after about 5 to 30 minutes, depending on the outside temperature, and the air intake will change to outside (fresh) air position.

### *Turning Auto Dehumidify ON or OFF*

#### Climate control system

To turn the Auto Dehumidify feature on or off, select face-level (↖) position and press the air intake control (🌀) button at least five times within three seconds. When Auto Dehumidify is turned on, the air intake control button indicator blinks 6 times. When turned off, the indicator blinks 3 times.

#### Infotainment system

Auto Dehumidify can be turned on and off by selecting **Setup > Vehicle > Climate > Automatic ventilation > Automatic dehumidify** from the Settings menu.

### Recirculating air when washer fluid is used

Recirculated air position automatically activates to reduce the scent of the washer fluid entering the cabin when the windscreen washer is used.

However, in cold weather to prevent the windscreen from fogging up, the recirculated air position may not be selected.

### *Turning Activate upon Washer Fluid Use ON or OFF*

#### Climate control system

To turn the Activate upon Washer Fluid Use feature on or off, select floor-level (↘) position, and then press the air intake control (🌀) button five times within three seconds. When Activate upon Washer Fluid Use ON is turned on, the air intake control button indicator blinks 6 times. When turned off, the indicator blinks 3 times.

#### Infotainment system

Activate upon Washer Fluid Use can be turned on and off by selecting **Setup > Vehicle > Climate > Recirculate air > Activation on washer fluid use** from the Settings menu.

### Sunroof inside air recirculation

 if equipped

When the sunroof is opened, the outside (fresh) air position is automatically selected. If you press the air intake control button, the recirculated air position is selected but changes back to the outside (fresh) air position after 3 minutes. When the sunroof is closed, the air intake position returns to the previous position.

### Automatic controls linked to climate control settings (for driver's seat)

The temperature of the driver's seat warmer, the air ventilated seat, and heated steering wheel is automatically controlled depending on the inside and outside temperature of the vehicle when the engine is running.

To use these features, it can be enable the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select:

- **Setup > Vehicle > Seat > Heating/Ventilation > Automatic controls linked to climate control settings**

For more information on Auto Comfort Control, refer to the "**Seat warmers**" and "**Air ventilation seats**" sections in chapter 3 and "**Heated steering wheel**" section in chapter 5.

## **Recirculating air when entering a tunnel**

 if equipped

To prevent the inflow of polluted air into the vehicle when passing through a tunnel, this function automatically closes the windows and switches the climate control system to recirculated air position for about 7 seconds before entering a tunnel based on the map information of the navigation and the speed of the vehicle.

The windows automatically close before entering a tunnel and area requiring air recirculation. The windows open to the previous position after passing through the area. If the power window switch is operated before the window opens, the window does not open to the previous position.

To use this feature, it can be enabled from the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select:

- **Setup > Vehicle > Climate > Recirculate air > When entering tunnels**

### ***Operating conditions***

One or more of the windows are open or outside (fresh) air position is selected.

### **Information**

---

- The activation time for the function may differ depending on the gap between the GPS data and vehicle speed.
  - The function activates until you have passed through continuous tunnels.
  - When entering a tunnel, recirculated air position may cause fogging of the windscreen. Press the windscreen defroster button.
  - The function does not operate in short tunnels.
  - The function may not activate if the GPS is not working properly.
-

## Storage compartment



### WARNING

Never store cigarette lighters, propane cylinders, or other flammable/explosive materials in the vehicle. These items may catch fire and/or explode if the vehicle is exposed to hot temperatures for an extended period of time.



### WARNING

Always keep the storage compartment covers closed securely whilst driving. Items inside your vehicle are moving as fast as the vehicle. If you have to stop or turn quickly, or if there is a crash, the items may fly out of the compartment and may cause an injury if they strike the driver or a passengers.

### NOTICE

To avoid possible theft, do not leave valuables in the storage compartments.

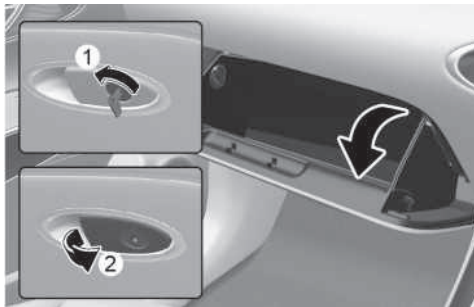
## Centre console storage



To open:

Press the button.

## Glove box



The glove box can be locked and unlocked with the mechanical key (1).

To open:

Pull the lever (2).

### **WARNING**

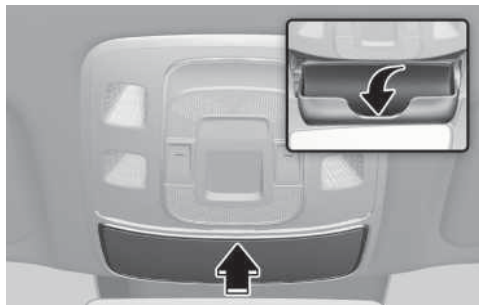
---

Always close the glove box door after use.

An open glove box door may cause serious injury to a passenger in a collision, even if the passenger is wearing a seat belt.

---

## **Sunglasses holder**



To open:

Push and release the cover and the holder will slowly open. Place your sunglasses in the compartment door with the lenses facing out.

To close:

Push back into position.

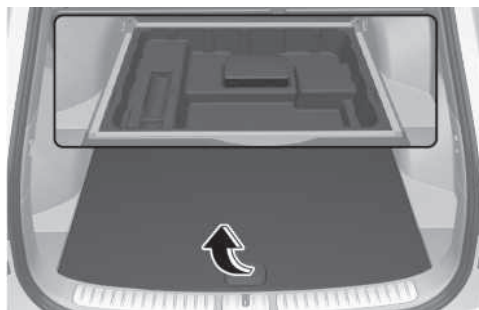
Make sure the sunglasses holder is closed whilst driving.

### **WARNING**

---

- Do not keep objects except sunglasses inside the sunglasses holder. Such objects can be thrown from the holder in the event of a sudden stop or an accident, possibly injuring the passengers in the vehicle.
  - Do not open the sunglasses holder whilst the vehicle is moving. The rear view mirror of the vehicle can be blocked by an open sunglasses holder.
  - Do not put the glasses forcibly into a sunglasses holder. It may cause personal injury if you try to open it forcibly when the glasses are jammed in the holder.
-

## Luggage tray



You can place a first aid kit, a reflector triangle (front tray), tools, etc. in the box for easy access.

- Grasp the handle on the top of the cover and lift it.



## Interior features

### Cup holder

Front



Rear



Cups or small beverages cups may be placed in the cup holders.



#### **WARNING**

- Avoid abrupt starting and braking when the cup holder is used to prevent spilling your drink. If hot liquid spills, you may be burned. Such a burn to the driver may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in a collision.
- Do not place uncovered or unsecured cups, bottles, cans, etc., in the cup holder containing hot liquid whilst the vehicle is moving.
- Only use soft cups in the cup holders.

#### **NOTICE**

- Keep your drinks sealed whilst driving to prevent spilling. If spilled, it may damage the vehicle's electrical/electronic system.
- When cleaning spilled liquids, do not use hot air to blow out or dry the cup holder.
- Keep cans or bottles out of direct sun light and do not put them in a hot vehicle. Otherwise, they may explode.

## UV-C sterilizer system

 if equipped



1. Console storage button
2. UV-C sterilizer system button
3. UV-C sterilizer system indicator

The centre console storage is equipped with an antibacterial sterilization system for personal belongings.

### **WARNING**

- Press the button to turn UV-C function off when it is not in use. Being exposed to ultraviolet rays from UV-C LED may be harmful to your skin and eyes.
- Do not place magnetic items (magnets, etc.) near the upper part of the UV-C storage box. It may cause malfunction to the UV-C sensor and unnecessarily operate the UV-C function.

### **NOTICE**

- Press the button to turn UV-C function off when it is not in use. Prolonged exposure under ultraviolet rays may change the colour and shape of the object.
- Do not sterilize food. Food cannot be sterilized. Prolonged exposure to ultraviolet rays may damage the wrapping or container and affect the food inside.

### ***Using UV-C sterilizer system***

Place the item in the UV-C storage box and turn it on. Within 10 minutes, up to 99.9 % of germs on the surface can be removed.

- 1 Open the UV-C storage box whilst the engine is running.
- 2 Press the button inside the storage box.
  - UV-C sterilizer system indicator light illuminates.
  - Antibacterial tray is ready to operate.
- 3 Place the item in the centre inside the storage box and close the cover.
  - UV-C indicator light illuminates.
  - UV-C LED is turned on and sterilization begins.

- After 10 minutes, the UV-C indicator light turns off as sterilization is complete.
- Press the UV-C sterilizer system button to turn off the function, after you are finished using the system.

### Information

- Only place the item which requires sterilization. Storing other items in the storage box may reduce the sterilization effect.
- UV-C sterilizer system does not guarantee 99.9 % sterilization. The sterilization effect varies depending on the degree of exposure to UV-C light and the shape of the item. For effective use, change the position of the item and run additional sterilization.
- If the UV-C indicator light blinks or does not operate properly, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

### Unit item verification number

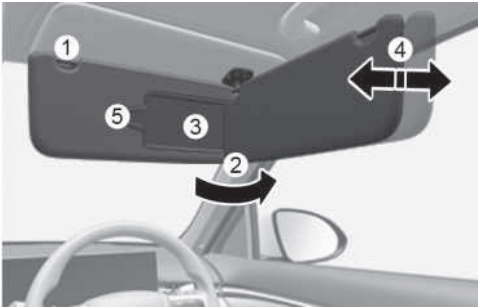
| Unit item verification number                                                      |          |                                          |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|------------------------------------------|
|   | Type A   | Registration Number: R-R-HdG-89910-T4AHO |
|                                                                                    | Type B   | Registration Number: R-R-EpS-846R0-T4000 |
|   | Type A   | DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY                |
|    | Type A   | ESTABLISHMENT NUMBER: 100891-KOR-1       |
|   | Type A   | LISTING NUMBER: E115351                  |
|  | Type A/B | DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY                |

- This appliance is not intended for use by persons (including children) with reduced physical, sensory or mental capabilities, or lack of experience and knowledge, unless they have been given supervision or instruction concerning use of the appliance by a person responsible for their safety.
- This appliance complies with the applicable standards and regulations (Low Voltage Directive, Electromagnetic Compatibility, Environmental, etc.).
- This product uses the vehicle's battery voltage and should be used only at DC 9 V-16 V.

### WARNING

This product emits ultraviolet rays. Do not gaze upon the UV rays whilst using the product. Exposing the eyes or skin to UV rays may have harmful effect to the body.

# Sunvisor



To use the sunvisor, pull it downward.

To use the sunvisor to block the sun from the side window, pull it downward, release it from the bracket (1) and swing it to the side (2) toward the window.

To use the vanity mirror, pull down the sunvisor and slide the mirror cover (3).

Adjust the sunvisor forward or rearward (4) as needed. Use the ticket holder (5) to hold tickets.

Close the vanity mirror cover securely and return the sunvisor to its original position after use.

 **WARNING**

---

Do not block your view when using the sunvisor.

---

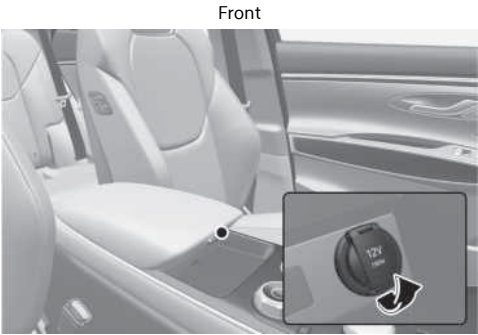
**NOTICE**

---

The tab (5) adjacent to the vanity mirror on the sunvisor can be used for toll road tickets or self parking tickets. Use caution when inserting tickets into the ticket holder to avoid damage. Refrain from putting several tickets in the ticket holder as this could also damage the retaining tab.

---

# Power outlet



#### Luggage compartment



The power outlet is designed to provide power for mobile phones or other devices designed to operate with vehicle electrical systems. The devices should draw less than 12 V, 180 W with the engine running.



#### **WARNING**

---

Avoid electrical shocks. Do not place your fingers or foreign objects (pin, etc.) into a power outlet or touch the power outlet with a wet hand.

---

#### **NOTICE**

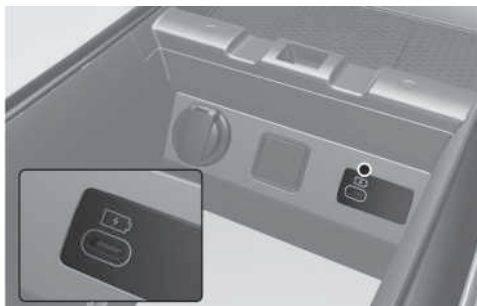
---

To prevent damage to the power outlets:

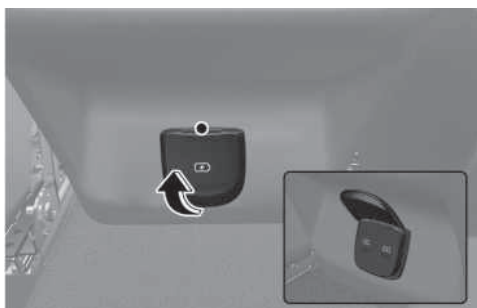
- Use the power outlet only when the engine is running and remove the accessory plug after use. Using the accessory plug for an extended period of time with the engine off may cause the battery to discharge.
  - Only use 12 V electric accessories that are less than 180 W in the electric capacity.
  - Adjust the air conditioning or heating to the lowest operating level when using the power outlet.
  - Close the cover when not used.
  - Some electronic devices may cause electronic interference when plugged into a vehicle's power outlet. These devices may cause excessive audio static and malfunctions in other electronic systems or devices used in your vehicle.
  - Push the plug in as far as it goes, otherwise the plug may overheat and the fuse may open.
  - Only connect devices with reverse current protection or the current from the device battery may cause the vehicle's electrical/electronic system to malfunction.
-

## USB charger

Front



Rear



The USB charger is designed to recharge batteries of small size electronic devices using a USB cable.

The electrical devices can be charged whilst the engine is running.

### Information

---

- The battery charging state may be monitored on the electronic device.
  - Disconnect the USB cable from the USB port after use.
  - A smartphone or a tablet PC that does not use a USB cable to charge should be charged using its own charger.
  - Do not attempt to use the charging terminal to turn ON an audio or to play media with the infotainment system.
  - Charging may not be possible when using a Type-C to A converter sold by a mobile phone manufacturer or commercially available.
-

## NOTICE

---

- Use the USB charger when the engine is running. Using USB charger for prolonged periods of time with the engine off may cause the battery to discharge.
  - To prevent damage to the USB charger:
    - Do not insert foreign objects or spill liquid into the outlet. The USB charging terminal may be damaged.
    - Do not use devices with working current exceeding 2,100 mA (2.1 A).
- 

## Wireless smartphone charging system

 if equipped



[A] Indicator light

[B] Charging pad

### *Charging your smartphone*

The wireless smartphone charging system charges only the Qi-enabled smartphones (Φ). Visit your smartphone manufacturer's website to check whether your smartphone supports the Qi technology.

The wireless charging process starts when you put a Qi-enabled smartphone on the wireless charging unit.

- 1 The wireless smartphone charger is available when all doors are closed, and when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON or START position.
- 2 Turn on the wireless charging function in the infotainment system. Select:
  - **Setup > Vehicle > Convenience > Wireless charging system for mobile devices**
- 3 Set the indicator type to be displayed when a smartphone is being charged. Select:
  - **Setup > Vehicle > Convenience > Mobile phone wireless charging indicator**
- 4 Place the smartphone on the centre of the wireless charging pad. The indicator light is displayed depending on the type selected whilst the smartphone is being charged.

## Information

---

- Remove other items, including the smart key from the wireless charging pad.
  - For flip type smartphones, when using wireless charging, place the smartphone folded with the device's back placed on the centre of the wireless charging unit.
-

If your smartphone is not charging:

- Move the smartphone on the charging pad.
- Make sure the indicator light is orange.

The indicator light will blink orange for 10 seconds if there is a malfunction in the wireless charging system.

The system warns you with a chime if the smartphone is still on the wireless charging pad after the engine is turned OFF and the front door is opened.



## NOTICE

---

- The wireless smartphone charging system may not support certain smartphones, that do not meet the Qi specification (Φ).
- When placing your smartphone on the charging pad, position the phone in the middle of the mat for optimal charging performance. If your smartphone is off to the side, the charging rate may be less and in some cases the smartphone may experience higher heat conduction.
- The wireless charging may stop temporarily when the smart key is used, either when starting the vehicle or locking/unlocking the doors, etc.
- For some manufacturer's smartphones, the system may not warn you even though the smartphone is left on the wireless charging unit. This is due to the particular characteristic of the smartphone and not a malfunction of the wireless charging.
- When charging certain smartphones, the charging indicator may not change to blue when the smartphone is fully charged.
- The wireless charging process may temporarily stop, when temperature abnormally increases inside the wireless smartphone charging system. The wireless charging process does not restart, until the temperature falls.
- The wireless charging process may temporarily stop when there is any metallic item, such as a coin, between the wireless smartphone charging system and smartphone.
- When using a smartphone application (such as Android Auto) whilst charging, charging may be delayed or stopped. This is not a problem with the wireless charging system but is caused by the smartphone overheating. Please remove the smartphone from the charging pad.
- If the smartphone has a thick case, it may not charge.
- If the smartphone is not completely contacting the charging pad, wireless charging may not operate properly.
- Some magnetic items like credit cards, phone cards, or transit cards may be damaged if left with the smartphone during the charging process.
- When any smartphone without a wireless charging function or a metallic object is placed on the charging pad, a small noise may sound. This small sound because the vehicle discerns compatibility of the object placed on the charging pad. It does not affect your vehicle or the smartphone in any way.
- If the Engine Start/Stop button is in the OFF position, the charging stops.
- Some smartphones may not be able to charge depending on the internal structure of the smartphone. If this occurs, try charging the smartphone by moving it to the left or right side of the wireless charging pad. However, for some foldable smartphones that have magnets inside the smartphone, try charging the smartphone whilst holding it close to the left side of the wireless charging pad.

---

## Clock

The clock can be set from the infotainment system.

## Information

---

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

---



## WARNING

---

Do not attempt to adjust the clock whilst driving.

---

### Coat hook



These hooks are not designed to hold large or heavy items.



## WARNING

---



Only hang soft clothing without heavy, sharp or breakable objects in the pockets. In a collision or when the curtain airbag is inflated, the objects could move and cause serious injury.

---

### Floor mat anchors

ALWAYS use the Floor Mat Anchors to attach the front floor mats to the vehicle and prevent the mats from sliding forward.

## **WARNING**

---

To prevent serious injury or death from a floor mat interfering with the brake or accelerator pedals:

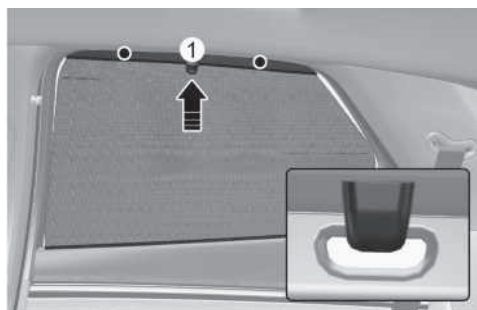
- Remove any protective film on the carpet before installing a floor mat.
  - Check floor mats are securely attached to the vehicle's floor mat anchor(s) before driving.
  - Do not use ANY floor mat that cannot be firmly attached to the vehicle's floor mat anchors.
  - Do not stack floor mats on top of another mat (e.g. all weather rubber mat on top of a carpeted floor mat). Only a single floor mat should be installed in each position.
  - To avoid any interference with pedal operation, install only Genesis floor mats designed for use in your vehicle.
- 

## **Rear side window sunshades**

 **if equipped**

Use the rear side window sunshade to block external light coming through the rear window glass.

### ***Manual sunshades***



- 1 Lift the sunshade by the handle (1).
- 2 Hang the sunshade on both sides of the hook. If the sunshade is hung on one side of the hook, the sunshade may become wrinkled.

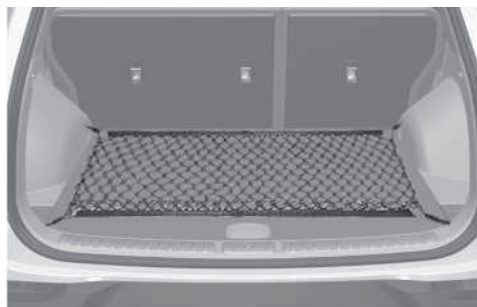
## **NOTICE**

---

- Do not hang any other object except the rear side window sunshade on the hooks.
  - If you pull the rear side window sunshade or apply force to return the sunshade to its original position after use, you may find the sunshade wrinkled or out of shape. To lower the sunshade, be sure to put the handle downward and slowly return the sunshade to its original position.
  - Sunshades may not work properly if foreign objects (coins, toys, cookies, etc.) are stuck in the door. Be careful that the foreign objects do not get into the door.
-

## Luggage net holder

 if equipped



To keep items from shifting in the luggage compartment use the 4 holders located in the luggage compartment side trim to attach the luggage net.

Make sure the luggage net is securely attached to the holders in the luggage board.

If necessary, we recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer to obtain a luggage net.

### **WARNING**

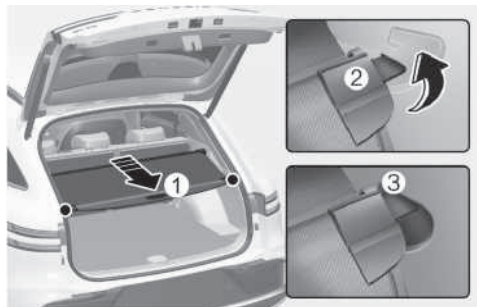
Avoid eye injury. Do not overstretch the luggage net. Always keep your face and body out of the luggage net's recoil path. Do not use the luggage net when the strap has visible signs of wear or damage.

- Use the luggage net to keep only light items from shifting in the luggage compartment.

## Luggage security screen

 if equipped

### *Using the luggage security screen*



- 1 Pull the luggage security screen towards the rear of the vehicle by the handle (1).
- 2 Insert the guide pin (2) into the guides on both sides (3).

## Information

---

Pull out the luggage security screen with the handle in the centre to prevent the guide pin from falling out of the guide.

---

### **When the luggage security screen is not use:**

Pull the luggage security screen rearward and up to release it from the guides.

The luggage security screen automatically slides back in.

## Information

---

The luggage security screen may not automatically slide back in if the luggage security screen is not fully pulled out. Pull the luggage screen out all the way and then slowly allow the screen to retract back in.

---

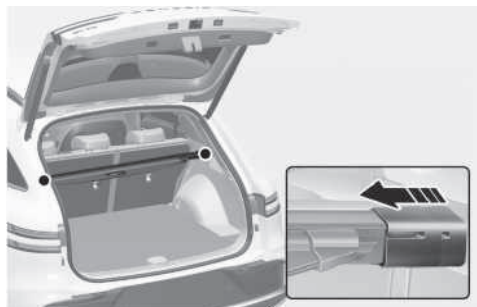


## WARNING

---

- Do not place objects on the luggage security screen. Such objects may be thrown about inside the vehicle and possibly injure vehicle occupants during a collision or when braking.
  - Never allow anyone to travel in the luggage compartment.
- 

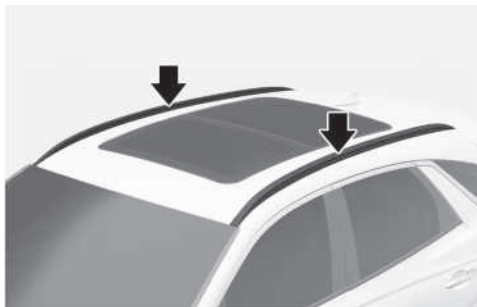
### ***Removing the luggage security screen***



- 1 Push one side of the luggage screen inward to compress the spring and then release the screen from the vehicle.
- 2 Whilst the spring is compressed, pull out the luggage security screen.
- 3 Open the luggage tray and keep the luggage security screen in the tray.

## Exterior features

### Roof side rails



If your vehicle comes with roof side rails, then roof side rails crossbars can be installed on top of your vehicle.

The roof side rails crossbars are an accessory and are available at your local authorised Genesis repairer.

#### NOTICE

---

If the vehicle is equipped with a sunroof, be sure not to position luggage onto the roof side rails in such a way that it could interfere with sunroof operation.

---

#### NOTICE

---

- When carrying luggage on the roof side rails, take the necessary precautions to make sure the luggage does not damage the roof of the vehicle.
  - When carrying large objects on the roof side rails, make sure they do not exceed the overall roof length or width.
-



## WARNING

---

- Distribute the load as evenly as possible onto the roof side rails and secure the load firmly.  
Loading luggage or luggage in excess of the specified weight limit on the roof side rails may damage your vehicle.
  - The vehicle centre of gravity will be higher when items are loaded onto the roof side rails. Avoid sudden starts, braking, sharp turns, abrupt manoeuvres or high speeds that may result in loss of vehicle control or rollover resulting in an accident.
  - Always drive slowly and turn corners carefully when carrying items on the roof side rails. Severe wind updrafts, caused by passing vehicles or natural causes, can cause sudden upward pressure on items loaded on the roof side rails. This is especially true when carrying large, flat items such as wood panels or mattresses. This could cause the items to fall off the roof side rails and cause damage to your vehicle or others around you.
  - To prevent damage or loss of luggage whilst driving, check frequently before or whilst driving to make sure the items on the roof side rails are securely fastened.
-

## Infotainment system

### NOTICE

---

Do not install aftermarket HID headlamps. Your vehicle's audio and electronic devices may not function properly.

---

### USB Port



The USB port can be used whilst the engine is running.

- After connecting a media storage device such as a MP3 or USB to the USB port, you can listen to music through the vehicle's speakers or play it on the infotainment system.

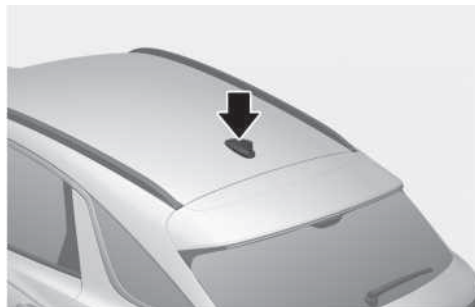
### Information

---

When using a portable audio device connected to the power outlet, noise may occur during playback. If this happens, disconnect the USB cable and use the portable audio device's power source.

---

### Antenna



The shark fin antenna receives transmitted data (e.g. AM/FM).



## Steering wheel remote controls



### NOTICE

---

Do not operate multiple audio remote control buttons simultaneously.

---

#### 1 Volume (+, -)

- Rotate the VOLUME up to increase volume.
- Rotate the VOLUME down to decrease volume.

#### Mute (🔇)

- Press the MUTE button to mute the sound.
- Press the MUTE button again to activate the sound.

#### 2 SEEK/PRESET (◀, ▶)

If the SEEK/PRESET switch (optical mouse) is swiped to the left or right and held for 0.8 second or more, it functions in the following modes:

- RADIO mode: It functions as the AUTO SEEK select button. It seeks until you release the button.
- MEDIA mode: It functions as the FF/RW button.

If the SEEK/PRESET switch (optical mouse) is swiped to the left or right, it will function in the following modes:

- RADIO mode: It functions by moving between stored PRESET STATIONS.
- MEDIA mode: It functions as the TRACK UP/DOWN button.

#### 3 Mode (↔)

Press the MODE button to toggle through Radio mode or Media mode.

#### 4 Custom (★)

Press the Custom button to set frequently used features.

## Infotainment system



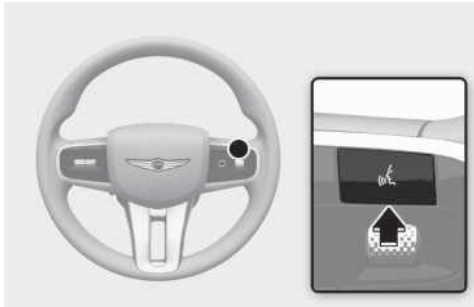
### Information

---

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

---

## Voice recognition



### Information

---

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

---

## Bluetooth® Wireless Technology



1. Call / Answer / Call end button
2. Microphone

### Information

---

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

---



### WARNING

---

To prevent driver distraction, minimise your use of these features whilst driving. Distraction may cause a collision, resulting in serious injury or death.

---

### BANG & OLUFSEN sound system

 if equipped



### CAUTION

---

BANG & OLUFSEN sound system is equipped with door speaker grills made of stainless steel. The grill surface can become hot when the vehicle is exposed to hot weather for a long period of time. Keep away from the speaker grill when it is hot.

---



## 6. Driving your vehicle



### WARNING

---

**Carbon monoxide (CO) gas is toxic. Breathing CO may cause unconsciousness and death.**

Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide that cannot be seen or smelled.

**Do not inhale engine exhaust.**

If at any time you smell exhaust fumes inside the vehicle, open the windows immediately. Exposure to CO may cause unconsciousness and death by asphyxiation.

**Make sure the exhaust system does not leak.**

The exhaust system should be checked whenever the vehicle is raised to change the oil or for any other purposes. If you hear a change in the sound of the exhaust or drive over something that strikes the underneath side of the vehicle, we recommend that the exhaust system be checked as soon as possible by an authorised Genesis repairer.

**Do not run the engine in an enclosed area.**

Letting the engine idle in your garage, even with the garage door open, is a hazardous practice. Run the engine only long enough to start the engine and to move the vehicle out of the garage.

**Avoid idling the engine for an extended period of time with people inside the vehicle.**

If it is necessary to idle the engine for a long time with people inside the vehicle, be sure to do so only in an open area with the air intake set at "Fresh" and fan control set to high so fresh air is drawn into the interior.

**Keep the air intakes clear.**

To ensure proper operation of the ventilation system, keep the ventilation air intakes located in front of the windscreen clear of snow, ice, leaves, or other obstructions.

**If you must drive with the tailgate open:**

Close all windows.

Open instrument panel air vents.

Set the air intake control at "Fresh", the air flow control at "Floor" or "Face", and the fan control set to high.

---

## Before driving

### Before entering the vehicle

- Make sure all windows, outside rearview mirrors, and outside lights are clean and unobstructed.
- Remove frost, snow, or ice from both the front windscreen and rear window as well as the front side windows.
- Visually check the tyres for uneven wear and damage.
- Check under the vehicle for any sign of leaks.
- Make sure there are no obstacles behind you if you intend to reverse.

### Before starting

- Make sure the bonnet, the tailgate, and the doors are securely closed and locked.

- Adjust the position of the seat and steering wheel.
- Adjust the inside and outside mirrors.
- Verify all the lights work.
- Fasten your seat belt. Check that all passengers have fastened their seat belts.
- Check the gauges and indicators in the instrument panel and the messages on the instrument display when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position.
- Check that any items you are carrying are stored properly or fastened down securely.



## WARNING

---

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death:

- Always wear your seat belt. All passengers must be properly restrained whenever the vehicle is moving. For more information, refer to the "**Seat belts**" section in chapter 3.
  - Always drive defensively. Do not assume that the other drivers are seeing your vehicle. They may not act as you expect. Be prepared to react to avoid a possible collision. Plan your movements anticipating the "worst-case" scenario.
  - Stay focused on driving. Driver distraction may cause a collision.
  - Leave plenty of space between you and the vehicle in front of you.
- 



## WARNING

---

Never drink or take drugs whilst driving.

Drinking or taking drugs whilst driving is dangerous and may result in a collision, causing serious injury or death.

Drunk driving is a significant contributor to the highway death toll each year. Even a small amount of alcohol can affect your reflexes, perceptions, and judgment. Just one drink may reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions and emergencies and your reaction time gets worse with each additional drink.

Driving whilst under the influence of drugs is as dangerous as or more dangerous than driving under the influence of alcohol.

You are much more likely to have a serious accident if you drink or take drugs whilst driving. If you are drinking or taking drugs, never drive. Do not travel with a driver who has been drinking or taking drugs. Choose a designated driver or call a taxi.

---

# Engine start/stop button



Whenever the front door is opened, the Engine Start/Stop button illuminates and goes off 30 seconds after the door is closed.

## WARNING

To turn the vehicle off in an emergency:  
Press and hold the Engine Start/Stop button for more than two seconds. Or rapidly press and release the Engine Start/Stop button three times (within three seconds).  
If the vehicle is still moving, you can restart the vehicle without pressing the brake pedal by pressing the Engine Start/Stop button with the gear in the N (Neutral) position.

## WARNING

- NEVER press the Engine Start/Stop button whilst the vehicle is moving except in an emergency. This may result in the vehicle turning off and loss of power assist for the steering and brake systems. This may cause loss of directional control and braking function, which could cause a collision.
- Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the gear is in the P (Park) position, apply the parking brake, press the Engine Start/Stop button to the OFF position, and take the smart key with you to prevent unintended vehicle movement.
- Never reach through the steering wheel for the Engine Start/Stop button or any other control whilst the vehicle is moving. The presence of your hand or arm in this area may cause a loss of vehicle control resulting in a collision.

## Engine Start/Stop button positions

| Button Position | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Notes                                                                                     |
|-----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| OFF             | To turn off the engine, press the Engine Start/Stop button with the vehicle shifted to P (Park). If the Engine Start/Stop button is pressed with the vehicle shifted to D (Drive), R (Reverse), or N (Neutral), the gear automatically shifts to P (Park). | Always stop the vehicle before pressing the Engine Start/Stop button to the OFF position. |

| Button Position | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Notes                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                 | The steering wheel locks to protect the vehicle from theft.                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>ACC</b>      | Press the Engine Start/Stop button when the button is in the OFF position without pressing the brake pedal. Some of the electrical accessories are usable. The steering wheel unlocks.                                                  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If you leave the Engine Start/Stop button in the ACC position for more than one hour, the battery power turns off automatically to prevent the battery from discharging.</li> <li>• If the steering wheel does not unlock properly, the Engine Start/Stop button does not work. Press the Engine Start/Stop button whilst turning the steering wheel right and left to release.</li> </ul> |
| <b>ON</b>       | Press the Engine Start/Stop button whilst it is in the ACC position without pressing the brake pedal. The warning lights can be checked before the engine is started.                                                                   | Do not leave the Engine Start/Stop button in the ON position when the engine is not running to prevent the battery from discharging.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>START</b>    | To start the engine, press the brake pedal and press the Engine Start/ Stop button with the gear shifted to the P (Park) or the N (Neutral) position. For your safety, start the engine with the gear shifted to the P (Park) position. | <p>If you press the Engine Start/Stop button without pressing the brake pedal, the engine does not start and the Engine Start/Stop button changes as follows:</p> <p><b>OFF &gt; ACC &gt; ON &gt; OFF or ACC</b></p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                |

## Information

To prevent vehicle battery discharge, the Engine Start/Stop button changes to the OFF position when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ACC or ON position with the gear in P (Park) after a certain period of time depending on the battery condition. When the function operates, the tail lamps will turn off. To use the tail lamps again, turn the headlamp switch located on the steering column to the OFF and ON position again.



## Starting the engine



### WARNING

---

- Always wear appropriate shoes when operating your vehicle. Unsuitable shoes such as high heels, ski boots, sandals, and thongs may interfere with your ability to use the brake and accelerator pedals. Do not drive barefoot.
  - Do not start your vehicle with the accelerator pedal pressed. Place your foot firmly on the brake pedal whilst starting your vehicle.
  - Wait until the engine is at normal idle before shifting gears and releasing the brake. Your vehicle may move suddenly if your vehicle is shifted whilst the engine RPM is high. It may cause damage to the transmission system.
- 



### WARNING

---

People with medical devices such as implanted pacemakers or cardiac defibrillators should not carry the smart key near the heart. The smart key system may affect the operation of such implanted medical devices.

Failure to do so may result in interference with the medical device, which could result in serious injury

---

## Information

---

- The vehicle will start by pressing the Engine Start/Stop button, only when the smart key is in the vehicle.
  - The vehicle may not start even if the smart key is in the vehicle but it is not near you (e.g. in the luggage compartment).
  - When the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ACC or ON position, if any door is opened, the system checks for the smart key. When the smart key is not in the vehicle, the  indicator blinks and the warning "**Key not in vehicle**" appears. When all doors are closed, the chime also sounds for a few seconds.
- 

- 1 Always carry the smart key with you.
- 2 Make sure the parking brake is applied.
- 3 Make sure the gear is in P (Park).
- 4 Press the brake pedal.
- 5 Press the Engine Start/Stop button.

## Information

---

- Do not wait for the engine to warm up or race the engine whilst the vehicle remains stationary.
  - Start driving at moderate engine speeds. Do not rapidly accelerate and decelerate whilst driving.
-

## NOTICE

---

To prevent damage to the vehicle:

- Do not press the Engine Start/Stop button for more than 10 seconds except when the stop lamp fuse is blown.
  - When the stop lamp fuse is blown, replace the fuse. If you cannot replace the fuse, start the engine by pressing and holding the Engine Start/Stop Button for 10 seconds with the Engine Start/Stop Button in the ACC position.
  - If the engine stalls whilst the vehicle is moving, shift to N (Neutral) and use the Engine Start/Stop button to attempt to restart the engine.
  - Do not push or tow your vehicle to start the engine.
- 

### ***Emergency starting***

If the smart key battery is weak or the smart key does not work correctly, press the Engine Start/Stop button with the smart key.



### **Turning off the engine**

- 1 Stop the vehicle and press the brake pedal fully.
- 2 Make sure the gear is in P (Park).
- 3 Apply the Electronic Parking Brake (EPB).
- 4 Press the Engine Start/Stop button to the OFF position.
- 5 Take the key with you when you leave the vehicle.

## Remote start



You can start the vehicle using the Remote Start button on the smart key.

To start the vehicle remotely:

- 1 Press the door lock (🔒) button within 10 m from the vehicle.
- 2 Press and hold the remote start (🔑) button within 4 seconds.

To turn off the engine:

Press the remote start (🔑) button once.

### Information

---

- The vehicle does not remotely start if the bonnet or tailgate is open.
  - The vehicle must be in P (Park).
  - The engine turns off if you get in the vehicle without a registered smart key or you do not get in the vehicle within 10 minutes.
-

## Automatic transmission



[A] P button

[B] Rotary shifter (Rotary gear shift dial)

[C] P-release cap-cover

Press the brake pedal whenever rotating the shift dial to change gear or shifting to P (Park).

### Automatic transmission operation

The automatic transmission has eight forward speeds and one reverse speed.

The individual speeds are selected automatically in the D (Drive) position.

The indicator on the instrument cluster displays the shift dial/button position when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position.



### WARNING

---

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death:

- Always check the surrounding areas near your vehicle for people, especially children, before shifting into D (Drive) or R (Reverse).
  - Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the vehicle is shifted to the P (Park) position, then apply the parking brake, and press the Engine Start/Stop button to the OFF position. Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement may occur if these precautions are not followed.
  - Do not use engine braking (using the paddle shifters to shift from a higher gear to a lower gear) on slippery roads. The vehicle may lose traction with the roadway, resulting in a collision.
- 

### *Rotary shifter/Rotary gear shift dial*

#### **P (Park)**

Always come to a complete stop before shifting into P (Park).



To shift the gear to P (Park), press the **P** button whilst pressing the brake pedal.  
If you turn the engine off in R (Reverse), N (Neutral) or D (Drive), the gear shifts to P (Park).



## **WARNING**

- Shifting into P (Park) whilst the vehicle is moving may cause you to lose control of the vehicle.
- When parking on an incline, shift the gear to P (Park) and apply the parking brake, and turn the wheels toward the kerb to prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill.
- Do not use the P (Park) position instead of the parking brake.

### **Automatic gear shift to P (Park)**

The gear is shifted to P (Park) automatically for safety reasons under the following conditions:

- When the engine is turned off with the gear in R (Reverse), D (Drive), or N (Neutral).
- When the driver's door is opened with the engine running, the gear in R (Reverse), D (Drive) or N (Neutral), the seat belt unfastened and the vehicle at a standstill.
- When the driver's or front passenger's door is opened with the gear in N (Neutral) and the vehicle is turned off.

In situations in which the gear must be in P (Park), always check if the gear is shifted to P (Park) by checking the instrument cluster.

### **R (Reverse)**

Use this position to drive the vehicle rearward.



To shift the gear to R (Reverse), rotate the shift dial anti-clockwise whilst pressing the brake pedal.

When the vehicle is stopped in the R (Reverse) or D (Drive), if the driver's door is opened and the driver's seat belt is unfastened, the gear shifts to P (Park) automatically.

If the vehicle is moving in R (Reverse) or D (Drive) and the driver's door is opened and the driver's seat belt is unfastened, the gear may not shift to P (Park) automatically to prevent transmission damage.

## NOTICE

---

Always come to a complete stop before shifting into or out of R (Reverse) to prevent damaging the transmission.

---

### N (Neutral)

The wheels and transmission are not engaged.

Use N (Neutral) if you need to restart a stalled engine, or if it is necessary to stop with the engine ON. Shift into P (Park) if you need to leave your vehicle for any reason.



To shift the gear to N (Neutral), rotate the shift dial clockwise from R (Reverse) or anti-clockwise from D (Drive) whilst pressing the brake pedal.

Always press the brake pedal when you are shifting from N (Neutral) to another gear.

If you turn the engine off in N (Neutral), the gear shifts to P (Park).

If you need to stay in N (Neutral) with the engine off, refer to **"To stay in N (Neutral) when vehicle is OFF"** in the following page.



## WARNING

---

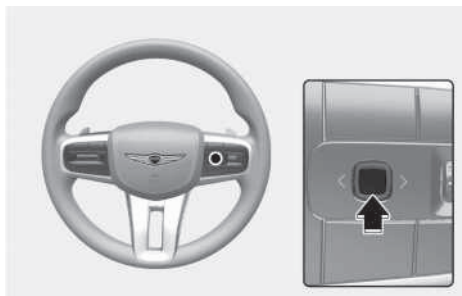
- Do not shift gears unless your foot is firmly on the brake pedal.
  - Do not shift gears with the accelerator pedal pressed. Wait until the engine RPM is normal. The vehicle may suddenly move if you shift gears and release the brake pedal when the RPM is high.
- 

### To stay in N (Neutral) when vehicle is OFF

If you want to stay in N (Neutral) after the engine is OFF (Engine Start/Stop button in the ACC position), do the following.

- 1 Release the parking brake when the engine is running or the Engine Start/ Stop button is in the ON position. If Auto Hold is activated, turn off Auto Hold.

- 2 Rotate the shift dial to N (neutral) whilst pressing the brake pedal.
- 3 Take your foot off the brake pedal. The message, "**Press and hold the OK button on the steering wheel to stay in Neutral**" appears on the instrument cluster display.
- 4 Press and hold the OK button on the steering wheel for more than 1 second.



- 5 When the message, "**N will stay engaged when the vehicle is Off**" appears on the instrument cluster display, press the Engine Start/Stop button whilst pressing the brake pedal.

If you open the driver's or front passenger's door, the gear shifts to P (Park) and the Engine Start/Stop button changes to the OFF position.

## NOTICE

---

With the gear in N (Neutral) the Engine Start/Stop button will be in the ACC position. In the ACC position, the doors cannot be locked. The battery may discharge if left in the ACC position for a long time.

---

## D (Drive)

The transmission automatically shifts through an 8-gear sequence, providing the best fuel economy and power.

Shift to D (Drive) whilst pressing the brake pedal with the engine ON. Then release the brake pedal and press the accelerator pedal.

For extra power when passing another vehicle or driving uphill, press the accelerator pedal fully. The transmission automatically downshifts to the next lower gear.



To shift the gear to D (Drive), rotate the shift dial clockwise whilst pressing the brake pedal.

When the vehicle is stopped in the D (Drive), if you open the driver's door with the seat belt unfastened, the gear shifts to P (Park).

If the vehicle is moving in D (Drive), and the driver's door is opened and the seat belt is unfastened, the gear may not shift to P (Park) automatically to protect the automatic transmission.

## NOTICE

---

Always come to a complete stop before shifting into D (Drive) to prevent damaging the transmission.

---



## CAUTION

---

When you start after stopping on a steep incline, even if the gear is in D (Drive), if the accelerator or brake pedal is not pressed, the vehicle may roll rearwards, which may cause an accident.

---

### ***When the battery is discharged:***

You cannot shift gears, when the battery is discharged.

In an emergency:

- 1 Connect the jumper cables from another vehicle or from another battery following the "Jump starting" directions in chapter 8.
- 2 Release the parking brake with the Engine Start/Stop button in the ON position.
- 3 Press the Engine Start/Stop button to the OFF position.
- 4 Remove the cap-cover (1) and press and hold the button (2) whilst pressing the brake pedal.



- The gear changes to the N (Neutral) position.
- The button (2) must be pressed within 3 minutes after the engine is turned off.
- The gear can be changed between P (Park) and N (Neutral) for 20 seconds.

## Information

---

In situations when the gear needs to be shifted from P (Park) to N (Neutral) when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the OFF position, refer to step 4.

---



### ***Shift-lock system***

For your safety, the automatic transmission has a shift-lock system that prevents the transmission from shifting from P (Park) or N (Neutral) into R (Reverse) or D (Drive) unless the brake pedal is pressed.

To shift from P (Park) or N (Neutral) into R (Reverse) or D (Drive):

- 1 Press and hold the brake pedal.
- 2 Start the engine.
- 3 Press the brake pedal and put the gear in R (Reverse) or D (Drive).

### ***Parking***

Always come to a complete stop and continue to press the brake pedal. Shift the gear to P (Park), apply the parking brake, and press the Engine Start/Stop button to the OFF position. Take the key with you when leaving the vehicle.



### **WARNING**

---

- When you stay in the vehicle with the engine running, be careful not to press the accelerator pedal for a long time. The engine or exhaust system may overheat and start a fire.
  - The exhaust gas and the exhaust system are very hot and may cause burns. Keep away from the exhaust system components.
  - Do not stop or park over flammable materials, such as dry grass, paper, or leaves. They may ignite and cause a fire.
- 

## **LCD display messages (Instrument cluster)**

### ***Press brake pedal to change gear***

This message appears when the brake pedal is not pressed whilst shifting out of gear. Press the brake pedal and then shift the gear.

### ***Shift to P after stopping***

This message appears when the gear is shifted to P (Park) whilst the vehicle is moving. Stop the vehicle before shifting to P (Park).

### ***Shifting conditions not met***

This message appears when engine RPM is too high, or when driving speed is too fast to shift the gear.

Decrease vehicle speed or slow down before shifting the gear.

### ***Shifting system error***

This message appears when the transmission or the shift button does not properly operate in the P (Park) position.

We recommend that the vehicle be immediately inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

### ***Check rotary gear shift dial***

This message appears when there is a malfunction with the shift dial.

We recommend that the vehicle be immediately inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

### ***Check P button***

This message appears when there is a problem with the P button.

We recommend that the vehicle be immediately inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

### ***Rotary gear shift dial stuck***

This message appears when the shift dial does not return back to its normal position after rotating it.

We recommend that the vehicle be immediately inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

### ***Transmission overheated warning***

#### **Transmission Hot Park with engine on**

Repeated sudden acceleration and quick start may overheat the transmission. If the transmission is overheated, the self protection mode warns the driver with an audible sound and warning message.

- Move the vehicle to a safe location and shift the gear to P (Park), and stop the vehicle with the engine on. Wait until the transmission has sufficiently cooled down.

#### **Vehicle Power limited due to high transmission temperature**

If you continue to drive with overheated transmission, the above warning message appears and the self-protection mode restricts the power output of the vehicle.

- Move the vehicle to a safe location and shift the gear to P (Park), and stop the vehicle with the engine on. Wait until the transmission has sufficiently cooled down.
- If the above message is continuously displayed, we recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer.

#### **Transmission cooled and safe to drive**

This message appears when the vehicle is safe to drive.

### **Paddle shifter (Manual shift mode)**



The paddle shifter is available when the shift gear is in the D (Drive) position.

**With the shift gear in the D position:**

Pull the **+** or **—** paddle shifter once to shift up or down one gear and the system changes from automatic mode to manual shift mode.

To change back to automatic shift mode from manual shift mode, do one of the following:

- Pull the **+** paddle shifter for more than one second.
- Drive the vehicle below 7 km/h.
- Gently press the accelerator pedal for more than 6 seconds.
- Rotate the shift dial to the D (Drive) position.

**Information** 

---

If the **+** and **—** paddle shifters are pulled at the same time, gear shift may not occur.

---

**Good driving practices**

- Never shift the gear from P (Park) or N (Neutral) to any other gear when the accelerator pedal is pressed.
- Never shift the gear into P (Park) when the vehicle is moving.  
Completely stop before shifting into R (Reverse) or D (Drive).
- Do not shift the gear to N (Neutral) when driving to prevent a loss of engine braking and transmission damage that may cause a collision.
- Never attempt to select a gear that is opposite to the direction the vehicle is moving. Check the gear position before driving. Stop the vehicle before shifting to the desired gear. The engine may stop, causing a collision.
- Do not drive with your foot resting on the brake pedal. Even light, but consistent pedal pressure may result in the brakes overheating, brake wear, and possibly even brake failure.
- When driving with shifter paddles, slow down before shifting to a lower gear. The vehicle may not shift to a lower gear if the engine RPMs are outside of the allowable range.
- Always apply the parking brake when leaving the vehicle. Do not depend on placing the transmission in P (Park) to keep the vehicle from moving.
- Exercise extreme caution when driving on a slippery surface. Be especially careful when braking, accelerating, or shifting gears. On a slippery surface, an abrupt change in vehicle speed may cause the drive wheels to lose traction and may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in a collision.
- Optimum vehicle performance and economy is obtained by smoothly pressing and releasing the accelerator pedal.



## WARNING

---

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death:

- Always wear your seat belt. In a collision, an unrestrained occupant is significantly more likely to be seriously injured or killed than a properly restrained occupant.
  - Avoid high speeds when cornering or turning.
  - Do not make quick steering wheel movements, such as sharp lane changes or fast, sharp turns.
  - The risk of rollover greatly increases if you lose control of your vehicle at highway speeds.
  - Loss of control often occurs if two or more wheels drop off the roadway and the driver over steers to reenter the roadway.
  - In the event your vehicle leaves the roadway, do not steer sharply. Instead, slow down before pulling back into the travel lanes.
  - Genesis vehicle recommends that you follow all posted speed limits.
- 

## NOTICE

---

Kickdown mechanism

Use the kickdown mechanism for maximum acceleration. press the accelerator pedal beyond the pressure point. The automatic transmission will shift to a lower gear depending on the engine speed.

---

## Braking system

### Power-assist brakes

Your vehicle has power-assisted brakes that adjust automatically through normal usage.

If the engine is not running or is turned off whilst driving, the power assist for the brakes does not work. You can still stop your vehicle by applying greater force to the brake pedal than typical. The stopping distance, however, may be longer than with power brakes.

When the engine is not running, the reserve brake power is partially depleted each time the brake pedal is pressed. Avoid pumping the brake pedal when the power assist has been interrupted.

### Information

---

- When the brake pedal is pressed under certain driving conditions or weather conditions, you may temporarily hear a noise. This is normal and does not indicate a problem with your brakes.
  - If deicing chemicals get stuck on the brakes, abnormal wear and noise may occur on the brake discs and pads. Remove the deicing chemicals from the brake discs and pads whilst applying the brakes in a safe traffic condition.
- 



### WARNING

---

Take the following precautions:

- Do not drive with your foot resting on the brake pedal. This creates abnormally high brake temperatures, excessive brake lining, and pad wear, and increased stopping distances.
  - When descending down a long or steep hill, use the paddle shifter to a lower gear to control your speed without using the brake pedal excessively. Applying the brakes continuously can cause the brakes to overheat and may result in a temporary loss of braking performance.
  - Wet brakes may impair the vehicle's ability to safely slow down and the vehicle may also pull to one side when the brakes are applied. Applying the brakes lightly indicates whether they have been affected in this way. Always test your brakes in this fashion after driving through deep water. To dry the brakes, lightly tap the brake pedal to heat up the brakes whilst maintaining a safe forward speed until the brake performance returns to normal. Avoid driving at high speeds until the brakes function correctly.
- 

### Disc brakes wear indicator

When your brake pads are worn and new pads are required, you may hear a high pitched warning sound from your front or rear brakes. You may hear this sound come and go or it may occur whenever you press the brake pedal.

### Information

---

Always replace both the left and right brake pads on the front and rear axles at the same time.

---

## High performance brake

For vehicles equipped with the High Performance Brake (large diameter monoblock brakes with enhanced braking performance), noise such as a squeal, squeak or groan is generated whilst braking. This is normal and the friction may create circle patterns on the disc surface. This is also a normal condition which does not affect braking performance.



### WARNING

---

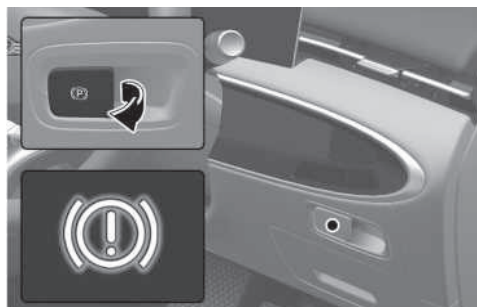
Frequent braking may deform components and wear the brake discs causing vibration when braking. Observe the speed limit to prevent brake damage from excessive braking.

Brake wear, noise, vibration from excessive braking or deformation of the brakes caused by repeatedly braking in high speed, racing on tracks, etc., can be excluded from warranty coverage.

---

## Electronic Parking Brake (EPB)

### *Applying the parking brake*



#### To apply EPB (Electronic Parking Brake):

- 1 Press and hold the brake pedal.
- 2 Pull up the EPB switch.

Make sure the Parking Brake warning light comes on.

#### EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) may be automatically applied when:

- Requested by other systems.
- The driver turns the vehicle off whilst Auto Hold is operating.

#### Emergency braking

If there is a problem with the brake pedal whilst driving, emergency braking is possible by pulling up and holding the EPB switch. Braking is possible only whilst you are holding the EPB switch. However, braking distance may be longer than normal.



### WARNING

---

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death, do not operate the EPB whilst the vehicle is moving except in an emergency situation. It may damage the brake system and cause a collision.

---

## Information

---

During emergency braking, the Parking Brake warning light illuminates and you may hear a clicking noise.

---

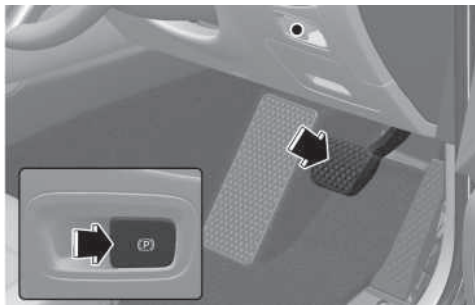
## NOTICE

---

If you notice a noise or burning smell when the EPB is used for emergency braking, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

---

### *Releasing the parking brake*



#### **To release EPB (Electronic Parking Brake):**

- 1 Press the Engine Start/Stop button to the ON or START position.
- 2 Press the EPB switch whilst pressing the brake pedal.

Make sure the Parking Brake warning light goes off.

#### **To release EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) automatically:**

- Gear in P (Park) or in N (Neutral)

With the engine running, press the brake pedal and shift out of P (Park) or N (Neutral) to R (Reverse) or D (Drive). Make sure the doors, bonnet, and tailgate are closed and the seat belt is fastened.

## Information

---

- You can engage EPB even though the Engine Stop/Start button is in the OFF position (only if battery power is available), but you cannot release it.
  - Press the brake pedal and release the parking brake manually with the EPB switch before you drive downhill or when reversing the vehicle.
- 

## NOTICE

---

- If the Parking Brake warning light is still on even though the EPB has been released, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.
  - Do not drive your vehicle with EPB applied. It may cause excessive brake pad and brake rotor wear.
-

## ***Warning messages***

### **To release EPB, close the doors, bonnet and tailgate and fasten the seatbelt**

If the driver's seat belt is unfastened, or the bonnet, tailgate, doors are open, and you try to drive with EPB applied, a warning sounds and a message appears.



### **WARNING**

---

To prevent serious injury or death from unintended vehicle movement:

- Always come to a complete stop and continue to press the brake pedal before parking, shift the gear into P (Park), pull up the EPB switch, and move the Engine Start/Stop button to the OFF position. Take the key with you when leaving the vehicle.
  - Never allow anyone who is unfamiliar with the vehicle to touch the EPB switch.
  - Only release EPB when you are seated inside the vehicle with your foot firmly on the brake pedal.
- 

### **NOTICE**

---

Driving with the parking brake on may overheat the braking system and cause premature wear or damage to brake parts.

---

### **Information**

---

- A clicking sound may be heard whilst operating or releasing the EPB. These conditions are normal and indicate that EPB is functioning properly.
  - When leaving your keys with a parking attendant or assistant, be sure to inform them how to operate the EPB.
- 

### **Turning off AUTO HOLD. Press brake pedal**

When the conversion from Auto Hold to EPB is not working properly, a warning sounds and a message appears.

### **Parking brake automatically applied**

When EPB is applied whilst Auto Hold is activated, a warning sounds and a message appears.

### ***EPB malfunction***

Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) warning light illuminates if the Engine Start/Stop button is pressed to the ON position and goes off in about 3 seconds if the system is operating normally.

If the EPB warning light remains on, comes on whilst driving, or does not come on when the Engine Start/Stop button is pressed to the ON position, the EPB may have malfunctioned.

If this occurs, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

The EPB warning light may illuminate when the ESC indicator light comes on to indicate that ESC is not working properly, but it does not indicate a malfunction of EPB.



## NOTICE

---

- If the Parking Brake warning light does not illuminate or blinks after the EPB switch has been pulled, the EPB may not be applied.
  - If the EPB warning light is still on or the Parking Brake warning light blinks when the EPB warning light is on, press the switch, and then pull it up. Repeat this one more time. If the EPB warning does not go off, we recommend that your vehicle be towed on a flatbed tow truck to an authorised Genesis repairer.
- 

### *Parking brake warning light*



This light illuminates when the parking brake is applied with the Engine Stop/Start button in the START or ON position.

Before driving, make sure the parking brake is released and the Parking Brake warning light is OFF.

If the Parking Brake warning light remains on after the parking brake is released whilst the engine is running, there may be a malfunction in the brake system.

If possible, stop driving the vehicle immediately. If that is not possible, use extreme caution whilst operating the vehicle and only continue to drive the vehicle until you can reach a safe location.

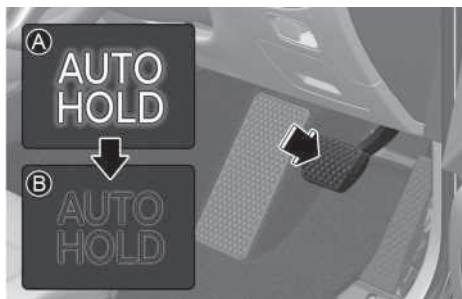
### **Auto Hold**

Auto Hold maintains the vehicle in a standstill even though the brake pedal is not pressed after the driver brings the vehicle to a complete stop by pressing the brake pedal.

*To apply:*



- 1 With the driver's door, bonnet, and tailgate closed press the brake pedal and then press the **AUTO HOLD** switch. The white AUTO HOLD indicator comes on and the system is in standby.



[A] White

[B] Green

- 2 When you stop the vehicle completely by pressing the brake pedal, Auto Hold maintains the brake pressure to hold the vehicle stationary. The indicator changes from white to green.

The vehicle remains stationary even if you release the brake pedal.

### ***To release:***

- If you press the accelerator pedal with the gear in D (Drive), R (Reverse), or Manual shift mode, the Auto Hold is released automatically and the vehicle starts to move. The AUTO HOLD indicator changes from green to white.



### **WARNING**

Always look around your vehicle before pressing the accelerator pedal to release Auto Hold.

### ***To cancel:***



- 1 Press and hold the brake pedal.
- 2 Press the **AUTO HOLD** switch.  
The AUTO HOLD indicator will turn off.



## WARNING

---

To prevent unintended vehicle movement, always press your foot on the brake pedal to cancel the Auto Hold before you:

- Drive downhill.
  - Drive the vehicle in R (Reverse).
  - Park the vehicle.
- 

## Information

---

- The Auto Hold does not operate when:
  - The driver's door or bonnet are open.
  - The tailgate is open.
  - The gear is in P (Park).
  - EPB is applied.
- The Auto Hold automatically switches to EPB when:
  - The driver's door or bonnet is opened.
  - The vehicle is in a standstill for more than 10 minutes.
  - The vehicle is standing on a steep slope.
  - The vehicle moved several times.
  - The tailgate is opened.

In these cases, the Parking Brake warning light comes on, the AUTO HOLD indicator changes from green to white, and a warning sounds and a message appears to inform you that EPB has been automatically engaged. Before driving, press the brake pedal, check the surrounding area, and release the parking brake manually with the EPB switch.

---

## NOTICE

---

If the AUTO HOLD indicator changes to yellow, or the driver's door, bonnet, or tailgate open detection system malfunctions, Auto Hold does not work properly. We recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer.

---

### *Warning messages*

#### **Parking brake automatically applied**

When EPB is applied whilst Auto Hold is activated, a warning sounds and a message appears.

#### **Turning off AUTO HOLD. Press brake pedal.**

When the conversion from Auto Hold to EPB is not working properly a warning sounds and a message appears.

When this message is displayed, Auto Hold and EPB may not operate. For your safety, press the brake pedal.

#### **Press brake pedal to deactivate AUTO HOLD**

If you did not apply the brake pedal when you release Auto Hold by pressing the **AUTO HOLD** switch, a warning sounds and a message appears on the instrument cluster display.

### **AUTO HOLD conditions not met. Close door and bonnet.**

When you press the **AUTO HOLD** switch, if the driver's door and engine bonnet are not closed, a warning will sound and a message will appear on the instrument cluster display. Press the **AUTO HOLD** switch after closing the driver's door and bonnet.

## **Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)**



### **WARNING**

---

Anti-Lock Braking System (ABS) or Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system does not prevent accidents due to improper or dangerous driving manoeuvres. Even though vehicle control is improved during emergency braking, always maintain a safe distance between you and objects ahead of you. Vehicle speeds should always be reduced during extreme road conditions. The braking distance for vehicles equipped with ABS or ESC may be longer than for those without these systems in the following road conditions:

Drive your vehicle at reduced speeds during the following conditions:

- Rough, gravel, or snow-covered roads.
- On roads where the road surface is pitted or has different surface height.
- Tyre chains are installed on your vehicle.

Never test the safety features of an ABS or ESC equipped vehicle by high speed driving or cornering. It may cause a collision and endanger the safety of yourself or others.

---

ABS is an electronic braking system that helps prevent a braking skid. ABS allows the driver to steer and brake at the same time.

### ***Using ABS***

To obtain the maximum benefit from your ABS in an emergency situation, do not attempt to modulate your brake pressure and do not try to pump your brakes. Press your brake pedal as hard as possible.

When you apply your brakes under conditions that may lock the wheels, you may hear sounds from the brakes, or feel a corresponding sensation in the brake pedal. This is normal and it means your ABS is active.

ABS does not reduce the time or distance to stop the vehicle.

Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you.

ABS does not prevent a skid that results from sudden changes in direction, such as trying to take a corner too fast or making a sudden lane change. Always drive at a safe speed for the road and weather conditions.

ABS cannot prevent a loss of stability. Always steer moderately when braking hard. Severe or sharp steering wheel movement can still cause your vehicle to veer into oncoming traffic or off the road.

On loose or uneven road surfaces, operation of the anti-lock brake system may result in a longer stopping distance than for vehicles equipped with a conventional brake system.

The ABS () warning light stays on for several seconds after the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position.

During that time, ABS goes through self-diagnosis and the light will go off if everything is normal. If the light stays on, we recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer as soon as possible.

## **WARNING**

---

If the ABS () warning light is on and stays on, you may have a problem with the ABS. Your power brakes work normally. To reduce the risk of serious injury or death, we recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer as soon as possible.

---

## **NOTICE**

---

When you drive on a road having poor traction, such as an icy road, and apply your brakes continuously, ABS is active continuously and the ABS () warning light may illuminate. Pull your vehicle over to a safe place and turn off the engine.

Restart the vehicle. If the ABS warning light is off, your ABS system is normal.

If not, we recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer as soon as possible.

---

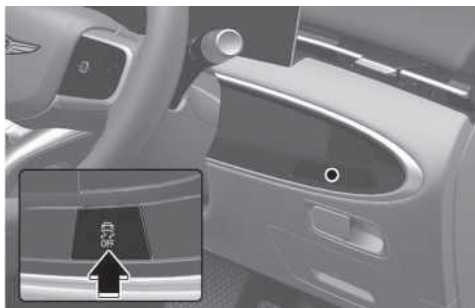
## **Information**

---

When you jump start your vehicle because of a drained battery, the ABS () warning light may turn on at the same time. It does not mean your ABS is malfunctioning. Have the battery recharged before driving the vehicle.

---

## **Electronic Stability Control (ESC)**



Electronic Stability Control helps stabilize the vehicle during cornering manoeuvres.

ESC checks where you are steering and where the vehicle is actually going. ESC applies braking pressure to any one of the vehicle's brakes and intervenes in the engine management system to assist the driver with keeping the vehicle on the intended path. It is not a substitute for safe driving practices. Always adjust your speed and driving to the road conditions.

## **WARNING**

---

Never drive too fast for the road conditions when cornering. ESC does not prevent a collision.

Excessive speed in turns, abrupt manoeuvres, and hydroplaning on wet surfaces may result in severe collisions.

---

## ESC operation

### ESC ON condition

When the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position, ESC and the ESC OFF indicator lights illuminate for about three seconds. After both lights go off, ESC is enabled.

### When operating



When ESC is operating, the ESC indicator light blinks:

- When you apply your brakes under conditions that may lock the wheels, you may hear sounds from the brakes, or feel a corresponding sensation in the brake pedal.
- If Cruise Control has been used when ESC activates, Cruise Control automatically disengages. See "**Smart Cruise Control (SCC)**" section in chapter 7 (if equipped).
- When moving out of the mud or driving on a slippery road, the engine RPM (revolutions per minute) may not increase even if you press the accelerator pedal all the way. This is to maintain the stability and traction of the vehicle and does not indicate a problem.

### ESC OFF condition



To cancel ESC operation:

- State 1

Press the ESC OFF button briefly. The ESC OFF indicator light and the message, "**Traction control disabled**" illuminate. The traction control function of ESC (engine management) is disabled, but the brake control function of ESC (braking management) still operates.

- State 2

Press and hold the ESC OFF button continuously for more than 3 seconds. The ESC OFF indicator light and the message, "**Traction and Stability Control disabled (Traction control and ESC disabled)**" illuminate and a warning chime sounds. In this state, both the traction control function of ESC (engine management) and the brake control function of ESC (braking management) are disabled.

If the Engine Start/Stop button is pressed to the OFF position when ESC is off, ESC remains off. Upon restarting the vehicle, ESC automatically turns on again.

### Indicator lights

#### ESC indicator light (blinks)



When the Start/Stop button is pressed to the ON position, the ESC indicator light illuminates, then goes off if the ESC system is operating normally.

The ESC indicator light blinks whenever ESC is operating.

### **ESC OFF indicator light (comes on)**



If the ESC indicator light stays on, your vehicle may have a malfunction with the ESC system. When this warning light illuminates we recommend that the vehicle be checked by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer as soon as possible.

The ESC OFF indicator light comes on when ESC is turned off.



### **WARNING**

---

When ESC is blinking, this indicates ESC is active:

- Drive slowly and NEVER attempt to accelerate.
  - Never turn off ESC whilst the ESC indicator light is blinking. You may lose control of the vehicle and collide.
- 

### **Information**

---

Driving with wheels and tyres of different sizes may cause the ESC system to malfunction. Before replacing tyres, make sure all four tyres and wheels are the appropriate size for your vehicle. Never drive the vehicle with different sized wheels and tyres installed.

---

### ***ESC OFF usage***

#### **When Driving**

The ESC OFF mode should only be used briefly to help free the vehicle if stuck in snow or mud, by temporarily stopping operation of ESC, to maintain wheel torque.

To turn off ESC whilst driving, press the ESC OFF button whilst driving on a flat road surface.

### **NOTICE**

---

To prevent damage to the transmission:

- Do not allow wheel(s) of one axle to spin excessively whilst the ESC, ABS, and Parking Brake warning lights appear. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Reduce engine power and do not spin the wheel(s) excessively whilst these lights appear.
  - When operating the vehicle on a dynamometer, make sure ESC is turned off (ESC OFF light illuminated).
- 

### **Information**

---

Turning off ESC does not affect ABS or standard brake system operation.

---

## Vehicle Stability Management (VSM)

Vehicle Stability Management is a function of the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system. It helps the vehicle stay stable when accelerating or braking suddenly on wet, slippery, and rough roads where traction over the four tyres can suddenly become uneven.



### WARNING

---

VSM is not a substitute for safe driving practices. To prevent serious injury or death:

- Always monitor the speed and the distance to the vehicle ahead of you.
  - Never drive too fast for the road conditions. Excessive speed in bad weather or on slippery and uneven roads may result in severe collisions.
- 

## *VSM operation*

### When operating

When you apply your brakes under conditions that can activate ESC, you may hear sounds from the brakes, or feel a corresponding sensation in the brake pedal. This is normal and it means your VSM is active.

### Information

---

VSM does not operate when:

- Driving on a banked road such as gradient or incline.
  - Driving in reverse.
  - The ESC OFF indicator light is on.
  - The MDPS (Motor Driven Power Steering) (⚠) warning light is on or blinks.
- 

### VSM OFF condition

To cancel VSM operation, press the ESC OFF button. ESC OFF (⚠) indicator light illuminates.

To turn on VSM again, press the ESC OFF button again. The ESC OFF indicator light will go out.



### WARNING

---

If the ESC (⚠) indicator light or MDPS (⚠) warning light stays illuminated or blinks, your vehicle may have a malfunction with the VSM system. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer as soon as possible.

---

## Hill-Start Assist Control (HAC)

Hill-Start Assist Control helps prevent the vehicle from rolling rearwards when starting from a stop on a hill.



### WARNING

---

Always be ready to press the accelerator pedal when starting from a stop on an uphill slope. Hill-Start Assist Control activates only for about 5 seconds.

---



## Information

---

- Hill-Start Assist Control does not operate when the gear is shifted to P (Park) or N (Neutral).
  - Hill-Start Assist Control activates even when the ESC (Electronic Stability Control) is off. It does not activate, if the ESC is not operating normally.
- 

### Crosswind Stability Control (CSC)

Crosswind Stability Control (CSC) works with Electronic Stability Control (ESC) and Motor Driven Power Steering (MDPS) to stabilize the vehicle when it is being shaken or pushed outward due to strong crosswinds.

#### *CSC system operation*

- When driving over a bridge or next to a large truck or bus, strong crosswinds may cause the vehicle to shake or pushed outward. The CSC automatically adjusts the vehicle posture and steering wheel to correct the course of the vehicle.
- When activated, the ESC (⚠) indicator light illuminates and warning message appears on the instrument cluster with a warning sound.
- When activated, the driver may feel a slight vibration of the vehicle and awkwardness of the steering wheel, due to the braking and MDPS.

#### *CSC system off*

Crosswind Stability Control may not operate, or may cancel its operation in the following conditions when:

- Vehicle speed is around or below 70 km/h or around or above 180 km/h.
- You make sharp turns.
- You press the brake pedal past a certain level.
- You are driving on a bumpy or slippery road.
- ESC Off (⚠) indicator illuminates by turning off the ESC (ESC OFF state 2).
- ESC is activated.
- The Driving Assistance System (FCA, BCA, LKA, LFA, etc.) are activated.

#### *CSC malfunction*

- When there is a problem with the ESC or MDPS, CSC does not operate.
- If the ESC (⚠) or MDPS (⚠) warning light stays illuminated or blinks, we recommend that your vehicle to be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.



### WARNING

---

Crosswind Stability Control is only a supplementary system to assist the driver. It is the driver's responsibility to control of the vehicle.

Always hold the steering wheel whilst driving and press the brake pedal to reduce speed if necessary.

---

### Emergency Stop Signal (ESS)

Emergency Stop Signal alerts the driver behind by blinking the stop lights, whilst sharply and severely braking.

The system is activated when:

- The vehicle suddenly stops. (The deceleration power exceeds  $7 \text{ m/s}^2$ , and the driving speed exceeds 55 km/h.)
- ABS is activated.

The hazard warning flasher automatically turns ON after blinking the stop lights when:

- The vehicle speed is below 40 km/h.
- ABS is deactivated, and
- The sudden braking situation is over.

The hazard warning flasher turns OFF when:

- The vehicle drives at a low speed for a certain period of time.

The driver manually turns OFF the hazard warning flasher by pressing the button.

## Information

---

Emergency Stop Signal does not activate, when the hazard warning flashers are already on.

---

### Multi-Collision Brake (MCB)

 if equipped

Multi-Collision Brake controls the brake automatically in the event of an accident where the airbag deploys to reduce the risk of additional accidents that may occur.

#### *System operation*

- From the time the airbag deploys, Multi-Collision Brake monitors the pressure intensity of the brake pedal and accelerator pedal for a short period. The system operates when the following conditions are met:
  - Vehicle speed is under 180 km/h at the time of collision.
  - The brake pedal and accelerator pedal are hardly pressed.
- When the driver steps on the brake pedal over a certain level whilst Multi-Collision Brake is active, the braking power takes priority over automatic braking by Multi-Collision Brake system. However, if the driver takes their foot off the brake pedal, the Multi-Collision Brake system will maintain automatic braking.

#### *System off*

Multi-Collision Brake is cancelled in the following situations:

- The accelerator pedal is pressed over a certain level.
- The vehicle stops.
- ESC (Electronic Stability Control) or electronic devices has malfunctioned.
- In a situation where the system cannot operate normally.
- Ten seconds have passed since the brake has been controlled automatically by Multi-Collision Brake system.

## WARNING

- Multi-Collision Brake decreases vehicle speed after a collision and reduces the risk of a second collision, but it does not prevent a second collision. You may drive away from the collision spot to avoid other dangerous situations by pressing the accelerator pedal.
- After the vehicle is stopped by Multi Collision Brake, the system stops controlling the brakes. Depending on the situation, the driver should press the brake or the accelerator pedal to prevent further accidents.

## Brake Assistant System (BAS)

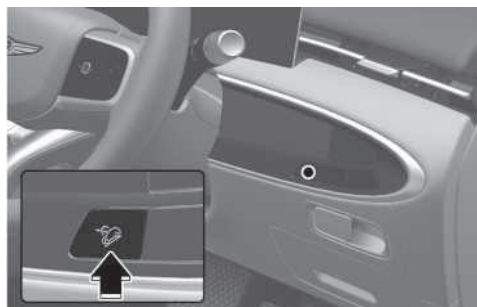
The Brake Assistant System provides additional pressure when the brake pedal is momentarily and strongly pressed in a situation sudden braking is required whilst driving.

The Brake Assistant System reduces the time for ABS (Anti-Lock Brake System) control to enter and consequently reduces the braking distance, by providing additional pressure up to the point of ABS intervention.

## WARNING

The system may not operate depending on the driver's driving habits, vehicle speed, the degree to which the brake pedal is pressed and the condition of the road surface.

## Downhill Brake Control (DBC)



Downhill Brake Control assists when descending down a steep hill without having to press the brake pedal.

The system automatically applies the brakes to maintain vehicle speed below a certain speed and allows the driver to concentrate on steering the vehicle down hill.

The system is turned off whenever the engine is turned off.

Press the button to turn on the system and press the button again to turn it off.

## System operation

| Mode    | Indicator                                                                                             | Description                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|---------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Standby | <br>Green light on | Press the Downhill Brake Control button when vehicle speed is below 60 km/h. Downhill Brake Control turns on and enter the standby mode. The system does not turn on if vehicle speed is over 60 km/h. |

| Mode               | Indicator                                                                                              | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Activated          | <br>Green light blink | <p>In the standby mode, Downhill Brake Control activates under the following conditions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The hill is steep enough.</li> <li>• The brake pedal or accelerator pedal is not pressed.</li> <li>• Vehicle speed is within 4-40 km/h range.</li> </ul> <p>Within the activation speed range 4-40 km/h, the driver can control the vehicle speed by pressing the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.</p> |
| Deactivated        | <br>Green light off   | <p>Downhill Brake Control turns off under the following conditions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The Downhill Brake Control button is pressed again.</li> <li>• Vehicle speed is above 60 km/h.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|                    | <br>Green light on    | <p>Downhill Brake Control is deactivated but maintains the standby mode under the following conditions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The hill is not steep enough.</li> <li>• Vehicle speed is between 40-60 km/h.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| System malfunction | <br>Yellow light on   | <p>The yellow warning light illuminates when the system may have malfunctioned or may not work properly during activation. If this occurs, Downhill Brake Control is deactivated. We recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer as soon as possible.</p>                                                                                                                                                                       |

### Downhill Brake Control disabled. Control vehicle speed (manually)

If Downhill Brake Control is not working properly, this warning message appears on the instrument cluster display and you may hear a warning sound. If this occurs, control the vehicle speed by pressing the brake pedal.



### WARNING

Always turn off Downhill Brake Control on normal roads. The system might activate inadvertently from the standby mode when driving through speed bumps or making sharp curves.

## Information

---

- Downhill Brake Control may not deactivate on steep inclines even though the brake pedal or accelerator pedal is pressed.
  - Downhill Brake Control may not always maintain the vehicle speed at a certain level.
  - Downhill Brake Control does not operate when:
    - The gear is in P (Park).
    - ESC is activated.
  - Noise or vibration may occur from the brakes when Downhill Brake Control is activated.
  - The rear stop lamps come on when Downhill Brake Control is activated.
- 

## Good braking practices



### WARNING

---

Whenever leaving the vehicle or parking, always come to a complete stop and continue to press the brake pedal. Shift the gear to the P (Park) position, apply the parking brake, and press the Engine Start/Stop button to the OFF position.

Vehicles parked with the parking brake not applied or not in P (Park) may roll unintentionally and may cause injury to the driver and others.

---

Wet brakes can be dangerous! The brakes may get wet if the vehicle is driven through standing water or if it is washed. Your vehicle may not stop quickly if the brakes are wet. Wet brakes may cause the vehicle to pull to one side.

To dry the brakes, apply the brakes lightly until the braking action returns to normal. If the braking action does not return to normal, stop as soon as it is safe to do so and we recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer for assistance.

DO NOT drive with your foot resting on the brake pedal. Even light, but constant pedal pressure may result in the brakes overheating, brake wear, and possibly even brake failure.

If a tyre goes flat whilst you are driving, apply the brakes gently and keep the vehicle pointed straight ahead whilst you are slowing down. When you are moving slowly enough for it to be safe to do so, pull off the road and stop in a safe location.

Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when the vehicle is stopped to prevent the vehicle from rolling forward.

## All Wheel Drive (AWD)

All Wheel Drive (AWD) system delivers engine power to front and rear wheels for maximum traction. AWD is useful when extra traction is required on roads such as slippery, muddy, wet, or snow-covered roads.



### WARNING

---

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death:

- Do not drive in conditions that exceed the vehicle's intended design such as challenging off-road conditions.
  - Avoid high speeds when cornering or turning.
  - Do not make quick steering wheel movements, such as sharp lane changes or fast, sharp turns.
  - The risk of a rollover is greatly increased if you lose control of your vehicle at highway speeds.
  - Loss of control often occurs if two or more wheels drop off the roadway and the driver over steers to reenter the roadway.
  - In the event your vehicle leaves the roadway, do not steer sharply. Instead, slow down before pulling back into the travel lanes.
- 

### NOTICE

---

- Do not drive in water if the water level is higher than the bottom of the vehicle.
  - Check your brake condition once you are out of mud or water. press the brake pedal several times as you move slowly until you feel normal braking condition return.
  - Shorten your scheduled maintenance interval if you drive in off-road conditions such as sand, mud, or water (refer to the "**Maintenance under severe usage conditions (Petrol engine)**" section in chapter 9).
  - Always wash your vehicle thoroughly after off-road use, especially the bottom of the vehicle.
  - Make sure that a full time AWD vehicle is towed by a flat-bed tow truck.
- 

## All Wheel Drive (AWD) operation

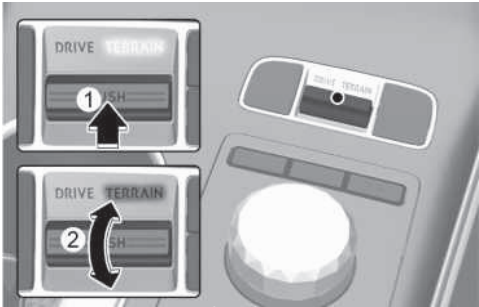
### *Auto AWD mode (Normal driving)*

If the AWD system determines there is a need for four wheel drive, the engine's driving power is distributed to all four wheels automatically.

### *Multi terrain mode*

In the multi terrain mode, four-wheel drive, engine, transmission, braking and electronic limited slip differential is controlled to achieve optimal driving performance depending on the mode selected (SNOW/MUD/SAND).

*All Wheel Drive (AWD) selection*



Press the **DRIVE/TERRAIN** switch (1) to change from normal driving mode to multi terrain mode. After the switch is pressed, push the switch up or down (2) within 4 seconds to select SNOW, MUD, or SAND.

| Selected mode          |                                                                                     | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| COMFORT,<br>ECO, SPORT |    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Auto AWD is used when driving on roads in normal conditions, roads in urban areas, and on highways.</li><li>• Under normal operating conditions, the vehicle operates similar to conventional 2WD vehicles. If the system determines there is a need for four wheel drive, the engine's driving power is distributed to all four wheels automatically.</li></ul> |
| SNOW                   |    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Snow mode is used when driving on slippery roads.</li><li>• The engine's driving power is properly distributed to the wheels, to help start the vehicle stably on slippery roads or keep tyres from slipping.</li></ul>                                                                                                                                          |
| MUD                    |  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Mud mode is used when driving on muddy, unpaved or uneven roads.</li><li>• The engine's driving power is properly distributed to the wheels, to secure sufficient driving force that will help start the vehicle.</li></ul>                                                                                                                                      |
| SAND                   |  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Sand mode is used when driving on smooth, dry sand or deep gravel and unpaved roads.</li><li>• The engine's driving power is properly distributed to the wheels, to help drive safely on smooth, dry sand or deep gravel and unpaved roads.</li></ul>                                                                                                            |

## NOTICE

---

- Use Auto AWD mode when driving on normal roads.
  - Driving on normal roads with the Multi Terrain mode on, especially when cornering may cause mechanical noise or vibration. Driving in this mode for prolonged periods may damage parts of the power train. The noise and vibration disappear when the Multi Terrain mode is deactivated.
- 

## Information

---

When the mode is switched from Multi Terrain to Auto AWD, a sensation may be felt as the driving power is delivered entirely to the front wheels.

---



## WARNING

---

If the AWD (⚠) warning light stays on the instrument cluster, your vehicle may have a malfunction with the AWD system. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer as soon as possible.

---

### *For safe AWD operation*

#### **Before driving**

Make sure all passengers always wear their seat belts.

#### **Driving on snow-covered or icy roads**

- Start off slowly by applying the accelerator pedal gently.
- Use snow tyres or tyre chains.
- Keep a sufficient distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front.
- Use engine braking during deceleration.
- Avoid speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden brake applications, and sharp turns to prevent skids.

## Information

---

- When using snow tyres, mount them on all four wheels.
- When using tyre chains, install them on the rear tyres. However, driving speed must be below 30 km/h and minimise the driving distance. High-speed or long-term driving with the chains installed may malfunction or damage the AWD system.

For more information on Snow tyres and Tyre Chains, refer to the "**Winter driving**" section later in this chapter.

---

#### **Driving in sand or mud**

- Maintain slow and constant speeds.
- Use tyre chains when driving in mud if necessary.
- Keep sufficient distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front.
- Reduce the vehicle speed and always check the road condition.
- Avoid speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden brake applications, and sharp turns to prevent getting stuck.



## NOTICE

---

When the vehicle is stuck in snow, sand, or mud, place a nonslip material under the drive wheels to provide traction OR slowly spin the wheels in forward and reverse causing a rocking motion that may free the vehicle.

Avoid running the engine continuously at high RPM to prevent damage to the AWD system.

---

### Driving up or down hills

- Driving uphill
  - Before starting off, check if it is possible to drive uphill.
  - Drive as straight as possible.
- Driving downhill
  - Do not change gears whilst driving downhill. Select a gear before driving downhill.
  - Drive slowly when using engine braking whilst driving downhill.
  - Drive straight as possible.



### WARNING

---

- Exercise extreme caution driving up or down steep hills. The vehicle may roll over on the gradient, terrain, and water/mud conditions.
  - Do not drive across the contour of steep hills. A slight change in the wheel angle may destabilize the vehicle. A stable vehicle may lose stability if the vehicle stops its forward motion. Your vehicle may roll over, resulting in a serious injury or death.
- 

### Driving through water

- Try to avoid driving in deep standing water. It may stall your engine and clog your exhaust pipes.
- If you need to drive in water, stop your vehicle, set the vehicle in Multi Terrain mode, and drive below 8 km/h.
- Do not change gears whilst driving in water.

### Additional driving conditions

- Become familiar with the off-road conditions before driving.
- Always pay attention when driving off-road and avoid dangerous areas.
- Drive slowly when driving in heavy wind.
- Reduce vehicle speed when cornering. The centre of gravity of AWD vehicles is higher than conventional 2WD vehicles. The vehicle is more likely to roll over if you turn the steering wheel too quickly.
- Always hold the steering wheel firmly when you are driving off-road.



### WARNING

---

Do not grab the inside of the steering wheel when you are driving off-road. You may hurt your arm by a sudden steering manoeuvre or from steering wheel rebound due to an impact with objects on the ground. You may lose control of the steering wheel that may lead to serious injury or death.

---

## Emergency precautions

### *Tyres*

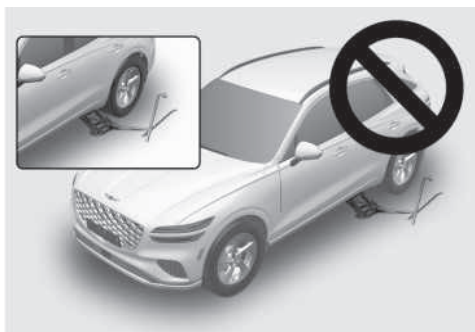
Do not use tyres or wheels of different size and type from those installed on your vehicle. It may affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could cause steering failure or rollover causing serious injury.

When replacing the tyres, be sure to equip all four tyres with the same size, type, tread, brand, and load-carrying capacity. If you equip your vehicle with any tyre/wheel combination not recommended by Genesis vehicle for off- road driving, do not use these tyres for highway driving.



### **WARNING**

---



Never start or run the engine whilst an AWD vehicle is raised on a jack. The vehicle may slip or roll off of a jack causing serious injury or death.

---

### *Towing*

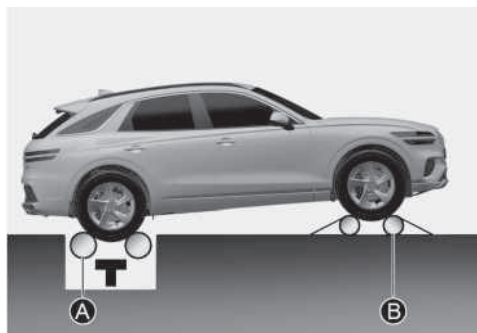
AWD vehicles must be towed with a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment with all the wheels off the ground. For more information, refer to the "**Towing**" section in chapter 8.

### *Vehicle inspection*

- If the vehicle needs to be operated on a vehicle lift, do not attempt to stop any of the four wheels from turning. This may damage the AWD system.
- Never apply the parking brake whilst running the engine on a vehicle lift. This may damage the AWD system.

### *Dynamometer testing*

An AWD vehicle must be tested on a special four wheel chassis dynamometer.



[A] Roll tester (Speedometer)

[B] Temporary free roller

If a 2WD roll tester must be used:

- 1 Check the tyre pressures recommended for your vehicle.
- 2 Place the rear wheels on the roll tester for a speedometer test as shown in the illustration.
- 3 Release the parking brake.
- 4 Place the front wheels on the temporary free roller as shown in the illustration.

## NOTICE

---

- Never engage the parking brake whilst performing the test.
- When the vehicle is lifted up, do not operate the front and rear wheel separately. All four wheels should be operated.



## WARNING

---

Keep away from the front of the vehicle whilst the vehicle is in gear on the dynamometer. The vehicle may jump forward and cause serious injury or death.

---

# Electronic limited slip differential

 if equipped

Electronic Limited Slip Differential controls the differential functions of the wheels to help:

- Improve steering performance when circling at high speed.
- Improve launching performance.
- Prevent slipping on rainy or snowy roads due to dissimilar friction of the left and right wheels.

## WARNING

Never run the wheels with one of the wheels lifted on a jack. It is extremely dangerous for a vehicle equipped with Electronic Limited Slip Differential.

## Drive mode selection

The characteristic of Electronic Limited Slip Differential varies according to the drive mode selected.

| Selected mode |         | Characteristic of e-LSD |
|---------------|---------|-------------------------|
| DRIVE         | ECO     | COMFORT                 |
|               | COMFORT | COMFORT                 |
|               | SPORT   | SPORT                   |
|               | SPORT+  | SPORT                   |
| TERRAIN       | SNOW    | SNOW                    |
|               | MUD     | MUD                     |
|               | SAND    | SAND                    |

For more information, refer to the "Drive Mode Integrated Control System (AWD)" section in this chapter.

## Warning messages

### *Electronic Limited Slip Differential temporarily disabled due to overheating*

Overheating of related parts will temporarily disable Electronic Limited Slip Differential. Wait until the vehicle cools down.

### *Tyre size mismatch. Limited-slip differential disabled. Check tyre sizes*

If your vehicle is equipped with different tyres (size, type, etc.), this message appears on the instrument cluster display. To use Electronic Limited Slip Differential, equip the vehicle with the same tyres.

### ***Check Limited Slip Differential***

When Electronic Limited Slip Differential is not working properly, this warning message appears on the instrument cluster display. If this occurs, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

## Electronic control suspension

 if equipped

Electronic Control Suspension controls the vehicle suspension automatically using vehicle sensors to maximise driving comfort by taking into account the driving conditions such as speed, surface of the road, cornering, stopping requirements, and acceleration.

### System malfunction

#### *Check Electronic Suspension*

When Electronic Control Suspension is not working properly, this warning message appears on the instrument cluster display. If this occurs, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

## Electronically controlled suspension with road preview

 if equipped

Electronically Controlled Suspension with Road Preview helps control the vehicle suspension automatically using the front view camera and vehicle sensors to maximise driving comfort by taking into account the driving conditions such as speed, surface of the road, cornering, stopping requirements, and acceleration.

### *Front view camera*



[A] Front view camera

The front view camera is a sensor that detects the front road. When the front view camera is covered or blocked, its detecting performance is reduced, and the data collected by the camera may be limited.

### NOTICE

---

To prevent vehicle damage:

- Never disassemble the camera sensors or camera sensor assemblies.
  - Only have the detecting sensor replaced or repaired by an authorised Genesis repairer.
  - Never install any accessories, stickers, or tint the front windscreen.
  - Always keep the camera dry.
  - Never place any reflective objects (e.g. white paper, mirror) on the instrument panel.
- 

### Information

---

We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer when:

- The windscreen glass is replaced.
  - The front view camera or cover gets damaged or replaced.
- 

### System malfunction

#### *Check Electronic Suspension*

When Electronically Controlled Suspension with Road Preview is not working properly, the "**Check electronic suspension**" warning message may appear on the instrument cluster display. If this occurs, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

## NOTICE

---

If the battery level is high or low, Electronically Controlled Suspension with Road Preview may not work temporarily to protect the system. If this occurs, "**Check electronic suspension**" warning message may appear.

---

### Limitations of the system

Electronically Controlled Suspension with Road Preview always operates whilst driving according to the vehicle's movement, and the preview function starts to work when the front view camera detects road conditions such as speed bumps. Therefore, the preview function is limited when there is an extreme condition where the front view camera may not work normally. In this case, the electronic control suspension function operates without the preview function in accordance with vehicle movement.



## Launch Control

 if equipped

The Launch Control system controls the vehicle to reduce wheel spin or slip on a hard acceleration from a standing start.

### Prerequisite for activation

The Launch Control gets ready to be activated, when the following prerequisites are satisfied.

- The engine is warmed up.
- Malfunction warning lights related to the engine and ESC (Electronic Stability Control) are off.



### CAUTION

---

For safety purposes, check the following conditions before using Launch control.

- The driver's seat belt is fastened.
  - All doors, bonnet and liftgate are closed.
  - The vehicle is at a complete stop.
  - The steering is aligned straight.
- 

### Launch Control activation

To activate Launch Control:

- 1 Select SPORT or SPORT+ mode using the drive mode selection switch. SPORT or SPORT+ indicator will illuminate on the instrument cluster display.
- 2 Turn off ESC by pressing the ESC OFF button for more than 3 seconds. The ESC OFF indicator will illuminate on the instrument cluster.
- 3 Shift to the D (Drive) position.
- 4 Press the brake pedal firmly with your left foot, whilst pressing the accelerator pedal down fully with your right foot. Then, the engine RPM will reach an optimised level.  
The message '**Launch Control Ready**' will appear on the instrument cluster display.
- 5 A smooth, quick release of the brake pedal, whilst maintaining full depression of the accelerator pedal will initiate launching of the vehicle.
- 6 During vehicle launching, continue to press the accelerator pedal to keep the Launch Control system active until desired duration.

The message '**Launch Control Active**' will appear on the instrument cluster display.

To deactivate (end) Launch Control, release the accelerator pedal.

### Information

---

Launch Control is available again after cooling down by driving the vehicle for at least 3 minutes.

---



## CAUTION

---

- Launch Control system is intended for use at a closed race track and not intended for use on public roads. It will not compensate for driver's who are inexperienced or lack familiarity with the race track.
  - Do not use Launch Control during break-in period of the vehicle.
- 

## NOTICE

---

Constant use of Launch Control can put enormous stress on the vehicle resulting in premature wear of related components.

---

### Limited use of Launch Control

#### **Transmission temperature too high. Launch control not available**

A warning message will pop up on the instrument cluster display if the transmission fluid temperature is above a certain level whilst using Launch Control. Also, Launch Control will be automatically deactivated.

If this occurs, the driver should cool down the transmission fluid temperature by driving the vehicle at a constant speed over 60 km/h.

## Coasting

 if equipped

When certain conditions are met, the engine is automatically decoupled from the transmission whilst gear remains in D (Drive). When Coasting is operating, the engine stays at idling speed to reduce fuel consumption and increase coasting distance.

### Coasting setting

- The Coasting function can be turned ON from the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select:
  - **Setup > Vehicle > Drive mode > Coasting**
- When Coasting is turned ON and the conditions are met, the function operates with a "**Coasting**" message illuminated on the instrument cluster.

### Information

---

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

---

### Coasting operating conditions

The Coasting function operates when the accelerator pedal is pressed and released under the following conditions:

- ECO is selected for driving mode
- ECO or SMART is selected for Powertrain in the CUSTOM menu (if equipped) from the infotainment system. If Smart is selected, driver acceleration should be mild.
- The gear is in D (Drive).
- Smart Cruise Control is OFF.
- The accelerator or brake pedal is not pressed.
- The vehicle speed is within 50-160 km/h.
- The road gradient is within -5 - +5 %.

### Information

---

- If the front radar for Smart Cruise Control cannot operate normally, the vehicle-to-vehicle distance and relative speed condition are automatically ignored.
  - The Coasting function works after the engine is turned on, the transmission is warmed up, and the engine sensor self-diagnosis is completed.
  - Depending on the driving situation, Coasting operation may be temporarily delayed even if the above conditions are met.
- 

### Coasting release conditions

The Coasting function will be automatically released when the following conditions are met:

- Comfort or Sport is selected for driving mode.
- The driver uses the paddle shifter.
- Smart Cruise Control is activated (Set speed appears on the instrument cluster).

- The vehicle speed is not within the speed range 50-160 km/h
- The road gradient is below -5 % or over +5 %.
- If the distance between the vehicle ahead is too close or the relative speed changes momentarily in Smart mode.
- If lane change is predicated in Smart mode (for example, the turn signal is turned ON or a LKA warning appears due to steering wheel control, etc.).

---

## Information

---

It is recommended to turn off the Coasting function if you are driving under frequent stop-and-go conditions. Change the drive mode to Comfort or Sport or deselect Coasting from the infotainment system.

---

## NOTICE

---

- If the accelerator pedal is pressed quickly for accelerating with the Coasting function operating, acceleration may occur after the engagement of the clutch inside the transmission. In turn, the driver may continue to feel the acceleration even after the system is turned off.
  - Driving with the Coasting function off may be required in some cases since the engine brake is not applied whilst the Coasting function is operating.
- 



## WARNING

---

Do not operate adjust the settings whilst driving. You may be distracted from the driving task and could crash.

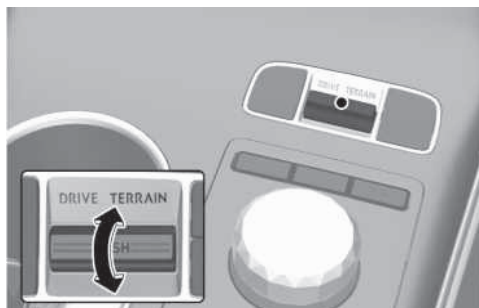
---

## Drive Mode Integrated Control System (AWD)

The drive mode can be selected according to the driver's preference or road condition.

### Drive mode

The mode changes whenever the driver pushes the **DRIVE/TERRAIN** switch up or down.



The mode changes, as the following, whenever the driver pushes the **DRIVE/TERRAIN** switch up or down.

- **ECO > COMFORT > SPORT > SPORT+** (if equipped) > **MY DRIVE**

### *MY DRIVE mode features*

MY DRIVE mode allows driver to personalize the setting of the powertrain, steering wheel and suspension.

To set MY DRIVE mode, go to **Setup > Vehicle > Drive mode > MY DRIVE MODE** in the infotainment system.

- Powertrain: ECO/COMFORT/SPORT/SPORT+ (if equipped)/SMART
- Steering: COMFORT/SPORT/SPORT+ (if equipped)
- Suspension: COMFORT/SPORT/SPORT+ (if equipped)
- AWD: COMFORT/SPORT/SPORT+ (if equipped)

### *Setting BRAKE mode*

 if equipped

To set the BRAKE mode to adjust brake response, park the vehicle and shift the gear to P (Park). Go to **Setup > Vehicle > Drive mode > Brakes mode** in the infotainment system and select a mode.

- COMFORT: Brake response appropriate for comfort driving.
- SPORT: Brake response appropriate for dynamic driving.

### Information

---

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

---

## ***Drive mode features***

### **ECO mode**

ECO mode helps improve fuel economy for eco-friendly driving.

Fuel economy varies according to the driver's driving habit and road condition.

- When ECO mode is selected, the ECO indicator illuminates on the instrument cluster.
- When ECO mode is activated:
  - The acceleration response may be slightly reduced if the accelerator pedal is pressed moderately.
  - The air conditioning performance may be limited.
  - The shift pattern of the transmission may change.
  - Engine noise may be louder at some transmission shifts as downshift requires pressing down more on the accelerator pedal.

### **COMFORT mode**

COMFORT mode provides a smooth driving and comfortable ride.

### **SPORT mode / SPORT+ mode**

SPORT mode or SPORT+ mode (if equipped) provides a sporty but firm ride.

In SPORT mode or SPORT+ mode (if equipped), the fuel economy may decrease.

- When the SPORT mode or SPORT+ mode (if equipped) is selected, the SPORT or SPORT+ indicator illuminates on the instrument cluster.
- The drive mode resets to COMFORT mode when the engine is restarted.
- When the SPORT mode or SPORT+ mode (if equipped) is activated:
  - The engine RPM tends to remain raised over a certain time even after releasing the accelerator pedal.
  - Upshifts are delayed when accelerating.

### **SMART mode**

SMART mode selects the proper driving mode among ECO, COMFORT, SPORT, and SPORT+ by judging the driver's driving habits from the brake pedal presson or the steering wheel operation.

#### **Various driving situations, which you may encounter in SMART mode**

- The driving mode automatically changes to SMART ECO mode after a certain period of time, when you gently press the accelerator pedal.
- The driving mode automatically changes from SMART ECO mode to SMART COMFORT mode after a certain period of time, when you sharply or repetitively press the accelerator pedal.
- The driving mode automatically changes to SMART COMFORT mode with the same driving patterns, when the vehicle starts to drive on an upward slope of a certain angle. The driving mode automatically returns to SMART ECO mode, when the vehicle detects a level road.
- The driving mode automatically changes to SMART SPORT mode only in harsh driving conditions. In most driving situations, the driving mode is set to SMART ECO mode or SMART COMFORT mode.

- The driving mode automatically changes to SMART SPORT, when you abruptly accelerate the vehicle or repetitively operate the steering wheel. In this mode, your vehicle drives in a lower gear for abrupt accelerating or decelerating and increases the engine brake performance.

For general description of SMART ECO, SMART COMFORT, and SMART SPORT modes, SMART SPORT+ modes, refer to "**Drive mode features**".

### **SMART mode deactivates automatically**

SMART mode may deactivate if:

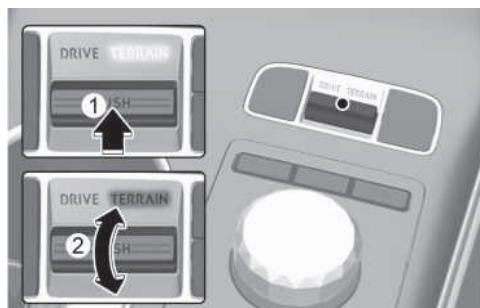
- The driver manually shifts gears.
- Smart Cruise Control may deactivate the SMART mode. When a higher speed is set by Smart Cruise Control, it starts to control the vehicle speed and deactivates the SMART mode.
- Extremely high/low transmission oil temperatures may temporarily deactivate the SMART mode, because the transmission is outside its normal operating condition.

### **Information**

---

- When using the SMART mode, if your acceleration pedal input is gradual, the drive mode maximises the fuel efficiency.
  - When your vehicle is in SMART mode and your driving style is more aggressive so that your acceleration pedal input is more abrupt, the drive mode changes to reflect a more SPORT driving characteristic.
- 

### **Multi terrain mode**



Multi terrain mode may be selected according to the driver's preference or road condition. Press the **DRIVE/TERRAIN** switch (1) to change from Drive mode to Multi terrain mode. After the button is pressed, push the **DRIVE/TERRAIN** switch up or down (2) within 4 seconds to select SNOW, MUD or SAND. When the **DRIVE/TERRAIN** switch is pressed again, the previous Drive mode will be reselected.

For more information on Terrain mode, refer to the "**All Wheel Drive (AWD)**" section in this chapter.

## Active Air Flap (AAF)



The active air flap system controls the air flap below the front bumper to cool vehicle parts and improve fuel efficiency.

### Information

---

The active air flap system may activate regardless of the vehicle condition (e.g. parked, being driven, etc.).

---

### System malfunction

The active air flap system may not operate normally if the air flap is temporarily opened due to external factors or if the controller is covered or blocked by foreign material such as snow, rain, etc.

When the "**Check active air flap system**" warning message appears on the instrument cluster display, stop the vehicle in a safe place and check the status of the air flap.

The system operates normally when the vehicle is started 10 minutes after such foreign material is removed or necessary measures are taken.

If the warning message does not disappear, we recommend the system be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.



### CAUTION

---

- Regardless of the warning message, if the air flaps are not in the same position, turn off the engine and wait for 10 minutes. Turn on the engine and inspect the air flap.
  - The active air flap system is operated by a motor. Do not interfere with the operation or apply excessive force that may cause system failure.
-



## Active sound design

- Active Sound Design is a function that provides enhanced virtual engine sound when the driver is pressing the accelerator pedal.
- You can activate or deactivate the Active Sound Design function from the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select:
  - **Setup > Vehicle > Active sound design > Enhanced/Normal/Minimized/Off**
  - **Setup > Sound > Active sound design > Enhanced/Normal/Minimized/Off**
- Any unauthorised replacement of the vehicle's speaker and amplifier may cause Active Sound Design to malfunction.

### Information

---

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

---

## Special driving conditions

### Hazardous driving conditions

When hazardous driving conditions are encountered such as water, snow, ice, mud, and sand:

- Drive cautiously and allow for longer braking distances.
- Avoid abrupt braking or steering.
- If your vehicle is stuck in snow, mud, or sand, use the second gear. Accelerate slowly to avoid unnecessary wheel spin.
- Put sand, rock salt, tyre chains, or other non-slip materials under the wheels to provide additional traction if stuck in ice, snow, or mud.



#### WARNING

---

- Downshifting with an automatic transmission whilst driving on slippery surfaces may cause a collision. The sudden change in tyre speed may cause the tyres to skid. Be careful when downshifting on slippery surfaces.
- Always check your vehicle for damage and foreign materials after driving. Foreign materials in the wheels or tyres can lead to unbalanced tyres and cause vehicle vibration.

If you have been driving in hazardous driving conditions, the wheels, tyres, brake parts, and axle joints must be checked and cleaned.

---

### Rocking the vehicle

If it is necessary to rock the vehicle to free it from snow, sand, or mud, first turn the steering wheel right and left to clear the area around your front wheels. Then, shift back and forth between R (Reverse) and a forward gear.

Try to avoid spinning the wheels, and do not race the engine.

To prevent transmission wear, wait until the wheels stop spinning before shifting gears. Release the accelerator pedal whilst shifting, and press lightly on the accelerator pedal whilst the transmission is in gear. Slowly spinning the wheels in forward and reverse directions causes a rocking motion that may free the vehicle.



#### WARNING

---

Always turn off the ESC system before rocking the vehicle. If the vehicle is stuck and excessive wheel spin occurs, the temperature in the tyres may increase very quickly. If the tyres become damaged, a tyre blow out or tyre explosion may occur - you and others may be injured. Do not attempt this procedure if people or objects are near the vehicle.

If you attempt to free the vehicle, the vehicle may overheat quickly, possibly causing an engine compartment fire or other damage. Try to avoid spinning the wheels as much as possible to prevent overheating of the tyres or the engine. DO NOT allow the vehicle to spin the wheels above 56 km/h.

If you are still stuck after rocking the vehicle a few times, have the vehicle pulled out by a tow vehicle to avoid engine overheating, possible damage to the transmission, and tyre damage. Refer to the "**Towing**" section in chapter 8.

---

## Smooth cornering

Avoid braking or gear changing in corners, especially when roads are wet. Ideally, cornering should be taken under gentle acceleration.

## Driving at night

Night driving presents more hazards than driving in the daylight. Here are some important tips to remember:

- Slow down and keep more distance between you and other vehicles, because it may be more difficult to see at night, especially in areas where there are no street lights.
- Adjust your mirrors to reduce the glare from other drivers' headlamps.
- Keep your headlamps clean and properly aimed. Dirty or improperly aimed headlamps can make it much more difficult to see at night.
- Avoid staring directly at the headlamps of oncoming vehicles. You could be temporarily blinded, and it takes several seconds for your eyes to readjust to the darkness.

## Driving in the rain

Rain and wet roads can make driving dangerous. When driving in the rain or on slick pavement:

- Slow down and allow extra following distance. A heavy rainfall makes it harder to see and increases the distance needed to stop your vehicle.
- Turn OFF your Smart Cruise Control. (if equipped)
- Replace your windscreen wiper blades when they show signs of streaking or missing areas on the windscreen.
- Make sure your tyres have enough tread. If your tyres do not have enough tread, making a quick stop on wet pavement may cause a skid and possibly collision. Refer to the "**Tyre replacement**" section in chapter 9.
- Turn on your headlamps to make it easier for others to see you.
- Driving too fast through large puddles may affect your brakes. If you must go through puddles, try to drive through them slowly.
- If you believe your brakes may be wet, apply them several times whilst the vehicle is moving slowly.

## *Hydroplaning*

If the road is wet enough and you are driving fast enough, your vehicle may have little or no contact with the road surface and actually ride on the water. The best advice is SLOW DOWN when the road is wet.

The risk of hydroplaning increases as the depth of tyre tread decreases, refer to the "**Tyre replacement**" section in chapter 9.

## Driving in flooded areas

Avoid driving through flooded areas unless you are sure the water is not deeper than the bottom of the wheel hub. If you are not sure, turn around and find a different route.

Drive through any water slowly. Allow adequate stopping distance because the brake performance can be reduced.

After driving through water, dry the brakes by gently applying them several times whilst the vehicle is moving slowly.

## Highway driving

### *Tyres*

Adjust the tyre inflation pressure, as specified. Under-inflation may overheat or damage the tyres.

Do not install worn-out or damaged tyres, which may reduce traction or fail.

### Information

---

Never over-inflate your tyres above the maximum inflation pressure, as specified on your tyres.

---

### *Fuel, engine coolant and engine oil*

Driving at higher speeds on the highway consumes more fuel and is less efficient than driving at a slower, more moderate speed. Maintain a moderate speed to conserve fuel when driving on the highway.

Check both the engine coolant level and the engine oil before driving.

### *Drive belt*

A loose or damaged drive belt may overheat the engine.

## Reducing the risk of a rollover

Your multi-purpose passenger vehicle is defined as a Sports Utility Vehicle (SUV). Some SUVs have higher ground clearance and a narrower track to make them capable of performing in a wide variety of off-road applications. The specific design characteristics give them a higher centre of gravity than ordinary vehicles making them more likely to roll over if you make abrupt turns. Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. Due to this risk, a driver and passengers are strongly recommended to buckle their seat belts. In a rollover crash, an unrestrained person is significantly more likely to be seriously injured or killed than a person wearing a seat belt.

There are steps that a driver can make to reduce the risk of a rollover. If possible, avoid sharp turns or abrupt manoeuvres, do not load your vehicle with heavy luggage on the roof, and never modify your vehicle in any way.



### WARNING

---

As with other Sports Utility Vehicle (SUV), failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of control, an accident or vehicle rollover.

- Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.
  - Specific design characteristics (higher ground clearance, narrower track, etc.) give this vehicle a higher centre of gravity than ordinary vehicles.
  - An SUV is not designed for cornering at the same speeds as conventional vehicles.
  - Avoid sharp turns or abrupt manoeuvres.
  - In a rollover crash, an unrestrained person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. Make sure everyone in the vehicle is properly restrained.
-



## **WARNING**

---

Some Sports Utility Vehicles (SUVs) can have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. To prevent rollovers or loss of control:

- Take corners at slower speeds than you would with a passenger vehicle.
  - Avoid sharp turns and abrupt manoeuvres.
  - Do not modify your vehicle in any way that you would raise the centre of gravity.
  - Keep tyres properly inflated.
  - Do not carry heavy luggage on the roof.
- 



## **WARNING**

---

Fasten your seat belt properly. In a rollover crash, an unrestrained person is significantly more likely to be seriously injured or killed than a person wearing a seat belt.

---

# Winter driving

## Snow or icy conditions

You need to keep sufficient distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front.

Apply the brakes gently. Speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden brake applications, and sharp turns are very hazardous practices. When decelerating, use engine braking to the fullest extent. Sudden brake applications on snowy or icy roads may cause the vehicle to skid.

To drive your vehicle in deep snow, it may be necessary to use snow tyres or to install tyre chains on your tyres.

Always carry emergency equipment. You may want to carry tyre chains, tow straps or chains, a flashlight, emergency flares, sand, a shovel, jumper cables, a window scraper, gloves, ground cloth, coveralls, a blanket, etc.

## Snow tyres



### WARNING

Snow tyres should be equivalent in size and type to the vehicle's standard tyres. Otherwise, the safety and handling of your vehicle may be adversely affected.

We recommend that you use snow tyres when road temperatures are below 7 °C (45 °F). Refer to the below chart, and mount the recommended snow tyre for your vehicle.

| Standard tyre |            | Recommended snow tyre |            |
|---------------|------------|-----------------------|------------|
| Tyre size     | Wheel size | Tyre size             | Wheel size |
| 235/60R18     | 8.0J X 18  | 235/60R18             | 8.0J X 18  |
|               |            | 235/55R19             | 8.0J X 19  |
|               |            | 255/40R21             | 9.0J X 21  |
| 235/55R19     | 8.0J X 19  | 235/55R19             | 8.0J X 19  |
| 255/40R21     | 9.0J X 21  | 255/40R21             | 9.0J X 21  |

If you mount snow tyres on your vehicle, be sure to use the same inflation pressure as the original tyres. Mount snow tyres on all four wheels to balance your vehicle's handling in all weather conditions. The traction provided by snow tyres on dry roads may not be as high as your vehicle's original equipment tyres. Check with the tyre dealer for maximum speed recommendations.

## Summer tyres

if equipped

- Summer tyres are used to maximise the driving performance on dry roads.
- If the temperature is below 7°C or you are driving on snowy or icy roads, the summer tyres lose their brake performance and traction as the tyre grip weakens significantly.

- If the temperature is below 7°C or you are driving on snowy or icy roads, mount snow tyres or all-season tyres of the same size with your vehicle's standard tyre for safe driving. Both snow and all-season tyres have M+S markings.
- When using the M+S tyres, use tyres with the same tread produced by the same manufacturer for safe driving.
- When driving with the M+S tyres with the lower maximum allowable speed than that of the vehicle's standard summer tyre, be careful not to exceed the speed allowed for the M+S tyres.

### ***Tyre chains***



Since the sidewalls of radial tyres are thinner than other types of tyres, they may be damaged by mounting some types of tyre chains on them. Therefore, the use of snow tyres is recommended instead of tyre chains. If tyre chains must be used, use genuine Genesis/Hyundai parts and install the tyre chain after reviewing the instructions provided with the tyre chains. Damage to your vehicle caused by improper tyre chain use is not covered by your vehicle manufacturer's warranty.

### **Information**

---

- Install tyre chains only in pairs and on the rear tyres. It should be noted that installing tyre chains on the tyres will provide a greater driving force, but will not prevent side skids.
  - Do not install studded tyres without first checking local and municipal regulations for possible restrictions against their use.
- 

### **WARNING**

---

The use of tyre chains may adversely affect vehicle handling:

- Drive less than 30 km/h or the chain manufacturer's recommended speed limit, whichever is lower.
  - Drive carefully and avoid bumps, holes, sharp turns, and other road hazards, which may cause the vehicle to bounce.
  - Avoid sharp turns or locked wheel braking.
- 

### **Chain installation**

When installing tyre chains, follow the manufacturer's instructions and mount them as tightly possible. Drive slowly (less than 30 km/h) with chains installed. If you hear the

chains contacting the body or chassis, stop and tighten them. If they still make contact, slow down until the noise stops. Remove the tyre chains as soon as you begin driving on cleared roads.

When mounting snow chains, park the vehicle on level ground away from traffic. Turn on the vehicle Hazard Warning Flasher and place a triangular emergency warning device behind the vehicle (if available). Always place the vehicle in P (Park), apply the parking brake and turn off the engine before installing snow chains.

## NOTICE

---

When using tyre chains:

- Wrong size chains or improperly installed chains can damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body and wheels.
  - Use SAE "S" class wire chains.
  - If you hear noise caused by chains contacting the body, retighten the chain to prevent contact with the vehicle body.
  - To prevent body damage, retighten the chains after driving 0.5-1.0 km.
  - Do not use tyre chains on vehicles equipped with aluminum wheels. If unavoidable, use a wire type chain.
  - Use wire chains less than 12 mm thick to prevent damage to the chain's connection.
- 

## Winter precautions

### ***Use high quality ethylene glycol coolant***

Your vehicle is delivered with high quality ethylene glycol coolant in the cooling system. It is the only type of coolant that should be used because it helps prevent corrosion in the cooling system, lubricates the water pump, and prevents freezing. Be sure to replace or replenish your coolant in accordance with the maintenance schedule in chapter 9. Before winter, have your coolant tested to make sure that its freezing point is sufficient for the temperatures anticipated during the winter.

### ***Check battery and cables***

Winter temperatures affect battery performance. **Inspect the battery and cables, as specified in chapter 9.** We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

### ***Change to "winter weight" oil if necessary***

In some regions during winter, it is recommended to use the "winter weight" oil with lower viscosity. In addition, replace the engine oil and filter if it is close to the next maintenance interval. Fresh engine oil ensures optimum engine operation during the winter months. For more information, refer to chapter 2. When you are not sure about a type of winter weight oil, we recommend that you consult an authorised Genesis repairer.

### ***Check spark plugs and ignition system***

**Inspect the spark plugs, as specified in chapter 9.** If necessary, replace them. Also check all ignition wirings and components for any cracks, wear, and damage.



### ***To prevent locks from freezing***

Spray approved de-icing fluid or glycerin into key holes. When a lock opening is already covered with ice, spray approved de-icing fluid over the ice to remove it. When an internal part of a lock freezes, try to thaw it with a heated key. Carefully use the heated key to avoid an injury.

### ***Use approved window washer anti-freeze solution***

Add window washer anti-freeze solution, as specified on the window washer container. We recommend that the window washer anti-freeze solution is available from an authorised Genesis repairer, and most vehicle accessory outlets.

## **NOTICE**

---

Do not use engine coolant or other types of anti-freeze solution, to prevent any damage to the vehicle paint.

---

### ***Do not let your parking brake freeze***

Under some conditions, your parking brake may freeze in the engaged position. This is most likely to happen when there is an accumulation of snow or ice around or near the rear brakes or the brakes are wet. When there is the risk that your parking brake may freeze: temporarily apply the parking brake with the gear in P (Park), then block the rear wheels, and then release the parking brake.

### ***Do not let ice and snow accumulate underneath***

Under some conditions, snow and ice may build up under the fenders and interfere with the steering. When driving in such conditions during the severe winter, you should check underneath the vehicle on a regular basis, to make sure that the front wheels and the steering components are not blocked.

### ***Carry emergency equipment***

In accordance with weather conditions, carry appropriate emergency equipment, whilst driving. Some of the items you may want to carry include tyre chains, tow straps or chains, flashlight, emergency flares, sand, shovel, jumper cables, window scraper, gloves, ground cloth, coveralls, blanket, etc.

### ***Do not place objects or materials in the engine compartment***

Putting objects or materials in the engine compartment may cause an engine failure or a fire, because they may block the engine cooling. Such damage is not covered by the manufacturer's warranty.

### ***Drive your vehicle when water vapour condenses and accumulates inside the exhaust pipes***

When the vehicle is stopped for a long time in winter whilst the engine is running, water vapour may condense and accumulate inside the exhaust pipes. Water in the exhaust pipes may cause noise, etc., but it is drained driving at medium to high speed.

## Trailer towing

Towing a trailer requires experience. The combination of the vehicle and trailer itself is not as responsive as the vehicle by itself. Towing a trailer also requires additional equipment and adequate planning before a trip. Plan your trip according to the speed limits for towing a trailer that may differ from state to state. Always follow the posted speed limits whilst towing a trailer.

Remember that driving your vehicle with a trailer is different from normal driving. Driving with a trailer causes changes to acceleration, braking, handling and stability, and fuel economy. For safety of you and passengers, do not overload your vehicle or trailer. Refer to the table in this section for the maximum towing capacity and payload.

This section contains important trailer towing recommendations and safety rules. Many of these recommendations are important considerations for the safety of you and your passengers. Be sure to read this section carefully and plan ahead before towing a trailer.



### WARNING

---

To prevent serious injury or death:

- If you do not use correct equipment and/or drive improperly, you can lose control of the vehicle when you are pulling a trailer. For example, if the trailer is too heavy, the braking performance may be reduced. Pull a trailer only if you have followed all the steps in this section.
  - Before towing, make sure the total trailer weight, GCW (Gross Combination Weight), GVW (Gross Vehicle Weight), GAW (Gross Axle Weight), and trailer tongue load are all within the limits.
  - When you tow a trailer, make sure to turn off the Idle Stop and Go system. (if equipped)
- 



### CAUTION

---

Always have your eyes on the road when towing a trailer. When a trailer is connected to your vehicle, the following functions are turned off automatically:

- Forward/Side function of Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist
- Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist
- Safe Exit Assist
- Lane Following Assist
- Highway Driving Assist
- Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist
- Reverse Parking Distance Warning
- Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist
- Remote Smart Parking Assist

For more information on each function, refer to chapter 7.

The towbar harness installed to your vehicle must be a genuine Genesis part. For more information, consult an authorised Genesis repairer.

---

### If you do decide to pull a trailer (For Australia)

Here are some important points if you decide to pull a trailer:

- Do not do any towing with your vehicle during its first 2,000 km in order to allow the engine to properly run in. Failure to heed this caution may result in serious engine or transmission damage.
- When towing a trailer, be sure to consult an authorised Genesis repairer for further information on additional requirements such as a towing kit, etc.
- Always drive your vehicle at a moderate speed (less than 100 km/h).
- On a long uphill gradient, do not exceed 70 km/h or the posted speed limit, whichever is lower.

### ***Towing Trailer***

The recommended towing capacity of this vehicle will be provided with the Genuine Genesis Approved Tow Bar, which will meet the requirements of Australian Standard: AS 4177.

For further information with regard to trailer towing:

- on Genuine Genesis parts and accessories (including the Genuine Genesis Approved Tow Bar and its availability for purchase) please consult your nearest authorised Genesis repairer or visit [www.Genesis.com](http://www.Genesis.com).
- on Rules and Regulations please consult your State or Territory road authorities.

It is the owner's responsibility to ensure that any tow bar used is compatible with and suitable for your vehicle, and is within the towing capacity of your vehicle. Your Genesis should not be used to tow heavy loads as it is not designed for such use.

Subject to applicable law, Genesis Motors Australia Pty Ltd shall not be liable for any losses, damages, costs, expenses (including but not limited to consequential and indirect losses, personal injury and deaths) caused by towing which is not in compliance with the instructions set out in this owner's manual and under relevant law, rules and regulation.



### **WARNING**

Genesis DO NOT recommend the use of load levelling devices of any type. The use of a load levelling devices may place undue stress on the chassis causing chassis or mounting point failure.

### **If you do decide to pull a trailer (For New Zealand)**

Here are some important points if you decide to pull a trailer:

- Do not do any towing with your vehicle during its first 2,000 km in order to allow the engine to properly run in. Failure to heed this caution may result in serious engine or transmission damage.
- When towing a trailer, be sure to consult an authorised Genesis repairer for further information on additional requirements such as a towing kit, etc.
- Always drive your vehicle at a moderate speed (less than 100 km/h).
- On a long uphill gradient, do not exceed 70 km/h or the posted speed limit, whichever is lower.

### ***Towing Capacity Note***

The recommended towing capacity of this vehicle will be provided with the Genuine Genesis Approved Tow Bar.

- To enquire about the towing capacity of this vehicle, please visit [www. hyundai.co.nz](http://www.hyundai.co.nz), or call us on 0800 Genesis.
- To enquire about Genuine Genesis parts and accessories (including the Genuine Genesis Approved Tow Bar and its availability for purchase) please consult your an authorised Genesis repairer/service agent, call us on 0800 HYUNDAI or visit [www. hyundai.co.nz](http://www.hyundai.co.nz).

It is the owner's responsibility to ensure that any tow bar used is compatible with and suitable for their vehicle, and is within the towing capacity of their vehicle. Your Genesis should not be used to tow heavy loads beyond the recommended towing capacities displayed on [www.hyundai.co.nz](http://www.hyundai.co.nz) as it is not designed for such use.

Subject to applicable law, Genesis Motors New Zealand Ltd shall not be liable for any losses, damages, costs, expenses (including but not limited to consequential and indirect losses, personal injury and deaths) caused by towing which is not in compliance with instructions set out in the owner's manual.



## **WARNING**

---

Genesis DO NOT recommend the use of load levelling devices of any type. The use of a load levelling devices may place undue stress on the chassis causing chassis or mounting point failure.

---

## **Trailer towing equipment**

### ***Towbars***

Here are some rules to follow about towbars:

- Do you have to make any holes in the body of your vehicle when you install a trailer towbar? If you do, be sure to seal the holes later when you remove the towbar. If you do not seal them, carbon monoxide (CO) from your exhaust can get into your vehicle, as well as dirt and water.
- The bumpers on your vehicle are not intended for towbars. Do not attach rental towbars or other bumper-type towbars to them. Use only a frame-mounted towbar that does not attach to the bumper.
- Any part of the rear licence plate or lighting devices of the vehicle must not be obscured by the mechanical coupling device.

If the rear number plate and/or lighting devices can be obscured partially by any part of the mechanical coupling device, mechanical coupling devices that cannot be easily removed or repositioned without use of any tools, except an easily operated (an effort not exceeding 20 Nm (15 lbf.ft)) release key that is supplied by the manufacturer of the coupling device, are not permitted for use.

Note that the mechanical coupling device that is fitted and not used must always be removed or repositioned if the rear number plate and/or rear lighting devices are obscured by any part of the mechanical coupling device.

- Genesis Vehicle trailer towbars are available from an authorised Genesis repairer.

## **NOTICE**

---

We recommend only genuine Genesis towbars (these towbars are made and tested in Australia/New Zealand for local conditions).

---

## ***Safety chains***

Always attach chains between your vehicle and your trailer.

Instructions about safety chains may be provided by the towbar manufacturer or trailer manufacturer. Follow the manufacturer's recommendation when attaching safety chains. Always leave just enough slack so you can turn with your trailer. And, never allow safety chains to drag on the ground.

## ***Trailer brakes***

If your trailer is equipped with a braking system, make sure it conforms to your country's regulations and that it is properly installed and operating correctly.

If your trailer weighs more than the maximum trailer weight without trailer brakes loaded, then it needs its own braking system. Be sure to read and follow the instructions for the trailer brakes so you can install, adjust, and maintain them properly. Do not modify your vehicle's brake system.



## **WARNING**

---

Do not use a trailer with its own brakes unless you are absolutely sure that you have properly set up the braking system. This is not a task for amateurs. Use an experienced, competent trailer shop for this work.

---

## ***Driving with a trailer***

Towing a trailer requires a certain amount of experience. Before driving, acquaint yourself with the feel of handling and braking with the added weight of the trailer. And always keep in mind that the vehicle you are driving is now longer and not nearly as responsive as your vehicle is by itself.

Before you start, check the trailer towbar and platform, safety chains, electrical connector(s), lights, tyres, and brakes.

During your trip, occasionally check the load is secure, and that the lights and trailer brakes are still working.

## ***Following distance***

Stay at least twice as far behind the vehicle ahead as you would when driving your vehicle without a trailer. This can help you avoid situations that require heavy braking and sudden turns.

## ***Passing distance***

You need more passing distance when you are towing a trailer. Because of the increased vehicle length, you may need to go much farther beyond the passed vehicle before you can return to your lane.

## ***Reversing***

Hold the bottom of the steering wheel with one hand. Then, to move the trailer to the left, move your hand to the left. To move the trailer to the right, move your hand to the right. Always reverse slowly and, if possible, have someone guide you.

## ***Making turns***

When you are turning with a trailer, make wider turns than normal. Do this so your trailer does not strike soft shoulders, kerbs, road signs, trees, or other objects. Avoid jerky or sudden manoeuvres. Signal well in advance.

## ***Turn signals***

When you tow a trailer, your vehicle has to have a different turn signal flasher and extra wiring. The green arrows on your instrument panel flashes whenever you signal a turn or lane change. Properly connected, the trailer lights will also flash to alert other drivers when you are about to turn, change lanes, or stop.

When towing a trailer, the green arrows on your instrument panel flashes for turns even if the bulbs on the trailer are burned out. Thus, you may think drivers behind you are seeing your signals when, in fact, they are not. It is important to check occasionally to make sure the trailer bulbs are still working. Check the lights every time you disconnect and then reconnect the wires.



## **WARNING**

---

Do not connect a trailer lighting system directly to your vehicle's lighting system. Use an approved trailer wiring harness. Failure to do so may result in damage to the vehicle electrical system and/or personal injury. We recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer for assistance.

---

## ***Driving on hills***

On a long uphill grade, shift down and reduce your vehicle speed to around 70 km/h to reduce the possibility of motor and transmission overheating. If you do not shift down, you might have to use the brakes and your brakes may overheat and may not operate efficiently.

If your trailer weighs more than the maximum trailer weight without trailer brakes and you have an reduction gear, drive in D (Drive) when towing a trailer.

Operating your vehicle in D (Drive) when towing a trailer can minimise heat build-up and extend the life of your transmission.

## NOTICE

---

To prevent engine and/or transmission overheating:

- When towing a trailer on steep grades (in excess of 6 %) pay close attention to the engine coolant temperature gauge to make sure the engine does not overheat. If the needle of the coolant temperature gauge moves toward "H" (HOT), pull over and stop as soon as it is safe to do so, and allow the engine to idle until it cools down. You may proceed once the engine has cooled sufficiently.
  - If you tow a trailer with the maximum gross vehicle weight and maximum trailer weight, it may cause the engine or transmission to overheat. When driving in such conditions, allow the engine to idle until it cools down. You may proceed once the engine or transmission has cooled sufficiently.
  - When towing a trailer, your vehicle speed may be much slower than the general flow of traffic, especially when climbing an uphill grade. Use the left hand lane when towing a trailer on an uphill gradient. Choose your vehicle speed according to the maximum posted speed limit for vehicles with trailers, the steepness of the grade, and your trailer weight.
- 

### ***Parking on hills***

Generally, if you have a trailer attached to your vehicle, do not park your vehicle on a hill.

If you ever have to park your trailer on a hill:

- 1 Pull the vehicle into the parking space.  
Turn the steering wheel in the direction of the kerb.
- 2 Shift the gear to P (Park).
- 3 Apply the parking brake and shut off the vehicle.
- 4 Place wheel chocks under the trailer wheels on the down hill side of the wheels.
- 5 Start the vehicle, hold the brakes, shift to neutral, release the parking brake, and slowly release the brakes until the trailer chocks absorb the load.
- 6 Reapply the brakes and the parking brake.
- 7 Shift the gear to P (Park) when the vehicle is parked on an uphill grade and in R (Reverse) on a downhill.
- 8 Shut off the vehicle and release the vehicle brakes but apply the parking brake.



### **WARNING**

---

To prevent serious injury or death:

- Do not get out of the vehicle without applying the parking brake firmly. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle may move suddenly. You and others may be seriously or fatally injured.
  - Do not apply the accelerator pedal to hold the vehicle on an uphill.
- 

### ***Driving the vehicle after it has been parked on a hill***

- 1 With the gear in P (Park), apply your brakes and hold the brake pedal down whilst you:
  - Start your engine.
  - Shift into gear.
  - Release the parking brake.

- 2 Slowly remove your foot from the brake pedal.
- 3 Drive slowly until the trailer is clear of the chocks.
- 4 Stop and have someone pick up and store the chocks.

### **Maintenance when towing a trailer**

Your vehicle needs servicing more often when you regularly pull a trailer. Important items to pay particular attention to include engine oil, transmission fluid, axle lubricant, and cooling system fluid. Brake condition is another important item to frequently check. If you are towing a trailer, it is a good idea to review these items before you start your trip. Do not forget to maintain your trailer and towbar. Follow the maintenance schedule that accompanies your trailer and check it periodically. Preferably, conduct checking at the start of each day's driving. Most importantly, all towbar nuts and bolts must be tight.

### **NOTICE**

---

To prevent vehicle damage:

- Due to higher load during trailer use, overheating may occur on hot days or during uphill driving. If the coolant gauge indicates over-heating, switch off the air conditioning and stop the vehicle in a safe area to cool down the engine.
  - Do not switch off the engine whilst the coolant gauge indicates over-heating.  
(Keep the engine idle to cool down the engine)
  - When towing, check transmission fluid more frequently.
  - If your vehicle is not equipped with air conditioning, install a condenser fan to improve the engine performance when towing a trailer.
-



## Vehicle weight

Two labels on your driver's door sill show how much weight your vehicle was designed to carry: the tyre and Loading Information Label and the Certification Label.

Before loading your vehicle, familiarize yourself with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight ratings, from the vehicle's specifications and the Certification Label:

### ***Base Kerb Weight***

This is the weight of the vehicle including a full tank of fuel and all standard equipment. It does not include passengers, luggage, or optional equipment.

### ***Vehicle Kerb Weight***

This is the weight of your new vehicle when you picked it up from your dealer plus any aftermarket equipment.

### ***Luggage Weight***

This figure includes all weight added to the Base kerb Weight, including luggage and optional equipment.

### ***GAW (Gross Axle Weight)***

This is the total weight placed on each axle (front and rear) - including vehicle kerb weight and all payload.

### ***GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating)***

This is the maximum allowable weight that can be carried by a single axle (front or rear). These numbers are shown on the Certification Label. The total load on each axle must never exceed its GAWR.

### ***GVW (Gross Vehicle Weight)***

This is the Base kerb Weight plus actual luggage Weight plus passengers.

### ***GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating)***

This is the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle (including all options, equipment, passengers and luggage).

## **Overloading**



### **WARNING**

---

Exceeding these ratings can cause a collision or vehicle damage. You can calculate the weight of your load by weighing the items (and people) before putting them in the vehicle. Be careful not to overload your vehicle.

---



# 7. Driver assistance systems

## Before Using Driver Assistance Systems

### WARNING

Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicles ahead and adjust your vehicle speed to the road conditions. Driver Assistance System may not operate in all situations and cannot avoid all collisions.

To prevent serious injury or death:

- Control your vehicle at all times. In some cases, the Driver Assistance Systems may provide unwanted braking or steering.
- Never attempt to activate any Driver Assistance System by intentionally driving toward people, animals, objects, or other vehicles.
- The steering, braking, and acceleration inputs from you may override the responses from Driver Assistance Systems.
- Do not use Driver Assistance Systems when towing a trailer or using a towbar mounted carrier.
- Do not use Driver Assistance Systems if you believe the sensors or the systems may not be functioning properly.

### Information

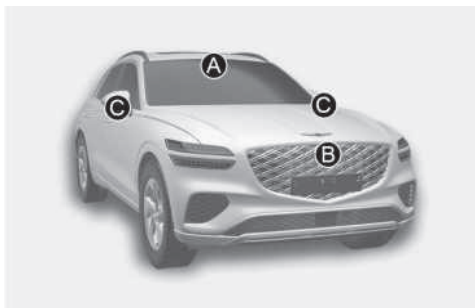
Depending on the infotainment software version, the description of each function of the driver assistance system may differ from this owner's manual.

### Driver Assistance System sensors

The Driver Assistance Systems on your vehicle uses cameras and sensors to detect potential hazards in the vicinity of your vehicle.

#### *Detecting sensors*

##### Cameras





The actual shape may differ from the images.

- [A] Front view camera
- [B] Wide-front view camera (if equipped)
- [C] Wide-side view camera (if equipped)
- [D] Wide-rear view camera



## CAUTION

---

To prevent serious injury or death:

- Never disassemble the camera sensors or camera sensor assemblies.
  - We recommend that the detecting sensor be replaced or repaired by an authorised Genesis repairer.
  - Never install any accessories, stickers, or tint the front windscreen.
  - Always keep the camera dry.
  - Never place any reflective objects (e.g. white paper, mirror) on the instrument panel.
  - Do not use any cleanser containing acid or alkaline detergents when cleaning the camera lenses. Use only a mild soap or neutral detergent, and rinse thoroughly with water.
- 

## Radars





The actual shape may differ from the images.

- [A] Front radar
- [B] Front corner radar (if equipped)
- [C] Rear corner radar



## CAUTION

---

To prevent serious injury or death:

- Never disassemble the radar or radar assembly, and never apply any impact on it.
  - If there is impact on or near the radar, the sensors may be damaged or not be properly aligned near the radar, even though a warning message does not appear on the instrument cluster, Driver Assist Systems may not operate properly. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.
  - If the radar have been replaced or repaired, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.
  - We recommend that genuine Genesis parts are used to repair the bumper where the radar is located. Their performance have been proven.
  - Do not install a licence plate frame or other objects such as bumper sticker, film, bumper guard, or bumper wrap near the radar.
  - Driver Assistance system may not work properly if the bumper has been replaced, or the area surrounding the radar has been damaged or painted.
  - If a trailer or towbar mounted carrier is attached, it may adversely affect the performance of the rear corner radar or the system may not operate.
-

## Ultrasonic sensors



The actual shape may differ from the images.

[A] Front ultrasonic sensors

[B] Front side ultrasonic sensors (if equipped)

[C] Rear ultrasonic sensors

[D] Rear side ultrasonic sensors (if equipped)



### CAUTION

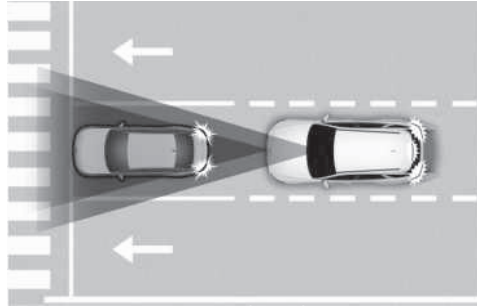
---

To prevent serious injury or death:

- Always keep the ultrasonic sensors clean.
  - Do not spray the ultrasonic sensors or the surrounding area directly with high pressure water.
  - Do not apply objects such as bumper sticker or bumper guard, near the ultrasonic sensors and never apply paint to the bumper or other locations.
  - Never disassemble or strike the ultrasonic sensor components.
  - Do not modify the vehicle bumper height or ultrasonic sensor installations. Any non-factory installed equipment or accessories may interfere with the sensor performance.
  - If the ultrasonic sensors have been forcibly moved out of proper alignment or are damaged, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.
-

## Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)

### Basic function



Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist helps detect a vehicle, a motorcyclist, a pedestrian, or a cyclist ahead on the road and may warn you of a possible collision with a warning message on the instrument cluster and a warning sound. Also, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may assist with braking your vehicle to help reduce collision speed or help avoid a collision.

In addition, when driving at high speeds, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist helps detect vehicles in front and adjacent lanes. If a collision is imminent when changing lanes, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist will apply emergency braking to help reduce collision speed or help avoid a collision. (if equipped)

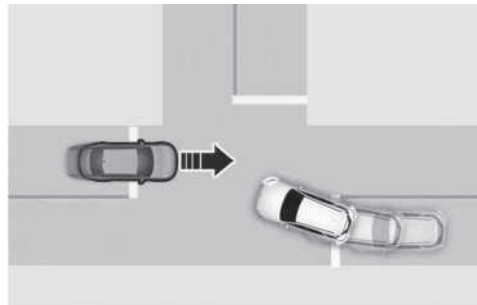
### NOTICE

---

A motorcyclist refers to the driver of a vehicle riding the following powered two-wheeler.

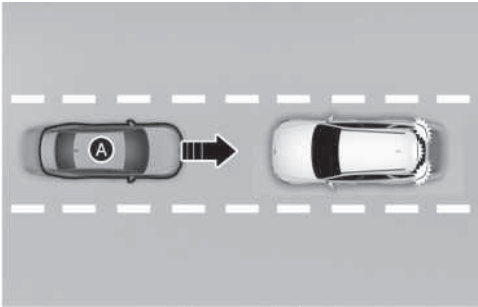
- Mopeds with 50 cc and restricted top speeds
  - Motorcycles
- 

### Junction Turning function



Junction Turning function helps avoid a collision with an oncoming vehicle or motorcyclist in an adjacent lane when turning right at a crossroad with the turn signal on by applying emergency braking.

**Direct Oncoming function**

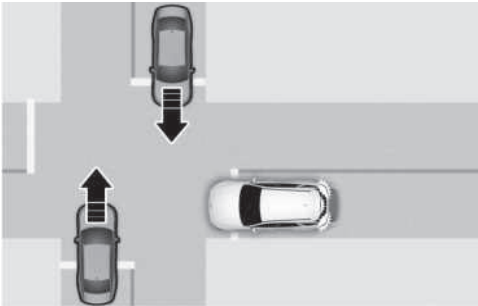


[A] Oncoming vehicle

Direct Oncoming function helps reduce the speed of a collision when a vehicle or motorcyclist approaching from the opposite direction is detected.

**Junction Crossing function**

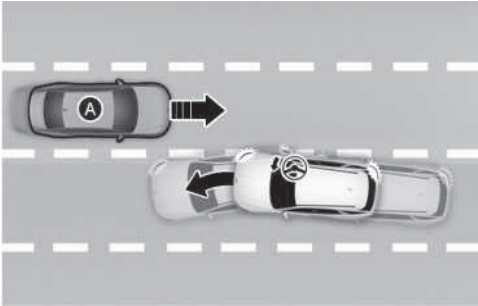
 if equipped



Junction Crossing function helps avoid a collision with oncoming vehicles on the left or right side when crossing an intersection by applying emergency braking.

**Lane-Change Oncoming function**

 if equipped



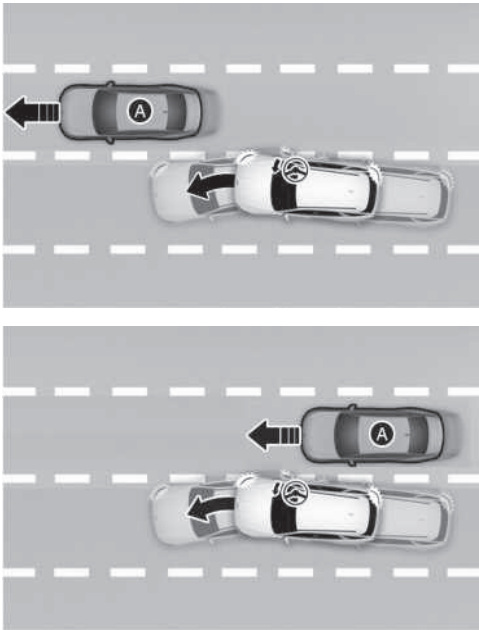
[A] Oncoming vehicle



Lane-Change Oncoming function helps avoid a collision with an oncoming vehicle or motorcyclist when changing lanes by assisting the driver's steering.

**Lane-Change Side function**

 if equipped

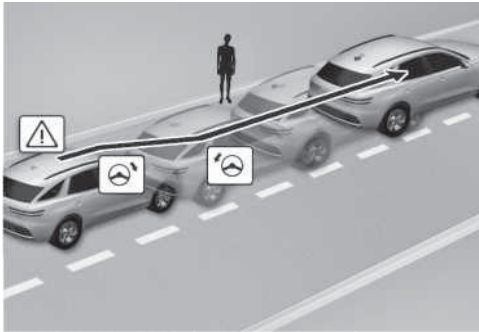


[A] Front-side vehicle

Lane-Change Side function helps avoid a collision with the vehicle or motorcyclist ahead in the next lane when changing lanes by assisting the driver's steering.

**Evasive Steering Assist function**

 if equipped



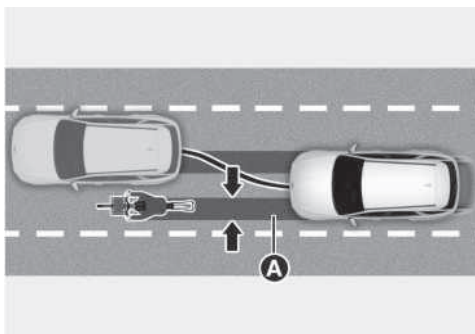
- Driver steering assist

Evasive Steering Assist function helps avoid a collision with a vehicle, a motorcyclist, pedestrian or cyclist ahead in the same lane. When a collision risk is detected, Evasive Steering Assist function warns the driver and if the driver steers to avoid collision it assists the driver's steering.

- Evasive steering assist

Evasive Steering Assist function helps avoid a collision with a motorcyclist, pedestrian or cyclist ahead in the same lane. When a collision risk is detected, Evasive Steering Assist function warns the driver and if there is space to avoid collision in the lane, it assists the driver's steering.

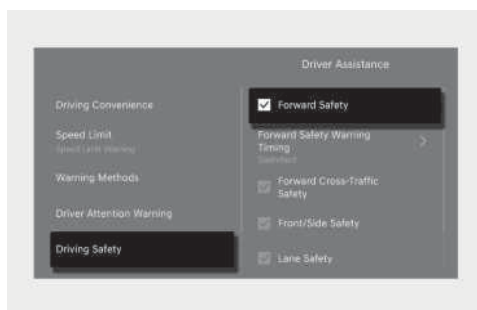
*Evasive Steering Assist function operates when there is a collision risk and sufficient operating area between your vehicle and the detected pedestrian or cyclist ahead.*



[A] Operating Area of Evasive Steering Assist function

## Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist settings

### *Forward Safety*



With the engine on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to select the following:

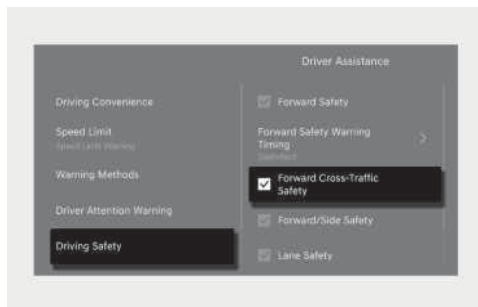
- If **Forward safety** is selected, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist displays a warning message and sounds an audible warning depending on the collision risk levels. Braking assist is applied depending on the collision risk levels. If **Forward safety** is deselected, Forward Safety turns off. The (⚠️) warning light illuminates on the instrument cluster.

## WARNING

Each time the engine is restarted, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist turns on. If **Forward safety** is deselected, the driver should always be aware of the surroundings and drive safely.

### *Forward Cross-Traffic Safety*

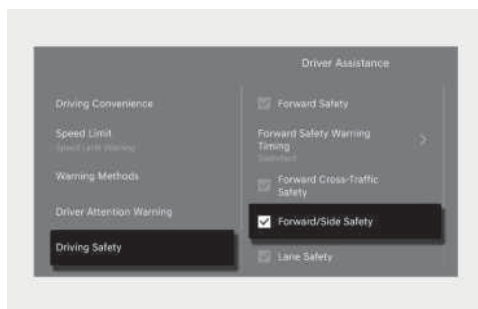
 If equipped



With the engine on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Driving safety > Forward cross-traffic safety** from the Settings menu to turn on Junction Crossing function and deselect to turn off the function.

### *Forward/Side Safety*

 If equipped



With the engine on, select or deselect **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Driving safety > Forward/Side safety** from the Settings menu to turn on Lane-Change Oncoming function, Lane-Change Side function, and Evasive Steering Assist function.

- If **Forward/Side safety** is selected, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist warns the driver with, steering wheel vibration, a warning message and an audible warning depending on the collision risk levels. Steering assist is applied depending on the collision risk levels. If **Forward/Side safety** is deselected, Forward/Side Safety turns off. The  warning light illuminates on the instrument cluster.

You can check whether Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist is on or off from the Settings menu. If the  or  warning light remains ON when Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist is on, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

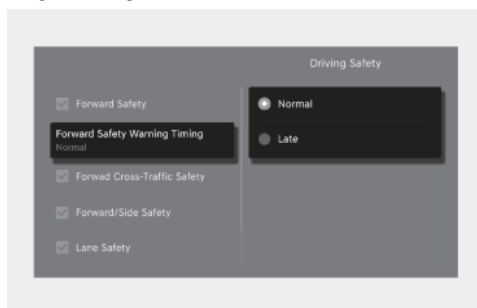
## WARNING

- Each time the engine is restarted, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist turns on. If **Forward safety**, **Forward-cross traffic safety**, and **Forward/Side safety** are deselected the driver should always be aware of the surroundings and drive safely.
- When the trailer's connector is plugged into your vehicle, Forward/Side Safety function of Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist automatically turns off. In this case, you cannot get help from Forward/Side Safety function of Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist. Pay extra attention when you drive when the function is inactive. (If a Genesis genuine Trailer Kit that can determine whether a trailer is connected is used)

## CAUTION

- The setting for **Forward safety** includes 'Basic function' and 'Junction Turning'.
- The setting for **Forward-cross traffic Safety** includes 'Junction Crossing'. (if equipped)
- The setting for **Forward/Side safety** includes 'Lane-Change Oncoming', 'Lane-Change Side', and 'Evasive Steering Assist' (if equipped).
- If **Forward safety** is deselected, Junction Crossing function does not operate even when **Forward-cross traffic safety** and **Forward/Side safety** are selected.
- If a trailer or towbar mounted carrier is attached, it may adversely affect the performance of the Forward Collision-Avoidance assist.

### *Forward Safety Warning Timing*



With the engine on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Driving safety > Forward safety warning timing** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to change the initial warning activation time for Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist. The warning time can be set to either **Normal** or **Late**.

- Use **Normal** in normal driving conditions. If the Forward Safety Warning Timing seems sensitive, change it to **Late**.
- If **Late** is selected, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist warns the driver more slowly.

## CAUTION

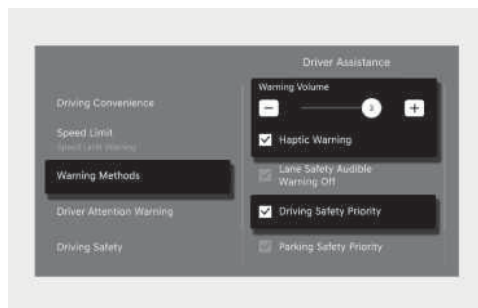
- Even though **Normal** is selected for Forward Safety Warning Timing, if the front vehicle suddenly stops, the warning may seem late.
- Select **Late** for Forward Safety Warning Timing when traffic is light and your speed is slow.

## Information

---

- The Forward Safety Warning Timing settings do not apply to **Forward/Side safety**.
  - When the engine is restarted, the Forward Safety Warning Timing maintains its last setting.
- 

### *Warning methods*



With the engine on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Warning methods** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to select the following:

- **Warning volume:** The warning volume can be adjusted. If you set the warning volume to '0', the warning volume does not turn off but sounds as '1'.
- **Haptic warning:** The steering wheel vibration can be set.
- **Driving safety priority:** Your vehicle lowers all other audio volumes when the Driver Assistance system warning sounds.

## Information

---

- If you change the warning methods, the warning methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.
  - The warning volume and haptic warning cannot be turned off at the same time. When one of the warning is turned off the other is activated.
  - When the engine is restarted, the warning methods maintain their previous setting.
  - The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on the vehicle features and specifications.
- 

### **Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist operation**

#### *Basic function*

Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may warn and brake your vehicle depending on the collision risk level.

Collision warning



- To warn the driver of a collision, the  warning light blinks and the "**Collision warning!**" warning message appears on the instrument cluster, an audible warning sounds, and the steering wheel vibrates.
- If a vehicle or motorcyclist is detected in front, the function operates when your vehicle speed is between about 10-200 km/h.
- If a pedestrian or cyclist is detected in front, the function operates when your vehicle speed is between about 10-85 km/h.

Emergency braking



To warn the driver that emergency braking is assisted, the  warning light blinks and the "**Emergency braking**" warning message appears on the instrument cluster, an audible warning sounds, and the steering wheel vibrates (if equipped).

Emergency braking operates under the following conditions:

- Vehicle or motorcyclist:

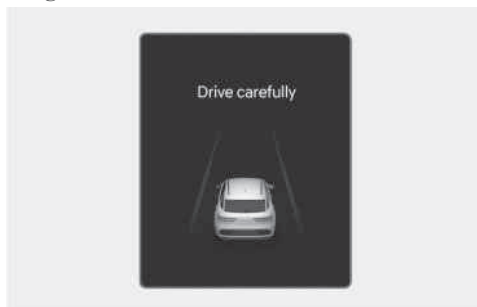
|                      | Driving vehicle   | Stopped vehicle                     |
|----------------------|-------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Weak braking power   | About 10-200 km/h |                                     |
| Strong braking power | About 10-130 km/h | About 10-75 km/h<br>(10-100 km/h*1) |

\*1: If Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist judges that avoiding a collision is difficult even by changing the driving lane, braking is assisted more earlier. (if equipped)

- Pedestrian or cyclist:

The function operates when your vehicle speed is between about 10-65 km/h.

### Stopping vehicle and ending brake control



After your vehicle has stopped following an Emergency Braking event, the "**Drive carefully**" warning message may appear on the instrument cluster.

Press the brake pedal immediately and check the surroundings.

- Braking control ends about 2 seconds after your vehicle is stopped following an Emergency Braking event.

### Information

---

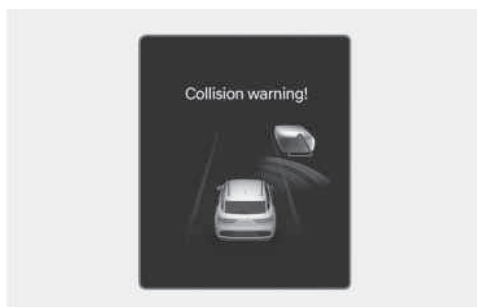
The audible warning can be turned off whilst collision warning or emergency braking is operating by pressing the hazard warning flasher button.

---

### *Junction Turning function*

Junction Turning function may warn and brake your vehicle depending on the collision risk level.

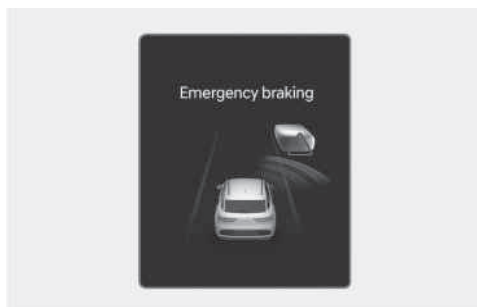
### Collision warning



- To warn the driver of a collision, the  warning light blinks and the "**Collision warning!**" warning message appears on the instrument cluster, an audible warning sounds, and the steering wheel vibrates.
- The function operates when your vehicle speed is between about 10-30 km/h.
- The oncoming vehicle speed is between about 30-70 km/h.

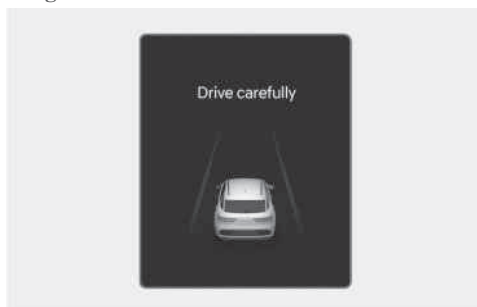
- A motorcyclist or cyclist speed is about 15-70 km/h.

### Emergency braking



- To warn the driver that emergency braking is assisted, the  warning light blinks and the "**Emergency braking**" warning message appears on the instrument cluster, an audible warning sounds, and the steering wheel vibrates.
- In an emergency braking situation, braking is assisted with strong braking power by the function to help prevent collision with the oncoming vehicle.
- The function operates when your vehicle speed is between about 10-30 km/h.
- The oncoming vehicle speed is between about 30-70 km/h.
- A motorcyclist or cyclist speed is about 15-70 km/h.

### Stopping vehicle and ending brake control



After your vehicle has stopped following an Emergency Braking event, the "**Drive carefully**" warning message may appear on the instrument cluster.

Press the brake pedal immediately and check the surroundings.

- Braking control ends about 2 seconds after your vehicle is stopped following an Emergency Braking event.



## Information

---

- The audible warning can be turned off whilst collision warning or emergency braking is operating by pressing the hazard warning flasher button.
  - When turning left at an intersection, braking is assisted to reduce or avoid collisions if there is a collision risk with a cyclist approaching at the speed of 15 to 20 km/h from the opposite side.
- 

### *Direct Oncoming function*

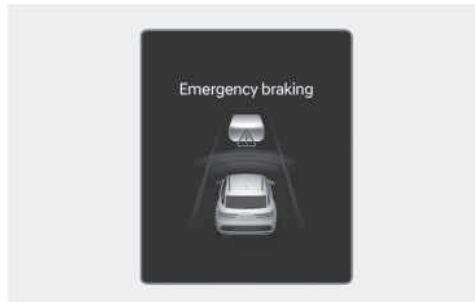
Direct Oncoming function may warn and brake your vehicle depending on the collision risk level.

#### Collision warning



- To warn the driver of a collision, the  warning light blinks and the "**Collision warning!**" warning message appears on the instrument cluster, an audible warning sounds, and the steering wheel vibrates.
- The function operates when your vehicle speed is between about 30-130 km/h and the detected oncoming vehicle or motorcyclist speed is about above 10 km/h.

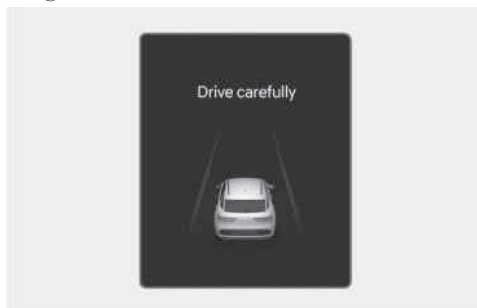
#### Emergency braking



- To warn the driver that emergency braking is assisted, the  warning light blinks and the "**Emergency braking**" warning message appears on the instrument cluster, an audible warning sounds, and the steering wheel vibrates.
- In an emergency braking situation, braking is assisted with strong braking power by the function to help prevent collision with the oncoming vehicle.

- The function operates when your vehicle speed is between about 30-130 km/h and the detected oncoming vehicle or motorcyclist speed is about above 10 km/h.

### Stopping vehicle and ending brake control



After your vehicle has stopped following an Emergency Braking event, the "**Drive carefully**" warning message may appear on the instrument cluster.

Press the brake pedal immediately and check the surroundings.

- Braking control ends about 2 seconds after your vehicle is stopped following an Emergency Braking event.



### CAUTION

If your vehicle or the oncoming vehicle is not driving straight, Direct Oncoming function warning and control may be late or may not operate.

### Information

The audible warning can be turned off whilst collision warning or emergency braking is operating by pressing the hazard warning flasher button.

### *Junction Crossing function*

 if equipped

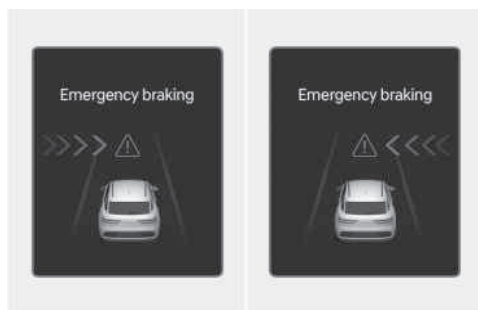
Junction Crossing function may warn and brake your vehicle depending on the collision risk level.

### Collision warning



- To warn the driver of a collision, the  warning light blinks and the "**Collision warning!**" warning message appears on the instrument cluster, an audible warning sounds, and the steering wheel vibrates.
- The function operates when your vehicle speed is between about 10-55 km/h and the crossing vehicle speed is between about 10-60 km/h.

### Emergency braking



- To warn the driver that emergency braking is assisted, the  warning light blinks and the, "**Emergency braking**" warning message appears on the instrument cluster, an audible warning sounds, and the steering wheel vibrates.
- In an emergency braking situation, braking is assisted with strong braking power by the function to help prevent collision with the crossing vehicle.
- The function operates when your vehicle speed is between about 10-55 km/h and the crossing vehicle speed is between about 10-40 km/h.

### Stopping vehicle and ending brake control



After your vehicle has stopped following an Emergency Braking event, the "**Drive carefully**" warning message may appear on the instrument cluster.

Press the brake pedal immediately and check the surroundings.

- Braking control ends about 2 seconds after your vehicle is stopped following an Emergency Braking event.

## CAUTION

If your vehicle or the oncoming vehicle is not driving straight, Front Oncoming function's warning and vehicle control may be late or may not operate.

## Information

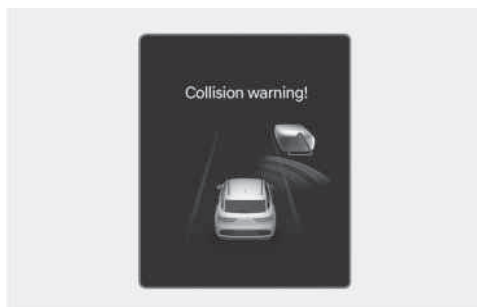
The audible warning can be turned off whilst collision warning or emergency braking is operating by pressing the hazard warning flasher button.

### *Lane-Change Oncoming function*

 if equipped

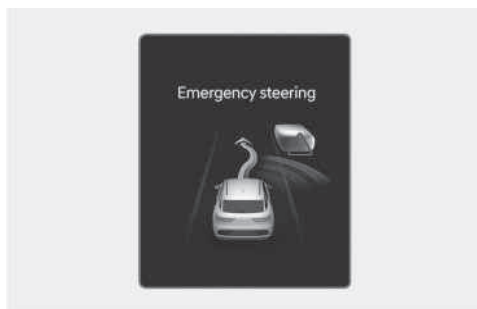
Lane-Change Oncoming function may warn and steer your vehicle depending on the collision risk levels.

#### Collision warning



- To warn the driver of a collision, the  warning light blinks and the "**Collision warning!**" warning message appears on the instrument cluster, an audible warning sounds, and the steering wheel vibrates.
- The function operates when your vehicle speed is between about 40-145 km/h and the oncoming vehicle or motorcyclist speed is about above 10 km/h and the relative speed with your vehicle is about below 200 km/h.

#### Emergency steering



- To warn the driver that emergency steering is assisted, the  warning light blinks and the **"Emergency steering"** warning message appears on the instrument cluster, an audible warning sounds, and the steering wheel vibrates.
- In an emergency steering situation, steering is assisted by the function to help prevent collision with the oncoming vehicle.
- The function operates when your vehicle speed is between about 40-145 km/h and the oncoming vehicle or motorcyclist speed is about above 10 km/h and the relative speed with your vehicle is about below 200 km/h.

### ***Lane-Change Side function***

 If equipped

Lane-Change Side function may warn and steer your vehicle depending on the collision risk level.

#### **Collision warning**



- To warn the driver of a collision, the  warning light blinks and the **"Collision warning!"** warning message appears on the instrument cluster, an audible warning sounds, and the steering wheel vibrates.
- The function operates when your vehicle speed is between about 40-145 km/h.

## Emergency steering



- To warn the driver that emergency steering is assisted, the  warning light blinks and the "**Emergency steering**" warning message appears on the instrument cluster, an audible warning sounds, and the steering wheel vibrates.
- In an emergency steering situation, steering is assisted by the function to help prevent collision with the front-side vehicle.
- The function operates when your vehicle speed is between about 40-145 km/h and front-side vehicle and motorcyclist is driving.



### CAUTION

Lane-Change Side function does not operate if the vehicle speed of the preceding vehicle from the front side is 0 km/h.

### *Evasive Steering Assist function*

 if equipped

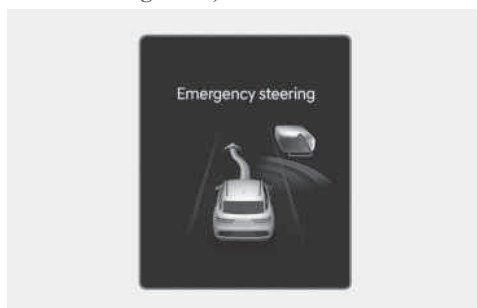
Evasive Steering Assist function may warn and steer your vehicle with Emergency steering.

## Emergency Steering (Driver steering assist)



- To warn the driver that emergency steering is assisted, the  warning light blinks and the "**Emergency steering**" message appears on the instrument cluster, an audible warning sounds, and the steering wheel vibrates.
- If there is a risk of collision with a vehicle, motorcyclist, pedestrian, or cyclist in front, the steering is assisted to help prevent collision when the driver steers the vehicle to avoid collision.
- The function operates when your vehicle speed is between about 40-85 km/h.

## Emergency steering (Evasive steering assist)



- To warn the driver that emergency steering is assisted, the  warning light blinks and the "**Emergency steering**" message appears on the instrument cluster, an audible warning sounds, and the steering wheel vibrates.
- The function operates when your vehicle speed is between about 65-75 km/h.
- The recognized pedestrian or cyclist moves in the same direction as your vehicle, or in the opposite direction. In addition, there is sufficient space for an evasive movement for your vehicle. However, this function may not operate for pedestrians or cyclists moving in the horizontal direction.
- If there is high risk of collision with a pedestrian and cyclist in front, and the vehicle speed to operate emergency braking has been exceeded, the steering is assisted to help prevent a collision when there is space to avoid collision in the driving lane.

## CAUTION

---

- The steering wheel may turn automatically when emergency steering is operating.
  - Emergency steering automatically cancels when risk factors disappear. If necessary, the driver must steer the vehicle.
  - Emergency steering may not operate or may cancel during operation if the steering wheel is held tightly or steered in the opposite direction.
  - When steering is assisted to avoid collision with a vehicle, motorcyclist, pedestrian and cyclist, Evasive steering assist will be cancelled if collisions with other objects (vehicles, motorcyclist, pedestrians, or cyclists) are expected.
  - Evasive steering assist may not operate if space to avoid collision in the driving lane is insufficient.
  - When driving at night, the recognition performance for a motorcyclist may decrease, this may temporarily limit or disable the Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist.
- 

## Information

---

For more information on warning messages, refer to Collision Warning in "**Basic function**".

---

## WARNING

---

Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate in all situations and cannot avoid all collisions.

To prevent serious injury or death:

- Only change the settings after parking your vehicle at a safe location.
  - Control your vehicle at all times. Do not depend on Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist to avoid a collision. Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicles ahead and reduce your vehicle speed as needed.
  - Never attempt to test Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist by intentionally driving toward people, animals, objects, or other vehicles.
  - Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not assist braking your vehicle if you press the brake pedal sufficiently in response to the potential hazard detected by the function to avoid all collisions.
  - Depending on the road and driving conditions, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may warn the driver late or may not warn the driver.
  - During Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist operation, your vehicle may stop suddenly. Always wear your seat belt, check your passengers have their seat belts fastened and secure loose objects that may become projectiles.
  - When another system's warning message appears or audible warning is heard, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not warn you.
  - You may not hear the audible warning of Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist if the surrounding environment is too noisy.
  - Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may stop operating, or may not operate properly, or may operate unnecessarily depending on the road conditions and the surroundings.
-





## WARNING

---

- Even if there is a problem with Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist, the vehicle's basic braking system operates normally.
  - During emergency braking, braking by Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist automatically cancels if you excessively press the accelerator pedal or sharply steer your vehicle.
- 



## CAUTION

---

- Depending on the condition of the vehicle, motorcyclist, pedestrian, and cyclist detected in front, and the surroundings, the speed ranges Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may be reduced. Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may only warn the driver, or it may not operate.
  - Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist operates only under certain conditions that determines the risk level:
    - Condition of other vehicles
    - The direction vehicles are driven
    - Vehicle speed
    - Surroundings
  - If your vehicle speed is too fast or the speed difference with the other vehicle, motorcyclist, or cyclist is large, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may be limited or may not operate properly.
  - When a collision with a surrounding vehicle is expected, Lane-Change Oncoming, Lane-Change Side and Evasive Steering Assist does not assist you with steering but only warns of a potential collision (if equipped).
- 

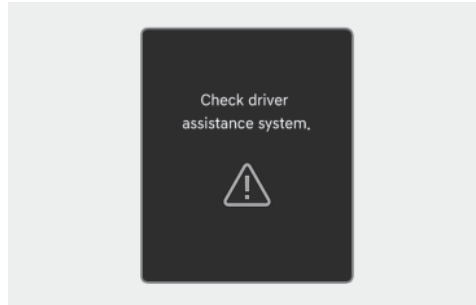
## Information

---

- When a collision is imminent, braking may be assisted if you press the brake pedal insufficiently.
  - The images and colours in the instrument cluster may differ depending on the instrument cluster type or theme selected from the settings menu.
-

## Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction and limitations

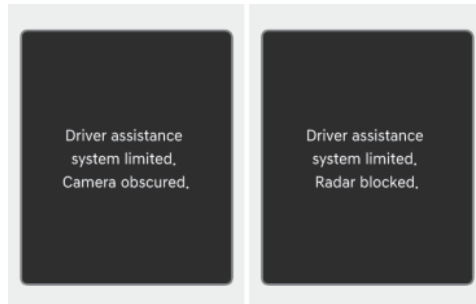
### *Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction*



When Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist is not working properly, the "**Check driver assistance system.**" warning message may appear, and the ,  and  warning lights illuminate on the instrument cluster. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

- You can check the warning message in the Utility view on the cluster display.

### *Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist disabled*



If the front view camera, front radar, bumper, or sensor is covered or blocked by foreign material, such as snow, rain, or dirt, or when a trailer or towbar mounted carrier is installed, the detecting performance may decrease and temporarily limit or disable Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist.

The "**Driver assistance system limited. Camera obscured.**" or the "**Driver assistance system limited. Radar blocked.**" warning message may appear, and the ,  and  warning lights may illuminate on the instrument cluster.

The function operates normally when such foreign material, trailer, or carrier are removed, and the engine is restarted.

If Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist does not operate normally after anything covering or blocking the sensors is removed, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

- You can check the warning message in the Utility view on the cluster display.



## WARNING

---

- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly even if there is no warning message or warning light on the instrument cluster.
  - Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly in open areas where no objects are detected (e.g. empty car park) or when the detecting sensors are blocked immediately after turning on the engine.
  - If the vehicle is turned off and restarted whilst the camera is blocked or malfunctioned, the condition is maintained and may not operate properly.
- 

### Detecting sensors

Refer to the "**Driver Assistance System sensors**" section in this chapter for the location and the general precautions of the front view camera, front radar, front corner radar (if equipped), and rear corner radar (if equipped).

### *Limitations of Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist*

Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate normally or may operate unexpectedly if:

- The detecting sensor or the surroundings are blocked, covered, or damaged by snow, water, or dirt, etc.
- The temperature near the front view camera is hot or cold.
- The camera lens is covered or blocked by windscreen tint, the windscreen is damaged, or a sticky material (sticker, bug, etc.) is on the glass.
- Moisture is not removed or frozen on the windscreen.
- Washer fluid is sprayed continuously, or the wiper is on.
- You are driving in heavy rain or snow, or thick fog.
- The front view camera's field of view is obstructed by glare from the sun.
- Sunlight, streetlight or light from an oncoming vehicle is reflected on the wet road surface such as a puddle on the road.
- An object is placed on the instrument panel.
- Your vehicle is being towed.
- The surroundings are very bright or very dark (nighttime, tunnel, etc.).
- The light level changes suddenly, for example when entering or exiting a tunnel.
- The light level outside is low, and the headlamps of the front vehicle are turned off or are not bright.
- A front vehicle, motorcyclist, pedestrian, or cyclist is partially visible.
- The vehicle in front is a bus, heavy truck, truck with an unusual shape, trailer, etc.
- The vehicle or motorcyclist in front has no tail lamps, tail lamps are located in an unusual location.
- In low light conditions, the tail lamps of the front vehicle are turned off or not bright.
- The rear of the front vehicle is small or the vehicle does not look normal, such as when the vehicle is tilted, overturned, or the side of the vehicle is visible, etc.
- The front vehicle's ground clearance is too low or high
- A vehicle, motorcyclist, pedestrian, or cyclist suddenly cuts in front.

- The bumper around the front radar has been damaged or modified, and the radar is out of position.
- The temperature around the front radar is very hot or cold.
- A material is near that reflects very well on the front radar, such as guardrail, nearby vehicle, etc.
- The bicycle in front is made of material that does not reflect on the front radar well.
- The vehicle or motorcyclist in front is detected late.
- The vehicle or motorcyclist in front is suddenly blocked by an obstacle.
- The vehicle or motorcyclist in front changes lane or reduces the speed.
- The vehicle or motorcyclist in front is bent out of shape.
- The speed of the vehicle or motorcyclist in front is slow or fast.
- The vehicle or motorcyclist in front steers in the opposite direction of your vehicle to avoid a collision.
- Your vehicle changes lane at low speed with a vehicle or motorcyclist in front.
- The vehicle in front is covered with snow.
- You are departing or returning to the lane.
- You are on curve or roundabout and the vehicle or motorcyclist in front is not detected
- You are continuously driving in a circle.
- The vehicle in front has an unusual shape.
- The vehicle in front is driving uphill or downhill.
- Only part of a pedestrian or cyclist is detected. For example, if the pedestrian is leaning over or is not walking upright.
- The pedestrian or cyclist is wearing clothing or equipment that makes it difficult to detect.



The image above shows the image the front view camera and front radar are capable of detecting as a vehicle, motorcyclist, pedestrian, and cyclist.

- The pedestrian or cyclist in front is moving very quickly.
- The pedestrian or cyclist in front is short.
- The pedestrian or cyclist in front has impaired mobility.
- The pedestrian or cyclist in front is moving at an angle to the path of your vehicle.
- There is a group of pedestrians, cyclists in front of your vehicle.

- The pedestrian or cyclist is wearing clothing that easily blends into the background, making it difficult to detect.
- The pedestrian or cyclist is difficult to distinguish from the similar shaped structure in the surroundings.
- You are driving by a pedestrian, cyclist, traffic signs, or another structure near an intersection.
- You are driving through steam, smoke, or shadow.
- You are driving through a tunnel or an iron bridge.
- You are driving in large, open areas where there are few vehicles or structures (e.g. desert, meadow, empty suburb).
- You are driving in a car park.
- You are driving through a tollgate, construction area, unpaved road, partial paved road, uneven road, speed bumps, etc.
- You are driving on roads with railroad tracks or other embedded metal objects.
- You are driving on an inclined road or curved road.
- You are driving on a road with trees or streetlights.
- You are driving on a narrow road where trees or grass are overgrown.
- You are driving in an area with strong radio waves or electrical noise interference.
- The vehicle moves unstably or vibrates excessively.
- Your vehicle height is low or high due to heavy loads, abnormal tyre pressure, etc.
- The vehicle is installed with a snow chain, spare tyre or different size wheel.

#### **Junction Crossing, Lane-Change Oncoming, Lane-Change Side, Evasive Steering Assist function**

 if equipped

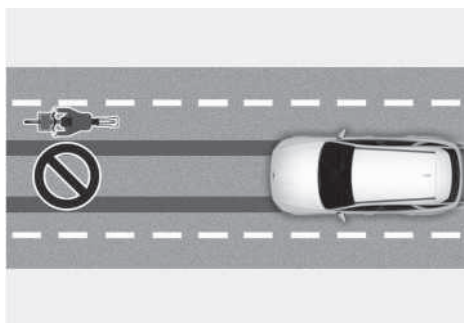
- The temperature near the front corner radar or rear corner radar is very hot or cold.
- A trailer or towbar mounted carrier is installed and it blocks the rear corner radar.
- The front corner radar or rear corner radar is covered by snow, rain, dirt, etc.
- The area near the front corner radar or rear corner radar is covered with objects, such as a bumper sticker, bumper guard, bike rack, etc.
- The bumper around the front corner radar or rear corner radar has been damaged or modified, and the radar is out of position.
- The front corner radar or rear corner radar is blocked by a vehicle, wall, or pillar.
- You are driving on an entrance/exit ramp or through a tollbooth.
- There is a fixed object near your vehicle, such as sound barriers, guardrails, central dividers, entry barriers, streetlights, signs, tunnels, walls, etc.
- The other vehicle drives very close behind your vehicle, or passes by your vehicle in close proximity.
- The speed of the other vehicle is so fast that it passes by your vehicle in a short time.
- Your vehicle passes another vehicle.
- Your vehicle has started at the same time as the vehicle next to you and has accelerated.

- The vehicle in the next lane moves two lanes away from you, or the vehicle moves two lanes away to the next lane.
- A motorcycle or bicycle is detected.
- A vehicle such as a flat trailer is detected.
- A big vehicle such as a bus or truck is detected.
- A moving obstacle such as a pedestrian, animal, shopping cart, or a baby stroller is detected.
- A vehicle with lower height, such as a sports car is detected.
- The lane is difficult to distinguish because:
  - The lane markings are damaged or covered with rain, snow, dirt, oil, etc.
  - The colour of the lane marking road surface is wet.
  - There are markings on the road or near the lane that looks similar to the lane markings.
  - The lane markings are covered by the shadow of objects around the road, such as median strip, guardrails, noise barriers, and trees.
- The lane number increases or decreases, or the lane markings are crossing.
- There are more than two lane markings on the road.
- The lane markings are complicated or a structure substitutes for the lines, such as a construction area or tollbooth area.
- There are road markings, such as zigzag lanes, crosswalk markings, and road signs.
- The lane suddenly disappears, such as at an intersection.
- The lane is very wide or narrow.
- There is a kerb or road edged without a lane.
- You are driving on the left or right side of the median bus lane or on the median bus lane.
- The distance to the front vehicle is extremely short or the vehicle in front is covering the lane marking.

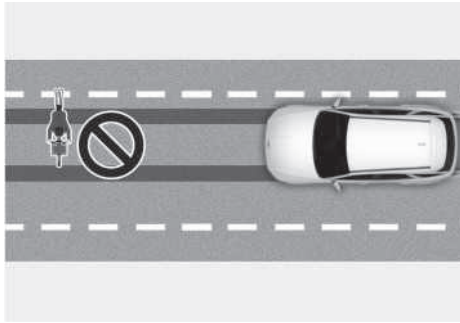
### **Limitations of Evasive Steering Assist**

Evasive Steering Assist function may not work properly in the following situations when:

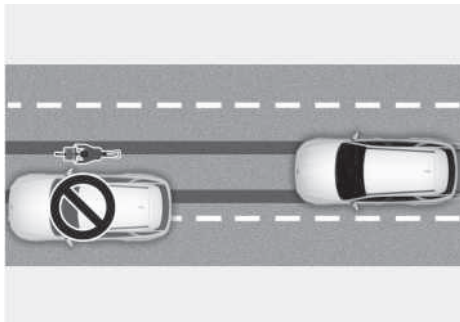
- The pedestrians or cyclists are positioned outside of the operating area.



- The pedestrians or cyclists are moving laterally.

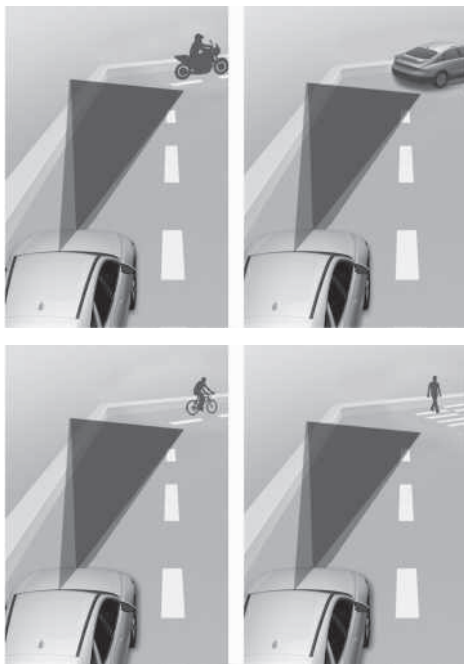


- The pedestrians or cyclists are positioned inside of the operating area, but there is not enough space available for evasive steering.



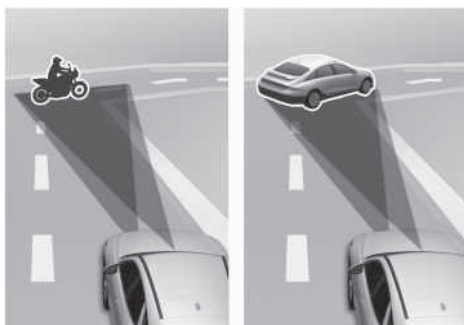
## WARNING

### • Driving on curves

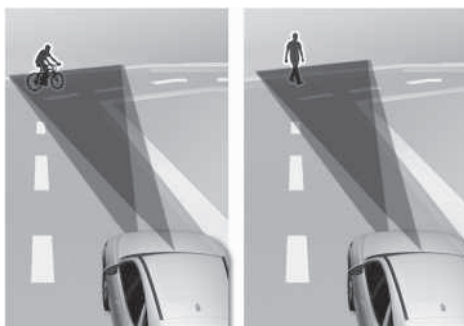


Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not detect other vehicles, motorcyclists, pedestrians, or cyclists in front of you when driving on a curve adversely affecting the performance of the sensors. A warning, brake assist, or steering assist (if equipped) may not be activated when needed.

When driving on a curve, always maintain a safe distance from others on the road. Reduce your vehicle speed or steer your vehicle as needed.







If a vehicle, motorcyclist, pedestrian, or cyclist is detected in the next lane or outside the lane when driving on a curve. Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may warn you and may brake or steer (if equipped) your vehicle even when not needed.

Always check road conditions, and if necessary, take appropriate actions to drive safely.

- **Driving on hills**





Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not detect other vehicles, motorcyclists, pedestrians, or cyclists in front of you whilst driving uphill or downhill, adversely affecting the performance of the sensors. A warning, brake assist, or steering assist (if equipped) may not be activated when needed.

Also, vehicle speed may rapidly decrease when a vehicle, motorcyclist, pedestrian or cyclist ahead is suddenly detected. Always maintain a safe distance from others on the road. Adjust your vehicle speed or steer your vehicle depending on the road conditions.

- **Changing lanes**



[A] Your vehicle

[B] Lane changing vehicle

When a vehicle moves into your lane from an adjacent lane, it cannot be detected by the sensor until it is in the sensor's detection range. Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not immediately detect the vehicle when the vehicle changes lanes suddenly.

Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicles ahead. Adjust your vehicle speed or steer your vehicle depending on the road conditions.



[A] Your vehicle

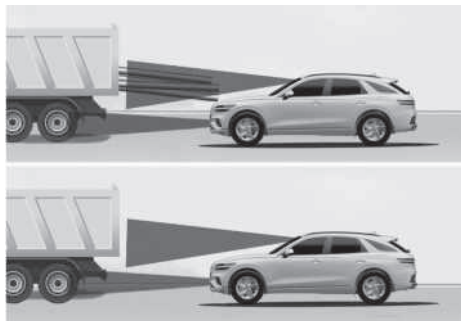
[B] Lane changing vehicle

[C] Same lane vehicle

When a vehicle in front of you departs the lane, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not immediately detect another vehicle in your lane of travel.

Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicles ahead. Adjust your vehicle speed or steer your vehicle depending on the road conditions.

- **Detecting a vehicle**



Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not be able to detect all potential hazards, like if the vehicle in front of you has luggage that extends rearward past the end of the vehicle or if the vehicle in front of you has higher ground clearance. Always maintain a

safe distance from the vehicles ahead. Adjust your vehicle speed or steer your vehicle depending on the road conditions.

---



## WARNING

---

- Always turn off Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist when towing a trailer or another vehicle.
  - Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may operate if objects that are similar in shape or characteristics to vehicles, motorcyclists, pedestrians and cyclists are detected.
  - Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist does not operate on bicycles, or smaller wheeled objects, such as luggage bags, shopping carts, or strollers.
  - Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly if there is interference from strong electromagnetic waves.
  - Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate for 15 seconds immediately after the vehicle is started or when the front view camera is initialised.
- 

## Information

---

For limitations in the driver's blind spot areas and precautions for the rear corner radars, refer to the "**Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist (BCA)**" section in this chapter.

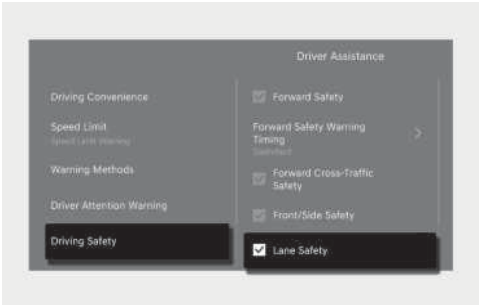
---

# Lane Keeping Assist (LKA)

Lane Keeping Assist helps detect lane markings (or road edges) whilst driving over a certain speed. Lane Keeping Assist may warn you if your vehicle leaves the lane without using the turn signal and may steer the vehicle to prevent it departing from its travel lane.

## Lane Keeping Assist settings

### Lane Safety



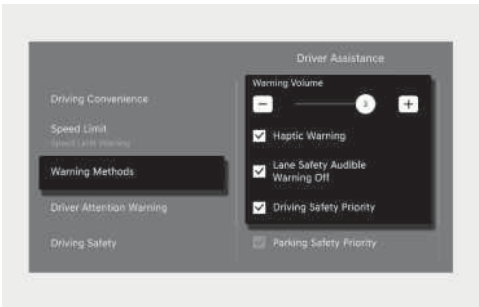
With the engine on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Driving safety** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to select the following:

- If **Lane safety** is selected, Lane Keeping Assist automatically assists with steering your vehicle to help prevent your vehicle from departing its travel lane. If **Lane safety** is deselected, Lane Keeping Assist turns off and the yellow  indicator light appears on the instrument cluster.

 **WARNING**

- If the vehicle is restarted, Lane Keeping Assist turns on and "**Lane Safety**" is selected.
- Always be aware of the surroundings. If **Lane safety** is deselected, Lane Keeping Assist does not assist you.

### Warning methods



With the engine on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Warning methods** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to select the following:

- **Warning volume:** The warning volume can be adjusted.

- **Haptic warning:** The steering wheel vibration can be set.
- **Lane Safety Audible Warning:** The **Lane Safety Audible Warning** can be set when both the **Warning Volume** and the **Haptic Warning** are on.
- **Driving safety priority:** Your vehicle lowers all other audio volumes when the Driver Assistance system warning sounds.

## Information

---

- If you change the warning methods, the warning methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.
  - **Lane Safety Audible Warning** can be set when both the **Warning Volume** and the **Haptic Warning** are on.
  - If you turn off the haptic warning when the warning volume is '0', the warning volume does not turn off but sounds as '2'.
  - If you set the warning volume to '0' when the haptic warning is off, the haptic warning turns on.
  - When the engine is restarted, the warning methods maintain its previous setting.
  - The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on the vehicle features and specifications.
- 

## WARNING

---

When the trailer's connector is plugged into your vehicle, Lane Keeping Assist automatically turns off. In this case, you cannot get help from Lane Keeping Assist. Pay extra attention when you drive when the function is inactive. (If a Genesis genuine Trailer Kit that can determine whether a trailer is connected is used)

---

## Lane Keeping Assist operation

### *Turning Lane Keeping Assist On/Off*



Whenever the engine is turned on, Lane Keeping Assist always turn on. The grey  indicator light illuminates on the instrument cluster. When Lane Keeping Assist is on, press and hold the Lane Driving Assist () button to turn off the function.

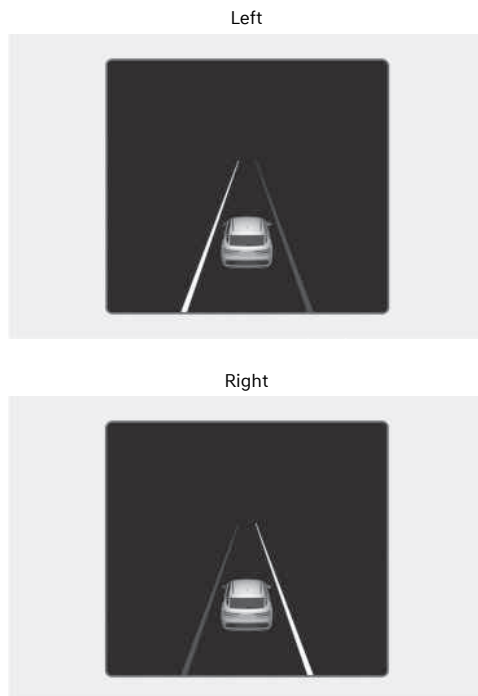
When Lane Keeping Assist is off, the  indicator turns yellow.

## Information

---

- When Lane Keeping Assist is ready to operate, () indicator turns grey on the instrument cluster.
  - When Lane Keeping Assist is operating, () indicator turns green on the instrument cluster.
- 

### *Warning and control*



### **Lane Departure Warning**

- If your vehicle detects it is departing from the projected lane ahead, the green  indicator light blinks on the instrument cluster the lane line blinks on the instrument cluster depending on which direction the vehicle is veering, and an audible warning sounds.
- Lane Departure Warning operates under the following conditions, depending on the recognition target:
  - Lane markings: Your vehicle speed is about 45-200 km/h
  - Road edges: Your vehicle speed is about 60-200 km/h

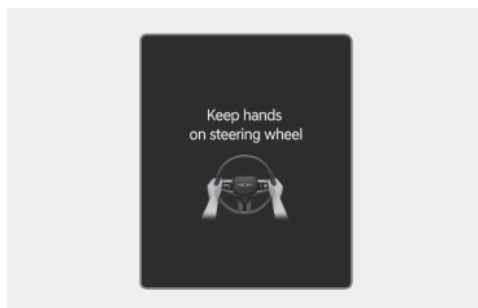
### **Lane Keeping Assist**

- If your vehicle detects it is departing from the projected lane in front, the green  indicator light blinks on the instrument cluster, and the steering wheel makes adjustments to keep vehicle inside the lane.



- Lane Keeping Assist operates under the following conditions, depending on the recognition target:
  - Lane markings: Your vehicle speed is about 45-200 km/h
  - Road edges: Your vehicle speed is about 60-200 km/h

### Hands-off warning



If you take your hands off the steering wheel for several seconds, the **"Keep hands on steering wheel"** warning message may appear on the instrument cluster, and an audible warning may sound in successive stages.



### WARNING

---

Lane Keeping Assist may not operate in all situations and cannot avoid all collisions.

To prevent serious injury or death:

- Lane Keeping Assist may not steer if the steering wheel is held too tightly or the steering wheel is turned too far left or right.
  - Always steer your vehicle. Lane Keeping Assist is not an autonomous driving system and does not steer your vehicle at all times.
  - If the steering wheel is held very loosely or you have gloves on, the hands-off warning message may appear because the Lane Keeping Assist may not recognise that you have your hands on the steering wheel.
  - The hands-off warning message may appear late or not at all depending on the road condition.
  - If you attach objects to the steering wheel, the hands-off warning may not work properly.
- 

### Information

---

For more details on precautions of the steering wheel grip sensor, refer to the **"Steering wheel grip sensor"** section in chapter 5.

---

## Information

---

- You can steer your vehicle even when steering is assisted by Lane Keeping Assist.
- It may require more or less force to turn the steering wheel when Lane Keeping Assist is providing steering assistance.
- When lane markings (or road edges) are detected, the lane lines on the instrument cluster changes from grey to white.
- When the lane markings (or road edges) are detected and Highway Lane Change Assist is on, the lane lines on the instrument cluster may change to green. (if equipped)

Lane undetected



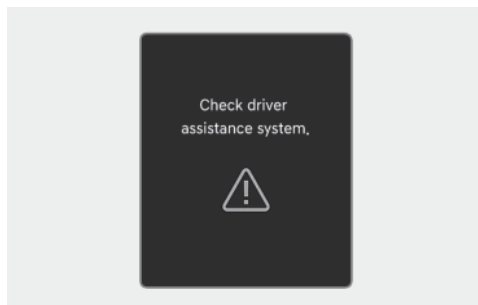
Lane detected



- The images and colours in the instrument cluster may differ depending on the instrument cluster type or theme selected from the instrument cluster.
-

## Lane Keeping Assist malfunction and limitations

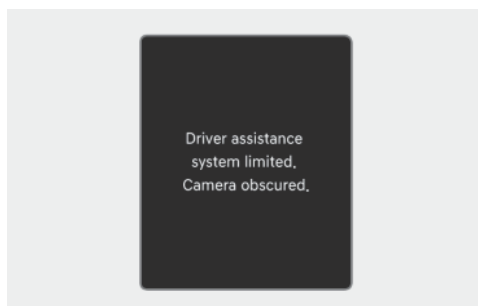
### *Lane Keeping Assist malfunction*



When Lane Keeping Assist is not working properly, the "**Check driver assistance system.**" warning message may appear, master (⚠) warning light and the yellow 🚗 warning light may illuminate on the instrument cluster. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

- You can check the warning message in the Utility view on the cluster display.

### *Lane Keeping Assist disabled*



If the front view camera or front radar is covered or blocked, its detecting performance is reduced, and Lane Keeping Assist may be temporarily limited or disabled.

The "**Driver assistance system limited. Camera obscured.**" warning message may appear, and the ⚠ or 🚗 warning light may illuminate on the instrument cluster.

The function operates normally when such foreign material is removed, and the engine is restarted.

If Lane Keeping Assist does not operate normally after the sensor has been uncovered or unblocked, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

- You can check the warning message in the Utility view on the cluster display.



## WARNING

---

- Lane Keeping Assist may not operate properly even if there is no warning message or warning light on the instrument cluster.
  - If the vehicle is turned off and restarted whilst the camera is blocked or malfunctioned, the condition is maintained and may not operate properly.
- 

### Detecting sensors

Refer to the "**Driver Assistance System sensors**" section in this chapter for the location and the general precautions of the front view camera.

### *Limitations of Lane Keeping Assist*

Lane Keeping Assist may not operate normally or may operate unexpectedly if:

- The lane is difficult to distinguish because:
  - The lane markings (or road edge) are damaged or covered with rain, snow, dirt, oil, etc.
  - The colour of the lane marking (or road edge) is not distinguishable from the road.
  - There are markings (or road edges) on the road or near the lane that looks similar to the lane markings (or road edge)
  - The lane markings are covered by the shadow of objects near the road, such as median strip, guardrails, noise barriers, and trees.
- The lane number increases or decreases, or the lane markings (or road edges) are crossing.
- There are more than two lane markings (or road edges) on the road.
- The lane markings (or road edges) are complicated or a structure substitutes for the lines, such as a construction area or tollbooth area.
- There are road markings, such as zigzag lanes, crosswalk markings and road signs.
- The lane suddenly disappears, such as at an intersection.
- The lane (or road width) is very wide or narrow.
- There is a road edge without a lane.
- There is a boundary structure in the road, such as sidewalk or kerb.
- The distance to the front vehicle is extremely short or the vehicle in front is covering the lane marking (or road edge).

### Information

---

For more information on the limitations of the front view camera, refer to the "**Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)**" section in this chapter.

---



## WARNING

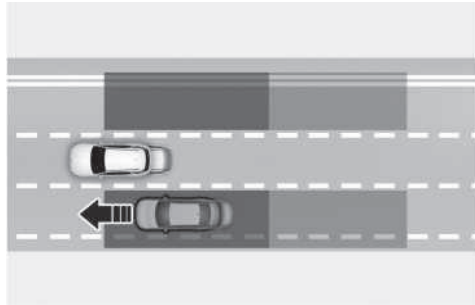
---

- Always monitor your vehicle speed and the distance to vehicles ahead on the road. Lane Keeping Assist is not a substitute for safe driving practices, but a supplemental function only.
  - Lane Keeping Assist may be cancelled or may not work properly depending on the road conditions and the surroundings.
  - When you are towing a trailer or another vehicle, turn off Lane Keeping Assist.
  - If your vehicle is driven at high speed, Lane Keeping Assist may not steer the vehicle.
  - When another system's warning message appears or audible warning is heard, Lane Keeping Assist may not warn you.
  - You may not hear the audible warning of Lane Keeping Assist if the surroundings are noisy.
  - If you attach objects to the steering wheel, steering may not be assisted properly.
  - Lane Keeping Assist may not operate for 15 seconds right after your vehicle is started or when the front view camera is initialised.
  - Lane Keeping Assist does not operate when:
    - Either the turn signal or hazard warning flasher is turned on.
    - Your vehicle is not driven in the centre of the lane after turning on Lane Keeping Assist or after changing lanes.
    - ESC (Electronic Stability Control) or VSM (Vehicle Stability Management) is controlling the brake force to the wheels.
    - Your vehicle is driven on sharp curves.
    - Driving below 40 km/h or above 210 km/h.
    - Your vehicle makes sharp lane changes.
    - Your vehicle brakes suddenly.
  - Loading in excess of the maximum load allowance or concentrated loading at one point in the luggage compartment can reduce the vehicle's driving stability, which can in turn reduce the effectiveness of Lane Keeping Assist.
-

## Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist (BCA)

Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist helps detect approaching vehicles in the driver's blind spot areas and warn you of a possible collision with a warning message and audible warning.

If there is a collision risk when exiting a parallel space, Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may assist with braking your vehicle to help avoid a collision.

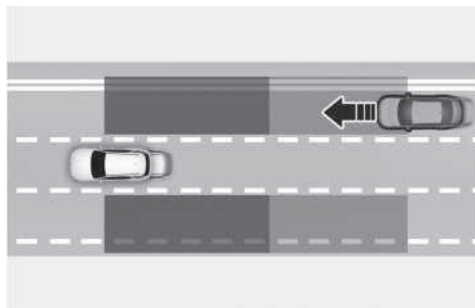


Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist helps detect and warns you that a vehicle is in the blind spot area.



### CAUTION

The detection range may differ depending on the speed of your vehicle. Vehicles in the blind spot area may not be detected by Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist when you pass other vehicles at high speeds.

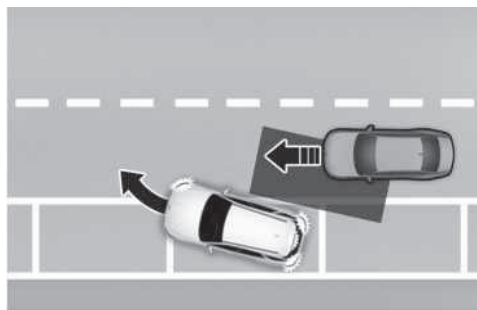


Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist helps detect and warns you that a vehicle is approaching at high speed from the blind spot area.



### CAUTION

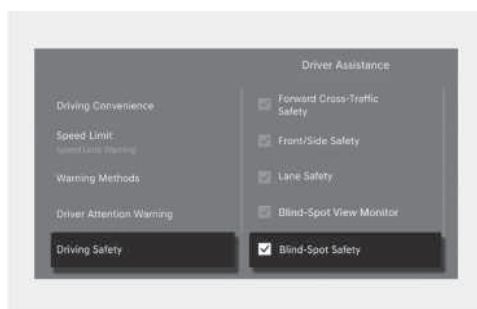
The warning timing may differ depending on the speed of the vehicle approaching you at high speed.



Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may brake your vehicle if there is a detected collision risk in the blind spot area when driving forward out of a parking space.

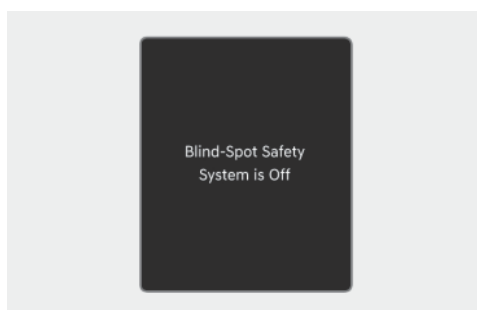
## Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist settings

### *Blind-Spot Safety*



With the engine on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Driving safety** from the Settings menu to select the following:

- If **Blind-spot safety** is selected, Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist displays a warning message and sounds an audible warning depending on the collision risk levels. Braking assist is applied for parking exit depending on the collision risk levels.



If you select **Blind-spot safety**, the warning lights on the corresponding outside rearview mirror blinks for three seconds.

In addition, if the engine is turned on, when **Blind-spot safety** is selected, the warning lights on the corresponding outside rearview mirror blinks for three seconds.

When the engine is restarted with Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist off, the "**Blind-spot safety system is Off**" message appears on the instrument cluster.



## WARNING

Always be aware of the surroundings. If **Blind-spot safety** is deselected, the function does not assist you.

## Information

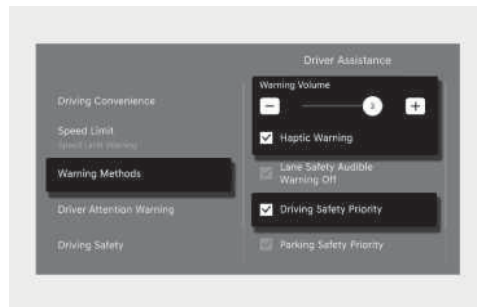
When the engine is restarted, Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist maintains its last setting.



## WARNING

When the trailer's connector is plugged into your vehicle, Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist automatically turns off. In this case, you cannot get help from Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist. Pay extra attention when you drive when the function is inactive. (If a Genesis genuine Trailer Kit that can determine whether a trailer is connected is used)

### *Warning methods*



With the engine on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Warning methods** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to select the following:

- **Warning volume:** The warning volume can be adjusted.
- **Haptic warning:** The steering wheel vibration can be set.
- **Driving safety priority:** Your vehicle lowers all other audio volumes when the Driver Assistance system warning sounds.



## Information

---

- If you change the warning methods, the warning methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.
  - If you turn off the haptic warning when the warning volume is '0', the warning volume does not turn off but sounds as '2'.
  - If you set the warning volume to '0' when the haptic warning is off, the haptic warning turns on.
  - When the engine is restarted, the warning methods maintain its previous setting.
  - The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on the vehicle features and specifications.
- 

## Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist operation

### *Collision warning (whilst driving)*



When a vehicle is detected in a blind spot, the warning light on the corresponding outside rearview mirror and head-up display (if equipped) may illuminate.

- Vehicle detection operates when your vehicle speed is above 20 km/h and the speed of the vehicle in the blind spot area is above 10 km/h.

Collision warning may operate when the turn signal is turned on in the direction of a detected vehicle.

- To warn you of a potential collision, the warning light on the corresponding outside rearview mirror and head-up display (if equipped) may blink, an audible warning may sound, and the steering wheel may vibrate.
- Collision warning operates when your vehicle speed is above 40 km/h and the speed of the vehicle in the blind spot area is above 10 km/h.
- When the turn signal is turned off or you move away from the vehicle in the blind spot, the system returns to vehicle detection state.



### **WARNING**

- The detecting range of the rear corner radar is determined by a standard road width. On narrow roads, Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may detect other vehicles two lanes over and warn you. On wide roads, Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not be able to detect a vehicle driving in the next lane and may not warn you.
  - When the hazard warning flasher is on, the collision warning initiated by activating the turn signal may not operate.
-

## Information

---

As the driver seat is on the right side, the collision warning may occur when you turn right. Maintain a proper distance from other vehicles when turning.

---

### *Collision-avoidance assist (whilst parallel exiting)*



To warn you of a potential collision, the warning light on the corresponding outside rearview mirror and head-up display (if equipped) may blink, a warning message may appear on the instrument cluster, an audible warning may sound, and the steering wheel may vibrate.

- Collision-Avoidance Assist operates when your vehicle speed is below 3 km/h and the speed of the vehicle in the blind spot area is above 5 km/h.
- Emergency braking is assisted to help avoid collision with the vehicle in the blind spot area.

After your vehicle is stopped following an Emergency Braking event, the "**Drive carefully**" warning message appears on the instrument cluster.

Press the brake pedal immediately and check the surroundings.

- Braking control ends about 2 seconds after your vehicle is stopped following an Emergency Braking event.

## WARNING

---

Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate in all situations and cannot prevent all collisions. To prevent serious injury or death:

- Only change the settings after parking your vehicle at a safe location.
  - Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate if the function determines you have pressed the brake pedal sufficiently in response to the potential hazard detected by the function.
  - If Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist is assisting to brake your vehicle and you excessively press the accelerator pedal or sharply steer your vehicle, it stops assisted braking.
  - During Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist operation, your vehicle may stop suddenly. Always wear your seat belt, check your passengers have their seat belts fastened and secure loose objects that may become projectiles.
  - Even if there is a problem with Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist, your vehicle's braking system operates normally.
  - Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may warn you or may not warn you depending on the road and driving conditions.
  - Control your vehicle at all times. Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicles ahead and adjust your vehicle speed depending on the road conditions. Press the brake pedal to reduce driving speed or to stop the vehicle.
  - Never attempt to test Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist by intentionally driving toward people, animals, objects, or other vehicles.
  - When other system's warning message appears or audible warning is heard, Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not warn you.
  - You may not hear the audible warning of Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist if the surrounding environment is too noisy.
- 

## WARNING

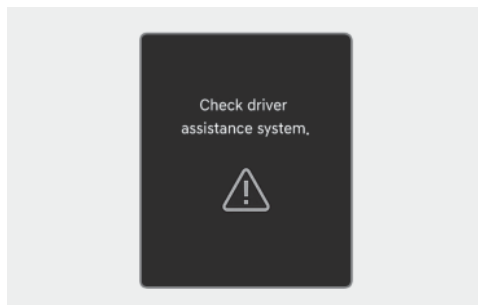
---

Braking is not assisted and only a warning is provided when:

- The ESC (Electronic Stability Control) warning light is on.
  - ESC (Electronic Stability Control) is engaged in a different function.
-

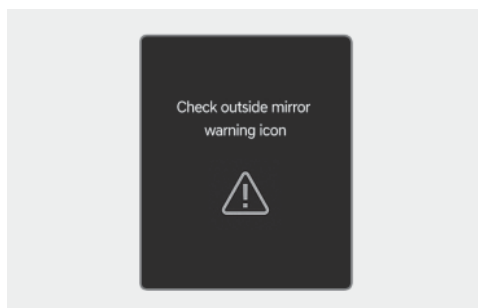
## Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction and limitations

### *Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction*



When Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist is not working properly, the "**Check driver assistance system**" warning message may appear for several seconds, and the  warning light may illuminate on the instrument cluster. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

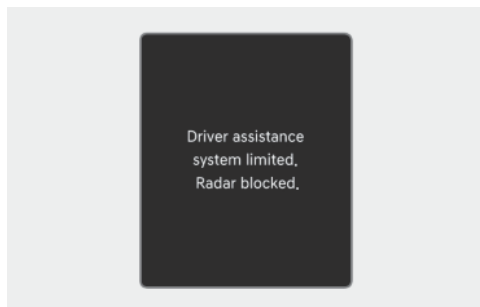
- You can check the warning message in the Utility view on the cluster display.



When the outside rearview mirror warning lights are not working properly, the "**Check outside mirror warning icon**" warning message may appear for several seconds, and the  warning light may illuminate on the instrument cluster. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

- You can check the warning message in the Utility view on the cluster display.

## ***Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist disabled***



If the rear corner radar is blocked or covered, or when the rear bumper around the rear corner radar or sensor is covered by any foreign material, such as snow, rain, or dirt, or when a trailer or towbar mounted carrier is installed, the detecting performance may reduce and temporarily limit or disable Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist.

The "**Driver assistance system limited. Radar blocked**" warning message may appear on the instrument cluster.

The function operates normally when such foreign material, trailer, or carrier is removed, and the engine is restarted.

If Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist does not operate normally after anything covering or blocking the sensors is removed, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

- You can check the warning message in the Utility view on the cluster display.



### **WARNING**

- Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly even if there is no warning message or warning light on the instrument cluster. Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not properly operate.
- Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly in open areas where no objects are detected (e.g. empty car park) or when the detecting sensors are blocked immediately after turning on the engine.

### **Detecting sensors**

Refer to the "**Driver Assistance System sensors**" section in this chapter for the location and the general precautions of the rear corner radar.

### ***Limitations of Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist***

Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate normally or may operate unexpectedly if:

- There is inclement weather, such as heavy snow, heavy rain, etc.
- The rear corner radar or the area near the rear corner radar is covered by snow, water, or dirt.
- The rear corner radar or the area near the rear corner radar is blocked by a vehicle, wall, or pillar.
- The temperature near the rear corner radar is very hot or cold.

- You are driving on an entrance/exit ramp or through a tollbooth.
- The road pavement (or the ground near your vehicle) contains metallic components (i.e. possibly due to subway construction).
- There is a fixed object near the vehicle, such as sound barriers, guardrails, central dividers, entry barriers, streetlights, signs, tunnels, walls, etc. (including double structures)
- You are driving on a narrow road where trees or grass are overgrown.
- You are driving in large, open areas where there are few vehicles or structures (e.g. desert, meadow, empty car park).
- The other vehicle drives very close behind your vehicle, or passes by your vehicle in close proximity.
- The speed of the other vehicle is so fast that it passes by your vehicle in a short time.
- Your vehicle passes another vehicle.
- Your vehicle changes lane.
- Your vehicle has started at the same time as the vehicle next to you and has accelerated.
- The vehicle in the next lane moves two lanes away from you, or the vehicle moves two lanes away to the next lane.
- A trailer or towbar mounted carrier is installed and it blocks the rear corner radar.
- The area near the rear corner radar is covered with objects, such as bumper sticker, bumper guard, bike rack, etc.
- The bumper around the rear corner radar has been damaged or modified, and the radar is out of position.
- Your vehicle height is lower or higher than normal due to heavy loads, abnormal tyre pressure, etc.

Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate normally or may operate unexpectedly when the following objects are detected:

- A motorcycle or bicycle.
- A vehicle such as a flat trailer.
- A big vehicle such as a bus or truck.
- A moving obstacle such as a pedestrian, animal, shopping cart, or baby stroller.
- A vehicle with lower height, such as sports car.

Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not assist braking when:

- Your vehicle severely vibrates whilst driving over a bumpy road, uneven road, or concrete patch.
- You are driving on a slippery surface due to snow, water puddle, ice, etc.
- The tyre pressure is low or a tyre is damaged.
- The braking system is adjusted differently from the factory default settings.
- Your vehicle makes abrupt lane changes.

## **WARNING**

- **Driving on curves**



Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not detect a vehicle in an adjacent lane when driving on curves and may not activate a warning or brake your vehicle.

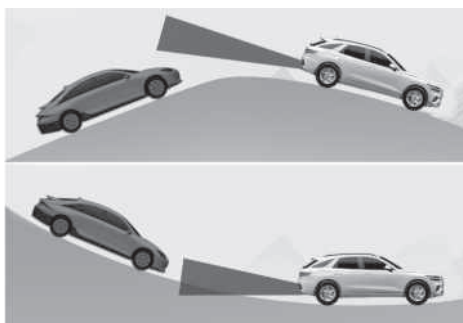
Always check road conditions, and if necessary, take appropriate actions to drive safely.



Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may detect a vehicle in the same lane when driving on curves and activate a warning and brake your vehicle.

Always check road conditions, and if necessary, take appropriate actions to drive safely.

- **Driving on hills**



Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not detect a vehicle in an adjacent lane or may incorrectly detect the ground or another object when driving on hills and activate a warning or brake your vehicle.

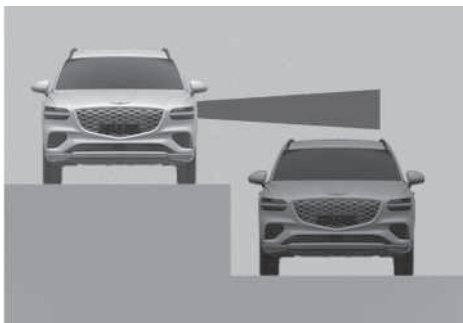
Always check road conditions, and if necessary, take appropriate actions to drive safely.

- **Driving where the road is merging/dividing**



Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not detect a vehicle in an adjacent lane when the road merges or divides, and may not activate a warning or brake your vehicle. Always check road conditions, and if necessary, take appropriate actions to drive safely.

- **Driving where the heights of the lanes are different**



Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly when driving where the heights of the lanes are different. The system may not detect a vehicle on a road with a different lane height (underpass joining section, grade separated intersections, etc.) and not activate a warning or brake your vehicle.

Always check road conditions, and if necessary, take appropriate actions to drive safely.



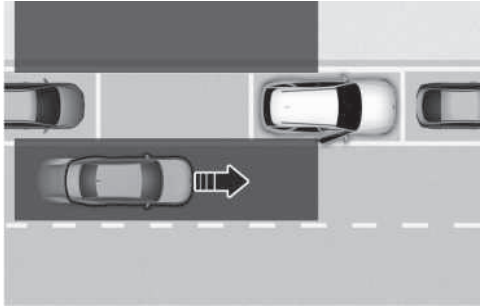
## **WARNING**

- Always turn off Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist when towing a trailer or using a towbar mounted carrier.
- Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate normally if there is interference from strong electromagnetic waves.
- Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate for 3 seconds immediately after your vehicle is started or when the rear corner radars are initialised.



# Safe Exit Warning (SEW)

 if equipped



Safe Exit Warning helps detect a vehicle approaching the rear corner of your vehicle, after the vehicle is stopped and a passenger opens a door.

Safe Exit Warning may warn you with an audible warning and a warning message to help avoid a collision.

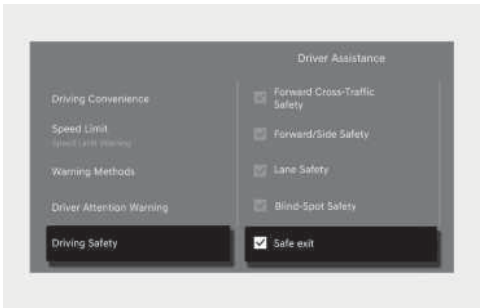


## CAUTION

The warning timing may differ depending on the speed of the detected vehicle.

## Safe Exit Warning settings

### Safe Exit Warning



With the engine on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Driving safety > Safe exit** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to turn on Safe Exit Warning and deselect to turn off the function.



## WARNING

---

- Always be aware of the surroundings. If **Safe exit** is deselected, the function does not assist you.
  - When the trailer's connector is plugged into your vehicle, Safe Exit Warning automatically turns off. In this case, you cannot get help from Safe Exit Warning. Pay extra attention when you drive when the function is inactive. (If a Genesis genuine Trailer Kit that can determine whether a trailer is connected is used)
- 

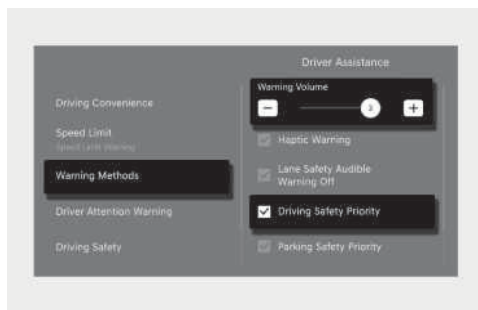
## Information

---

When the engine is restarted, Safe Exit Warning maintains the previous setting.

---

### *Warning methods*



With the engine on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Warning methods** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to select the following:

- **Warning volume:** The warning volume can be adjusted. If you set the warning volume to '0', the warning volume does not turn off but sounds as '1'.
- **Driving safety priority:** Your vehicle lowers all other audio volumes when the Driver Assistance system warning sounds.

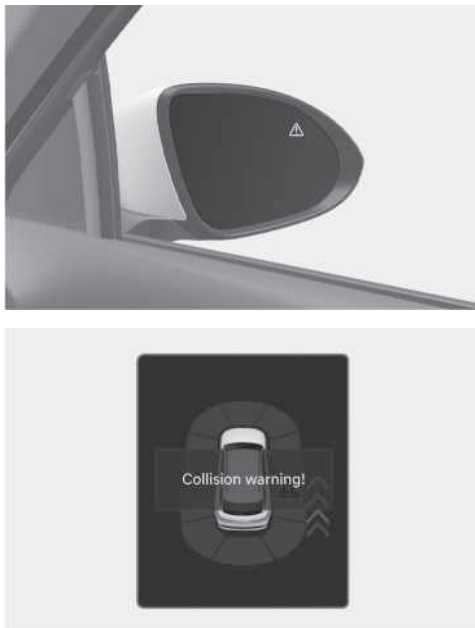
## Information

---

- If you change the warning methods, the warning methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.
  - When the engine is restarted, the warning methods maintain its previous setting.
-

## Safe Exit Warning operation

### *Collision warning when exiting your vehicle*



When an approaching vehicle from the rear is detected whilst a door is being opened, the warning light on the corresponding outside rearview mirror may blink, the **"Collision warning!"** warning message may appear on the instrument cluster, and an audible warning may sound.

- Safe Exit Warning may warn you when your vehicle speed is below 3 km/h, and the speed of the vehicle approaching the rear of your vehicle is above 6 km/h.



### **WARNING**

---

Safe Exit Warning may not operate in all situations and cannot avoid all collisions.

To prevent serious injury or death:

- Always check the surroundings before you or your passengers exit your vehicle.
  - Only change the settings after parking your vehicle at a safe location.
  - When other system's warning message appears or audible warning is heard, Safe Exit Warning may not warn you.
  - You may not hear the audible warning of Safe Exit Warning if the surrounding environment is too noisy.
  - Safe Exit Warning may stop operating, or may not operate, or operate unnecessarily depending on the road conditions and surroundings.
-

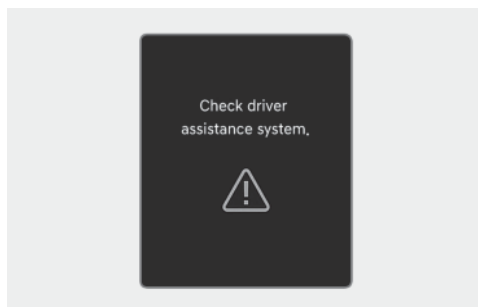
## Information

---

- After the engine is turned off, Safe Exit Warning may detect approaching vehicles for up to 3 minutes, but does not function after the doors are locked.
  - The images and colours in the instrument cluster may differ depending on the cluster type or theme selected from the settings menu.
- 

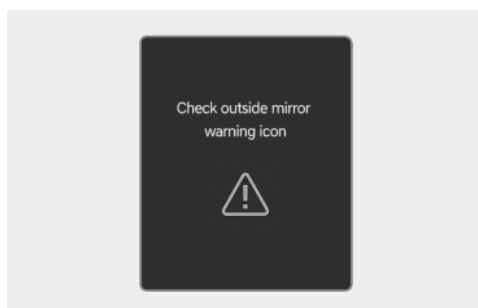
### Safe Exit Warning malfunction and limitations

#### *Safe Exit Warning malfunction*



When Safe Exit Warning is not working properly, the "**Check driver assistance system.**" warning message may appear for several seconds, and the  warning light may illuminate on the instrument cluster. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

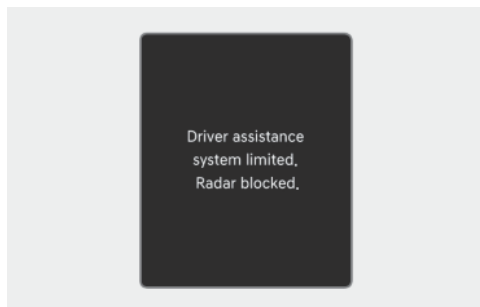
- You can check the warning message in the Utility view on the cluster display.



When the outside rearview mirror warning lights are not working properly, the "**Check outside mirror warning icon**" warning message may appear for several seconds, and the  warning light may illuminate on the instrument cluster. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

- You can check the warning message in the Utility view on the cluster display.

## *Safe Exit Warning disabled*



If the rear corner radar is blocked or covered, or when the rear bumper around the rear corner radar or sensor is covered by any foreign material, such as snow, rain, or dirt, or when a trailer or towbar mounted carrier is installed, the detecting performance may decrease and temporarily limit or disable Safe Exit Warning.

If this occurs, the "**Driver assistance system limited. Radar blocked.**" warning message appears on the cluster display. For several seconds, and the master (△) warning light illuminates on the instrument cluster. But, it is not a malfunction.

The function operates normally when such foreign material, trailer, or carrier is removed, and the engine is restarted.

If Safe Exit Warning does not operate normally after anything covering or blocking the sensors is removed, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

- You can check the warning message in the Utility view on the cluster display.



### **WARNING**

---

- Safe Exit Warning may not operate properly even if there is no warning message or warning light on the instrument cluster.
  - Safe Exit Warning may not operate properly in open areas where no objects are detected (e.g. empty car park) or when the detecting sensors are blocked immediately after turning on the engine.
  - Always turn off Safe Exit Warning when towing a trailer or using a towbar mounted carrier.
- 

### **Detecting sensors**

Refer to the "**Driver Assistance System sensors**" section in this chapter for the location and the general precautions of the front radar, front corner radar (if equipped), and rear corner radar.

### ***Limitations of Safe Exit Warning***

Safe Exit Warning may not operate normally, or may operate unexpectedly if:

- Trees or grass near your vehicle are overgrown.
- The road is wet.
- The approaching vehicle is very fast or slow.

## Information

---

For more information on the limitations on the rear corner radar, refer to the "**Driver Assistance System sensors**" section in this chapter.

---



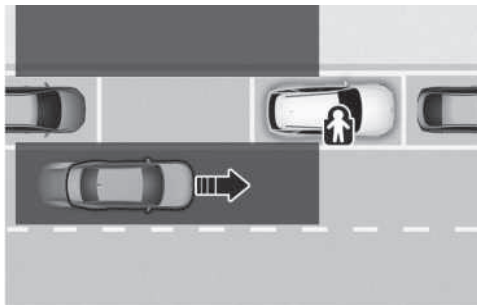
## WARNING

---

- Safe Exit Warning may not operate properly if there is interference from strong electromagnetic waves.
  - Safe Exit Warning may not operate for 3 seconds immediately after your vehicle is started or when the rear corner radars are initialised.
-

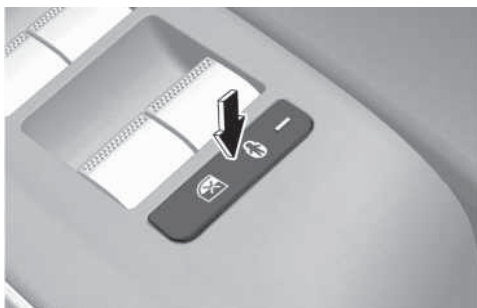
## Safe Exit Assist (SEA)

 if equipped



Safe Exit Assist helps detect a vehicle approach the rear corner of your vehicle, after the vehicle is stopped and a passenger opens a door.

Safe Exit Assist may warn you with an audible warning and a warning message to help avoid a collision.



In addition, if an approaching vehicle from the rear area is detected, Safe Exit Assist prevents the doors from opening in the following situation:

- When the electronic child safety lock (🚗) button is in the LOCK position and an approaching vehicle from the rear area is detected, the electronic child safety lock button does not unlock even if the button is pressed to prevent the rear doors from opening.



### CAUTION

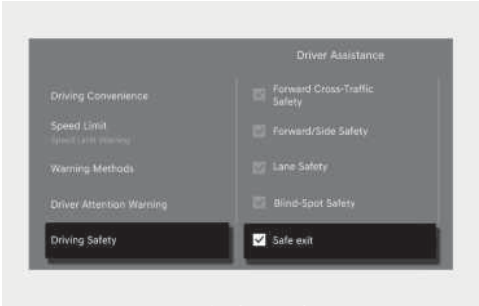
The warning timing may differ depending on the speed of the detected vehicle.

Do not use Safe Exit Assist instead of the electronic child safety lock button. To protect rear seat passengers, use the electronic child safety lock button.

For more information, refer to the "**Electronic child safety lock**" section in chapter 5.

# Safe Exit Assist settings

## Safe Exit Assist



With the engine on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Driving safety > Safe exit** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to turn on Safe Exit Assist and deselect to turn off the function.

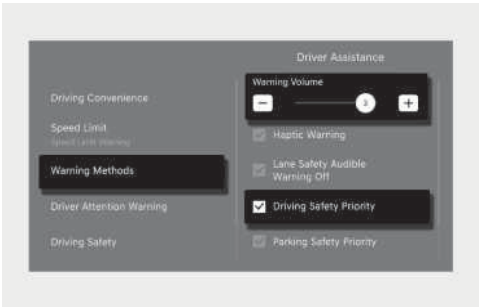
### WARNING

- Always be aware of the surroundings. If **Safe exit** is deselected, the function does not assist you.
- When the trailer's connector is plugged into your vehicle, Safe Exit Assist automatically turns off. In this case, you cannot get help from Safe Exit Assist. Pay extra attention when you drive when the function is inactive. (If a Genesis genuine Trailer Kit that can determine whether a trailer is connected is used)

## Information

When the engine is restarted, Safe Exit Assist maintains the previous setting.

## Warning methods



With the engine on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Warning methods** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to select the following:

- **Warning volume:** The warning volume can be adjusted. If you set the warning volume to '0', the warning volume does not turn off but sounds as '1'.



- **Driving safety priority:** Your vehicle lowers all other audio volumes when the Driver Assistance system warning sounds.

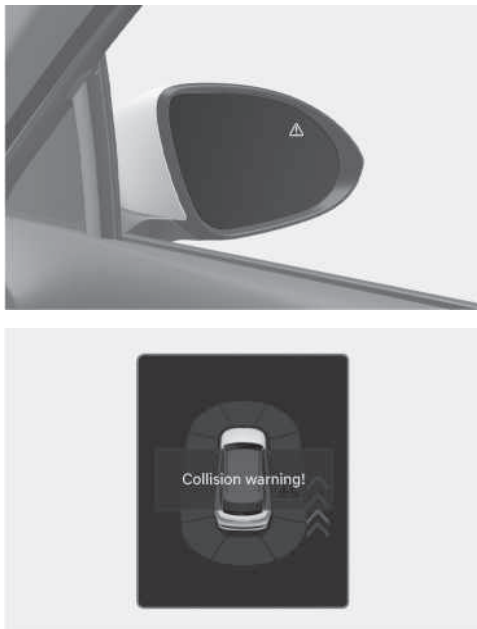
## Information

---

- If you change the warning methods, the warning methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.
  - When the engine is restarted, the warning methods maintain its previous setting.
- 

## Safe Exit Assist operation

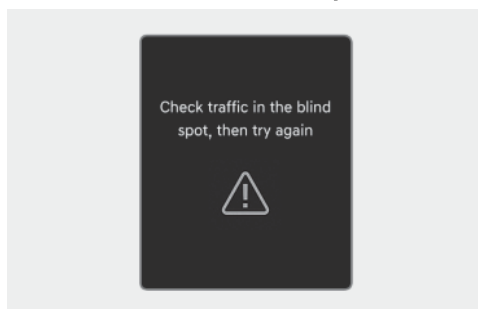
### *Collision warning when exiting your vehicle*



When an approaching vehicle from the rear is detected whilst a door is being opened, the warning light on the outside mirror may blink, the "**Collision warning!**" warning message may appear on the instrument cluster, and an audible warning may sound.

- Safe Exit Assist may warn you when your vehicle speed is below 3 km/h, and the speed of the vehicle approaching the rear of your vehicle is above 6 km/h.

## *Safe Exit Assist linked with Electronic child safety lock*



When Electric child safety lock is operating and an approaching vehicle from the rear area is detected, the rear doors cannot be unlocked even if you try to unlock the rear doors using the electronic child safety lock button. The warning light on the corresponding outside rearview mirror may blink and the "**Check traffic in the blind spot, then try again**" warning message may appear on the instrument cluster.

- Safe Exit Assist may warn you when vehicle speed is below 3 km/h and the speed of the vehicle approaching the rear of your vehicle is above 6 km/h.

### Information

---

For more information on electric child safety lock (🔒) button, refer to the "**Electronic child safety lock**" section in chapter 5.

---

### CAUTION

---

If the you press the electronic child lock (🔒) button again within 10 seconds after the warning message appears, Safe Exit Assist judges that the driver has unlocked the doors acknowledging the rear status. The electronic child safety lock turns off (button indicator OFF) and the rear doors unlock. Always check the surroundings before turning off the electronic child safety lock button.

---

### Information

---

If a rear door is opened from the outside, it opens regardless of Safe Exit Assist operation.

---

## WARNING

---

Safe Exit Assist may not operate in all situations and cannot avoid all collisions.

To prevent serious injury or death:

- Always check the surroundings before you or your passengers exit your vehicle.
  - Only change the settings after parking your vehicle at a safe location.
  - When other system's warning message appears or audible warning is heard, Safe Exit Assist may not warn you.
  - You may not hear the audible warning of Safe Exit Assist if the surrounding environment is too noisy.
  - Safe Exit Assist may stop operating, or may not operate, or operate unnecessarily depending on the road conditions and surroundings.
- 

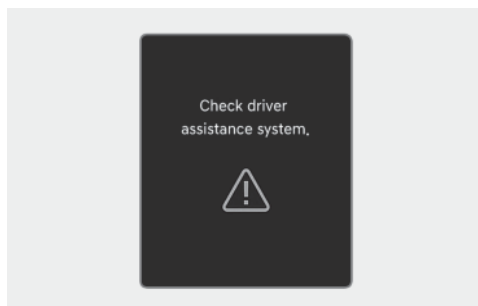
## Information

---

- After the engine is turned off, Safe Exit Assist may detect approaching vehicles for up to 3 minutes, but does not function after the doors are locked.
  - The images and colours in the instrument cluster may differ depending on the instrument cluster type or theme selected from the settings menu.
- 

## Safe Exit Assist malfunction and limitations

### *Safe Exit Assist malfunction*



When Safe Exit Assist is not working properly, the **"Check driver assistance system."** warning message may appear for several seconds, and the  warning light may illuminate on the instrument cluster. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

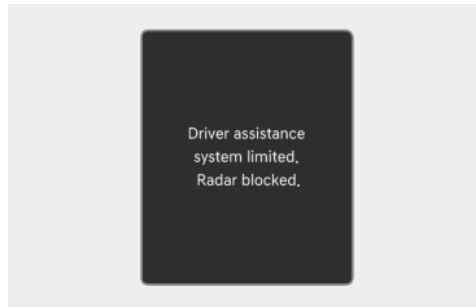
- You can check the warning message in the Utility view on the cluster display.



When the outside rearview mirror warning lights are not working properly, the "**Check outside mirror warning icon**" warning message may appear for several seconds, and the  warning light may illuminate on the instrument cluster. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

- You can check the warning message in the Utility view on the cluster display.

### ***Safe Exit Assist disabled***



If the rear corner radar is blocked or covered, or when the rear bumper around the rear corner radar or sensor is covered by any foreign material, such as snow, rain, or dirt, or when a trailer or towbar mounted carrier is installed, the detecting performance may decrease and temporarily limit or disable Safe Exit Assist.

If this occurs, the "**Driver assistance system limited. Radar blocked.**" warning message may appear on the cluster display. For several seconds, and the master () warning light illuminates on the instrument cluster. But, it is not a malfunction.

The function operates normally when such foreign material, trailer, or carrier is removed, and the engine is restarted.

If Safe Exit Assist does not operate normally after anything covering or blocking the sensors is removed, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

- You can check the warning message in the Utility view on the cluster display.



## WARNING

---

- Safe Exit Assist may not operate properly even if there is no warning message or warning light on the instrument cluster.
  - Safe Exit Assist may not operate properly in open areas where no objects are detected (e.g. empty car park) or when the detecting sensors are blocked immediately after turning on the engine.
  - Always turn off Safe Exit Assist when towing a trailer or using a towbar mounted carrier.
- 

### Detecting sensors

Refer to the "**Driver Assistance System sensors**" section in this chapter for the location and the general precautions of the front radar, front corner radar (if equipped), and rear corner radar.

### *Limitations of Safe Exit Assist*

Safe Exit Assist may not operate normally, or may operate unexpectedly if:

- Trees or grass near your vehicle are overgrown.
- The road is wet.
- The approaching vehicle is very fast or slow.

### Information

---

For more information on the limitations on the rear corner radar, refer to the "**Driver Assistance System sensors**" section in this chapter.

---

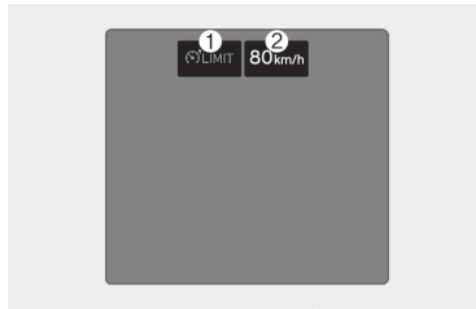


## WARNING

---

- Safe Exit Assist may not operate properly if there is interference from strong electromagnetic waves.
  - Safe Exit Assist may not operate for 3 seconds immediately after your vehicle is started or when the rear corner radars are initialised.
-

## Manual Speed Limit Assist (MSLA)



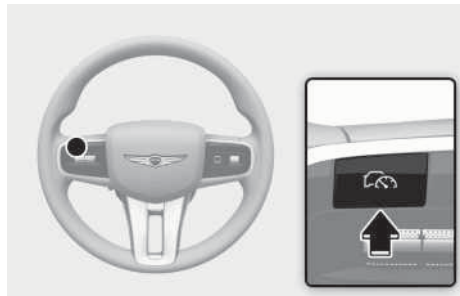
1. Speed Limit indicator
2. Set speed

If you drive over the preset speed limit, Manual Speed Limit Assist operates (set speed limit blinks and chime sounds) until the vehicle speed returns within the speed limit.

### Manual Speed Limit Assist operation

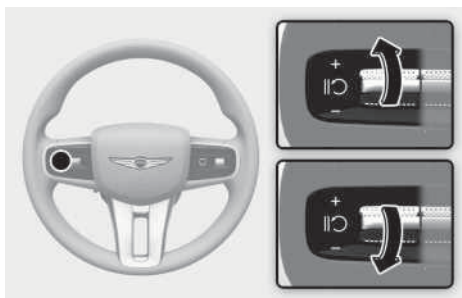
#### *Setting speed limit*

- 1 Press and hold the Driving Assist () button at the desired speed. The Speed Limit () indicator light illuminates on the instrument cluster.



- 2 Push the **+** switch up or **-** switch down, and release it at the desired speed. Push the **+** switch up or **-** switch down to change the set speed.

Push and hold to increase or decrease to the nearest multiple of 10km/h, and then increase or decrease by 10 km/h.



**3** Check the set speed limit on the instrument cluster.

- If you want to drive over the set speed limit, press the accelerator pedal far enough to activate the kickdown mechanism.
- The set speed limit blinks and chime sounds until your vehicle speed decreases below the set speed.



## Information

---

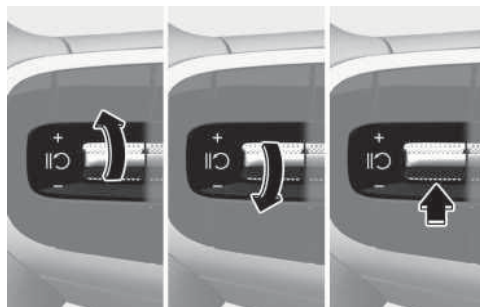
- When the accelerator pedal is not pressed beyond the pressure point, your vehicle speed remains within the speed limit.
  - The maximum setting speed varies depending on the vehicle specifications. The set speed cannot be increased beyond the maximum set speed.
-

### ***Temporarily pausing Manual Speed Limit Assist***



Press the  switch to temporarily cancel the set speed limit. The set speed limit turns off, but the Speed Limit () indicator light stays on.

### ***Resuming Manual Speed Limit Assist***

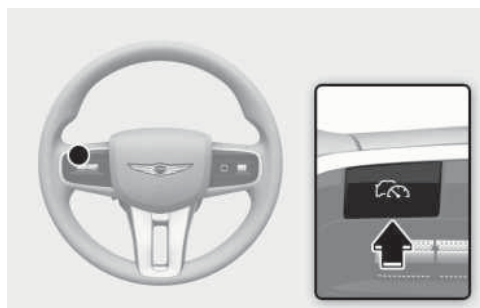


Push the , , or  switch.

If you push the  switch up or  switch down, the set speed is set to the current speed.

If you press the  switch, the vehicle speed resumes to the previously set speed limit.

### ***Turning off Manual Speed Limit Assist***



Press the Driving Assist () button to turn off Manual Speed Limit Assist. The Speed Limit () indicator off.



Always press the Driving Assist () button to turn off Manual Speed Limit Assist when not in use.



## **WARNING**

---

To prevent serious injury or death:

- Set your vehicle speed to the speed limit for the road and use the appropriate unit (km/h) for your country.
  - Keep Manual Speed Limit Assist off when not in use, to avoid unintentionally setting a speed. Check that the Speed Limit (LIMIT) indicator light is off.
  - Always drive defensively and pay attention to the driving task.
-

## Intelligent Speed Limit Assist (ISLA)

Intelligent Speed Limit Assist uses information from the detected road sign and navigation system to inform you of the speed limit and additional information, and help maintain within the speed limit on the road.

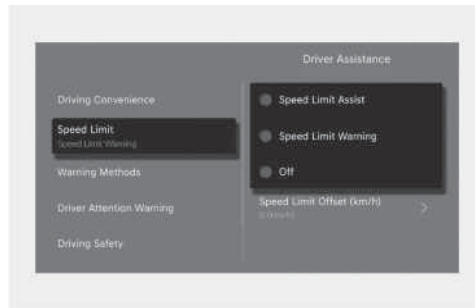


### CAUTION

Intelligent Speed Limit Assist may not operate properly if the navigation system is not updated regularly.

## Intelligent Speed Limit Assist settings

### *Speed limit*



With the engine on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Speed limit** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to select the following:

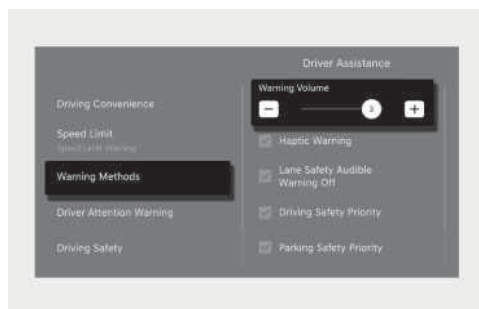
- **Speed limit assist:** Intelligent Speed Limit Assist informs you of the speed limit and additional road signs. The function informs you to change the set speed of Manual Speed Limit Assist or Smart Cruise Control if needed.
- **Speed limit warning:** Intelligent Speed Limit Assist informs you of the speed limit and additional road signs. The function warns you when your vehicle has been driven faster than the speed limit.
- **Off:** Intelligent Speed Limit Assist turns off. The  warning light is illuminated.



### WARNING

- Only change the settings after parking your vehicle at a safe location.
- If the vehicle is restarted, **Speed limit warning** will always turn on.

## Warning methods



With the engine on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver Assistance > Warning Methods** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to select the following:

- **Warning Volume:** The warning volume can be adjusted. If you set the warning volume to '0', the warning volume does not turn off but sounds as '1'.
- **Speed Limit Warning Sound:** The Speed Limit warning sound can be turned on or off.
- **Speed Limit Change Notification Sound:** The Speed Limit change notification sound can be turned on or off.

## Information

---

- If you change the warning methods, the warning methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.
- When the engine is restarted, the warning methods maintains its last setting. (except Speed Limit Warning Sound)
- The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on the vehicle features and specifications.
- Press and hold the  button on the steering wheel to turn on or off the Speed Limit warning sound.



## WARNING

---

When the engine is restarted, Speed Limit Warning Sound will always turn on.

---

## Intelligent Speed Limit Assist operation

### Warning and control

Intelligent Speed Limit Assist will warn and control the vehicle speed by "Displaying speed limit", "Warning overspeed", "Changing set speed" and "Set speed auto change".

## Displaying speed limit



Speed limit information is displayed on the instrument cluster.

### Information

---

- If speed limit information of the road cannot be recognised, '---' appears.
  - Intelligent Speed Limit Assist provides additional road sign information in addition to speed limit information. Additional road sign information provided may differ depending on your country.
  - The images and colours in the instrument cluster may differ depending on the instrument cluster type or theme selected from the instrument cluster.
- 

## Warning overspeed



When driving at a speed higher than the displayed speed limit, the speed limit is blinks in red and the warning sounds.

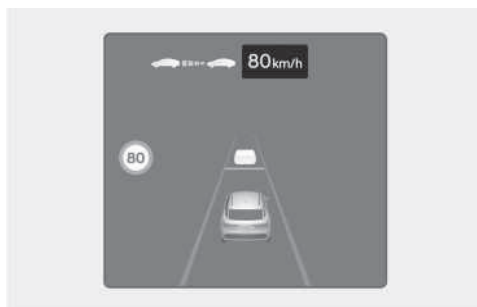
## Changing set speed



If the speed limit changes when using Manual Speed Limit Assist or Smart Cruise Control, an arrow in the direction of up or down appears to inform you to change the set speed by pushing the **+** or **-** switch.

You can change the set speed according to the speed limit by using the **+** or **-** switch.

### Set speed auto change



Manual Speed Limit Assist or Smart Cruise Control assists you to adjust the vehicle speed according to the speed limit. When the set speed is same as the speed limit, the set speed automatically changes to the current speed limit if the speed limit changes. The function operates on the road which has a speed limit of 70 km/h or higher. When the function is active, the set speed on the instrument cluster appears in green.



### WARNING

- If necessary, reduce your driving speed as needed. Even after changing the set speed according to the speed limit for the road, your vehicle can still be driven over the speed limit.
- If the speed limit for the road is under 30 km/h, the set speed changing function does not work.

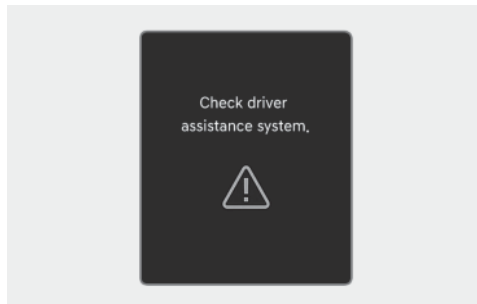
## Information

---

- For more information on Manual Speed Limit Assist operation, refer to the "**Manual Speed Limit Assist (MSLA)**" section in this chapter.
  - For more information on Smart Cruise Control operation, refer to the "**Smart Cruise Control (SCC)**" section in this chapter.
- 

### Intelligent Speed Limit Assist malfunction and limitations

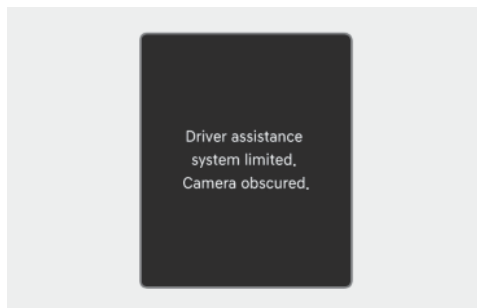
#### *Intelligent Speed Limit Assist malfunction*



When Intelligent Speed Limit Assist is not working properly, the "**Check driver assistance system**" warning message may appear on the instrument cluster for several seconds, and the ⚠ and ☹ warning lights may illuminate on the instrument cluster. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

- You can check the warning message in the Utility view on the cluster display.

#### *Intelligent Speed Limit Assist disabled*



If the front view camera is covered or blocked, its detecting performance is reduced, and Intelligent Speed Limit Assist is temporarily limited or disabled.

The "**Driver assistance system limited. Camera obscured**" warning message may appear, and the ☹ warning light may illuminate on the instrument cluster.

The function operates normally when such foreign material is removed, and the engine is restarted.

If Intelligent Speed Limit Assist does not operate normally after the sensor has been uncovered or unblocked, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

- You can check the warning message in the Utility view on the cluster display.



## WARNING

---

- Intelligent Speed Limit Assist may not operate properly even if there is no warning message or warning light on the instrument cluster.
  - If the vehicle is turned off and restarted whilst the camera is blocked or malfunctioned, the condition is maintained and may not operate properly.
- 

### Detecting sensors

Refer to the "**Driver Assistance System sensors**" section in this chapter for the location and the general precautions of the front view camera.

### *Limitations of Intelligent Speed Limit Assist*

Intelligent Speed Limit Assist may not operate or may be limited if:

- The road sign is damaged, difficult to see due to rain, snow, fog, dirt, sand, oil, etc., or obscured by surrounding objects or shadows.
- The road signs do not conform to the standard designs in your country.
  - The text or picture on the road sign is different from the standard designs in your country.
  - The road sign is installed between the main road and exit road or between diverging roads.
  - A sign is attached to another vehicle.
- The distance between the driving lane and road sign is far.
- There are LED road signs.
- The numbers or pictures in the road sign are incorrectly recognised as the speed limit.
- Road signs on adjacent roads are incorrectly recognised as road signs you are driving on.
- Supplementary road signs or signboards are installed near the road sign.
- Multiple signs are installed close together.
- A minimum speed limit sign is incorrectly recognised as the maximum speed limit sign.
- The light level changes suddenly, for example when entering or exiting a tunnel or passing under a bridge.
- Headlamps are not used, or the brightness of the headlamps are weak at night or in the tunnel.
- Road signs are difficult to recognise due to the reflection of sunlight, streetlights, or oncoming vehicles.
- The driver is driving on a new road that is not in the navigation system yet.
- The front view camera's field of view is obstructed by glare from the sun.
- You are driving on a road that is sharply curved or continuously curved.
- You are driving through speed bumps, or driving up and down, or left to right on steep inclines.
- Your vehicle is shaking heavily.
- You are driving your vehicle on a newly opened road.

- Driving on a road under construction.
- There is an error in the navigation map data or GPS data.
- You are not driving your vehicle based on the route guidance.
- The navigation system is being updated or restarted whilst driving.



## WARNING

---

- Intelligent Speed Limit Assist may not display the correct speed limit or may not properly control the driving speed because it is a supplemental function to inform you of the speed limit on the road.
  - Set your vehicle speed to the speed limit for the road and use the appropriate unit (km/h) for your country.
  - Intelligent Speed Limit Assist may not operate for 15 seconds right after your vehicle is started or when the front view camera is initialised.
- 

## Information

---

For more information on the limitations of the front view camera, refer to the "**Driver Assistance System sensors**" section in this chapter.

---



## Driver Attention Warning (DAW)

### *Inattentive driving warning function*

Driver Attention Warning monitors your driving pattern whilst driving. When the attention level is below a certain level it recommends taking a break.

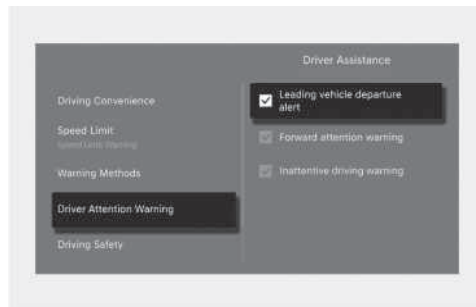
### *Leading vehicle departure alert function*

Leading Vehicle Departure Alert function informs you when a detected vehicle in front departs from a stop.

## Driver Attention Warning settings

### *Leading vehicle departure alert*

With the engine on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Driver attention warning** and then enable **Leading vehicle departure alert** in the infotainment system to use the function.

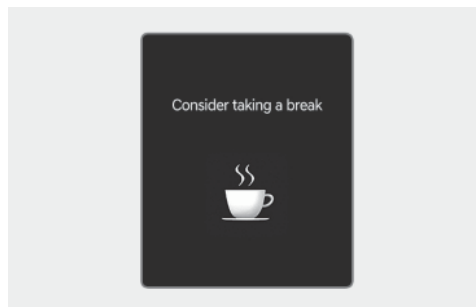


If **Leading vehicle departure alert** is selected, the function informs you when a detected vehicle in front departs from a stop.

## Driver Attention Warning operation

### *Inattentive driving warning function*

#### Taking a break



The "**Consider taking a break**" message may appear and the  warning light may blink on the instrument cluster and an audible warning may sound, when the attention level is below a certain level.

- Driver Attention Warning does not suggest a break if the total driving time is less than 4 minutes or 4 minutes has not passed since the last break was suggested.



## **WARNING**

---

Only change the settings after parking your vehicle at a safe location.

---

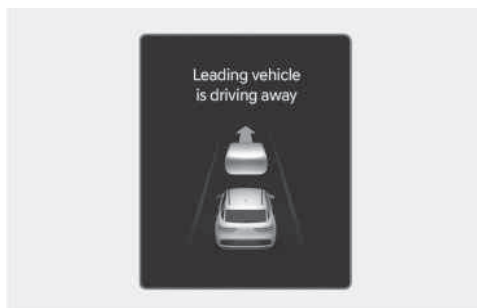


## **CAUTION**

---

- Driver Attention Warning may suggest a break depending on your driving pattern or habit, even if you do not feel fatigued.
  - Driver Attention Warning is a supplemental function only and does not determine if you are paying attention to the driving task.
  - If you feel fatigued or want to take a break, do so as needed at a safe location.
- 

### ***Leading Vehicle Departure Alert function***



When a detected vehicle in front departs from a stop, Leading Vehicle Departure Alert displays the "**Leading vehicle is driving away**" message on the instrument cluster and an audible warning sounds.



## **WARNING**

---

- When other system's warning message appears or audible warning is heard, Leading Vehicle Departure Alert may not alert you.
  - Always check road conditions, and if necessary, take appropriate actions to drive safely. It is the driver's responsibility to operate the vehicle in a safe manner.
- 



## **CAUTION**

---

- Leading Vehicle Departure Alert is a supplemental function and may not alert you whenever the front vehicle departs from a stop.
  - Always check your surroundings before driving even if the function alerts you that the front vehicle has departed.
-

## Information

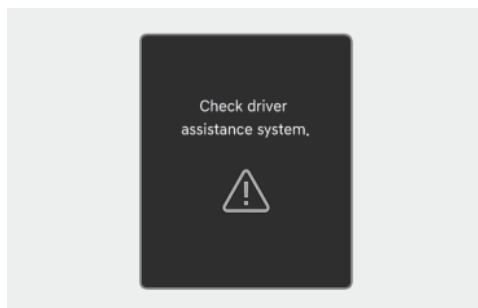
---

The images and colours in the instrument cluster may differ depending on the instrument cluster type or theme selected from the settings menu.

---

### Driver Attention Warning malfunction and limitations

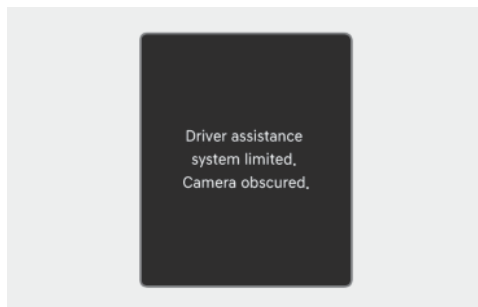
#### *Driver Attention Warning malfunction*



When Driver Attention Warning is not working properly, the "**Check driver assistance system.**" warning message may appear for several seconds, and the  and  warning lights may illuminate on the instrument cluster. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

- You can check the warning message in the Utility view on the cluster display.

#### *Driver Attention Warning disabled*



If the front view camera is covered or blocked, its detecting performance is reduced, and Driver Attention Warning may be temporarily limited or disabled.

The "**Driver assistance system limited. Camera obscured.**" warning message may appear, and the  and  warning lights may illuminate on the instrument cluster.

The function operates normally when such foreign material is removed, and the engine is restarted.

If Driver Attention Warning does not operate normally after the sensor has been uncovered or unblocked, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

- You can check the warning message in the Utility view on the cluster display.



## WARNING

- Driver Attention Warning may not operate properly in open areas where no objects are detected (e.g. empty car park) or when the detecting sensors are blocked immediately after turning on the engine.
- If the vehicle is turned off and restarted whilst the camera is blocked or malfunctioned, the condition is maintained and may not operate properly.

### Detecting sensors

Refer to the "**Driver Assistance System sensors**" section in this chapter for the location and the general precautions of front view camera.

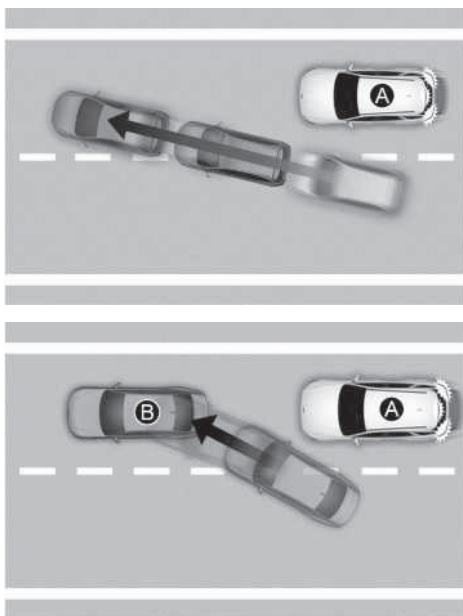
### *Limitations of Driver Attention Warning*

Driver Attention Warning may not work properly if:

- Your vehicle is driven aggressively or steered sharply from side to side.
- Your vehicle intentionally changes lanes frequently.
- Another Driver Assist system such as Lane Keeping Assist, is maintaining your vehicle's position within the lane.

### Leading vehicle departure alert feature

- **When a vehicle cuts in**

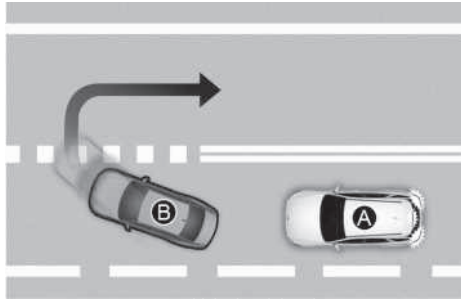


[A] Your vehicle

[B] Front vehicle

If a vehicle cuts in front of your vehicle, Leading Departure Alert may not operate properly.

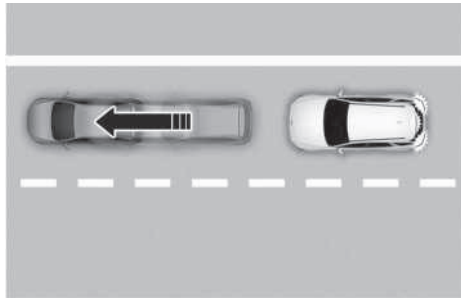
- **When a vehicle ahead sharply steers**



- [A] Your vehicle  
[B] Front vehicle

If the vehicle in front makes a sharp turn, such as to turn left or right or make a U- turn, etc., Leading Vehicle Departure Alert may not operate properly.

- **When a vehicle ahead abruptly departs**



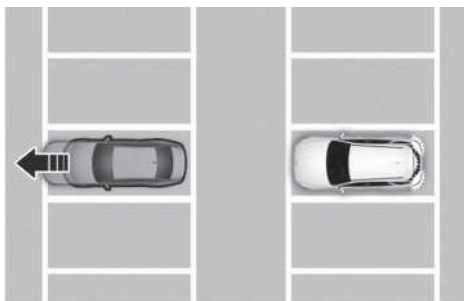
If the vehicle in front abruptly departs, Leading Vehicle Departure Alert may not operate properly.

- **When a pedestrian or bicycle is between you and the vehicle ahead**



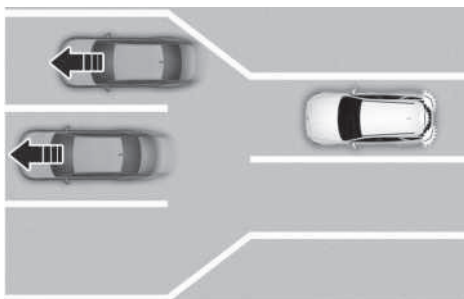
If there is a pedestrian(s) or bicycle(s) in between you and the vehicle in front, Leading Vehicle Departure Alert may not operate properly.

- When in a car park



If a vehicle parked in front drives away from you, Leading Vehicle Departure Alert may alert you that the parked vehicle is driving away.

- When driving at a tollbooth or intersection, etc.



If you pass a tollbooth or intersection with lots of vehicles or you drive where lanes are merged or divided frequently, Leading Vehicle Departure Alert may not operate properly.



## **WARNING**

Driver Attention Warning may not operate for about 15 seconds immediately after your vehicle is started or when the front view camera is initialised.

## **Information**

For more information on the precautions of the front view camera, refer to the "**Driver Assistance System sensors**" section in this chapter.

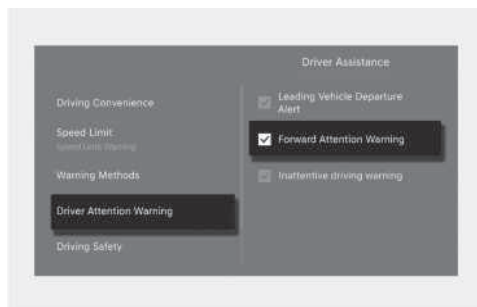
## Forward Attention Warning (FAW)

 if equipped

Forward Attention Warning uses the in-cabin camera to help prevent the driver from being distracted whilst driving with an audible warning and warning light.

### Forward Attention Warning settings

#### *Forward attention warning*



With the engine on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Driver attention warning** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to select the following:

- If **Forward attention warning** is enabled, the function warns the driver when the driver's gaze is not focused on the road.

### Information

---

When the engine is restarted, Forward Attention Warning maintains its previous setting.

---

### Forward Attention Warning operation

#### *Forward Attention Warning*

Forward Attention Warning determines whether the driver is focused on the road depending on information, such as the amount of time the driver is looking elsewhere, the amount of time the eyes are closed, etc. If Forward Attention Warning judges the driver is not focused, an audible warning sounds for about 1 second, and the  warning light illuminates on the instrument cluster until off conditions are met.

#### **The warning comes on:**

- When the driver's gaze is not focused on the road continuously for 3 seconds whilst driving above 20 km/h.
- When the driver's gaze is not focused on the road for 10 seconds or more in total during a 30 seconds time span whilst driving above 20 km/h.
- When the driver's eyes are closed for over 2 seconds or more whilst driving above 10 km/h.

#### **The warning goes off:**

When the driver looks forward continuously for over 2 seconds.

## WARNING

---

If any other system's warning message is displayed or audible warning is generated, Forward Attention Warning's warning message may not be displayed and an audible warning may not be generated.

---

## CAUTION

---

- Forward Attention Warning may warn the driver even though the driver is focused on the road because of driving style and driving pattern.
  - Forward Attention Warning is a supplemental function and may not determine whether the driver is distracted whilst driving.
  - It is the drivers responsibility for safe driving and must focus on the road.
- 

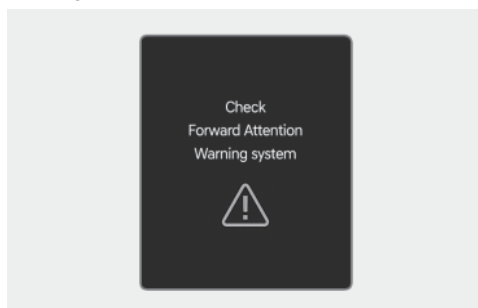
## Information

---

- Forward Attention Warning does not transmit recorded videos outside of the vehicle or store the video.
  - The Warning Method for Forward Attention Warning cannot be changed.
- 

## Forward Attention Warning malfunction and limitations

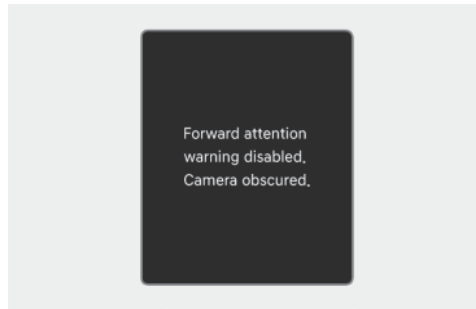
### *Forward Attention Warning malfunction*



When Forward Attention Warning is not working properly, the "**Check forward attention warning system**" warning message appears on the instrument cluster for several seconds, the  warning light illuminates on the instrument cluster, and an audible warning sounds. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.



## ***Forward Attention Warning disabled***



If there is an object directly in front of the in-cabin camera or between you and the camera for a certain period of time Forward Attention Warning does not operate properly.

The "**Forward attention warning disabled. Camera obscured.**" warning message appears on the instrument cluster for several seconds, the  warning light illuminates on the instrument cluster, and an audible warning sounds.

If the object is removed or the camera is able to detect the your face, the function operates normally.

If Forward Attention Warning does not operate properly after the object is removed, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

### ***Limitations of Forward Attention Warning***

Forward Attention Warning may not operate normally, or it may operate unexpectedly if:

- You wear sunglasses, special glasses, infrared cutoff glasses, refracting glasses or thick glasses.
- You have heavy eye makeup (eyeliner, mascara, colour makeup, false eyelashes) or eye piercing.
- Your view is blocked by hair, hat, etc.
- You are winking or wearing an eye patch.
- Your face is covered partially by a mask, muffler, etc.
- Your view is blocked by incoming light from outside of the vehicle.
- Light from outside, sunlight or infrared LED light from the camera is reflected by glasses or sunglasses.
- You have turned or lowered your head so that your face or an eye is hidden from the camera.
- You shake your head up and down, or adverse road conditions cause excessive vehicle vibrations whilst driving.
- You are improperly positioned in the your seat so that the your face is not detected.
- You are too tall or short.
- The camera is blocked by the your grip on the steering wheel.
- More than two people are looking at the instrument cluster simultaneously from the driver's seat.
- Squinting due to laughing or sun glare.

- A picture or mannequin that has a similar size to your face is misrecognised.
- There are other devices using infrared light in the vehicle.



## CAUTION

---



[A] In-cabin camera

- Do not impact the surface of the camera or around the camera. If the in-cabin camera is damaged, Forward Attention Warning may not work properly.
  - Do not place anything on the camera or in front of the camera whilst driving. The in-cabin camera may not operate properly.
  - When cleaning the camera, wipe with a soft and clean cloth to prevent damages on the surface of the camera lens. In addition, you should not use sharp tools near the camera, or use chemicals to clean the camera.
  - Always keep the camera and around the area of the in-cabin camera clean and dry.
  - Do not apply foreign objects, such as a sticker, around the infrared LED located near the camera.
- 

## Information

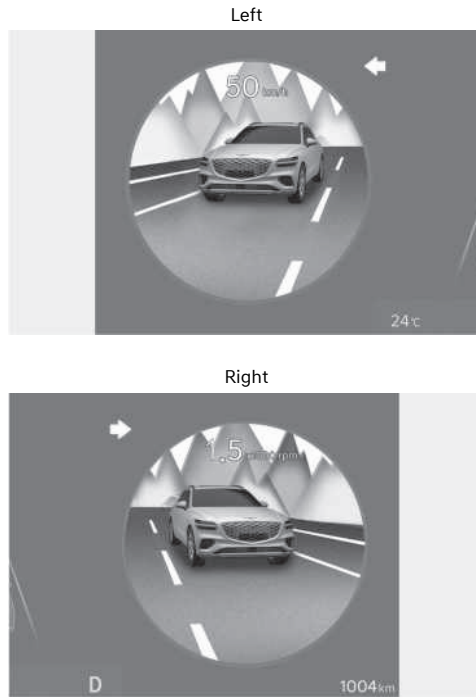
---

Two red lights may appear on the camera in the following conditions when:

- The light levels outside are dim or driving at night.
  - The vehicle drives inside a building, such as a basement car park, garage or tunnel.
  - The camera case is partially broken.
-

## Blind-Spot View Monitor (BVM)

 if equipped



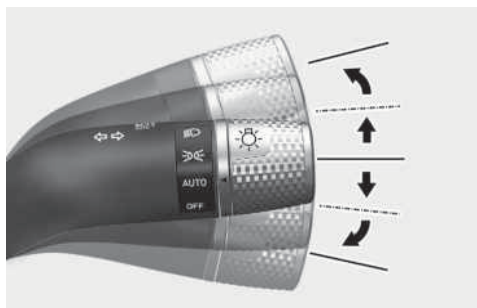
Blind-Spot View Monitor uses the wide-side view cameras to display the rear blind spot areas of your vehicle on the instrument cluster when the turn signal is turned on to help with safe lane changes.

### Blind-Spot View Monitor settings

#### *Setting features*

With the engine on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Driving safety** and then enable **Blind-spot view monitor** from the Setting menu in the infotainment system to turn on the Blind-Spot View Monitor.

## Blind-Spot View Monitor operation



### ***Turns on if:***

The left or right side turn signal turns on, and the corresponding side view camera image appears on the instrument cluster.

### ***Turns off if:***

- The turn signal turns off.
- The hazard warning flasher is on. Blind-Spot View Monitor turns off, independent of the turn signal status.
- Other warnings on the instrument cluster may replace the side view camera image when changing lanes.

## Blind-Spot View Monitor malfunction

When Blind-Spot View Monitor is not working properly, or the instrument cluster display flickers, or the camera image does not display properly, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.



### **WARNING**

- The image shown on the instrument cluster may differ from the actual distance of the object. Make sure to directly check the vehicle's surroundings for safety.
- Always keep the camera lens clean. If the lens is blocked or covered, Blind-Spot View Monitor may not operate normally. Do not clean with strong chemicals containing high alkaline or volatile organic solvents (e.g. petrol, acetone).

# Smart Cruise Control (SCC)

Smart Cruise Control helps detect a vehicle ahead and maintain the desired speed and distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.

## Overtaking Acceleration Assist

Whilst Smart Cruise Control is operating, if the function judges you are attempting to overtake a vehicle in front, Smart Cruise Control accelerates your vehicle to assist with this manoeuvre.

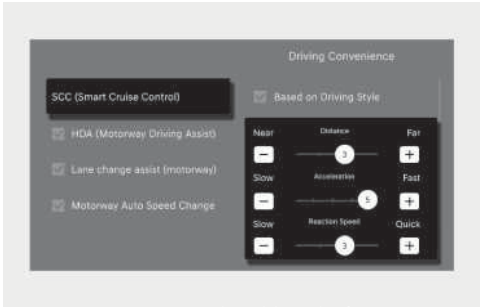
## Based on Driving Style

 if equipped

Smart Cruise Control operates based on the driver's driving style, such as vehicle distance, acceleration, and reaction speed.

## Smart Cruise Control settings

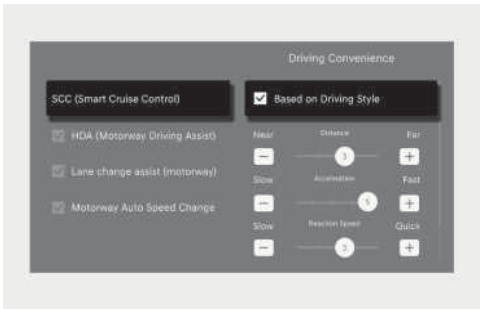
### Smart Cruise Control



With the engine on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Driving convenience > SCC (Smart Cruise Control)** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to adjust **Distance, Acceleration, and Response speed** manually.

### Based on Driving Style

 if equipped



With the engine on, if **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Driving convenience > SCC (Smart Cruise Control) > Based on driving style** is selected from the Settings menu,

Smart Cruise Control operates based on your driving style, such as vehicle distance, acceleration, and reaction speed.

## Information

---

- Whilst Smart Cruise Control is operating with **Based on driving style** selected, if you press and hold the Vehicle Distance () button, **Based on driving style** deactivates. If you press and hold the Vehicle Distance () button again, **Driving style setting** activates.
  - Based on Driving Style setting continuously learns your driving style when the vehicle is being driven.
  - When **Based on driving style** is deactivated, the driving style such as vehicle distance, acceleration, and reaction speed maintains in the previous setting.
- 

## Smart Cruise Control operation

### *Operating conditions*

#### Basic function

Smart Cruise Control operates when the following conditions are met:

- The gear is in D (Drive)
- Your vehicle speed is within the operating speed range.
  - 10-200 km/h: when there is no vehicle in front
  - 0-200 km/h: when there is a vehicle in front
- ESC (Electronic Stability Control) or ABS is enabled.

Smart Cruise Control does not operate when:

- The driver's door is opened.
- Engine RPMs are in the red zone.
- EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) is applied.
- ESC (Electronic Stability Control) or ABS is controlling your vehicle.
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist braking control is operating.
- Remote Smart Parking Assist brake control is operating (if equipped)
- Idle Stop and Go (ISG) system is operating (if equipped).

## Information

---

If stopped behind another vehicle, you have to press the brake pedal to turn on Smart Cruise Control.

---

#### Operating conditions for Acceleration Assist

Overtaking Acceleration Assist operates when the turn signal indicator is turned on to the left (left-hand drive) or turned on to the right (right-hand drive) whilst Smart Cruise Control is operating, and the following conditions are met:

- Your vehicle speed is above 60 km/h.
- A vehicle is detected in front of your vehicle.

Overtaking Acceleration Assist does not operate when:

- The hazard warning flasher is on.
- Deceleration is needed to maintain the distance from the vehicle in front.

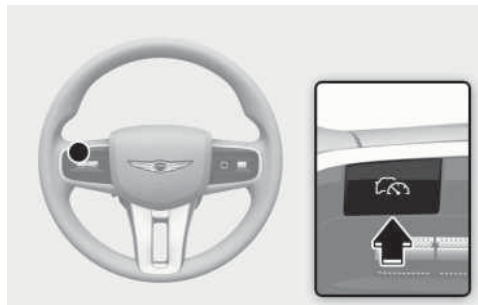


## WARNING

---

- Be careful when your vehicle temporarily accelerates to overtake a vehicle in front.
  - Overtaking Acceleration Assist operates when the conditions are met, even if you are using the function in countries with different driving direction.
- 

### *Turning on Smart Cruise Control*



- Press the Driving Assist button to turn on Smart Cruise Control. The speed is set to the current speed on the instrument cluster.
- If there is no vehicle in front of you, the set speed is maintained.
- If there is a vehicle in front of you, your vehicle speed may be adjusted to maintain the distance from the vehicle ahead.
- If the vehicle ahead accelerates and the distance between vehicles increase, your vehicle accelerates to the set speed, and then travels at a constant speed after your vehicle reaches the set distance.

## Information

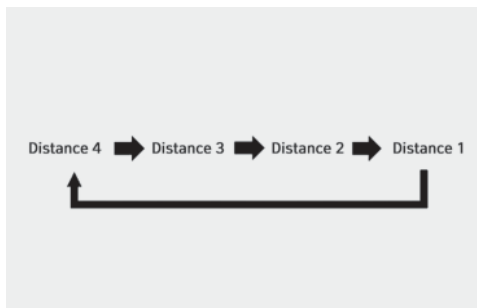
---

- If your vehicle speed is between 0-30 km/h when you press the Driving Assist button, Smart Cruise Control speed is set to 30 km/h.
  - If you shift from a higher gear to a lower gear using the paddle shifter, the vehicle speed may not accelerate to the set speed.
-

## Setting vehicle distance



Each time the button is pressed, the vehicle distance changes as follows:



If you drive at 90 km/h:

- Distance 4: about 52.5 m
- Distance 3: about 40 m
- Distance 2: about 32.5 m
- Distance 1: about 25 m

### Information

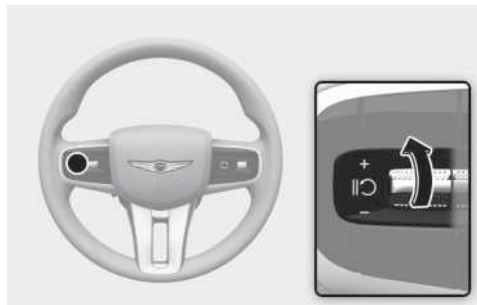
---

When the engine is restarted or Smart Cruise Control is temporarily cancelled, the following distance maintains the previous setting.

---



### *Increasing set speed*



- Push the **+** switch up and release it immediately to increase the cruising speed by 1 km/h.
- Push and hold the **+** switch up to increase to the nearest multiple of 10 km/h at first, and then increase by an additional 10 km/h each time.
- The speed can be set to a maximum of 200 km/h.



### **WARNING**

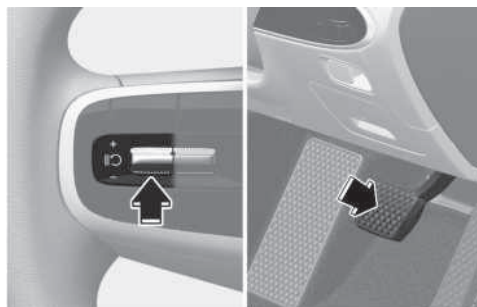
Your vehicle speed may rapidly increase when you push and hold the **+** switch.

### *Decreasing set speed*



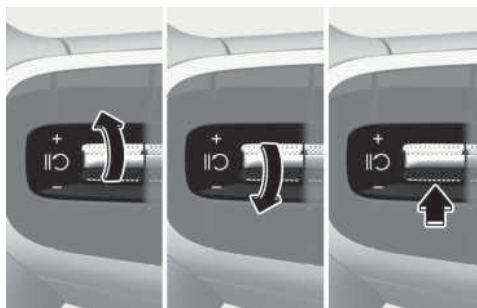
- Push the **-** switch down and release it immediately to decrease the cruising speed by 1 km/h.
- Push and hold the **-** switch down to decrease to the nearest multiple of 10 km/h at first, and then decrease by 10 km/h each time.
- The speed can be set to a minimum of 30 km/h.

### *Temporarily cancelling Smart Cruise Control*



Press the **||** switch or press the brake pedal to temporarily cancel Smart Cruise Control.

### *Resuming Smart Cruise Control*



Push the **+**, **-**, or **||** switch.

If you push the **+** switch up or **-** switch down, your vehicle speed is set to the current speed on the instrument cluster.

If you press the **||** switch, your vehicle speed resumes to the previously set speed.



#### **WARNING**

Your vehicle speed may rapidly increase or decrease when you press the **||** switch.

### *Turning off Smart Cruise Control*



Press the Driving Assist (🚗) button to turn off Smart Cruise Control.

## Information

If your vehicle is equipped with Manual Speed Limit Assist, press and hold the Driving Assist (🚗) button to turn off Smart Cruise Control and turn on Manual Speed Limit Assist.



## CAUTION

Do not operate multiple buttons or switches simultaneously. Smart Cruise Control may not operate properly.

### Smart Cruise Control display

The status of the Smart Cruise Control operation appears in Driving Assist view on the instrument cluster. Refer to the "**View modes**" section in chapter 4.

Operating



Temporarily cancelled



- When operating
  1. Displays whether there is a vehicle ahead and the selected distance level appears.
  2. Set speed appears.
  3. Displays whether there is a vehicle ahead and the target vehicle distance appears.
- When temporarily cancelled
  1. Your vehicle appears in grey.

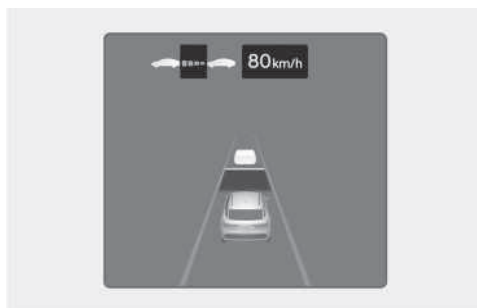
2. The previous set speed appears in grey.
3. Displays whether there is a vehicle ahead. If any, it appears in grey. (if equipped)

## Information

---

- The distance from the front vehicle on the instrument cluster appears according to the actual distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.
  - The target distance may differ depending on the vehicle speed and the set distance level. If the vehicle speed is low, even though the vehicle distances have changed, the change of the target vehicle distance may be small.
  - The images and colours in the instrument cluster may differ depending on the instrument cluster type or theme selected from the settings menu.
- 

### *Accelerating temporarily*



If you press the accelerator pedal above a certain speed whilst Smart Cruise Control is operating, your vehicle can speed up temporarily without changing the set speed. The set speed, distance level, and target distance blink on the instrument cluster whilst pressing the accelerator pedal. Your vehicle speed may decrease if the accelerator pedal is not pressed far enough.



### **WARNING**

---

Be careful when accelerating temporarily, because Smart Cruise Control is not controlling the speed and distance even if there is a vehicle in front of you.

Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicles ahead and adjust your vehicle speed depending on the road conditions.

---

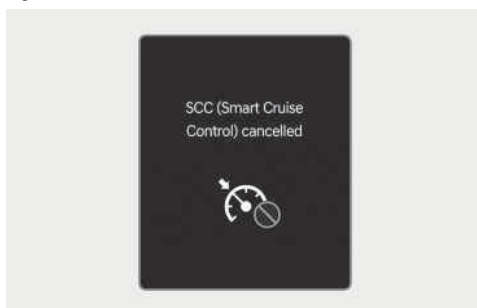
## ***Based on Driving Style operation***

 if equipped



When Based on Driving Style is operating, the vehicle distance level and target distance appears white based on the driving style.

## ***Temporarily cancelling Smart Cruise Control***



Smart Cruise Control is temporarily cancelled automatically when:

- Your vehicle speed is over 210 km/h.
- Your vehicle is stopped for a certain period of time.
- Your accelerator pedal is continuously pressed for a certain period of time.
- The conditions for the Smart Cruise Control to operate are not met.

If Smart Cruise Control is temporarily cancelled automatically, the "**SCC (Smart Cruise Control) cancelled**" warning message appears on the instrument cluster, and an audible warning sounds to warn you.

## **Information**

---

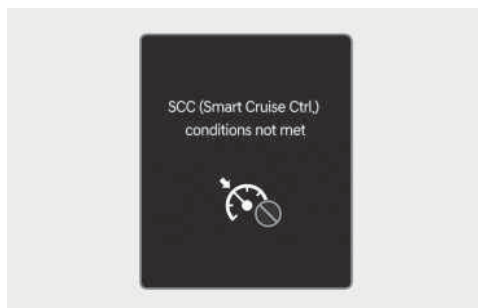
If Smart Cruise Control is temporarily cancelled whilst your vehicle is at a standstill with the function activated, the Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) may be applied.

---

## WARNING

Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicles ahead and adjust your vehicle speed to the road conditions. When Smart Cruise Control is temporarily cancelled, it is not controlling the speed and distance from the vehicle ahead.

### *Smart Cruise Control conditions not met*



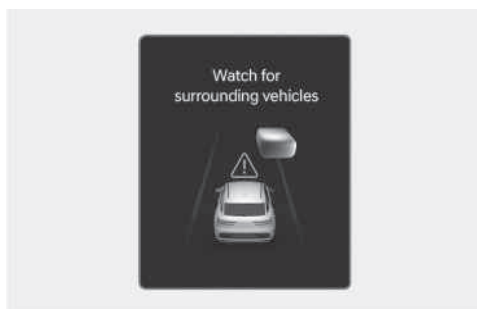
If the Driving Assist button, **+** switch, **-** switch or  switch is operated when Smart Cruise Control operating conditions are not satisfied, the **"SCC (Smart Cruise Ctrl.) conditions not met"** message appears on the instrument cluster, and an audible warning sounds.

### *In traffic situation*



In traffic, your vehicle stops if the vehicle ahead of you stops. Also, if the vehicle ahead of you starts moving, your vehicle starts moving as well. In addition, after your vehicle has stopped and a certain time has passed, the **"Use switch or pedal to accelerate"** message appears on the instrument cluster. press the accelerator pedal or push the **+** switch, **-** switch, or  switch to start driving.

## *Warning road conditions ahead*



The "**Watch for surrounding vehicles**" warning message appears on the instrument cluster, and an audible warning sounds if the vehicle in front disappears when Smart Cruise Control is maintaining the distance from the vehicle ahead whilst driving below a certain speed.



### **WARNING**

---

Always pay attention to vehicles or objects that may suddenly appear in front of you. Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicles ahead and adjust your vehicle speed to the road conditions.

---

### ***Collision Warning***

Whilst Smart Cruise Control is operating, when the collision risk with the vehicle ahead is high, the "**Collision warning!**" warning message will appear on the instrument cluster, and an audible warning will sound to warn the driver. Always have your eyes on the road whilst driving, and if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.

For more information on this function, refer to the "**Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)**" section in this chapter.

## **WARNING**

---

Smart Cruise Control is not a substitute for proper and safe driving.

To prevent serious injury or death:

- Always monitor your vehicle speed and the distance to vehicles ahead on the road. Smart Cruise Control is not a substitute for safe driving practices, but a supplemental function only.
  - Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicles ahead and adjust your vehicle speed to the road conditions. Smart Cruise Control may not recognise unexpected and sudden situations or complex driving situations.
  - Keep Smart Cruise Control off when not in use to avoid inadvertently setting the speed.
  - Do not open the door or leave your vehicle when Smart Cruise Control is operating, even if your vehicle is stopped.
  - Always check the vehicle speed and distance to the front vehicle that have been selected.
  - Keep a safe distance depending on the road condition and vehicle speed. If the distance to the front vehicle is too close whilst driving at high speeds, it may cause a serious collision.
  - When maintaining distance from the vehicle ahead, if the front vehicle is no longer detected, Smart Cruise Control may suddenly accelerate to the set speed.
  - The vehicle speed may slow down or speed up whilst driving uphill or downhill.
  - Always be aware of situations such as when a vehicle cuts in suddenly.
  - When you are towing a trailer or another vehicle, turn off Smart Cruise Control.
  - Turn off Smart Cruise Control when your vehicle is being towed.
  - Smart Cruise Control may not operate normally if there is interference from strong electromagnetic waves.
  - Smart Cruise Control may not detect obstacles in front and cause a collision.
  - Vehicles frequently changing lanes may cause a delay or may cause Smart Cruise Control to react to a vehicle in an adjacent lane.
  - When other system's warning message appears or audible warning is heard, Smart Cruise Control may not warn you.
  - You may not hear the audible warning of Smart Cruise Control if the surrounding environment is too noisy.
  - The vehicle manufacturer is not responsible for any traffic violation or collisions caused by you.
  - Set your vehicle speed to the speed limit for the road and use the appropriate unit (km/h) for your country.
  - The vehicle must be driven sufficiently to reflect the actual driving style of the driver, such as inter-vehicle distance, acceleration and reaction speed. Always pay attention to road and driving conditions whilst driving.
-



## Information

---

- The vehicle must be driven sufficiently to reflect the actual driving style of the driver, such as inter-vehicle distance, acceleration and reaction speed.
  - Based on Driving Style may not reflect the driver's driving style or driving conditions that affects driving safety.
  - If you are driving in special conditions, such as snow, rain, fog or steep slopes, the vehicle may not be driven according to the driver's driving style.
- 

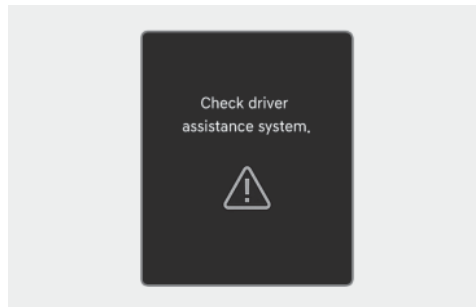
## Information

---

- Smart Cruise Control may not operate for few seconds after the vehicle is started or the front view camera or front radar is initialized.
  - You may hear a sound when the brake is controlled by Smart Cruise Control.
  - Based on Driving Style does not reflect any other driving style other than inter-vehicle distance, acceleration and reaction speed.
- 

## Smart Cruise Control malfunction and limitations

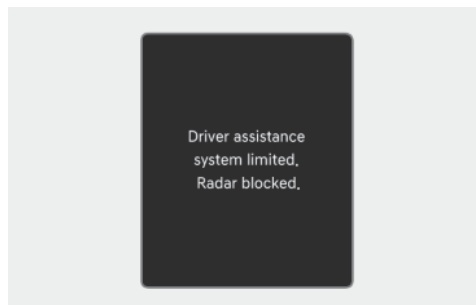
### *Smart Cruise Control malfunction*



When Smart Cruise Control is not working properly, the "**Check driver assistance system.**" warning message may appear and the  warning light may illuminate on the instrument cluster. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

- You can check the warning message in the Utility view on the cluster display.

### *Smart Cruise Control disabled*



If the front radar is covered or blocked, its detecting performance is reduced, and Smart Cruise Control is temporarily limited or disabled.

If this occurs, the "**Driver assistance system limited. Radar blocked**" warning message will appear for a certain period of time on the cluster display. for several seconds, and the master (△) warning light illuminates on the instrument cluster. But, it is not a malfunction.

If Smart Cruise Control does not operate normally after the sensor has been uncovered or unblocked, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

- You can check the warning message in the Utility view on the cluster display.



## **WARNING**

---

- Smart Cruise Control may not operate properly even if there is no warning message or warning light on the instrument cluster.
  - Smart Cruise Control may not operate properly in open areas where no objects are detected (e.g. empty car park) or when the detecting sensors are blocked immediately after turning on the engine.
- 

### **Detecting sensors**

Refer to the "**Driver Assistance System sensors**" section in this chapter for the location and the general precautions of the front view camera, front radar, and front corner radar.

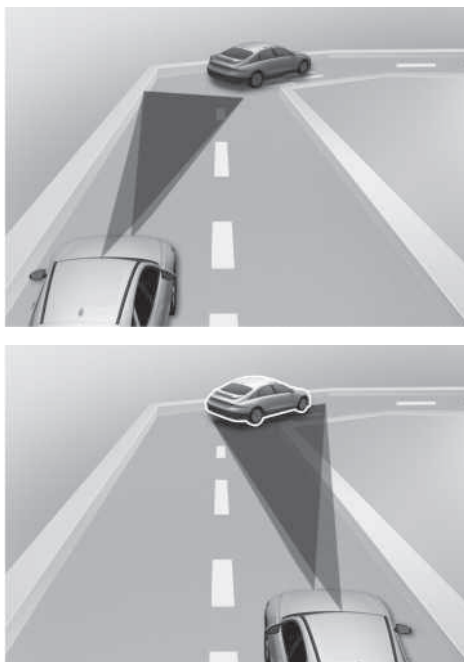
### ***Limitations of Smart Cruise Control***

Smart Cruise Control may not operate normally or may operate unexpectedly if:

- The sensor or the area near the sensor is blocked, covered, or damaged.
- The temperature near the front view camera is very hot or cold.
- The camera lens is covered or blocked by windscreen tint, the windscreen is damaged, or a sticky material (sticker, bug, etc.) is on the glass.
- Moisture is not removed or is frozen on the windscreen.
- Washer fluid is sprayed continuously, or the wiper is on.
- You are driving in heavy rain, snow, or thick fog.
- The front view camera's field of view is obstructed by glare from the sun.
- Sunlight, streetlight, or light from an oncoming vehicle is reflected on the wet road surface such as a puddle on the road.
- An object is placed on the instrument panel.
- The surroundings are very bright or very dark (nighttime, tunnel, etc.).
- The light level changes suddenly, for example when entering or exiting a tunnel.
- The light level outside is low, and the headlamps of the front vehicle are turned off or are not bright.
- A front vehicle is partially visible.
- The vehicle in front has no tail lamps or tail lamps are located in an unusual location.
- The rear of the front vehicle is small or the vehicle does not look normal, such as when your vehicle is tilted, overturned, or the side of your vehicle is visible.
- The front vehicle's ground clearance is so low or high.
- Your vehicle is being towed.

- A vehicle suddenly cuts in front.
- The bumper around the front radar has been damaged or modified, and the radar is out of position.
- A material is near that reflects very well on the front radar, such as guardrail, nearby vehicle, etc.
- The temperature near the front radar is very hot or cold.
- The vehicle in front is made of a material that does not reflect on the front radar well.
- The vehicle in front is detected late.
- The vehicle in front is suddenly blocked by an obstacle.
- The vehicle in front suddenly changes lanes or reduces the speed.
- The angle of the vehicle in front is out of the detection range.
- Your vehicle changes lanes at a low speed with a vehicle in front.
- The vehicle in front is covered with snow.
- You are on a curve or roundabout and the vehicle in front is not detected.
- You are continuously driving in a circle.
- Your vehicle moves unstably or vibrates excessively.
- Your vehicle height is low or high due to heavy loads, abnormal tyre pressure, etc.
- You are driving through steam, smoke, or shadow.
- You are driving through a tunnel or an iron bridge.
- You are driving in large, open areas where there are few vehicles or structures (e.g. desert, meadow, empty suburb).
- You are driving in a car park.
- You are driving through a tollbooth, construction area, unpaved road, partial paved road, uneven road, speed bumps, etc.
- You are driving on roads with railroad tracks or other embedded metal objects.
- You are driving on an inclined road or curved road.
- You are driving on a sharply curved road.
- You are driving on a road with trees or streetlights.
- You are driving on a narrow road where trees or grass are overgrown.
- You are driving on a slippery surface due to snow, water puddle, ice, etc.
- You are driving in an area with strong radio waves or electrical noise interference.

- **Driving on curves**



On curves, Smart Cruise Control may not detect a vehicle in the same lane, and may accelerate to the set speed. Your vehicle speed may be reduced if a vehicle is detected in an adjacent lane and your vehicle speed may rapidly decrease when a vehicle ahead is detected suddenly.

Select an appropriate set speed for curves and apply the brake pedal or accelerator pedal depending on the road and driving conditions.

- **Driving on hills**



During uphill or downhill driving, Smart Cruise Control may not detect a moving vehicle in your lane, and cause your vehicle to accelerate to the set speed. Also, your vehicle speed rapidly decreases when a vehicle ahead is detected suddenly.

Select an appropriate set speed on inclines and apply the brake pedal or accelerator pedal depending on the road and driving conditions.

- **Changing lanes**

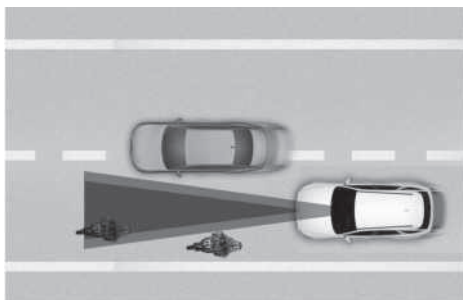


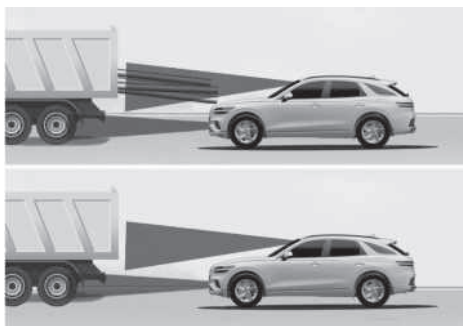
[A] Your vehicle

[B] Lane changing vehicle

When a vehicle moves into your lane from an adjacent lane, it cannot be detected by the sensor until it is in the sensor's detection range. Smart Cruise Control may not immediately detect the vehicle when your vehicle changes lanes abruptly. Brake as needed to reduce your driving speed.

- **Situations when detecting are limited**



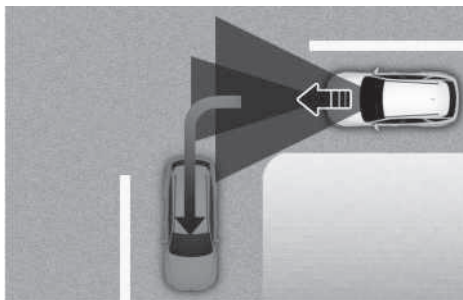


Some vehicles, pedestrians, or animals in your lane may not be detected by the sensor:

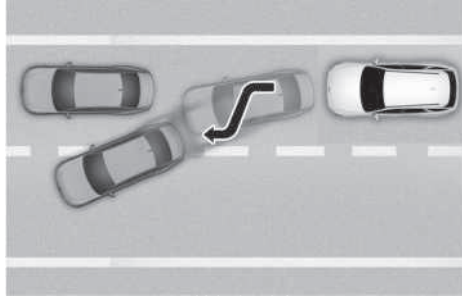
- Vehicles offset to one side
- Slow-moving vehicles or sudden decelerating vehicles
- Vehicles with higher ground clearance or vehicles carrying loads that extend past the end of the vehicle
- Vehicles that have the front tilted due to heavy loads
- Vehicles within about 2 m from your vehicle
- Oncoming vehicles
- Stopped vehicles
- Vehicles with small rear profile, such as trailers
- Narrow vehicles, such as motorcycles or bicycles
- Special vehicles
- Animals and pedestrians

Brake as needed to reduce your driving speed.

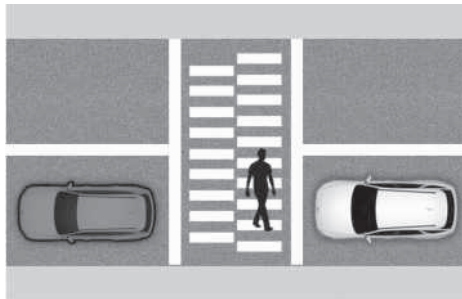
- In the following cases, the vehicle in front may not be detected by the sensor:
  - Making sharp steering inputs when driving
  - Driving on narrow or sharply curved roads
- When a vehicle ahead turns at an intersection and is no longer detected, your vehicle may accelerate.



- When a vehicle in front of you merges out of the lane, Smart Cruise Control may not immediately detect a new vehicle that is now in front of your vehicle.



- Always look out for pedestrians when your vehicle is maintaining a distance with the vehicle ahead.



## Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control (NSCC)

Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control helps drive at a set speed depending on the road conditions when driving on highways (or motorways) by using information from the navigation system whilst Smart Cruise Control is operating.

### Information

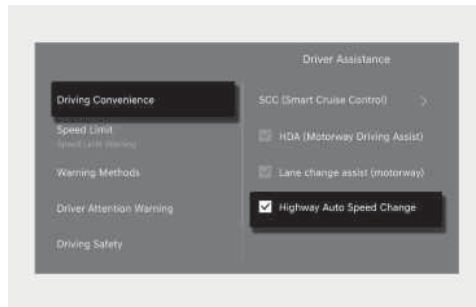
---

- Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control is available only on controlled access highways (or motorways).
    - Controlled access highway is the road with limited entrances and exits that allow uninterrupted high speed traffic flow.
  - Additional highways may be expanded by future navigation system updates.
  - Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control operates on main roads of highways (or motorways), and does not operate on interchanges or junctions.
- 

### Highway Auto Curve Slowdown

If the vehicle speed is high, the Highway Curve Zone Auto Slowdown function temporarily slows your vehicle or limits acceleration based on the available curve information in the navigation system.

### Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control settings



With the vehicle on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Driving convenience > Highway Auto Speed Change** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to turn on Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control and deselect to turn off the function.

### Information

---

When there is a problem with Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control, the function cannot be set from the settings menu.

---

### Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control operation

Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control may be available when:

- Select "**Highway Auto Speed Change**" from the infotainment system.
- Smart Cruise Control is operating.
- You are driving on controlled access roads.



## Information

---

For more information on how to operate Smart Cruise Control, refer to the "Smart Cruise Control (SCC)" section in this chapter.

---

### *Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control display*

The following may appear on the instrument cluster:



#### Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control standby

If the operating conditions are met, the green **NAV** indicator light illuminates.

#### Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control operating

Whilst the speed is being controlled, the green **NAV** indicator light blinks.

#### Temporarily cancelled or interrupted by the driver

If Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control cannot control the vehicle, such as when Smart Cruise Control is temporarily cancelled or the navigation system is searching for a route, the grey **NAV** indicator light illuminates.

When the driver presses the accelerator pedal, the white **NAV** indicator light blinks.



## WARNING

---



The "Drive carefully" warning message appears if Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control is not able to slow down your vehicle.

---

## Information

---

The images and colours in the instrument cluster may differ depending on the instrument cluster type or theme selected from the settings menu.

---

### Highway Auto Curve Slowdown

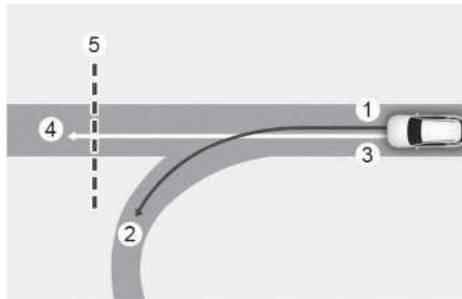
- Depending on the curve ahead on the motorway, your vehicle decelerates, and after passing the curve, your vehicle accelerates to Smart Cruise Control's set speed.
- Vehicle deceleration time may differ depending on your vehicle speed and the degree of the curve on the road. The higher the driving speed, deceleration starts faster.

### Limitations of Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control

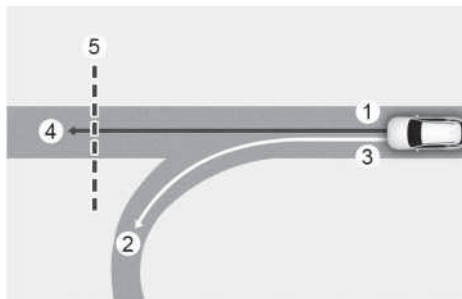
Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control may not operate normally if:

- The navigation is not working properly.
- Map information is not transmitted due to an issue with the infotainment system.
- Speed limit and road information in the navigation system has not been updated.
- The map information differs from the actual road conditions because of real-time GPS data or map information error.
- The navigation system is searching for a route whilst driving.
- GPS signals are blocked in areas such as a tunnel.
- A road is divided into two or more roads and they join again.
- You go off the route set in the navigation system.
- The route to the destination is changed or cancelled by resetting the navigation system.
- Your vehicle enters a service station or rest area.
- Android Auto or Car Play is operating.
- The navigation system cannot detect the current vehicle position (e.g. elevated roads including overpass adjacent to general roads or nearby roads exist in a parallel way).
- The navigation system is updated whilst driving or restarts.
- The speed limits of some sections have changed according to the road situations (e.g. construction zone).
- You are driving on a road that is under facility construction.
- You are driving in lane-restricted driving situations.
- There is inclement weather, such as heavy rain or heavy snow.
- You are driving on a road with sharp curves.
- When your vehicle continues on the controlled access road and does not follow the navigation route to exit the highway, Highway Auto Curve Slowdown may not operate until it is determined that you are driving on the highway. When Highway Auto Curve

Slowdown operates, your vehicle may decelerate gradually or rapidly depending on the distance to the curve and the vehicle speed.

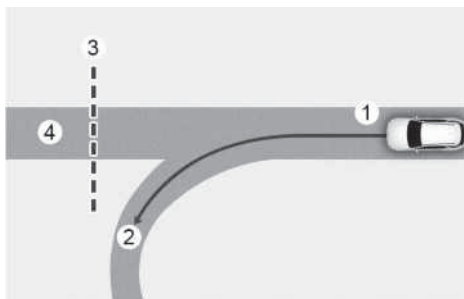


1. Set route
  2. Branch line
  3. Driving route
  4. Main road
  5. Curved road section
- When your vehicle does not follow the navigation route and exits the highway at an interchange or junction, Highway Auto Curve Slowdown may temporarily operate until it is determined that you have exited the highway.



1. Set route
  2. Branch line
  3. Driving route
  4. Main road
  5. Curved road section
- If there is no destination set on the navigation, Highway Auto Curve Slowdown operates based on the curve information for the controlled access road in the navigation system.

When you exit the highway at an interchange or junction, Highway Auto Curve Slowdown may temporarily operate using the navigation information for the highway.



1. Driving route
2. Branch line
3. Curved road section
4. Main road



## WARNING

Always have your eyes on the road. It is the driver's responsibility to avoid violating traffic laws. Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control is not a substitute for safe driving practices, but a supplemental function only.

To prevent serious injury or death:

- Always check the speed limit whilst driving. The navigation's speed limit information may differ from the actual speed limit on the road.
- Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control is automatically cancelled when you leave the highway and enter a general road, interchange, junction, or rest area.
- Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control may not operate depending on the configuration of vehicles detected ahead on the road.
- When you are towing a trailer or another vehicle, turn off Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control.
- After you pass through a tollbooth on a highway, Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control operates based on the outermost lane. If you enter one of the other lanes, Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control may not operate properly.
- Your vehicle accelerates if you press the accelerator pedal whilst Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control is operating. If the accelerator pedal is not pressed far enough, your vehicle may decelerate.
- If you accelerate and release the accelerator pedal whilst Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control is operating, your vehicle may not decelerate sufficiently or may rapidly decelerate.
- If the curve is too sharp or if it is a slight curve, Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control may not operate.

## Information

---

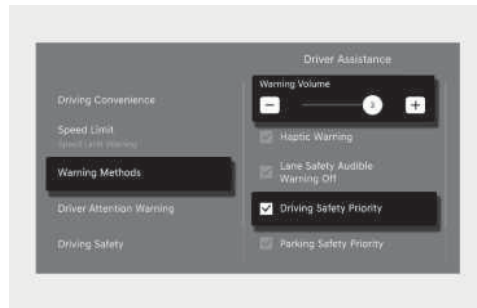
- There may be a gap in time between the navigation system's guidance and when the Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control operation starts and ends.
  - The speed information on the instrument cluster may differ from the navigation system.
  - Even if you are driving at a speed lower than the Smart Cruise Control's set speed, acceleration may be limited by the curves ahead on the road.
  - If Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control is operating whilst leaving the highway and entering an interchange, junction, or rest area, the function may continue to operate for a whilst.
  - Deceleration by Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control may not feel sufficient due to the road conditions such as uneven road surfaces or narrow lanes.
-

## Lane Following Assist (LFA)

Lane Following Assist helps detect lane markings and/or a vehicle ahead on the road, and provide steering assist to your vehicle in the lane.

### Lane Following Assist settings

#### *Warning methods*



With the engine on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Warning methods** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to select the following:

- **Warning volume:** The warning volume can be adjusted. If you set the warning volume to '0', the warning volume does not turn off but sounds as '1'.
- **Driving safety priority:** Your vehicle lowers all other audio volumes when the Driver Assistance system warning sounds.

#### Information

---

- If you change the warning methods, the warning methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.
  - When the engine is restarted, the warning methods maintain its previous setting.
- 



#### WARNING

---

When the trailer's connector is plugged into your vehicle, Lane Following Assist automatically turns off. In this case, you cannot get help from Lane Following Assist. Pay extra attention when you drive when the function is inactive. (If a Genesis genuine Trailer Kit that can determine whether a trailer is connected is used)

---

## Lane Following Assist operation

### *Turning Lane Following Assist On/Off*



With the engine on, press the Lane Driving Assist (/🚗) button located on the steering wheel to turn on Lane Following Assist. The grey or green 🚗 indicator light illuminates on the instrument cluster.

Press the button again to turn off the function.

### *Lane Following Assist*



If the both lane markings and/or vehicle ahead are detected and your vehicle speed is below 200 km/h, the green 🚗 indicator light illuminates on the instrument cluster, and Lane Following Assist helps centre the vehicle in the lane by assisting the steering wheel.

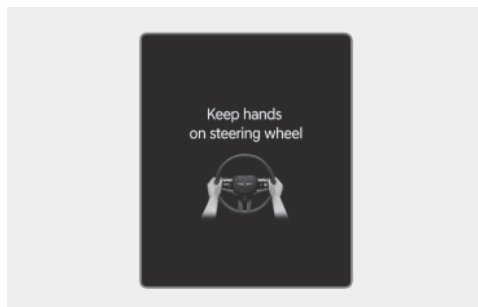
### Information

---

When the steering wheel is not assisted, the white 🚗 indicator light blinks and changes to grey.

---

## *Hands-off warning*



If you take your hands off the steering wheel for several seconds, the "**Keep hands on steering wheel**" warning message may appear on the instrument cluster, and an audible warning sounds in successive stages.

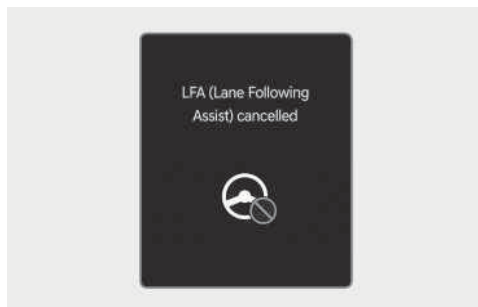
- First stage: Warning message
- Second stage: Warning message (red steering wheel) with a warning sound

### Information

---

For more details on precautions of the steering wheel grip sensor, refer to the "**Steering wheel grip sensor**" section in chapter 5.

---



If you do not have your hands on the steering wheel after the hands-off warning, the "**LFA (Lane Following Assist) cancelled**" warning message may appear and Lane Following Assist is automatically cancelled.





## WARNING

---

Always safely steer your vehicle and maintain the position of your vehicle in its lane.

To prevent serious injury or death:

- Always have your hands on the steering wheel whilst driving.
  - Lane Following Assist may not steer if the steering wheel is held too tightly, or the steering wheel is turned too far left or right.
  - If the steering wheel is held very loosely or you have gloves on, the hands-off warning message may appear because the Lane Following Assist may not recognise that you have your hands on the steering wheel.
  - The hands-off warning message may appear late or not at all depending on the road condition.
  - If you attach objects to the steering wheel, the hands-off warning may not work properly.
-

## Information

---

- The status of the Lane Following Assist operation appears in Driving Assist view on the instrument cluster. Refer to the "**View modes**" section in chapter 4.
- When both lane markings are detected, the lane lines on the instrument cluster change from grey to white.

Lane undetected



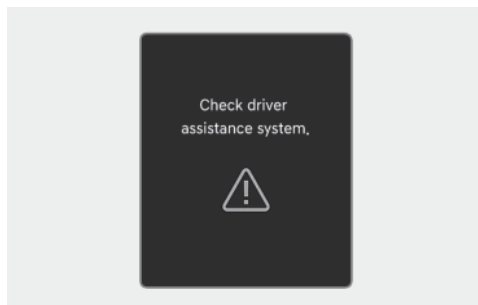
Lane detected



- The images and colours in the instrument cluster may differ depending on the instrument cluster type or theme selected from the settings menu.
  - If lane markings are not detected, steering wheel control by Lane Following Assist can be limited depending on the vehicle in front or driving condition.
  - You can steer your vehicle even when steering is assisted by Lane Following Assist.
  - It may require more or less force to turn the steering wheel when Lane Following Assist is providing steering assistance.
-

## Lane Following Assist malfunction and limitations

### *Lane Following Assist malfunction*



When Lane Following Assist is not working properly, the "**Check driver assistance system**" warning message may appear for several seconds, and the  warning light may illuminate on the instrument cluster. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

- You can check the warning message in the Utility view on the cluster display.

### *Detecting sensors*

Refer to the "**Driver Assistance System sensors**" section in this chapter for the location and the general precautions of the front view camera.

### *Limitations of Lane Following Assist*

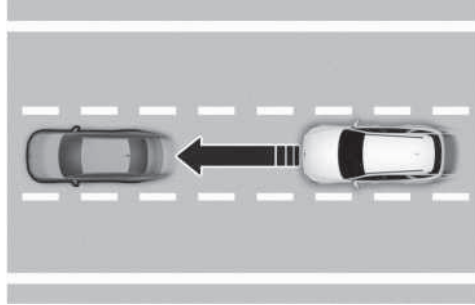
#### Information

---

- For more information on Lane Following Assist limitations and precautions, refer to the "**Lane Keeping Assist malfunction and limitations**" section in this chapter.
  - Loading in excess of the maximum load allowance or concentrated loading at one point in the cargo compartment can reduce the vehicle's driving stability, which can in turn reduce the effectiveness of Lane Following Assist.
-

## Highway Driving Assist (HDA)

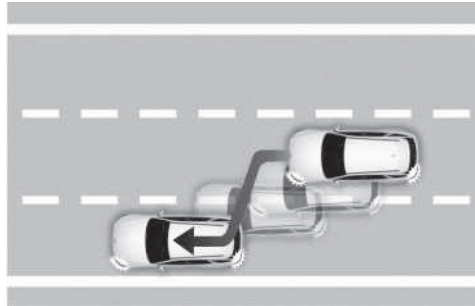
### *Basic function*



Highway Driving Assist helps maintain distance from the vehicle ahead, maintain the set speed, and centre the vehicle in the lane whilst driving on the freeway (or motorway).

### *Highway Lane Change Assist*

 if equipped



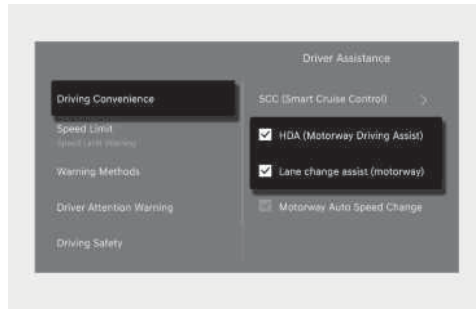
Highway Lane Change Assist function helps change lanes to the direction you operate the turn signal switch if the function judges that lane change is possible.

### Information

---

- Highway Driving Assist is available only on controlled access highways.
    - Controlled access highway is a road with limited entrances and exits that allow uninterrupted high speed traffic flow.
  - Additional highways may be expanded by future navigation system updates.
  - Highway Driving Assist does not operate on interchanges or junctions.
-

## Highway Driving Assist settings



With the vehicle on, select or deselect **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Driving convenience** from the Settings menu to turn each function on and off.

### *Highway Driving Assist*

If **HDA (Motorway Driving Assist)** is selected, the function helps maintain distance from the vehicle ahead, maintain the set speed, and help centre your vehicle in the lane whilst driving on the highway (or motorway).

### *Highway Lane Change Assist*

 if equipped

If **Lane change assist (motorways)** is selected, the function helps you change lanes.

### Information

---

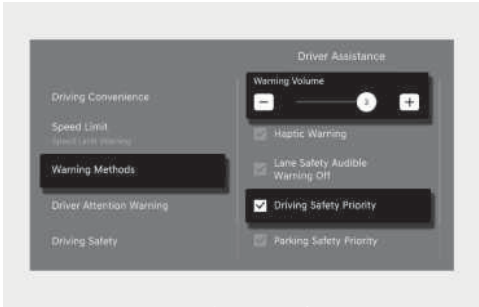
- When **HDA (Motorway Driving Assist)** is deselected, the setting for **Lane change assist (motorway)** cannot be changed.
  - When there is a problem with Highway Driving Assist, the function cannot be set from the Settings menu. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.
  - When the engine is restarted, the function maintains the previous setting.
- 

### **WARNING**

---

- Only change the settings after parking your vehicle at a safe location.
  - When the trailer's connector is plugged into your vehicle, Highway Driving Assist automatically turns off. In this case, you cannot get help Highway Driving Assist. Pay extra attention when you drive when the function is inactive. (If a Genesis genuine Trailer Kit that can determine whether a trailer is connected is used)
-

## Warning methods



With the engine on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Warning methods** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to select the following:

- **Warning volume:** The warning volume can be adjusted. If you set the warning volume to '0', the warning volume does not turn off but sounds as '1'.
- **Driving safety priority:** Your vehicle lowers all other audio volumes when the Driver Assistance system warning sounds.

### Information

- If you change the warning volume, the warning volume of other Driver Assistance systems may change.
- When the engine is restarted, the warning methods maintain its previous setting.
- The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on the vehicle features and specifications.

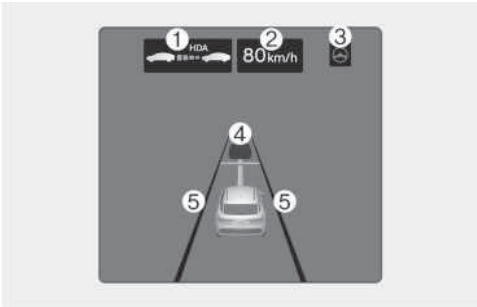
## Highway Driving Assist operation

### Basic function

#### Highway Driving Assist display

The status of the Highway Driving Assist operation appears in Driving Assist mode on the instrument cluster. Refer to the "**View modes**" section in chapter 4.

Operating state



#### Standby state



- 1 Indicates if there is a vehicle ahead and the selected distance level appears.
  - Highway Driving Assist indicator (HDA)
    - Green HDA: Operating state
    - Grey HDA: Standby state
    - White HDA blink: Accelerator pedal pressed
    - Non-display: Off state
- 2 Set speed appears.
- 3 Lane Following Assist light appears.
- 4 Detected ahead and the selected vehicle distance appears.
- 5 Whether the lane is detected or not appears here.

### Information

---

- For more information on the display, refer to the "**Smart Cruise Control (SCC)**" and "**Lane Following Assist (LFA)**" sections in this chapter.
  - The images and colours in the instrument cluster may differ depending on the instrument cluster type or theme selected from the settings menu.
- 

### Highway Driving Assist operation

Highway Driving Assist operates when:

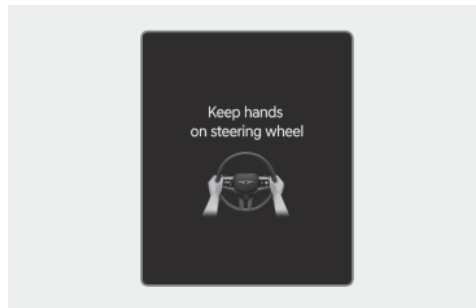
- You have pressed the Driving Assist button after entering or driving on controlled access roads.
- Entering or driving on controlled access roads with both Lane Following Assist and Smart Cruise Control operating.

### Restarting after stopping

When Highway Driving Assist is operating, your vehicle stops if the vehicle ahead of you stops. Also, if the vehicle ahead of you starts moving within 30 seconds after the stop, your vehicle starts as well. If your vehicle has stopped and 30 seconds have passed, the "**Use switch or pedal to accelerate**" message appears on the instrument cluster. press the accelerator pedal or push the **+** switch, **-** switch, or **||○** switch to accelerate.



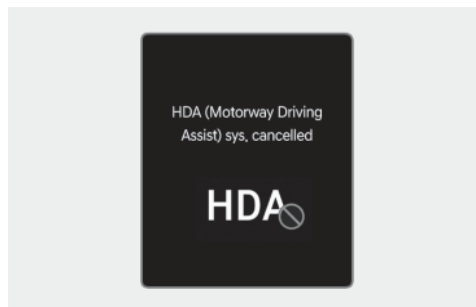
### Hands-off warning



If you take your hands off the steering wheel for several seconds, the "**Keep hands on steering wheel**" warning message may appear on the instrument cluster, and an audible warning sounds in successive stages.

First stage: Warning message

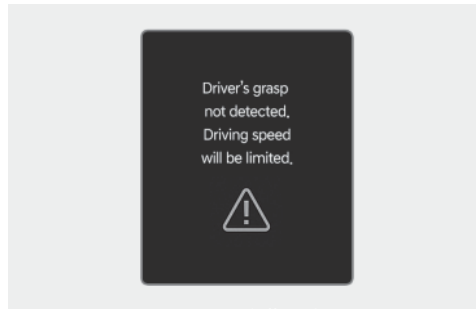
Second stage: Warning message (red steering wheel) and audible warning



If you do not have your hands on the steering wheel after the hands-off warning, the "**HDA (Motorway Driving Assist) sys. cancelled**" warning message may appear and Highway Driving Assist and Lane Change Assist are automatically cancelled.



## Driving speed limit

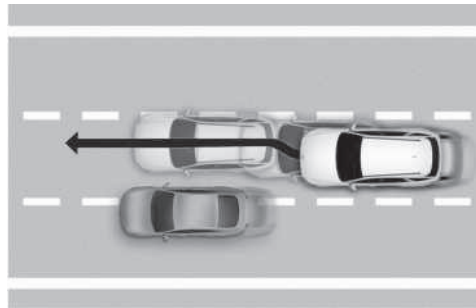


When Highway Driving Assist is cancelled by the hands-off warning, The driving speed will be limited.

Whilst Driving Speed Limit function is operating, the **"Driver's grasp not detected. Driving speed will be limited."** warning message appears on the instrument cluster, and an audible warning sounds continuously.

## Driving to one side within lane

 if equipped



When vehicle speed is above 60 km/h, if a detected vehicle around you is driving at a close distance, your vehicle controls the steering in the opposite direction of the vehicle. If a vehicle is detected at both sides of the lane and are driving close to you, the function does not veer to the opposite side of the lane.

## Highway Driving Assist standby

When the Smart Cruise Control is temporarily cancelled whilst Highway Driving Assist is operating, Highway Driving Assist goes into the standby state. At this time, Lane Following Assist operates normally.

## Information

- Driving Speed Limit helps you drive below 60 km/h. At this time, the vehicle decelerates due to the vehicle ahead. After the vehicle has decelerated, it cannot automatically accelerate.
- Driving Speed Limit cancels when:
  - The driver grabs the steering wheel again
  - The driver turns on Lane Following Assist by pressing the Lane Driving Assist (/👁\ ) button
  - +, -, 🔄 switch, or 🛑 button is operated, or the accelerator pedal or the brake pedal is pressed

## Highway Lane Change Assist

 if equipped

### Highway Lane Change Assist display

The status of the Highway Lane Change Assist operation appears in Driving Assist mode on the instrument cluster. Refer to the "**View modes**" section in chapter 4.

Ready/Operating



Standby/Cancelled



### 1 Highway Lane Change Assist (👁) indicator

- Green on: Ready state
- Green blink: Operating state

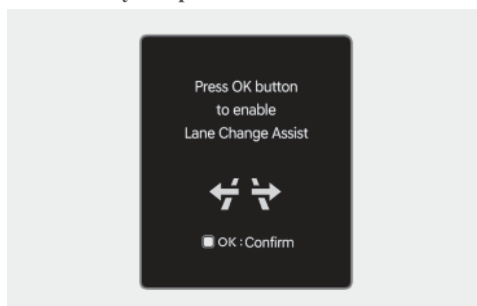
- Grey on: Standby state
  - White blink: Cancelled state (displayed only a certain time)
- 2 Green lane line
- The lane line is displayed same as the Highway Lane Change Assist (↔) indicator. However, if the function is in standby, it displays whether the lane line is detected.
- 3 Green arrow and shade
- The green arrow is displayed when a certain amount of time has passed after the function has started operating, and until the lane change has completed.
- 4 Message
- Message appears when the function does not operate even though the turn signal is used.
  - Message appears when the function is cancelled whilst operating.

### To turn on Highway Lane Change Assist

Highway Lane Change Assist function turns on when the Driving Assist button or Lane Driving Assist button is used to turn on Highway Driving Assist.

Press OK button when **"Press OK button to enable Lane Change Assist"** message appears on the cluster.

### Highway Lane Change Assist ready to operate



Whilst Highway Lane Change Assist function is on, the function is ready to operate when all the following conditions are met:

- Highway Driving Assist is operating.
- Lane Following Assist is operating.
- A vehicle in the rear area of your vehicle is detected more than once after the engine is turned on.
- Your vehicle speed is above 30 km/h.
- When your vehicle is between 30-60 km/h, a vehicle is detected in the rear area of your vehicle's left and right side lanes, and there is no risk of collision when changing a lane.
- Hands-off warning is not displayed on the instrument cluster.
- Hazard warning flasher is off.

## Information

---

Whilst Lane Change Assist function is turned on (indicator on), Lane Following Assist does not cancel even if the turn signal indicator or hazard warning flasher is operating.

- Lane Change Assist function turns off automatically when driven in the following road conditions:
    - There is only one driving lane.
    - There is a road with a intersection or crosswalk ahead.
    - There is a road with no structure, such as a medium strip, guardrails, etc.
    - There is a pedestrian or cyclist on the road ahead.
  - When the function is in the ready state, and vehicle speed is below 25 km/h, the function changes to the standby state.
  - When your vehicle is between 30-60 km/h, and a vehicle is not detected in the rear area of your vehicle's left and right side lanes, the function changes to the standby state.
  - If there is a collision risk, the function changes to the standby state.
- 

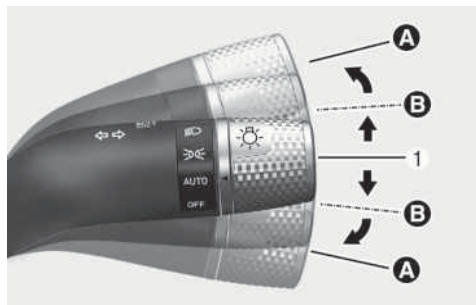
## WARNING

---

When Highway Lane Change Assist function turns off whilst operating, steering assist is temporarily cancelled. Always be cautious whilst driving.

---

### Highway Lane Change Assist operating



Highway Lane Change Assist function operates, when you push the turn signal lever up or down to the [A] or [B] position whilst the function is in the ready state (indicator is green), and all of the following conditions are met:

- You have your hand on the steering wheel.
- There is no collision risk in the direction of lane change.
- There is a single dotted lane line in the direction of lane change.
- There are no Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist and Blind Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist warnings.
- The vehicle is driven in the middle of the lane (should not be driving close to one side of the lane).
- The road you are driving on, or the road you are about to change lane is a road where the function can operate.

## Information

---

- Highway Lane Change Assist operates when the turn signal lever is positioned at [A]. If the turn signal lever is released to the centre (1) before stepping on the lane, Highway Lane Change Assist cancels. If the turn signal lever is released to the centre (1) after stepping on the lane, Highway Lane Change Assist changes the lane and turns off the turn signal after the lane change is complete.
  - When the turn signal lever is placed at [B] position for a certain period of time, the green arrow appears. At this time, even when the lever is released and returns to the original position (1), lane change is still assisted.  
Whilst lane change is being made by the function, the turn signal indicator blinks even when the turn signal lever is not held, and the turn signal indicator turns off when lane change is complete.
- 

### Highway Lane Change Assist standby

Highway Lane Change Assist function is in the standby state when one of the ready state conditions is not met, or when entering or driving on one of the following roads:

- Road within a certain distance from the tollbooth on the main road of the highway
- The road ahead ends without an interchange or junction
- Road with sharp curves
- Road with narrow lanes

### Highway Lane Change Assist cancel

You may cancel the function by:

- Turning on the turn signal in the opposite direction of the lane change.
- Turning the steering wheel sharply.



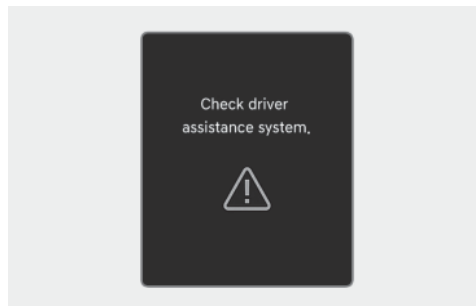
## WARNING

---

- Highway Lane Change Assist automatically cancels when:
    - Highway Driving Assist is turned off.
    - Lane Following Assist or Smart Cruise Control is turned off or temporarily cancelled.
    - Hands-off warning message is displayed on the instrument cluster.
    - The hazard warning flasher is turned on.
    - Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist or Blind-Spot Collision Avoidance Assist warning message is displayed.
    - Possible collision is detected in the next lane, even though there are no Forward-Collision Avoidance Assist and Blind-Spot Collision Avoidance Assist warning.
    - The target lane to make a lane change disappears.
    - There is a problem with the turn signal lights.
    - Highway Lane Change Assist function turns off (The function turns off when the function is turned off from the settings menu, when the road changes to a one-way road, when there is an intersection or pedestrian crossing ahead, when you enter a road with no structure, such as a medium strip, guardrail, etc., or when there is a pedestrian or cyclist on the driving lane.).
    - Your vehicle speed is below 25 km/h.
    - When your vehicle is between 30-60 km/h, and a vehicle is not detected in the rear area of your vehicle's left and right side lanes.
    - There is a risk of collision with a vehicle in the rear area of your vehicle.
  - Whilst the function is operating, when the function is cancelled, depending on the driving conditions, the vehicle may drive to the middle of the driving lane or steering assist may stop. Always pay attention to road and driving conditions whilst driving.
  - The function may not operate properly on roads with pedestrians or cyclists, such as an intersection or pedestrian crossing. Always pay attention to road and driving conditions whilst driving.
- 

## Highway Driving Assist malfunction and limitations

### *Highway Driving Assist malfunction*



When Highway Driving Assist is not working properly, the "**Check driver assistance system.**" warning message may appear and the  warning light may illuminate on the

instrument cluster. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

- You can check the warning message in the Utility view on the cluster display.



## WARNING

---

Always check road conditions, and if necessary, take appropriate actions to drive safely. Highway Driving Assist is a supplemental function only and it is not a self driving or autonomous driving system.

To prevent serious injury or death:

- Always have your hands on the steering wheel whilst driving.
  - Always have your eyes on the road and pay attention. It is your responsibility to avoid violating traffic laws.
  - Highway Driving Assist may not be able to recognise all traffic situations and may not detect possible collision hazards. Obstacles such as vehicles, motorcycles, bicycles, pedestrians, or unspecified objects or structures (e.g. guardrails and tollbooth) may not be detected.
  - Highway Driving Assist turns off automatically under the following situations:
    - You are driving on roads where Highway Driving Assist does not operate, such as rest area, intersection, junction, etc. However, Highway Driving Assist may be maintained in some sections.
    - The navigation does not operate properly such as when the navigation system is updating or restarting.
  - Highway Driving Assist may inadvertently operate or turn off depending on the road conditions (based on the navigation system information) and surroundings.
  - Lane Following Assist may be temporarily disabled when the front view camera cannot detect lanes properly or the hands-off warning is on.
  - The hands-off warning message may appear early or late depending on how the steering wheel is held or road conditions.
  - You may not hear the audible warning of Highway Driving Assist if the surrounding environment is too noisy.
  - When your vehicle is driven at high speeds through a curve, your vehicle may depart from your driving lane if you do not maintain control.
  - When you are towing a trailer or another vehicle, turn off Highway Driving Assist.
  - Highway Driving Assist may not operate immediately after the engine is started or when the sensors or navigation system is initialised.
- 

### ***Detecting sensors***

Refer to the "**Driver Assistance System sensors**" section in this chapter for the location and the general precautions of the front view camera, front radar, front corner radar, and rear corner radar.

### ***Limitations of Highway Driving Assist***

Highway Driving Assist may not operate normally or may not operate if:

- The map information differs from the actual road conditions because the navigation system has not been updated, or there is a real-time GPS data or map information error.

- The infotainment system is overloaded by simultaneously performing functions such as route search, voice recognition, etc.
- GPS signals are blocked in an area such as tunnel.
- You depart from the navigation route or the route to the destination is changed or cancelled.
- Your vehicle enters a service station or rest area.
- Android Auto or Car Play is operating.
- The navigation system cannot detect the current vehicle position (e.g. elevated roads including overpass adjacent to general roads or nearby roads exist in a parallel way).
- A trailer or towbar mounted carrier is connected to your vehicle.

## Information

---

For more information on the limitations of the front view camera, front radar, front corner radar, and rear corner radar, refer to the "**Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)**" section in this chapter.

---



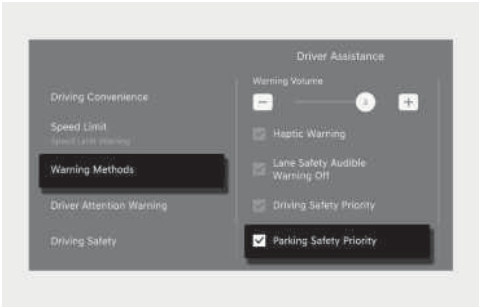
# Rear View Monitor (RVM)

 if equipped

Rear View Monitor displays the area behind your vehicle to assist you when parking or driving.

## Rear View Monitor settings

### Warning methods



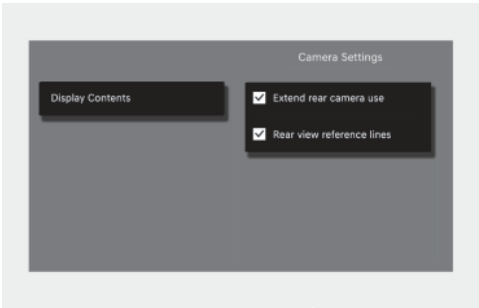
With the engine on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Warning methods** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to select the following:

- **Parking safety priority:** The vehicle lowers all other audio volumes when a parking assist view is active.

### Information

- If you change the warning methods, the warning methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.
- When the engine is restarted, the warning methods maintain its previous setting.
- The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on the vehicle features and specifications.

### Camera settings



To change the settings of Rear View Monitor's display contents, press the setup icon () on the screen whilst Rear View Monitor is operating, or select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver**

**assistance > Parking safety > Camera settings** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system whilst the engine is on.

- If **Display contents** is selected, you can change settings for **Extend rear camera use** and **Rear view reference lines**.

#### **Extended rear view monitor**

If **Extend rear camera use** is selected, the rear view remains on the screen when shifting from R (Reverse) to N (Neutral) or D (Drive). When your vehicle exceeds a certain speed, the rear view stops displaying.

#### **Rear view parking guide line**

If **Rear view reference lines** is selected, the rear view parking guide appears when the rear view and rear top view is displayed.

### **Information**

---

- The rear view horizontal guideline shows the distance of about 0.5 m, 1 m, and 2.3 m from the vehicle.
  - The rear top view horizontal guideline shows the tailgate opening distance and the distance of about 1.5 m from the vehicle.
- 

### **Rear View Monitor operation**

#### ***Parking/View button***



Press the Parking/View button (1) whilst the gear is in P (Park), D (Drive) or N (Neutral) to turn on the Rear View Monitor.

## Rear view



The rear view appears on the screen.

View modes can be selected by pressing the view buttons (2) to select rear view or rear wide view on the Rear View Monitor screen.

### Turns on if:

- You shift the gear to R (Reverse).
- You press the Parking/View button (1) when the gear is in P (Park), N (Neutral), or D (Drive), and your vehicle speed is 10 km/h or less.

### Turns off if:

- You shift the gear to P (Park).
- You press the Parking/View button (1).
- You press the Home button (3).
- You press the infotainment system buttons (4).
- You shift the gear to N (Neutral) or D (Drive), and your vehicle speed is above 10 km/h.

## Information

---

The rear view cannot be turned off when the gear is in R (Reverse).

---

### Extended rear view function

The rear view remains on the screen when you shift the gear from R (Reverse) to N (Neutral) or D (Drive).

### Turns on if:

- You shift the gear from R (Reverse) to N (Neutral) or D (Drive), and your vehicle speed is 10 km/h or less.

### Turns off if:

- You shift the gear to P (Park).
- You press the Parking/View button (1).
- You press the Home button (3).
- You press the infotainment system buttons (4).
- Your vehicle speed is above 10 km/h.

## *Rear top view*



Select the rear top view mode [A] from the view buttons (2).

The top view appears on the screen and the distance from the vehicle appears in the back of your vehicle.

## *Rear view whilst driving*

The rear view remains on the screen whilst driving, it is to assist with reversing.

### **Turns on if:**

- You press the Parking/View button (1) when the gear is in N (Neutral) or D (Drive), and your vehicle speed is above 10 km/h.

### **Turns off if:**

- You shift the gear to P (Park).
- You press Parking/View button (1).
- You press the Home button (3).
- You press the infotainment system buttons (4).

## **Information**

---

- The rear view in all modes cannot be turned off when the gear is in R (Reverse).
  - When the rear view is turned on, the previous view mode appears.
  - The rear parking guidelines appear when the rear view or rear top view is displayed. (The parking guidelines appear only when **Rear view reference lines** is selected from the Settings menu in the infotainment system.).
  - The rear view whilst driving does not turn off even when the vehicle speed is below 10 km/h.
  - When the rear view whilst driving is on, the rear top view is disabled.
- 

## **Rear View Monitor malfunction and limitations**

### *Rear View Monitor malfunction*

When Rear View Monitor is not working properly, or the screen flickers, or the camera image does not appear normally, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

### ***Detecting sensors***

Refer to the "**Driver Assistance System sensors**" section in this chapter for the location and the general precautions of the wide-rear view camera.

### ***Limitations of Rear View Monitor***

When your vehicle is stopped for a long time in winter or your vehicle is parked in an indoor car park, the exhaust fumes may temporarily blur the image.



#### **WARNING**

---

- Always turn your head to check blind spots. The rear view camera does not cover the entire area behind your vehicle.
  - The perceived distance on the screen may differ from the actual distance.
  - Always keep the rear view camera lens clean. If the lens is blocked or covered, the Rear View Monitor may not operate normally. Do not clean with strong chemicals containing high alkaline or volatile organic solvents (e.g. petrol, acetone).
-

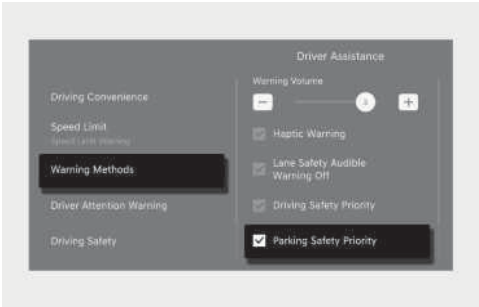
# Surround View Monitor (SVM)

 if equipped

Surround View Monitor displays images around your vehicle through the infotainment system screen when parking or driving.

## Surround View Monitor settings

### *Warning methods*



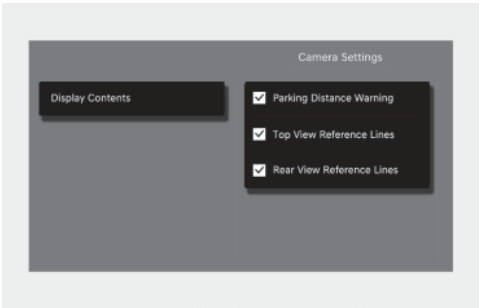
With the engine on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Warning methods** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to select the following:

- **Parking safety priority:** The vehicle lowers all other audio volumes when a parking assist view is active.

### Information

- If you change the warning methods, the warning methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.
- When the engine is restarted, the warning methods maintain its previous setting.
- The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on the vehicle features and specifications.

### *Camera settings*



To change the settings of Surround View Monitor's display contents, press the setup icon (⚙️) on the screen whilst Surround View Monitor is operating, or select **Setup > Vehicle**

> **Driver assistance** > **Parking safety** > **Camera settings** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system whilst the engine is on.

- If **Display contents** is selected, you can change settings for **Parking distance warning**, **Top view reference lines** and **Rear view reference lines**.

### **Parking distance warning**

If **Parking distance warning** is selected, the parking distance warning appears on the right side of the Surround View Monitor screen.

### **Top view reference lines**

If **Top view reference lines** is selected, the parking guideline appears on the right side of the Surround View Monitor screen.

### **Information**

---

The rear top view horizontal guideline shows the tailgate opening distance of about 2 m from the vehicle.

---

### **Rear view reference lines**

If **Rear view reference lines** is selected, the parking guideline appears in the rear view.

### **Information**

---

The rear view horizontal guideline shows the distance of about 0.5 m, 1 m, and 2.3 m.

---

## ***Surround View Monitor Auto On***

With the engine on, select **Setup** > **Vehicle** > **Driver assistance** > **Parking safety** > **Surround view monitor auto On** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to use the function.

### **Information**

---

For more information on Surround view monitor auto On, refer to "**Surround View Monitor operation**" in this chapter.

---

## **Surround View Monitor operation**

Press the Parking/View button (1) to turn on Surround View Monitor.

Press the button again to turn off the function.



## ***Front view***



The front view appears on the screen when the gear is in N (Neutral) or D (Drive) to assist parking. The front view has top view, front view, front side view, and front wide view.

View modes can be selected by pressing the view buttons (2) on the Surround View Monitor screen.

### **Turns on if:**

- You shift the gear from R (Reverse) to N (Neutral) or D (Drive).
- You press the Parking/View button (1) when the gear is in P (Park), N (Neutral), or D (Drive), and your vehicle speed is 10 km/h or less.
- **Surround view monitor auto On** function is operating.  
(**Surround view monitor auto On** must be selected from the Settings menu.)

### **Information**

---

When the front view is turned on, the previous view mode appears.

---

### **Turns off if:**

- You shift the gear to P (Park) or R (Reverse).
- You press the Parking/View button (1).
- You press the Home button (3).
- You press the infotainment system buttons (4).
- Your vehicle speed is above 10 km/h.

### **Information**

---

Surround View Monitor turns off when vehicle speed is above 10 km/h. The function does not turn on again even if vehicle speed is below 10 km/h.

---

## ***Front view whilst driving***

The front view remains on the screen whilst driving.

View modes can be selected by pressing the view buttons (2) on the Surround View Monitor screen.



**Turns on if:**

- You press the Parking/View button (1) when the gear is in N (Neutral), or D (Drive), and your vehicle speed is above 10 km/h.

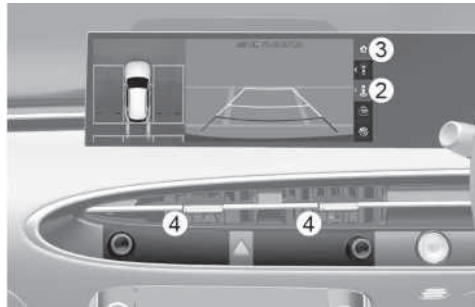
**Turns off if:**

- You shift the gear to P (Park) or R (Reverse).
- You press the Parking/View button (1).
- You press the Home button (3).
- You press the infotainment system buttons (4).

**Information**

---

- When the front view whilst driving is turned on, the previous view mode appears.
  - The front view whilst driving does not turn off even when the vehicle speed is below 10 km/h once it is on.
  - When the front view whilst driving is on, the front top view and side view are disabled.
- 

***Rear view***

The rear view appears on the screen to assist parking. The rear view has top view, rear view, rear side view, and rear wide view.

View modes can be selected by pressing the view buttons (2) on the Surround View Monitor screen.

**Turns on if:**

- You shift the gear to R (Reverse).
- You press the Parking/View button (1) when the gear is in P (Park), N (Neutral), or D (Drive), and your vehicle speed is below 10 km/h.

**Turns off if:**

- You shift the gear from N (Neutral) or D (Drive) to P (Park).
- You press the Parking/View button (1) when the gear is in P (Park), N (Neutral), or D (Drive).
- You press the Home button (3) when the gear is in P (Park), N (Neutral), or D (Drive).
- You press the infotainment system buttons (4) when the gear is in P (Park), N (Neutral), or D (Drive).
- Your vehicle speed is above 10 km/h when the gear is in D (Drive).

- You shift the gear from R (Reverse) to P (Park).

## Information

---

The rear view cannot be turned off when the gear is in R (Reverse) even if the infotainment system buttons (4) are pressed.

---

### ***Rear View whilst driving***

The rear view remains on the screen whilst driving, it is to assist with reversing.

#### **Turns on if:**

- You press the rear view mode from view buttons (2) after pressing the Parking/View button (1) when the gear is in N (Neutral) or D (Drive), and your vehicle speed is above 10 km/h.

#### **Turns off if:**

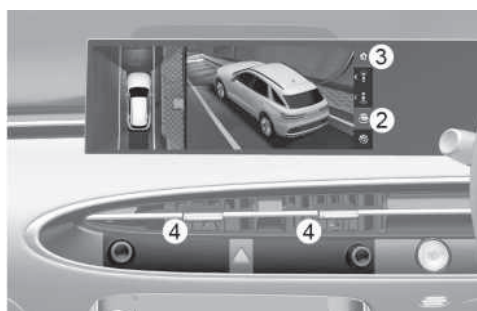
- You shift the gear to P (Park).
- You press the Parking/View button (1).
- You press the Home button (3).
- You press the infotainment system buttons (4).

## Information

---

- When the rear view whilst driving is turned on, the last view mode appears.
  - The rear parking guidelines do not appear when the rear view is displayed whilst driving.
  - The rear view whilst driving does not turn off even when the vehicle speed is below 10 km/h.
  - When the rear view whilst driving is on, the rear top view and rear side view are disabled.
- 

### ***3D view***



The 3D view shows the image around the vehicle from various angles.

Tap the screen to change vehicle angles. Press the 3D view button (2) again to return to the initial angle.

**Turns on if:**

- You press the 3D view button (2) when the gear is in P (Park), N (Neutral), or D (Drive), and your vehicle speed is below 10 km/h.
- You press the 3D view button (2) when Surround View Monitor is turned on when the gear is in R (Reverse).

**Turns off if:**

- You shift the gear from N (Neutral) or D (Drive) to P (Park).
- You press the Parking/View button (1) when the gear is in P (Park), N (Neutral), or D (Drive).
- You press the Home button (3) when the gear is in P (Park), N (Neutral), or D (Drive).
- You press the infotainment system buttons (4) when the gear is in P (Park), N (Neutral), or D (Drive).
- Your vehicle speed is above 10 km/h when the gear is in D (Drive)
- You shift the gear from R (Reverse) to P (Park).

**Information**

---

3D view does not display guidelines.

---

**Surround View Monitor malfunction and limitations*****Surround View Monitor malfunction***

When Surround View Monitor is not working properly, or the screen flickers, or the camera image does not appear normally, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

***Detecting sensors***

Refer to the "**Driver Assistance System sensors**" section in this chapter for the location and the general precautions of the wide-front view camera, wide-side view camera, and wide-rear view camera.

***Limitations of Surround View Monitor***

- When your vehicle is stopped for a long time in winter or your vehicle is parked in an indoor car park, the exhaust fumes may temporarily blur the image.
- The screen may not display the surround view properly and an icon may appear at the top left of the screen if:
  - The tailgate is opened.
  - The driver or front passenger door is opened.
  - The outside rearview mirrors are folded.



## WARNING

---

- Always look around your vehicle to make sure there are no objects or obstacles before driving.
  - The perceived distance on the screen may differ from the actual distance.
  - Surround View Monitor is designed to be used on a flat surface. When your vehicle is used on roads with different heights such as kerbs and speed bumps, the image on the screen may not look correct.
  - Always keep the camera lens clean. If the lens is blocked or covered, the Surround View Monitor may not operate normally. Do not clean with strong chemicals containing high alkaline or volatile organic solvents (petrol, acetone etc.).
- 

## Information

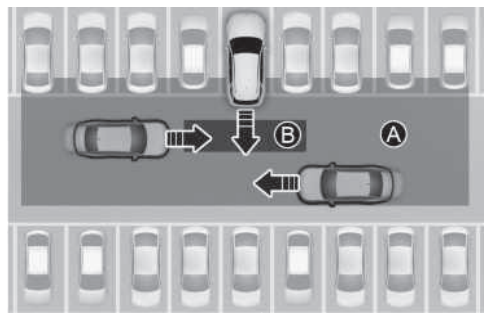
---

Surround View Monitor uses the cameras installed on the vehicle to show images around the vehicle through the infotainment system. The image shown on the screen may look unnatural depending on the surroundings.

---

# Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist (RCCA)

Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist helps detect vehicles approaching from the rear left or right whilst your vehicle is reversing, and warns you of a possible collision with a warning message and a an audible warning. Braking may also be assisted to avoid a collision.



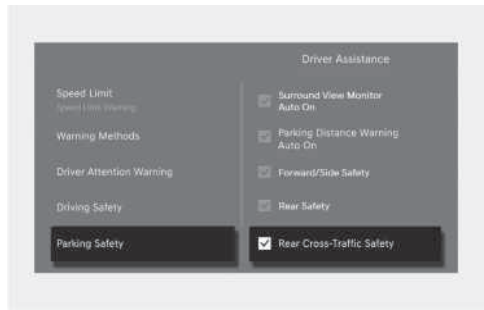
- [A] Rear Cross-Traffic Collision Warning operating range
- [B] Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist operating range

 **CAUTION**

The warning timing may differ depending on the speed of the detected vehicle.

## Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist settings

### *Rear Cross-Traffic Safety*



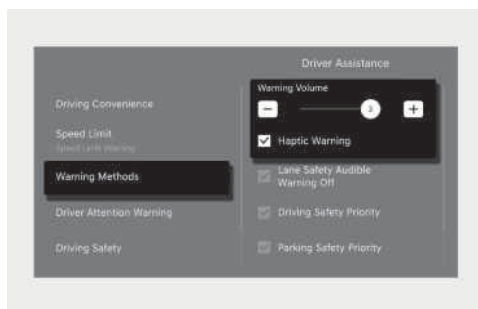
With the engine on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Parking safety > Rear cross-traffic safety** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to turn on Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist and deselect to turn off the function.

## WARNING

---

- When the engine is restarted, Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist turns on. If **Rear cross-traffic safety** is deselected after the engine is restarted, Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist does not function until the next time your vehicle is started.
  - When the trailer's connector is plugged into your vehicle, Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist automatically turns off. In this case, you cannot get help Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist. Pay extra attention when you drive when the function is inactive. (If a Genesis genuine Trailer Kit that can determine whether a trailer is connected is used)
- 

### *Warning methods*



With the engine on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Warning methods** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to select the following:

- **Warning volume:** The warning volume can be adjusted.
- **Haptic warning:** The steering wheel vibration can be set.

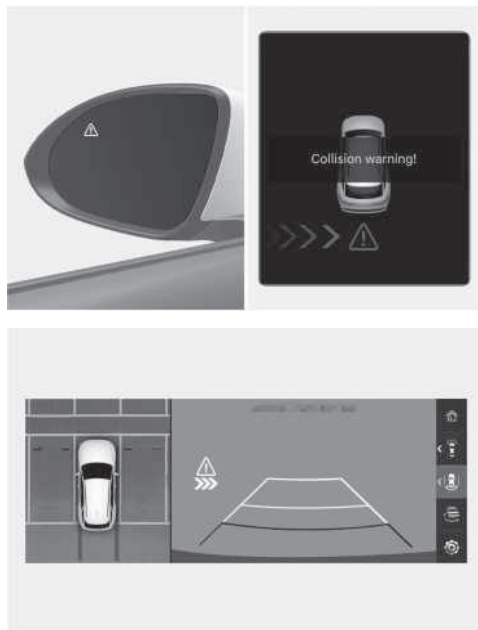
### Information

---

- If you change the warning methods, the warning methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.
  - If you turn off the haptic warning when the warning volume is '0', the warning volume does not turn off but sounds as '2'.
  - If you set the warning volume to '0' when the haptic warning is off, the haptic warning turns on.
  - When the engine is restarted, the warning methods maintain its previous setting.
  - The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on the vehicle features and specifications.
-

## Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist operation

### *Collision warning*



To warn you of an approaching vehicle from the rear left or right of your vehicle, the warning light on the corresponding outside rearview mirror may blink, a warning message may appear on the instrument cluster, an audible warning may sound, and the steering wheel may vibrate.

When Rear View Monitor or Surround View Monitor is operating, a warning may appear on the infotainment system screen.

Collision warning may operate if:

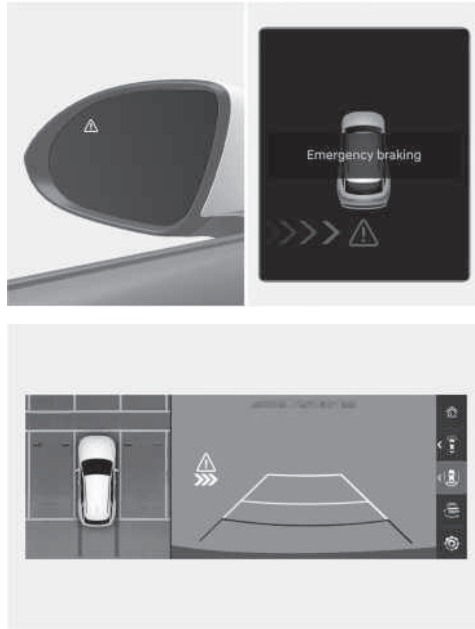
- You shift the gear to R (Reverse) and your vehicle speed is below 8 km/h.
- The approaching vehicle is detected within about 25 m from the left or right of your vehicle.
- The speed of the vehicle approaching from the left or right is above 5 km/h.

### Information

---

- If the operating conditions are met, a warning is provided whenever a vehicle approaches from the left or right even though your vehicle speed is 0 km/h.
  - The images and colours in the instrument cluster may differ depending on the instrument cluster type or theme selected from the instrument cluster.
-

## *Emergency braking*



To warn you of an approaching vehicle from the rear left or right of your vehicle, the warning light on the corresponding outside rearview mirror may blink, a warning message may appear on the instrument cluster, an audible warning may sound, and the steering wheel may vibrate.

When Rear View Monitor or Surround View Monitor is operating, a warning may appear on the infotainment system screen.

If a collision is imminent, emergency braking is assisted to help prevent collision with approaching vehicles from the left and right side of your vehicle.

Emergency braking may operate if:

- The gear is shifted to R (Reverse) and your vehicle speed is below 8 km/h.
- The approaching vehicle is detected within about 1.5 m from the left or right of your vehicle.
- The speed of the vehicle approaching from the left or right is above 5 km/h.





## WARNING

---

Brake control ends when:

- The approaching vehicle is out of the detection range.
  - The approaching vehicle passes behind your vehicle.
  - The approaching vehicle does not drive toward your vehicle.
  - The approaching vehicle speed slows down.
  - You press the brake pedal sufficiently in response to the potential hazard detected by the function.
- 

### ***Stopping vehicle and ending brake control***

After your vehicle is stopped following an Emergency Braking event, the "**Drive carefully**" warning message appears on the instrument cluster.

press the brake pedal immediately and check the surroundings.

- Braking control ends about 2 seconds after your vehicle is stopped.
- During Emergency Braking, braking control by Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may be automatically cancelled when you press the brake pedal with sufficient force.

## **WARNING**

---

Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate in all situations and cannot avoid all collisions.

To prevent serious injury or death:

- Only change the settings after parking the vehicle at a safe location.
  - Always look over your shoulder for possible hazards and make sure it is safe to reverse.
  - When other system's warning message appears or audible warning is heard, Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may not warn you.
  - You may not hear the audible warning of Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist if the surrounding environment is too noisy.
  - During Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist operation, your vehicle may stop suddenly. Always wear your seatbelt, check your occupants have their seat belts fastened and secure loose objects that may become projectiles.
  - Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate if you apply the brake pedal with sufficient force in response to the potential hazard detected by the system.
  - Even if there is an issue with Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist, the vehicle's braking system operates normally.
  - When Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist is operating, braking assist is automatically cancelled when you press the accelerator pedal with sufficient force.
  - Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may warn you late or may not warn you depending on the road and driving conditions.
  - Control your vehicle at all times. It is the driver's responsibility to operate the vehicle in a safe manner. Do not solely rely on the Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist to avoid a collision. Rather, maintain a safe braking distance, and If needed, reduce your vehicle speed or press the brake pedal to reduce the driving speed or to stop your vehicle.
  - Never attempt to test Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist by intentionally driving toward people, animals, objects, or other vehicles.
- 

## **WARNING**

---

Braking is not assisted and only a warning is provided when:

- The ESC (Electronic Stability Control) warning light is on.
  - ESC (Electronic Stability Control) is controlling the brake force to the wheels.
- 

## **Information**

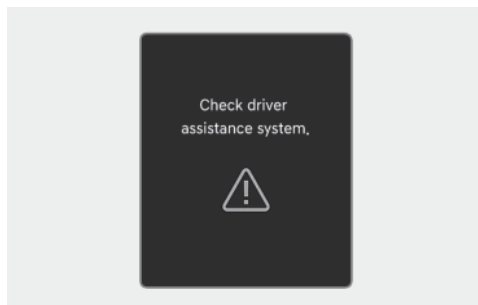
---

After shifting the gear to R (Reverse), Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist operates once for a left or right vehicle's approach.

---

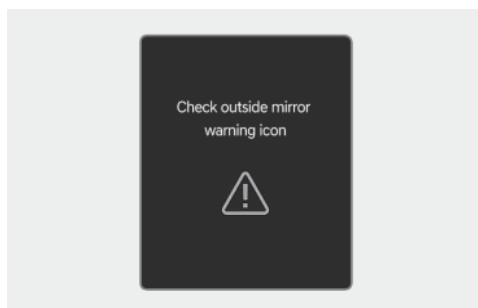
## Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction and limitations

### *Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction*



When Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist is not working properly, the "**Check driver assistance system**" warning message may appear for several seconds, and the  warning light may illuminate on the instrument cluster. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

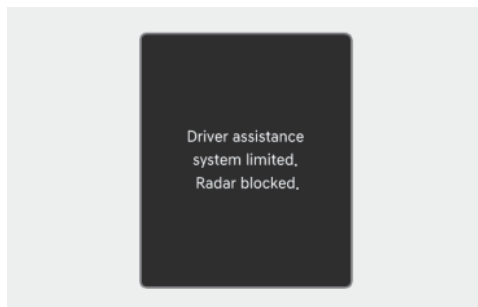
- You can check the warning message in the Utility view on the cluster display.



When the outside rearview mirror warning lights are not working properly, the "**Check outside mirror warning icon**" warning message may appear for several seconds, and the  warning light may illuminate on the instrument cluster. If recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

- You can check the warning message in the Utility view on the cluster display.

## *Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist disabled*



If the rear corner radar is blocked or covered, or when the rear bumper around the rear corner radar or sensor is covered by any foreign material, such as snow, rain, or dirt, or when a trailer or towbar mounted carrier is installed, the detecting performance may reduce and temporarily limit or disable Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist.

If this occurs, the "**Driver assistance system limited. Radar blocked.**" appears on the cluster display, and the master (△) warning light illuminates on the instrument cluster. But, it is not a malfunction.

The function operates normally when such foreign material, trailer, or carrier is removed, and the engine is restarted.

If Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist does not operate normally after anything covering or blocking the sensors is removed, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

- You can check the warning message in the Utility view on the cluster display.



### **WARNING**

- Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly even if there is no warning message or warning light on the instrument cluster.
- Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly in open areas where no objects are detected (e.g. empty car park) or when the detecting sensors are blocked immediately after turning on the engine.
- Always turn off Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist when towing a trailer or using a towbar mounted carrier.

### **Detecting sensors**

Refer to the "**Driver Assistance System sensors**" section in this chapter for the location and the general precautions of the rear corner radar.

### ***Limitations of Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist***

Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate normally, or may operate unexpectedly if:

- Departing from where trees or grass are overgrown.
- Departing from where roads are wet.
- Speed of the approaching vehicle is fast or slow.

Braking may not be assisted if:

- Your vehicle severely vibrates whilst driving over a bumpy road, uneven road, or concrete patch.
- You are driving on a slippery surface due to snow, water puddle, ice, etc.
- The tyre pressure is low or a tyre is damaged.
- The braking system is adjusted differently from the factory default settings.
- Remote Smart Parking Assist is operating (if equipped).

## Information

---

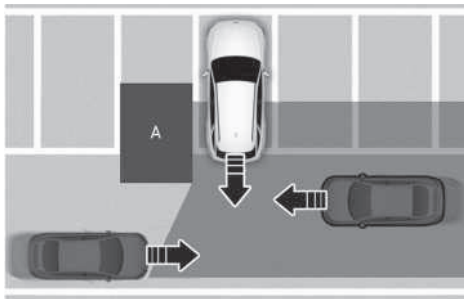
For more information on the limitations of the rear corner radar, refer to the "**Driver Assistance System sensors**" section in this chapter.

---



## WARNING

- Driving near a vehicle or structure

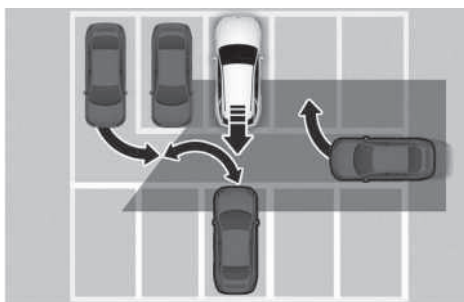


[A] Structure

Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may be limited when driving near another vehicle or a structure, and it may not detect the vehicle approaching from the left or right. The system may not activate a warning or brake your vehicle.

Always check your surroundings whilst reversing.

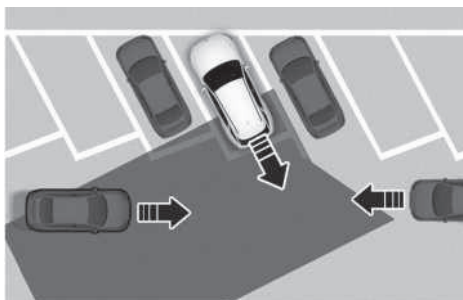
- When your vehicle is in a complex parking environment



Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may detect vehicles that are parking or pulling out near your vehicle (e.g. leaving beside your vehicle, parking or pulling out behind your vehicle, approaching your vehicle making a turn). If this occurs, the function may activate a warning and brake your vehicle even when not needed.

Always check your surroundings whilst reversing.

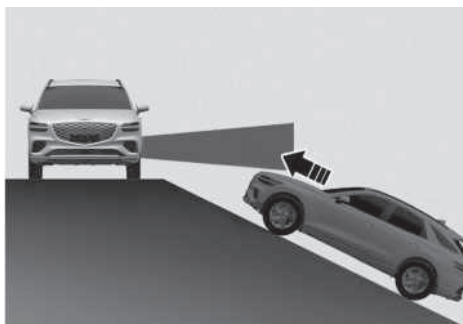
- When your vehicle is parked diagonally



Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may be limited when reversing diagonally, and may not detect any vehicle approaching from the left or right. If this occurs, the function may not activate a warning or brake your vehicle.

Always check your surroundings whilst reversing.

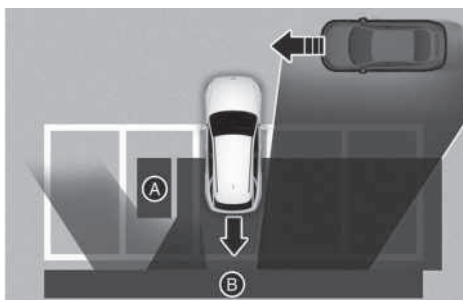
- **When your vehicle is on or near a slope**



Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may be limited when your vehicle is on a uphill or downhill slope, and may not detect any vehicle approaching from the left or right. If this occurs, the function may activate a warning and brake your vehicle even when not needed.

Always check your surroundings whilst reversing.

- **Pulling into the parking space where there is a structure**



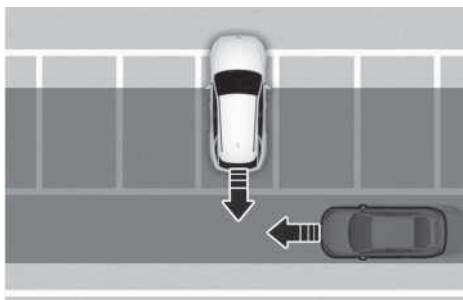
[A] Structure

[B] Wall

Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may detect vehicles passing by in front of you when reverse parking into a space with a wall or structure in the rear or side area. If this occurs, the function may activate a warning or brake your vehicle.

Always check your surroundings whilst reversing.

- **When your vehicle is parked rearward**



Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may detect vehicles passing by behind you when reverse parking into a space. If this occurs, the function may activate a warning and brake your vehicle even when not needed.

Always check your surroundings whilst reversing.

---

 **WARNING**

- Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate normally if there is interference from strong electromagnetic waves.
  - Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate for 3 seconds right after your vehicle is started or when the rear corner radars are initialised.
-

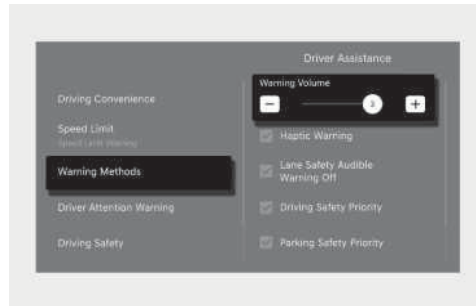


## Parking Distance Warning (PDW)

Parking Distance Warning uses the front ultrasonic sensors, side ultrasonic sensors (if equipped), and rear ultrasonic sensors to detect and warn you if an obstacle is within a certain distance when your vehicle is moving forward or in reverse at low speeds.

### Parking Distance Warning settings

#### *Warning methods*



With the engine on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Warning methods** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to select the following:

- **Warning volume:** The warning volume can be adjusted. If you set the warning volume to '0', the warning volume does not turn off but sounds as '1'.

#### Information

---

- If you change the warning methods, the warning methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.
- When the engine is restarted, the warning methods maintain its previous setting.
- The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on the vehicle features and specifications.

#### *Parking Distance Warning Auto On*

With the engine on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Parking safety > Auto PDW (Parking Distance Warning)** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to use Parking Distance Warning Auto On.

#### Information

---

When **Auto PDW (Parking Distance Warning)** is selected, the Parking Safety (P $\Delta$ ) button indicator stays on.



#### WARNING

---

When the trailer's connector is plugged into your vehicle, Reverse Parking Distance Warning automatically turns off. In this case, you cannot get help Reverse Parking Distance Warning. Pay extra attention when you drive when the function is inactive. (If a Genesis genuine Trailer Kit that can determine whether a trailer is connected is used)

Parking Distance Warning operation

Parking Safety button



Press the Parking Safety (PWA) button to turn on Parking Distance Warning. Press the button again to turn off the function.

- When Parking Distance Warning is off (button indicator light off), if you shift the gear to R (Reverse), Parking Distance Warning automatically turns on.

Forward Parking Distance Warning

Forward Parking Distance Warning may operate if:

- You shift the gear from R (Reverse) to D (Drive).
  - The gear is in D (Drive) and the Parking Safety button indicator light is on.
  - An obstacle is detected whilst driving in D (Drive).
- (Auto PDW (Parking Distance Warning)) must be selected from the Settings menu.)

Information

- Forward Parking Distance Warning operates only when the vehicle's forward speed is below 10 km/h.
- If your vehicle speed is greater than 30 km/h, Forward Parking Distance Warning turns off (button indicator light off). Although you slow down to less than 10 km/h again, Forward Parking Distance Warning does not turn on again.
- When the gear is shifted to R (Reverse), the front outer corner warning illuminates.

| Distance from object | Warning indicator                                                                   |                                                                                     | Warning sound                              |
|----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
|                      | Instrument cluster                                                                  | Infotainment                                                                        |                                            |
| 60–120 cm            |  |  | Buzzer beeps intermittently (front inside) |
| 30–60 cm             |  |  | Buzzer beeps more frequently               |

| Distance from object | Warning indicator                                                                 |                                                                                   | Warning sound             |
|----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|
|                      | Instrument cluster                                                                | Infotainment                                                                      |                           |
| within 30 cm         |  |  | Buzzer beeps continuously |

- The corresponding indicator illuminates whenever each ultrasonic sensor detects a person or object in its sensing range and an audible warning sounds.
- When more than two objects are detected at the same time, an audible warning sounds for the object closest to your vehicle.
- The shape of the indicator in the illustration may differ from the actual vehicle.

### Side Parking Distance Warning

 if equipped

Side Parking Distance Warning may operate if:

- You shift the gear to R (Reverse).
  - You shift the gear from R (Reverse) to D (Drive).
  - The gear is in D (Drive) and the Parking Safety (P $\text{⌂}$ ) button indicator light is on.
  - An obstacle is detected whilst driving in D (Drive).
- (Auto PDW (Parking Distance Warning)) must be selected from the Settings menu.)

### Information

- Side Parking Distance Warning operates when the vehicle's forward speed is below 10 km/h.
- Side Parking Distance Warning operates only when Forward or Reverse Parking Distance Warning is on.

| Distance from object | Warning indicator                                                                   |                                                                                     | Warning sound             |
|----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|
|                      | Instrument cluster                                                                  | Infotainment                                                                        |                           |
| 60-120 cm            |  |  | -                         |
| 30-60 cm             |  |  | -                         |
| within 30 cm         |  |  | Buzzer beeps continuously |

- The corresponding indicator illuminates whenever each ultrasonic sensor detects a person or object in its sensing range.
- If an object located within 30 cm from the side of the vehicle's path is detected, an audible warning sounds.

- If an object outside the side of the vehicle's path is detected, the warning indicator is appears.
- The shape of the indicator in the illustration may differ from the actual vehicle.

### Reverse Parking Distance Warning

Reverse Parking Distance Warning may operate if:

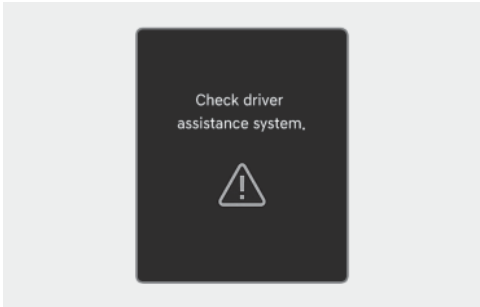
- You shift the gear to R (Reverse).

| Distance from object | Warning indicator                                                                 |                                                                                   | Warning sound                |
|----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|
|                      | Instrument cluster                                                                | Infotainment                                                                      |                              |
| 60-120 cm            |  |  | Buzzer beeps intermittently  |
| 30-60 cm             |  |  | Buzzer beeps more frequently |
| within 30 cm         |  |  | Buzzer beeps continuously    |

- The corresponding indicator illuminates whenever each ultrasonic sensor detects a person or object in its sensing range and an audible warning sounds.
- When more than two objects are detected at the same time, an audible warning sounds for the object closest to your vehicle.
- The shape of the indicator in the illustration may differ from the actual vehicle.

### Parking Distance Warning malfunction and limitations

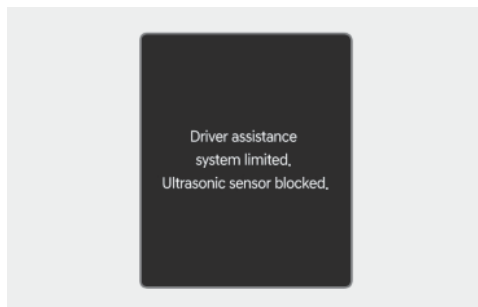
#### Parking Distance Warning malfunction



When Parking Distance Warning is not working properly, the "**Check driver assistance system**" warning message may appear for several seconds, and the  warning light may illuminate on the instrument cluster. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

- You can check the warning message in the Utility view on the cluster display.

## ***Parking Distance Warning disabled***



If the ultrasonic sensor is blocked or covered by any foreign material, such as snow, rain, or dirt, the detecting performance may reduce and temporarily limit or disable Parking Distance Warning.

The "**Driver assistance system limited. Ultrasonic sensor blocked.**" warning message may appear on the instrument cluster.

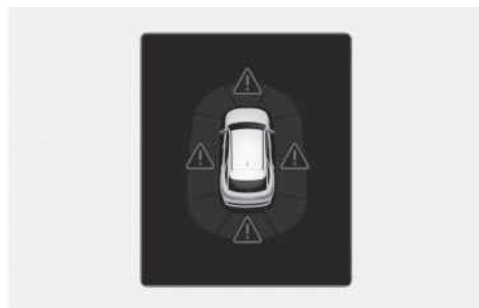
The function operates normally when such foreign material, trailer, or carrier is removed, and the engine is restarted.

If the Parking Distance Warning does not operate normally after anything covering or blocking the sensors is removed, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

- You can check the warning message in the Utility view on the cluster display.

### **Information**

---



When the Parking Distance Warning is operating, if the function is not working normally or the ultrasonic sensor is blocked, the  warning light may illuminate in the direction of the corresponding sensor.

### **Detecting sensors**

Refer to the "**Driver Assistance System sensors**" section in this chapter for the location and the general precautions of the front, side (if equipped), and rear ultrasonic sensors.

### ***Limitations of Parking Distance Warning***

- Parking Distance Warning may not operate normally when:

- Any sensor is covered or blocked with snow, water, or dirt. Parking Distance Warning operates normally again when unblocked or uncovered.
- The weather is very hot or cold.
- The sensor or sensor assembly is disassembled.
- The surface of the sensor has been damaged or scratched with a sharp object.
- The sensors or its surrounding area is directly sprayed with high pressure washer.
- Objects generating excessive noise, such as vehicle horns, loud motorcycle engines, or truck air brakes, are near your vehicle.
- Parking Distance Warning may malfunction when:
  - Heavy rain or water spray is present.
  - Water flows on the surface of the sensor.
  - The sensor is covered with snow or ice.
  - An ultrasonic sensor with similar frequency is near your vehicle.
  - Driving on uneven road, gravel roads, or bushes.
  - Your vehicle's bumper height or ultrasonic sensor installation has been modified.
  - Equipment, licence plate, or accessories are attached near the ultrasonic sensors.
- The following objects may not be detected:
  - Slim objects such as ropes, chains, or small poles.
  - Narrow objects such as corners of a square column.
  - Objects that tend to absorb sensor frequency, such as clothes, spongy material, or snow.
  - Objects less than 100 cm high and less than 14 cm wide.
  - Pedestrians, animals, or objects that are very close to the ultrasonic sensors.
  - An object in the side area between the front side ultrasonic sensor and the rear side ultrasonic sensor or an object approaching the side area.



## **WARNING**

---

- The operation of Parking Distance Warning can be affected by several factors (including environmental conditions). Parking Distance Warning is a supplemental function only.
  - Your new vehicle warranty does not cover any accidents or damage to the vehicle due to the malfunction of Parking Distance Warning.
  - Always turn your head and look for potential hazards around your vehicle when parking.
  - To prevent serious injury or death, pay close attention when driving near objects, pedestrians, and especially children. Some objects may not be detected by ultrasonic sensors, due to the object's distance, size, or material.
-

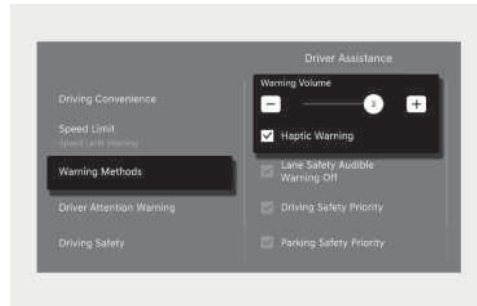
## Forward/Side/Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist (PCA)

 if equipped

Forward/Side/Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist helps detect pedestrians or objects when driving at low speed. The function may warn you or assist you with braking to help reduce the possibility of a collision.

### Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist settings

#### *Warning methods*



With the engine on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Warning methods** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to select the following:

- **Warning volume:** The warning volume can be adjusted. If you set the warning volume to '0', the warning volume does not turn off but sounds as '1'.
- **Haptic warning:** The steering wheel vibration can be set.

#### Information

---

- If you change the warning methods, the warning methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.
  - If you set the warning volume to '0' when the haptic warning is off, the haptic warning turns on.
  - When the engine is restarted, the warning methods maintain its previous setting.
  - The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on the vehicle features and specifications.
- 

#### *Parking Safety*

With the engine on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Parking safety** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to select the following:

- If **Forward/Side safety** is selected, Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist warns you and assists braking when a collision with a pedestrian or object is imminent from the front or side.
- If **Backward safety** is selected, Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist warns you and assists braking when a collision with a pedestrian or object is imminent from behind.

## Information

---

**Forward/Side safety** can be selected only when **Backward safety** is selected. When the engine is restarted and **Backward safety** is selected, and **Forward/Side safety** maintains the previous setting.

---



### WARNING

---

When the trailer's connector is plugged into your vehicle, Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist automatically turns off. In this case, you cannot get help Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist. Pay extra attention when you drive when the function is inactive. (If a Genesis genuine Trailer Kit that can determine whether a trailer is connected is used)

---

## Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist operation

### *Turning Parking Collision Avoidance Assist On/Off*



Press and hold the Parking Safety (PVA) button more than 2 seconds, to turn the Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist on or off.

### *Operating conditions*

If Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist detects a collision risk with a pedestrian or object, Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist warns you with an audible warning and warning message on the instrument cluster. When Surround View Monitor is operating, a warning may appear on the infotainment system screen.

If Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist detects an imminent collision with a pedestrian or object behind your vehicle, Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may assist braking.

If **Backward safety** is selected from the settings menu, Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist is in ready status when all of the following conditions are met:

#### **Rear safety**

- The tailgate and door are closed.
- The EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) is released.
- The gear is shifted to R (Reverse).
- Vehicle speed is below 10 km/h (for detecting pedestrians).
- Vehicle speed is below 4 km/h (for detecting objects).
- Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist components such as the rear view camera and the rear ultrasonic sensors are in normal conditions.

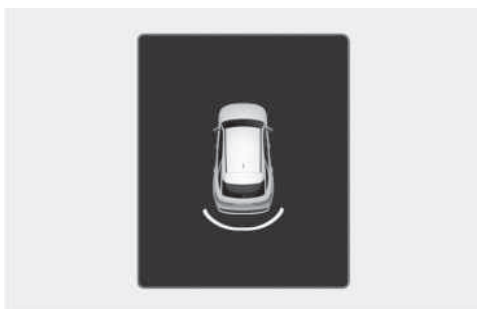


### Front/Side safety

- The tailgate and door are closed.
- The Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) is released.
- The gear is shifted to R (Reverse) or D (Drive).
- Vehicle speed is below 4 km/h (for detecting pedestrians and objects).
- Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist components such as the wide view cameras and the ultrasonic sensors are in normal conditions.

When Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist activates, a line appears near the vehicle image in the instrument cluster.

- Rear Safety: Appears behind the vehicle image.
- Front/Side Safety: Appears in front or side of the vehicle image.



### Information

---

Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist operates only once after shifting the gear to R (Reverse) or D (Drive). To reactivate Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist, shift the gear from another gear to R (Reverse) or D (Drive).

---

### Off conditions

#### Rear safety

If Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist detects an imminent collision with a pedestrian or object behind your vehicle, Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may assist braking. Immediately press the brake pedal and check vehicle surroundings because the brake assist ends within 5 minutes.

Braking control ends when:

- You shift the gear to P (Park) or D (Drive).
- You press the brake pedal with sufficient force.

### Information

---

When Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist is activated whilst reversing, braking control is released after 5 minutes and the EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) is applied.

---

## Front/Side safety

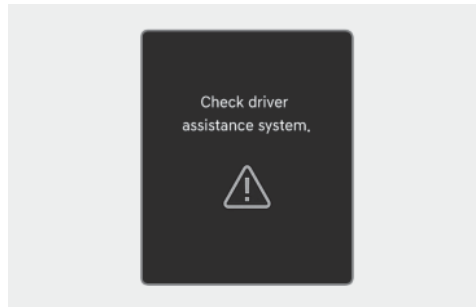
If Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist detects an imminent collision with a pedestrian or object behind your vehicle, Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may assist braking. Immediately press the brake pedal and check vehicle surroundings because the brake assist ends within 2 seconds when in D (Drive) or 5 minutes when in R (Reverse).

Braking control ends when:

- You shift the gear to P (Park), D (Drive), or R (Reverse).
- You press the brake pedal with sufficient force.

## Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction and limitations

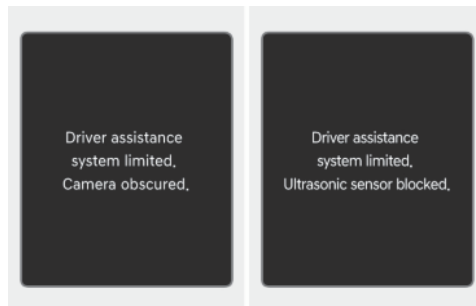
### *Parking Collision- Avoidance Assist malfunction*



When Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist or other related functions does not work properly, the "**Check driver assistance system**" warning message may appear on the instrument cluster, and Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist turns off automatically. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

- You can check the warning message in the Utility view on the cluster display.

### *Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist disabled*



The "**Driver assistance system limited. Camera obscured.**" or "**Driver assistance system limited. Ultrasonic sensor blocked.**" warning message may appear on the instrument cluster if:

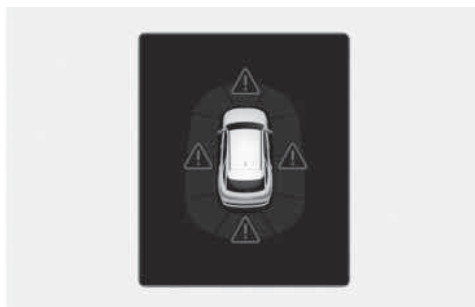
- The wide view cameras or ultrasonic sensors are covered or blocked with foreign material, such as snow or rain, etc.
- There is inclement weather, such as heavy snow, heavy rain, etc.

Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may turn off or may not operate properly. Check the wide view cameras and ultrasonic sensors are clean.

- You can check the warning message in the Utility view on the cluster display.

## Information

---



When the Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist Warning is operating, if the function is not working normally or an ultrasonic sensor is blocked, the  warning light may illuminate in the direction of the corresponding sensor.

### ***Limitations of Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist***

Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may not assist braking or warn you even if there are pedestrians or objects if:

- Problems with vehicle
  - Any non-factory equipment or accessory is installed on your vehicle.
  - Your vehicle has been damaged due to an accident or other causes.
  - Bumper height or ultrasonic sensor installation locations have been modified.
  - Wide view cameras or ultrasonic sensors are damaged.
  - Wide view cameras or the ultrasonic sensors are covered or blocked with snow, water, or dirt, etc.
  - Wide view cameras are obscured by a light source or by inclement weather, such as heavy rain, thick fog, snow, etc.
- Problems with the surroundings
  - The surroundings are very bright or dark.
  - The weather is very hot or cold.
  - The wind is either greater than 20 km/h or blowing perpendicular to the rear bumper.
  - Objects generating excessive noise, such as vehicle horns, loud motorcycle vehicles or truck air brakes, are near your vehicle.
  - An ultrasonic sensor with similar frequency is near your vehicle.
  - The road is slippery or inclined.
- Problems with pedestrian or object
  - The pedestrian is in a state that is difficult to detect.
  - There is an elevation difference between your vehicle and the pedestrian.

- The pedestrian blends into the background when seen from the front view camera.
- The pedestrian is near the front or rear edge of the vehicle.
- The pedestrian is not standing upright.
- The pedestrian is very short or tall.
- The pedestrian is wearing clothing that does not reflect ultrasonic waves well.
- Size, thickness, height, or shape of the object does not reflect ultrasonic waves well (e.g., pole, bush, kerbs, carts, edge of a wall, etc.).
- The pedestrian or object is moving.
- The pedestrian or object is very close to your vehicle.
- There is a wall behind the pedestrian or object.
- The object is not located at the front or rear centre of your vehicle.
- The object is not parallel to the front or rear bumper.
- The sensors cannot detect pedestrians or objects.
- Problems with driving condition
  - You drive the vehicle immediately after shifting to R (Reverse) or D (Drive).
  - You accelerate your vehicle or drive in circles.
  - You drive your vehicle immediately after starting the engine.



## **WARNING**

---

Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate in all situations and cannot avoid all collisions.

To prevent serious injury or death:

- Always pay attention to road and traffic conditions whilst driving. Brake as needed to avoid collisions. Do not solely rely on Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist.
  - Always look around your vehicle to make sure there are no pedestrians or objects before driving.
  - The performance of Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may differ under certain conditions. If your vehicle speed is greater than 4 km/h, Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist provides collision avoidance assist only when pedestrians are detected.
  - Some objects may not be detected by the ultrasonic sensors due to the object's distance, size, or material.
-



## CAUTION

---

- Noise may be heard when sudden braking occurs to avoid a collision.
- When other system's warning message appears or audible warning is heard, Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may not warn you.
- You may not hear the audible warning of Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist if the surrounding environment is too noisy.
- Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may not work properly if the bumper has been damaged, replaced, or repaired.
- Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate normally if there is interference from strong electromagnetic waves.
- Always turn off Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist when towing a trailer or using a towbar mounted carrier.
- The brake control may not operate properly depending on the status of ESC (Electronic Stability Control).

There is only a warning when:

- The ESC (Electronic Stability Control) warning light is on.
  - ESC (Electronic Stability Control) is controlling the brake force to the wheels.
  - Check the brake fluid and brake pad condition periodically. Depending on the condition, brake operation performance may reduce.
- 

## Information

---

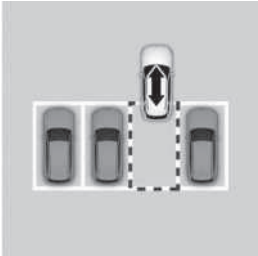
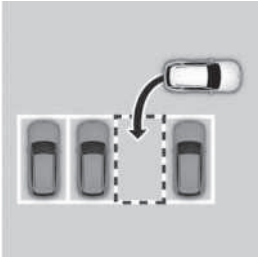
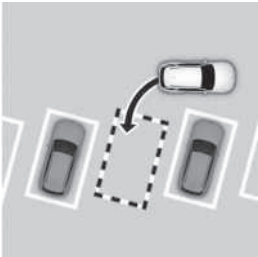
Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist can detect a pedestrian or an object when:

- A pedestrian is standing near the vehicle.
  - A large obstacle, such as a vehicle, is parked in the near your vehicle.
-

# Remote Smart Parking Assist 2 (RSPA 2)

 if equipped

Remote Smart Parking Assist uses vehicle sensors to help you park and exit parking spaces remotely from outside the vehicle by controlling the steering wheel, vehicle speed, and gearshifts.

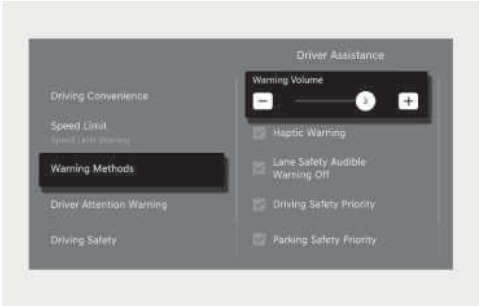
| Function                        | Description                                                                                                              |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Remote Operation                | Remotely moving forward or rearward<br> |
|                                 |                                                                                                                          |
| Smart Parking or Remote Parking | Perpendicular reverse parking<br>       |
|                                 | Diagonal reverse parking<br>          |
|                                 | Parallel reverse parking                                                                                                 |

| Function   | Description                                                                                                    |
|------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|            |                               |
| Smart Exit | <p>Parallel forward exit</p>  |

- Remote Parking and Remote Operation function may be operated from outside the vehicle using the smart key.
- Smart Parking and Remote Parking function may be operated from inside the vehicle.
- Smart Parking and Remote Parking function helps you with perpendicular reverse parking, diagonal reverse parking, and parallel reverse parking.
- Smart Exit function helps you with parallel forward exit.
- When Remote Smart Parking Assist operates, Parking Distance Warning and Surround View Monitor also operates. For more information, refer to the "**Parking Distance Warning (PDW)**" and "**Surround View Monitor (SVM)**" sections in this chapter.
- Remote Smart Parking Assist helps parking by detecting the parking lines with the wide view camera.

# Remote Smart Parking Assist settings

## Warning methods



With the engine on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Warning methods** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to select the following:

- **Warning volume:** The warning volume can be adjusted. If you set the warning volume to '0', the warning volume does not turn off but sounds as '1'.

## Information

- If you change the warning methods, the warning methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.
- When the engine is restarted, the warning methods maintain its previous setting.
- The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on the vehicle features and specifications.

## WARNING

When the trailer's connector is plugged into your vehicle, Remote Smart Parking Assist automatically turns off. In this case, you cannot get help Remote Smart Parking Assist. Pay extra attention when you drive when the function is inactive. (If a Hyundai genuine Trailer Kit that can determine whether a trailer is connected is used)

## Remote Smart Parking Assist operation

### Remote Smart Parking Assist button

| Parking/View button | Smart key |
|---------------------|-----------|
|                     |           |



| Location  | Name                | Symbol                                                                            | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|-----------|---------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Smart key | Remote Start button |  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Press the Remote Start button after the door is locked with the vehicle off to start the vehicle remotely.</li><li>• Press the Remote Start button whilst Remote Parking or Remote Operation function is operating to end function operation.</li></ul> |
|           | Forward button      |  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• When using Remote Parking function, regardless of which direction the button is pressed, parking is supported whilst the button is pressed.</li></ul>                                                                                                   |
|           | Rearward button     |  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• When using the Remote Operation function, the vehicle moves in the direction of the button whilst the button is pressed.</li></ul>                                                                                                                      |

### ***Remote Operation***

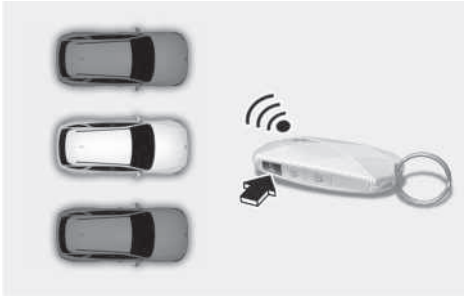
#### **Operating order**

##### **1. Getting ready to remotely move forward and rearward**

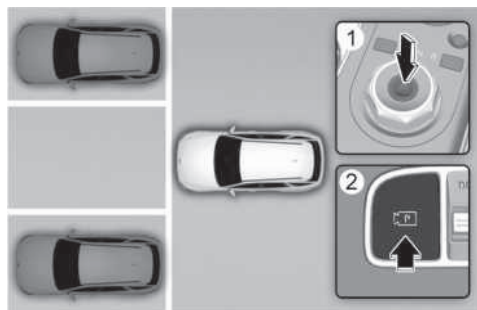
There are two ways to operate the Remote Operation function.

Method (1) Using the function with engine off.

- 1 Within a certain distance of the vehicle press the door lock (🔒) button on the smart key and lock all doors.



- 2 Press and hold the Remote Start (⏻) button within 4 seconds until the engine starts.  
For more information on remotely starting the engine, refer to the "**Remote start**" section in chapter 6.



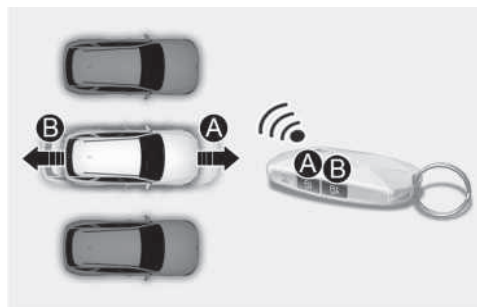
Method (2) Using the function with engine on.

- 1 Park the vehicle in front of the space where you want to use the Remote Operation function, and shift the gear to P (Park).
- 2 Press and hold the Parking/View (P) button to turn on Smart Parking Assist.
  - The "Under Remote Control" message appears on the infotainment system screen.
- 3 Get out of the vehicle with the smart key and close all doors and tailgate.

### Information

- **Agree** must be selected on the infotainment system and the infotainment system has to operate properly to use the Remote Operation function.
- Method (2) can be used after the vehicle has been driven above 5 km/h.
- If the function is turned on again after perpendicular parking is completed by Remote Smart Parking Assist, Remote Operation function can be used with Method (2).
- Check that all smart keys are outside the vehicle when using Remote Operation function. If a smart key is inside the vehicle, the Remote Operation function does not work.

## 2. Remotely moving forward and rearward



[A] Forward

[B] Rearward

- Press and hold the Forward (A) or Rearward (B) button on the smart key.

- Remote Smart Parking Assist automatically controls the steering wheel, vehicle speed, and gearshift. Your vehicle moves in the direction of the button pressed.
- If you do not hold down the Forward (⬆️) or Rearward (⬇️) button, your vehicle stops and function control pauses. The function starts operating again when the button is pressed and held again.
- When your vehicle reaches the target location, release the smart key Forward (⬆️) or Rearward (⬇️) button.
- Get in your vehicle with the smart key or press the Remote Start (⏻) button on the smart key from outside the vehicle.
  - A message appears informing you that remotely moving your vehicle forward or rearward is complete on the infotainment system screen. The gear is shifted to P (Park) and the EPB is applied.
  - The engine remains on if you are in the vehicle. The engine turns off if you press the Remote Start (⏻) button.

## Information

---

- Check that all smart keys are outside your vehicle before using the Remote Operation function.
  - Remote Operation function operates only when the smart key is within 4 m from your vehicle. If there is no vehicle movement even when the Forward or Rearward button is pressed on the smart key, check the distance from the vehicle and press the button again.
  - The detection range of the smart key may differ depending on radio waves in the area with transmission towers or broadcast stations.
  - When remotely moving forward using Method (1), it is intended to be a departure scenario, and your vehicle moves 4 m to check for pedestrians, animals, or objects around your vehicle. Your vehicle makes small steering changes when driving forward.
  - When remotely moving forward using Method (2), it is recognised as a parking situation, and immediately controls the steering wheel depending on the condition ahead to assist with entering the parking space and aligning your vehicle. The function performance may be reduced depending on the pedestrians, animals, and objects near your vehicle or other factors.
  - When moving remotely rearward, both Method (1) and (2) align the steering wheel and then only move your vehicle in a straight path.
-



## WARNING

- When using Remote Operation function, make sure all passengers have exited your vehicle and are standing in a safe location away from your vehicle.
- If your vehicle's battery is discharged or Remote Smart Parking Assist malfunctions when parked in a narrow parking space, the Remote Operation function does not operate. Always park your vehicle in a space wide enough for you to get in or out of your vehicle.
- Depending on the parking space or the movement of other vehicle after you have parked, you may not be able to exit from the space using the Remote Operation function.
- Before leaving your vehicle, close the windows and sunroof. Make sure the engine is off before locking the doors.

### Remote Operation function operation status

| Operation status | Smart key LED                                          |
|------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| Under control    | Green LED continuously blinks                          |
| Pause            | Red LED continuously blinks                            |
| Off              | Red LED illuminates for 4 seconds and then turns off   |
| Complete         | Green LED illuminates for 4 seconds and then turns off |

### Information

If the smart key is not within the operating distance of the vehicle (about 4 m), the smart key LED does not illuminate or blink. Use the smart key within the operating range.

### How to turn off Remote Operation function whilst operating

- Press the Parking/View () button whilst the infotainment system guides you using method 2.
- Shift the gear except to P (Park) whilst the infotainment system guides you using method 2.
- Press the Parking Safety () button or select **Cancel** on the infotainment system.
- Press the Remote Start () button on the smart key whilst the vehicle is being controlled by Remote Operation function. Remote Operation function and the engine turn off.
- Get on your vehicle with the smart key. Remote Operation function turns off and the engine remains on.

### The function pauses in the following conditions when:

- There is a pedestrian, animal, or object detected in the direction your vehicle is moving.
- The door or tailgate is open.
- The Forward () or Rearward () button is not continuously pressed.
- Multiple buttons are pressed simultaneously on a smart key.

- The smart key is not operated within 4 m from your vehicle.
- A button on another smart key is pressed in addition to the operating smart key.
- Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist or Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist operates when your vehicle is reversing whilst remotely controlled.
- Your vehicle moves about 7 m whilst the smart key button is pressed with Remote Operation function (maximum travel distance per button press).

**The function cancels in the following conditions when:**

- The steering wheel is turned.
- The gear is shifted whilst your vehicle is moving.
- EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) is operating whilst the vehicle is moving.
- The engine bonnet is opened.
- The brake pedal or accelerator pedal is pressed when all the doors are closed.
- The smart key is outside your vehicle when the brake pedal is pressed whilst the driver's door is open.
- Rapid acceleration occurs.
- Vehicle skid occurs.
- An obstacle prevents the wheel from moving.
- About 3 minutes and 50 seconds have passed since Remote Operation function was initiated.
- The slope of the road exceeds the operational range.
- The function is paused for more than 1 minute.
- The total travel distance of your vehicle has exceeded about 14 m after Remote Operation function is operated.
- The steering wheel, gearshift, braking, and drive controls are not working properly.
- There is a problem with the smart key or the smart key battery is low.
- ABS, TCS or ESC system operates due to slippery road conditions.
- Theft Alarm System sounds.
- When Remote Operation function is cancelled, your vehicle automatically stops, shifts the gear to P (Park), and applies EPB (Electronic Parking Brake).

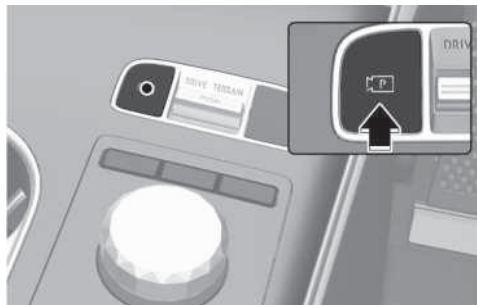
### ***Smart Parking, Remote Parking***

#### **Operating order**

Parking function operates in the following order:

- 1 Getting ready for parking
- 2 Searching for parking space
- 3 Select parking type and operating mode
- 4 Smart Parking
- 5 Remote Parking
  - Parking function includes Smart Parking and Remote Parking.

## 1. Getting ready for parking



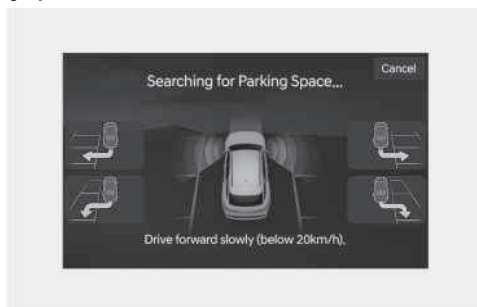
- With the engine on, press the brake pedal and shift the gear to D (Drive) or N (Neutral).
- Press and hold the Parking/View (P) button to turn on Remote Smart Parking Assist.

### Information

---

- **Agree** must be selected on the infotainment system screen and the infotainment system has to operate properly to use Parking function.
  - If you drive above 5 km/h with the engine on, you may use the Parking function with the gear shifted to N (Neutral).
- 

## 2. Searching for parking space



- Slowly drive forward maintaining the distance of about 100 cm from the parked vehicles.
  - When searching for a parking space is complete, a message appears informing you that searching for a parking space is complete.
  - Select Parking Type appears on the infotainment system screen and the selected parking space appears on Top View screen of Surround View Monitor.

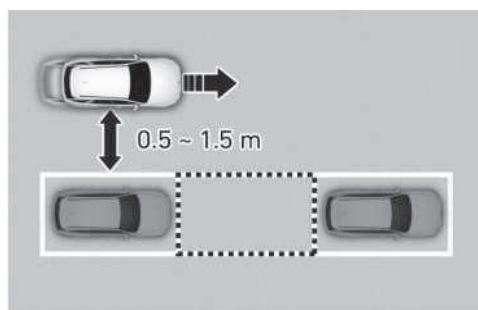
## Information

---

- Remote Smart Parking Assist searches for parking lines or parking spaces that are next to parked vehicles, or parking spaces with parked vehicles in front or rear.
  - Whilst searching for a parking space, when the vehicle speed is above 20 km/h, a message appears on the infotainment system screen informing you to slow down. When vehicle speed is above 30 km/h, Parking function turns off.
  - Searching for a parking space is completed when there is enough space to move the vehicle in addition to the parking space.
  - Even if you are informed that searching for a parking space is complete, Remote Smart Parking Assist may search for a parking space again depending on surroundings.
- 

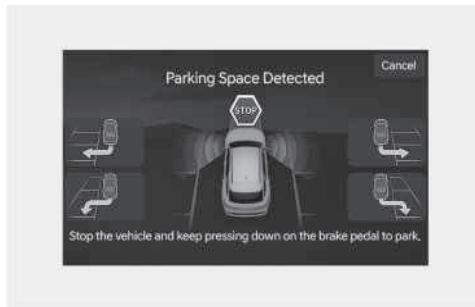
## Information

---



- If the distance is below 50 cm or over 150 cm, Remote Smart Parking Assist may not search for a parking space.
  - If you do not maintain a certain distance from the parked vehicle, the performance to search for a parking space may reduce.
  - Due to abnormal performance of the ultrasonic sensor or the influence of the surroundings, Parking function may not be able to search for a parking space even if there is a parking space, or may search for a space that is not suitable for parking.
  - If the parking space is on an incline or if your vehicle is not straight when searching for a parking space, the parking type displayed may be different from the actual parking type which should be selected. If this occurs, do not select the parking type, and search for another parking space.
-

### 3. Select parking type and operating mode



(1) Parking type - Perpendicular reverse (Left/Right), Parallel reverse (Left/Right) Diagonal reverse (Left/Right)

With the vehicle stopped by pressing the brake pedal, select parking type.

#### Information

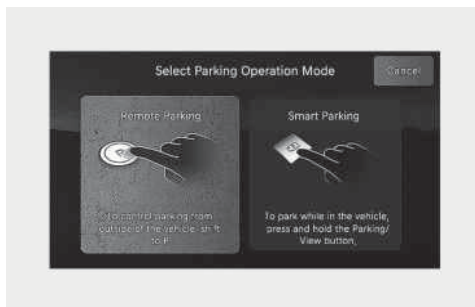
- If you continue to drive without stopping after the parking type selection screen appears, Remote Smart Parking Assist returns to the previous stage and searches for a parking space.
- If the Parking function is cancelled unintentionally by pressing the Parking/View () button before the parking type is selected, you can return to the parking type selection stage by pressing and holding the button again whilst the vehicle is stopped.



#### CAUTION

Before selecting the parking type, you should check whether the parking space is suitable.

If the searched parking space is narrow or unsuitable for parking, do not select the parking type and move the vehicle to search for another parking space.



(2) Operating mode - Remote Parking, Smart Parking

After selecting a parking type, the infotainment system screen guides you with Remote Parking function and Smart Parking function. Follow the instructions to operate Remote Smart Parking Assist.



## Information

---

- Operating instructions is displayed on the screen for each desired function you select.
  - Do not take your foot off the brake pedal during the Parking function guide. When the vehicle moves, Remote Smart Parking Assist turns off.
  - If Remote Smart Parking Assist cannot activate Remote Parking function, only the Smart Parking guide is displayed on the infotainment system screen.
- 

### 4. Smart Parking



- Press the Parking/View (P) button when the vehicle is stopped by pressing the brake pedal. When the brake pedal is released, Remote Smart Parking Assist automatically controls the steering wheel, vehicle speed, and gearshift.
  - Whilst Smart Parking function is operating, if you do not hold down the Parking/View button, the vehicle stops and function control pauses. The function starts operating again when the Parking/View button is pressed and held again.
  - When the vehicle reaches the target parking position, a message appears informing you that parking your vehicle is complete on the infotainment system screen.

## Information

---

- Smart Parking function does not operate if a door is open or the seat belt is not fastened.
  - The parking location indicator is displayed on the Surround View Monitor screen and is displayed until the vehicle enters the parking space for the first time by the Smart Parking function.
  - Vehicle speed can be adjusted by pressing the brake pedal whilst Smart Parking function is operating. The vehicle does not accelerate even when the accelerator pedal is pressed.
  - Depending on parking environments, if the vehicle is stopped by a stopper, parking may be completed.
  - If you need to change the vehicle's position or location, manually complete parking your vehicle.
- 

### 5. Remote Parking



- Shift the gear to P (Park), get out of your vehicle with the smart key and close all doors.
- Press and hold the Forward (⬆) or Rearward (⬇) button on the smart key.
  - Remote Smart Parking Assist automatically controls the steering wheel, vehicle speed, and gearshift. Your vehicle moves in the direction of the button pressed.
  - If you do not hold down the Forward (⬆) or Rearward (⬇) button, your vehicle stops and function control pauses. The function starts operating again when the button is pressed and held again.
- When your vehicle reaches the target location, release the smart key Forward (⬆) or Rearward (⬇) button.
  - A message appears informing you that parking your vehicle is complete on the infotainment system screen. The gear is shifted to P (Park) and the EPB is applied.

## Information

---

- Check that all smart keys are outside your vehicle before using the Remote Parking function.
  - Remote Parking function only operates when the smart key is within 4 m from your vehicle. If there is no vehicle movement even when the Remote Forward or Rearward button is pressed on the smart key, check the distance to the vehicle and press the button again.
  - The detection range of the smart key may differ depending on radio waves in the area such as transmission towers or broadcast stations.
  - The parking location indicator is displayed on the Surround View Monitor screen and is displayed until the vehicle enters the parking space for the first time by the Remote Parking function.
  - Depending on parking environments, if the vehicle is stopped by a stopper, parking may be completed.
  - If you need to change the vehicle's position or location, manually complete parking your vehicle.
- 



## WARNING

---

- When using Remote Smart Parking function, make sure all passengers have exited your vehicle and are standing in a safe location away from your vehicle.
  - Before leaving your vehicle, close the windows and sunroof. Make sure the engine is off before locking the doors.
-

***Parking function operation status***

- Smart Parking function

| Operation status | Turn signal                                                                          |
|------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Under control    | The turn signal of the parking direction blinks until the first reverse is complete. |

- Remote Parking function

| Operation status | Smart key LED                                          | Turn signal                                                                          |
|------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Under control    | Green LED continuously blinks                          | The turn signal of the parking direction blinks until the first reverse is complete. |
| Pause            | Red LED continuously blinks                            | -                                                                                    |
| Off              | Red LED illuminates for 4 seconds and then turns off   | -                                                                                    |
| Complete         | Green LED illuminates for 4 seconds and then turns off | -                                                                                    |

**Information**

If the smart key is not within the operating range from the vehicle (about 4 m), the smart key LED does not illuminate or blink. Use the smart key within the operating range.

***How to turn off Parking function whilst operating***

- Press the Parking/View (P) button in the following stage:
  - Searching for parking space
  - Select parking type
- Shift the gear to R (Reverse) in the following stage:
  - Searching for parking space
  - Select parking type
  - Select operating mode
- Press the Parking Safety (P) button or select **Cancel** on the infotainment system screen to turn off Parking function.
- Whilst Smart Parking function is operating:
  - If the vehicle is stopped by pressing the brake pedal, and the gear is shifted, Parking function turns off. At this time, EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) is not applied.
- Whilst Remote Parking function is operating:
  - Press the Remote Start (R) button on the smart key. Parking function turns off.
  - Get into the vehicle with the smart key. Parking function turns off. At this time, the vehicle remains on.

***The function pauses in the following conditions when:***

- Smart Parking
  - There is a pedestrian, animal, or object in the direction your vehicle is moving.
  - The door or tailgate is open.
  - The driver's seat belt is not fastened.
  - Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist or Rear-Cross Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist operates when your vehicle is reversing whilst remotely controlled.
  - The Parking/View (P/V) button is not continuously pressed.
  - The vehicle is stopped by pressing the brake pedal.
- Remote Parking
  - There is a pedestrian, animal, or object in the direction your vehicle is moving.
  - The door or tailgate is open.
  - The Forward (F) or Rearward (R) button is not continuously pressed.
  - Multiple buttons are pressed simultaneously on a smart key.
  - The smart key is not operated within 4 m from your vehicle.
  - A button on another smart key is pressed in addition to the operating smart key.
  - Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist or Rear-Cross Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist operates when your vehicle is backing whilst remotely controlled.

When Parking function is paused, the vehicle will automatically stop. If the condition that made the function to pause disappears, the function may operate again.

***The function cancels in the following conditions when:***

- Smart Parking
  - The steering wheel is turned.
  - The gear is shifted whilst your vehicle is moving.
  - EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) is operating whilst your vehicle is moving.
  - The bonnet is open.
  - The driver's door is open with the seat belt unfastened.
  - Rapid acceleration occurs.
  - Vehicle skid occurs.
  - An obstacle prevents the wheel from moving.
  - There are pedestrians, animals, or objects at the front and rear of the vehicle at the same time.
  - About 3 minutes and 50 seconds have passed since Smart Parking function was initiated.
  - The slope of the road exceeds the operational range.
  - The function is paused for more than 1 minute.
  - The steering wheel, gearshift, braking, and drive controls are not working properly.
  - ABS, TCS, or ESC system operates due to slippery road conditions.

When Smart Parking function is cancelled, your vehicle automatically stops, shifts the gear to P (Park), and applies EPB (Electronic Parking Brake).

- Remote Parking
  - The steering wheel is turned.
  - The gear is shifted.
  - EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) is operating whilst your vehicle is moving.
  - The bonnet is open.
  - The brake pedal or accelerator pedal is pressed when all the doors are closed.
  - The smart key is outside the vehicle when the brake pedal is pressed whilst the driver's door is open.
  - Rapid acceleration occurs.
  - Vehicle skid occurs.
  - An obstacle prevents the wheel from moving.
  - There are pedestrians, animals, or objects at the front and rear of the vehicle at the same time.
  - About 3 minutes and 50 seconds have passed since Remote Parking function was initiated.
  - The slope of the road exceeds the operational range.
  - The function is paused for more than 1 minute.
  - The steering wheel, gearshift, braking, and drive controls are not working properly.
  - There is a problem with the smart key or the smart key battery is low.
  - ABS, TCS, or ESC system operates due to slippery road conditions.
  - Theft Alarm System sounds.

When Remote Parking function is cancelled, your vehicle automatically stops, shifts the gear to P (Park), and applies EPB (Electronic Parking Brake).

## ***Smart Exit***

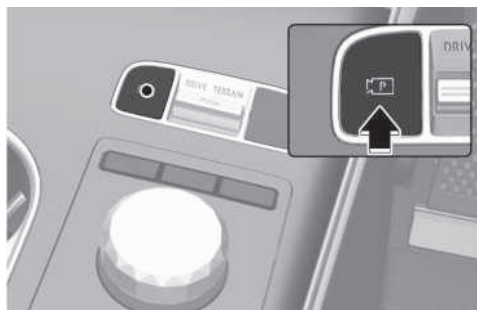
### **Operating order**

Smart Exit function operates in the following order:

- 1 Getting ready for exit
- 2 Checking space
- 3 Select exit direction
- 4 Smart Exit

#### **1. Getting ready for exit**

- 1 With the engine on, press the brake pedal and shift the gear to P (Park) or N (Neutral).
- 2 Press and hold the Parking/View () button to turn on Remote Smart Parking Assist.

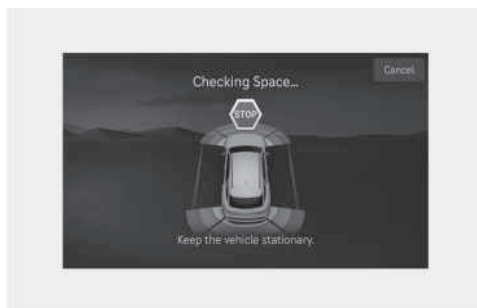


## Information

---

- **Agree** must be selected on the infotainment system screen and the infotainment system has to operate properly to use Smart Exit function.
  - Drive below 5 km/h with the engine on and shift the gear to N (Neutral), Smart Exit function can be used.
  - If the function is turned on again after parallel parking is completed by Remote Smart Parking Assist, Smart Exit function can be used.
- 

## 2. Checking space



- 1 When the vehicle is stopped by pressing the brake pedal, the vehicle sensors detect the distance from nearby objects and check for space to exit.
  - When checking for space is complete, a message appears informing you that searching for a parking space is complete.



## WARNING

---

- Whilst checking for space, if there is a collision risk with pedestrian, animal, or object in the direction of vehicle exit, for your safety, Smart Exit function can be turned off.
  - Even if check for space is completed, objects in the blind spot area cannot be detected by the sensors. The driver must directly check the blind spot area and continue using the function.
-

## Information

---

Due to abnormal performance of the ultrasonic sensor or the influence of the surroundings, Smart Exit function may not search for a exit space even if there is a exit space, or may search for a space that is not suitable for exiting.

---

### 3. Select exit direction



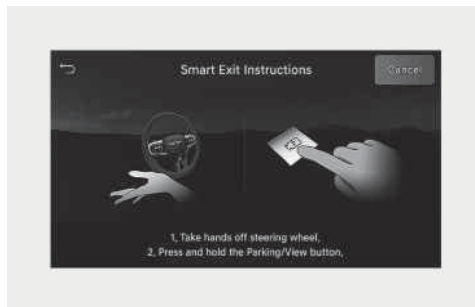
- 1 With the vehicle stopped by pressing the brake pedal, the infotainment system screen displays the possible directions for parallel exit.
- 2 Touch the infotainment system screen or use the central controller to select the desired exit direction.



### CAUTION

- Before selecting the Exit Direction, the driver should check whether the space for exit is suitable.
  - If the searched exit space by Remote Smart Parking Assist is narrow or unsuitable (surrounding vehicles are parked vertically, etc.), do not use the Smart Exit function.
- 

### 4. Smart Exit



- 1 Press the Parking/View (P) button when the vehicle is stopped by pressing the brake pedal. When the brake pedal is released, Remote Smart Parking Assist automatically controls the steering wheel, vehicle speed, and gearshift.
  - Whilst Smart Exit function is operating, if you do not hold down the Parking/View button, the vehicle stops and function control pauses. The function starts operating again when the Parking/View button is pressed and held again.



- When the vehicle reaches the target exit location, a message appears informing you that parking your vehicle is complete on the infotainment system screen.

## Information

- Smart Exit function does not operate if a door is open or the seat belt is not fastened.
- Vehicle speed can be adjusted by pressing the brake pedal whilst Smart Exit function is operating. The vehicle does not accelerate even when the accelerator pedal is pressed.
- If exit is completed whilst pressing the brake pedal, Smart Exit function is completed with the gear in D (Drive).
- If exit is completed whilst pressing the accelerator pedal, you must take your foot off the accelerator pedal once for the accelerator pedal to operate.
- If there is no vehicle operation such as pressing the brake pedal or accelerator pedal within 4 seconds after exit is complete, the vehicle automatically shifts to P (Park) and applies EPB (Electronic Parking Brake).
- After Exit function is complete, always check the surroundings before driving.

## Smart Exit operation status

| Operation status | Turn signal                                                                                         |
|------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Under control    | The turn signal of the exit direction blinks until the exit is complete or Smart Exit is cancelled. |

## How to turn off Smart function whilst operating

- Press the Parking/View () button in the following stage:
  - Checking space
  - Select exit direction
- Shift the gear to R (Reverse) in the following stage:
  - Checking space
  - Select exit direction
- Press the Parking Safety () button or select **Cancel** on the infotainment system screen to turn off Exit function.
- Whilst Smart Exit function is operating, if the vehicle is stopped by pressing the brake pedal, and the gear is shifted, Exiting function turns off. At this time, EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) is not applied.

## The function pauses in the following conditions when:

- There is a pedestrian, animal, or object in the direction your vehicle is moving.
- The door or tailgate is open.
- The driver's seat belt is not fastened.
- Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist or Rear-Cross Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist operates when your vehicle is backing whilst remotely controlled.
- The Parking/View () button is not continuously pressed.
- The vehicle is stopped by pressing the brake pedal.

When Exit function is paused, the vehicle will stop. If the condition that made the function to pause disappears, the function may operate again.

**The function cancels in the following conditions when:**

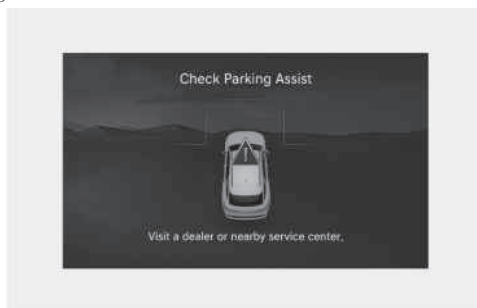
- Smart Exit
  - The steering wheel is turned.
  - The gear is shifted whilst the vehicle is moving.
  - EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) is operating whilst your vehicle is moving.
  - The bonnet is open.
  - The driver's door is open with the seat belt unfastened.
  - Rapid acceleration occurs.
  - Vehicle skid occurs.
  - An obstacle prevents the wheel from moving.
  - There are pedestrians, animals or objects at the front and rear of the vehicle at the same time.
  - About 3 minutes and 50 seconds have passed since Smart Exit function was initiated.
  - The slope of the road exceeds the operational range.
  - The function was paused for more than 1 minute.
  - The steering wheel, gearshift, braking, and drive controls are not working properly.
  - ABS, TCS, or ESC system operates due to slippery road conditions.

When Smart Exit function is cancelled, your vehicle automatically stops, shifts the gear to P (Park), and applies EPB (Electronic Parking Brake).

## **Remote Smart Parking Assist malfunction and limitations**

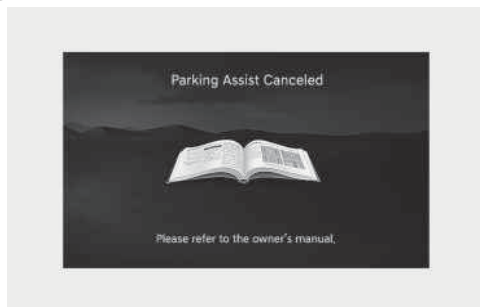
### ***Remote Smart Parking Assist malfunction***

#### **Remote Smart Parking Assist check**



When Remote Smart Parking Assist is not working properly, the Check Parking Assist warning message may appear on the infotainment system screen. If the message appears, stop using Remote Smart Parking Assist, and we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

## Remote Smart Parking Assist cancelled



When Remote Parking Assist is operating, the function can be cancelled, and the Parking Assist Cancelled warning message may appear on the infotainment system screen. Other messages may appear depending on the given situation. Follow the instructions provided whilst parking your vehicle with Remote Parking Assist. Always look around and pay attention when using Remote Smart Parking Assist.

## Remote Smart Parking Assist conditions not met



The "**Parking assist conditions not met**" warning message may appear on the infotainment system screen if:

- Parking/View () button has been pressed and held whilst ready to operate. After a whilst, press and hold the Parking/View () button again to see if Remote Smart Parking Assist operates.
- The smart key's battery is low. Check the battery and replace it if needed.

## *Detecting sensors*

Refer to the "**Driver Assistance System sensors**" section in this chapter for the location and the general precautions of the wide-front/side/rear view cameras and front/side/rear ultrasonic sensors.



## **WARNING**

Do not manually adjust the outside rearview mirrors or use the Remote Smart Parking Assist after a hard impact on the outside rearview mirrors.

### ***Limitations of Remote Smart Parking Assist***

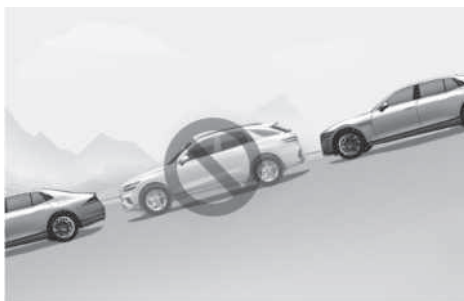
In the following circumstances, the use of Remote Smart Parking Assist may be limited, there may be a risk of collision, or Remote Smart Parking Assist may turn off. You may have to park your vehicle or drive away from the parked location without using this function.

- An object is attached to the steering wheel.
- Your vehicle has snow chains, spare tyre, or different size wheels installed.
- The braking system such as the brake disc or caliper is adjusted differently from the factory default settings.
- The powertrain or drivetrain system such as the engine or transmission is adjusted differently from the factory default settings.
- Tyre pressure is lower or higher than the standard tyre pressure.
- Your vehicle is loaded with luggage longer or wider than your vehicle or a trailer or towbar mounted carrier is connected to your vehicle.
- There is an issue with the wheel alignment.
- Your vehicle is leaning severely to one side.
- Your vehicle is equipped with a trailer towbar.
- The licence plate is installed in a location different from the intended location.
- There is a person, animal, or object above or below the ultrasonic sensor when Remote Smart Parking Assist is activated.
- The parking space is narrow, curved or angled.
- There is an obstacle such as person, animal, or object (trash can, bicycle, motorcycle, shopping cart, narrow pillar, etc.) detected near the parking space.
- There is a circular pillar or narrow pillar, or a pillar surrounded by objects such as fire extinguisher detected near the parking space.
- The road surface is bumpy (kerbstone, speed bump, etc.) or slippery.
- The parking space is near a vehicle with higher ground clearance or a larger vehicle such as truck.
- The parking space is inclined.
- There is a heavy wind.
- Remote Smart Parking Assist is operating on uneven roads, gravel roads, bushes, etc.
- The weather is very hot or cold.
- The ultrasonic sensor is covered or blocked with snow, water, or dirt.
- A wireless transmission device operates near the ultrasonic sensors.
- An ultrasonic sensor with a similar frequency is near your vehicle.
- A sensor has been damaged or scratched by a sharp object.
- When the ultrasonic sensor cannot detect the following objects:
  - Slim objects such as ropes, chains, or small poles.
  - Narrow objects such as corners of a square column
  - Objects less than 100 cm in height and narrower than 14 cm in diameter.
  - Objects that tend to absorb sensor frequency such as clothes, spongy material, or snow.

- Pedestrians, animals, or objects that are very close to the ultrasonic sensors.
- The cameras may not properly recognise or may not recognise the parking line and objects when:
  - There are small objects (kerb, etc.), sharp objects, or thin objects (rope, etc.) around.
  - People, animals or objects are too close or too far from the vehicle.
  - Objects are on a higher position, such as pickup trucks.
  - The camera is covered or blocked by dirt or moisture.
  - The camera is exposed to bright light.
  - The surrounding is too dark.
  - Light is reflected from the surface.

Remote Smart Parking Assist may not operate normally under the following circumstances:

- Parking on inclines



Park or exit your vehicle manually on inclines.

- Parking in snow



Snow may interfere with sensor operation, or Remote Smart Parking Assist may cancel if the road is slippery where you are parking.

- Parking on uneven road



Remote Smart Parking Assist may cancel when the vehicle slips, or the vehicle cannot move due to road conditions such as pebbles or fragmented stones.

- Parking behind a truck



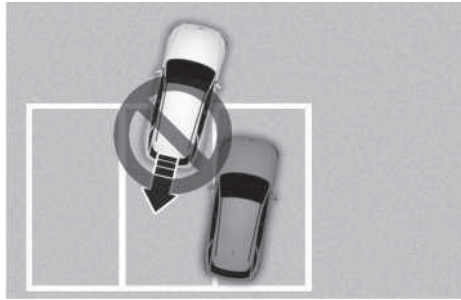
Do not use Remote Smart Parking Assist around vehicles with higher ground clearance, such as a bus, truck, etc. It may lead to an accident.

- Parking near a pillar



Remote Smart Parking Assist performance may be reduced or collision with an obstacle may occur when there is a narrow object, circular pillar, square pillar, or a pillar surrounded by objects such as a fire extinguisher, etc., near the parking space. Park or exit your vehicle manually.

- Parking next to a misaligned vehicle



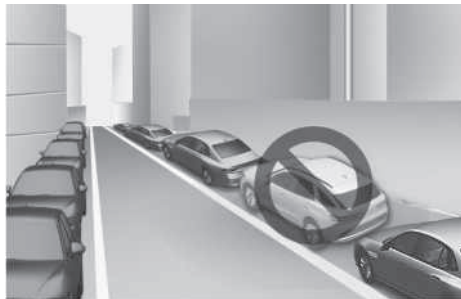
If Remote Smart Parking Assist is used, when parking next to a misaligned vehicle, your vehicle may cross the parking marking on the opposite side of the parked vehicle.

- Parking in angled spaces



Remote Operation may not operate properly in a diagonal parking space.

- Leaving a parking space near a wall or parking in a narrow space



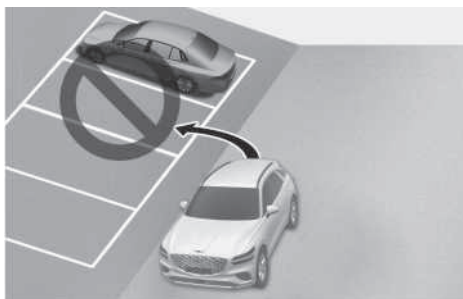
- Remote Smart Parking Assist may not operate normally when leaving a parking space that is narrow and near a wall. Always check for pedestrians, animals, objects whilst leaving.
- Remote Smart Parking Assist does not search for parking spaces at areas with narrow parking spaces that are narrower than the minimum space required for parking.

- Parking in abnormal spaces



Remote Smart Parking Assist does not work normally when the parking lines are not parallel. Do not park even though the parking space is recognised by the sensor.

- Parking on inclined parking space



Remote Smart Parking Assist does not work normally on a inclined or curved road surface. Do not park even though the parking space is recognised by the sensor.



## WARNING

---

You are responsible for parking and exiting safely when using Remote Smart Parking Assist. Make sure there are no pedestrians, animals, or objects around the vehicle when using Remote Smart Parking Assist.

To prevent serious injury or death:

- When using Remote Smart Parking Assist, stay out of the path of your vehicle.
  - A collision may occur if a pedestrian, animal, or object are in the blind spot area of the sensors or are very close to the sensors.
  - A collision may occur if a pedestrian, animal, or object suddenly enters the path of your vehicle whilst Remote Smart Parking Assist is operating.
  - Do not use Remote Smart Parking Assist under the influence of alcohol.
  - Do not let children or other people use the smart key.
  - Do not use Remote Smart Parking Assist continuously for a long time. It may adversely affect Remote Smart Parking Assist performance.
  - Remote Smart Parking Assist may not operate normally if your vehicle needs wheel alignment adjustment such as when your vehicle tilts to one side. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.
  - Remote Smart Parking Assist may suddenly brake to help avoid a collision.
  - Only use Remote Smart Parking Assist in parking spaces large enough for your vehicle.
- 

## Information

---

- The vehicle may move with the stop lights on when the brakes are applied by Remote Smart Parking Assist.
  - The Remote Smart Parking Assist's performance may temporarily reduce or may turn off when the engine is turned on after being parked in cold weather for a long time.
  - If the 3rd stage warning (continuous beep) of Forward/Rearward Parking Distance Warning sounds whilst Remote Smart Parking Assist is operating, it means the obstacle detected is close to your vehicle and Remote Smart Parking Assist temporarily stops operating.
-

## Declaration of conformity

### Front radar

The radio frequency components (Front Radar) complies:



### Front corner radar/Rear corner radar

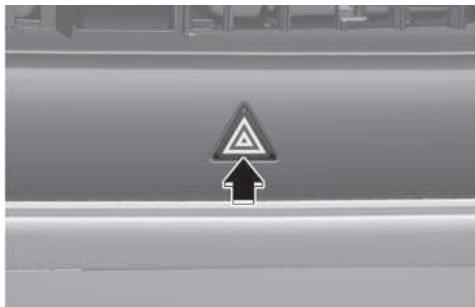
 if equipped

The radio frequency components (Front corner radar/Rear corner radar) complies:



## 8. Emergency situations

### Hazard warning flasher



The hazard warning flasher warns other drivers to exercise extreme caution when approaching, overtaking, or passing your vehicle.

It should be used whenever making emergency repairs or when stopped near the edge of a roadway.

To turn on or off the hazard warning flasher, press the hazard warning flasher button with the Engine Start/Stop button in any position. The hazard warning flasher button is located in the centre fascia panel. All turn signal lights will flash simultaneously.

- The hazard warning flasher operates regardless of whether your vehicle is running or not.
- The turn signals do not work when the hazard flasher is on.

## In case of an emergency whilst driving

### If the engine stalls whilst driving

- Reduce the vehicle speed gradually, keeping a straight line. Move cautiously off the road to a safe place.
- Turn on your hazard warning flasher.
- Try to start the engine again. If your vehicle does not start, we recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer or seek other qualified assistance.

### If the engine stalls at a crossroads or crossing

If the engine stalls at a crossroads or intersection, if safe to do so, shift the gear to N (Neutral) and then push the vehicle to a safe location.

### If you have a flat tyre whilst driving

If a tyre goes flat whilst you are driving:

- Take your foot off the accelerator pedal and let the vehicle slow down whilst driving straight ahead. Do not apply the brakes immediately or attempt to pull off the road because this may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in a collision. When the vehicle has slowed to such a speed that it is safe to do so, brake carefully and pull off the road. Drive off the road as far as possible and park on a firm, level ground. If you are on a divided highway, do not park in the median area between the two traffic lanes.
- When the vehicle is stopped, press the hazard warning flasher button, shift the gear to P (Park), apply the parking brake, and press the Engine Start/Stop button to the OFF position.
- Have all passengers get out of the vehicle. Make sure they all get out on the side of the vehicle that is away from traffic.
- When replacing a flat tyre, follow the instructions provided later in this chapter.

## If the engine does not start

- Be sure to shift the gear to N (Neutral) or P (Park). The engine starts only when the gear is in N (Neutral) or P (Park).
- Turn on the interior light. If the light dims or goes out when you operate the starter, the battery is drained.

Refer to the instructions in "**Jump starting**" provided in this chapter.

- Check the fuel level and add fuel if necessary.

If the vehicle still does not start, we recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer for assistance.

## NOTICE

---

Starting the vehicle by pushing or pulling may cause the catalytic converter to overload and damage the emission control system.

---

## Jump starting

Jump starting can be dangerous if done incorrectly. Follow the jump starting procedure in this section to avoid serious injury or damage to your vehicle. If in doubt about how to properly jump start your vehicle, have a service technician or towing service do it for you.

## **WARNING**

---

To prevent serious injury or death to you or bystanders, always follow these precautions when working near or handling the battery:

Always read and follow instructions carefully when handling a battery.



Wear eye protection designed to protect the eyes from acid splashes.



Keep all flames, sparks, or smoking materials away from the battery.



Hydrogen gas is always present in battery cells. It is highly combustible, and may explode if ignited.



Keep batteries out of reach of children.



Batteries contain sulphuric acid which that is highly corrosive. Do not allow acid to contact your eyes, skin, or clothing.

If acid gets into your eyes, flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention. If acid gets on your skin, thoroughly wash the area. If you feel pain or a burning sensation, get medical attention immediately.



- When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the case may cause battery acid to leak. Lift with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.
- Do not attempt to jump start your vehicle if your battery is frozen.

- Never attempt to recharge the battery when the vehicle's battery cables are connected to the battery.
  - The electrical ignition system works with high voltage.  
Never touch these components with the engine running or when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position.
  - Do not allow the positive (+) and negative (-) jumper cables to touch. It may cause sparks.
- 

## ***Jump starting procedure***

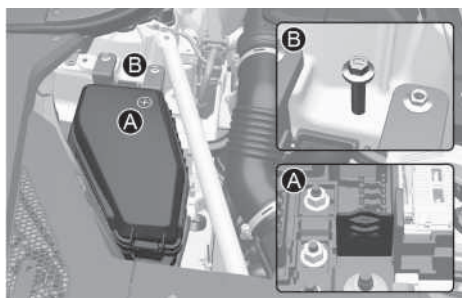
### **Information**

---

Your vehicle has a battery in the luggage compartment, but when you jump start your vehicle, use the jumper terminal in the engine compartment.

---

- 1 Position the vehicles close enough that the jumper cables can reach. Do not allow the vehicles to touch.
- 2 Avoid fans or any moving parts in the engine compartment at all times, even when the vehicles are turned off.
- 3 Turn off all electrical devices such as radios, lights, air conditioning, etc. Put the vehicles in P (Park) and apply the parking brakes. Turn both vehicles OFF.
- 4 Open the bonnet.



[A] Positive (+) terminal

[B] Negative (-) terminal

- 5 Open the service cover.
- 6 Remove the engine compartment fuse box cover.



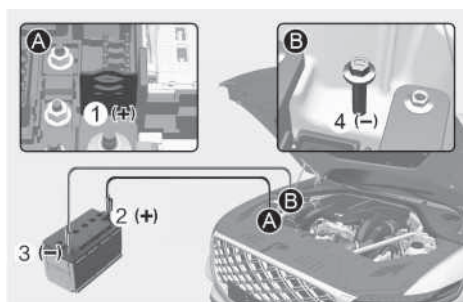
### **CAUTION**

---

Before jump starting, make sure to correctly identify the positive (+) and negative (-) terminals to avoid reverse polarity connections.

---





- 7 Connect the jumper cables in the exact sequence shown in the illustration. First connect one jumper cable to the positive (+) jumper terminal of your vehicle (1).
- 8 Connect the other end of the jumper cable to the red, positive (+) battery/jumper terminal of the assisting vehicle (2).
- 9 Connect the second jumper cable to the black, negative (-) battery/jumper terminal of the assisting vehicle (3).
- 10 Connect the other end of the second jumper cable to the chassis ground of your vehicle (4).

Do not allow the jumper cables to contact anything except the correct battery or jumper terminals or the correct ground. Do not lean over the battery when making connections.



## WARNING

Do not connect the jumper cable to the negative (-) jumper terminal of the discharged battery. A spark could cause the battery to explode and lead to personal injury or vehicle damage.

- 11 Start the engine of the assisting vehicle and let it run at approximately about 2,000 RPM for a few minutes. Then start your vehicle.
- 12 Keep your vehicle operating for at least 30 minutes at idle or driving to assure make sure your battery receives enough charge to be able to start on its own after the vehicle is shut off. A completely discharged battery may require as long as 60 minutes runtime to fully recharge it. If the vehicle is run for less, the vehicle may not restart.

If your vehicle does not start after a few attempts, it probably requires service. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Disconnect the jumper cables in the exact reverse order you connected them:

- 1 Disconnect the jumper cable from the chassis ground of your vehicle (4).
- 2 Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the black, negative (-) battery/jumper terminal of the assisting vehicle (3).
- 3 Disconnect the second jumper cable from the red, positive (+) battery/jumper terminal of the assisting vehicle (2).
- 4 Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the red, positive (+) jumper terminal of your vehicle (1).



## WARNING

---

Whilst jump starting your vehicle, avoid the positive (+) and negative (-) cables coming into contact. A spark could cause personal injury.

---

## NOTICE

---

To prevent damage to your vehicle:

- Only use a 12 V power supply (battery or jumper system) to jump start your vehicle.
  - Do not attempt to jump start your vehicle by push-starting.
- 

## Information

---



An inappropriately disposed battery may be harmful to the environment and human health. Always dispose used batteries in accordance with local law(s) or regulations.

---

## If the engine overheats

If your temperature gauge indicates overheating, you experience a loss of power, hear loud pinging or knocking, or the engine may be overheating. If this happens, you must:

- 1 Pull off the road and stop as soon as it is safe to do so.
- 2 Shift the gear to P (Park) and apply the parking brake. If the air conditioning is ON, turn it OFF.
- 3 If engine coolant is running out under the vehicle or steam is coming out from the bonnet, stop the engine. Do not open the bonnet until the coolant has stopped running or the steaming has stopped. If there is no visible loss of engine coolant and no steam, leave the engine running and check to make sure the engine cooling fan is operating. If the fan is not running, turn off the engine.
- 4 Check for coolant leaking from the radiator, hoses or under the vehicle. (If air conditioning has been used, it is normal for cold water to be draining from it when you stop.)
- 5 If engine coolant is leaking out, stop the engine immediately and we recommend that you call the nearest authorised Genesis repairer for assistance.



### WARNING

---



Whilst the engine is running, keep hands, clothing, and tools away from the moving parts such as cooling fan and drive belt to prevent serious injury.

---



### WARNING

---



Never remove the engine coolant cap and/or liquid-cooled intercooler coolant cap or the drain plug whilst the engine and radiator are hot.

Hot coolant and steam may blow out under pressure, causing serious injury.

Turn off the engine and wait until the engine cools down. Use extreme care when removing the coolant cap. Wrap a thick towel around it, and turn it anti-clockwise slowly to the first stop. Step back whilst the pressure is released from the cooling system. When you are sure all the pressure has been released, press down on the cap, using a thick towel, and continue turning anti-clockwise to remove it.

---

- 6 If you cannot find the cause of the overheating, wait until the engine temperature has returned to normal. Then, if coolant has been lost, carefully add coolant to the reservoir to bring the fluid level in the reservoir up to the halfway mark.

- 7 Proceed with caution, keeping alert for further signs of overheating. If overheating happens again, we recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer for assistance.

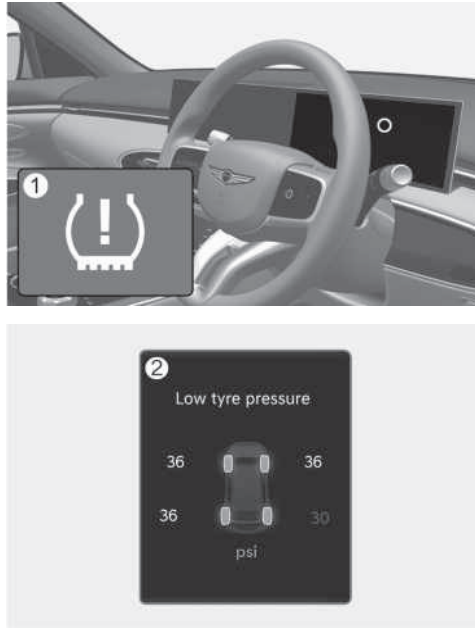


## CAUTION

---

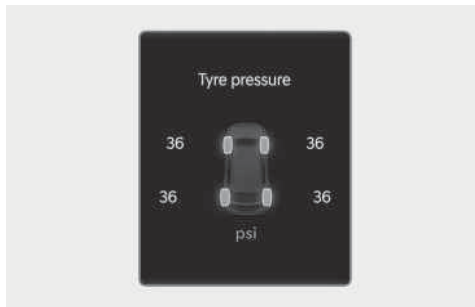
- Serious loss of coolant indicates a leak in the cooling system. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.
  - When the engine overheats from low engine coolant, suddenly adding engine coolant may cause cracks in the engine. To prevent damage, add engine coolant slowly in small quantities. It may require several refilling cycles to properly fill the engine cooling system. If necessary, we recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer should be consulted to perform this task.
-

## Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)



1. Low Tyre Pressure Telltale/TPMS Malfunction Indicator
2. Low Tyre Pressure Position Telltale and Tyre Pressure Telltale (Shown on the instrument cluster display)

### Check tyre pressure



- You can check the tyre pressure in the Normal view on the instrument cluster. Refer to the "**View modes**" section in chapter 4.
- Tyre pressure is displayed after a few minutes of driving.
- If tyre pressure is not displayed when the vehicle is stopped, "Drive to display" message appears.

- The displayed tyre pressure values may differ from those measured with a tyre pressure gauge.
- You can change the tyre pressure unit from the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select:
  - **Setup > General > Units > Tyre air pressure > psi/kPa/bar**

## Information

---

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

---

## Tyre pressure monitoring system



### WARNING

---

Over-inflation or under-inflation can reduce tyre life, adversely affect vehicle handling, and lead to sudden tyre failure that may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.

---

Each tyre, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tyre inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tyres of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tyre inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tyre inflation pressure for those tyres.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a Tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tyre pressure telltale when one or more of your tyres are significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tyre pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tyres as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tyre causes the tyre to overheat and can lead to tyre failure.

Under-inflation also reduces fuel economy and tyre tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tyre maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tyre pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tyre pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tyre pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tyre pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tyres or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly.

Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tyres or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tyres and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

## NOTICE

---

If any of the following happens, we recommend that you have the system inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

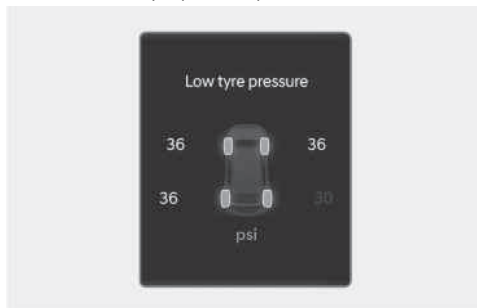
- 1 The Low Tyre Pressure Telltale / TPMS Malfunction Indicator does not illuminate for 3 seconds when the Engine Start/Stop button is pressed to the ON position or when the engine is running.
  - 2 The TPMS Malfunction Indicator remains illuminated after blinking for approximately 1 minute.
  - 3 The Low Tyre Pressure Position Telltale remains illuminated.
- 

### Low tyre pressure position and tyre pressure telltale

Low tyre pressure warning light



Low tyre pressure position telltale



When the tyre pressure monitoring system warning indicators are illuminated and a warning message displayed on the instrument cluster display, one or more of your tyres is significantly under-inflated. The Low Tyre Pressure Position Telltale will indicate which tyre is significantly underinflated by illuminating the corresponding parking light.

If either telltale illuminates, immediately reduce your speed, avoid hard cornering and anticipate increased stopping distances. You should stop and check your tyres as soon as possible. Inflate the tyres to the proper pressure as indicated on the vehicle's placard or tyre inflation pressure label located on the driver's side centre pillar outer panel.

If you cannot reach a service station or if the tyre cannot hold the newly added air, replace the low pressure tyre with the spare tyre.

The Low Tyre Pressure Telltale will remain on and the TPMS Malfunction Indicator may blink for one minute and then remain illuminated (when the vehicle is driven approximately 10 minutes at speed above 25 km/h) until you have the low pressure tyre repaired and replaced on the vehicle.

## **WARNING**

---

In winter or cold weather, the Low Tyre Pressure Telltale may be illuminated if the tyre pressure was adjusted to the recommended tyre inflation pressure in warm weather. It does not mean your TPMS is malfunctioning because the decreased temperature leads to a proportional lowering of tyre pressure.

When you drive your vehicle from a warm area to a cold area or from a cold area to a warm area, or the outside temperature is much higher or lower, you should check the tyre inflation pressure and adjust the tyres to the recommended tyre inflation pressure.

---

## **WARNING**

---

Low pressure damage

Significantly low tyre pressure makes the vehicle unstable and can contribute to loss of vehicle control and increased braking distances.

Continued driving on low pressure tyres can cause the tyres to overheat and fail.

---

## **TPMS (Tyre Pressure Monitoring System) malfunction indicator**



The TPMS Malfunction Indicator will illuminate after it blinks for approximately one minute when there is a problem with the tyre Pressure Monitoring System.

We recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Genesis repairer as soon as possible.

## **NOTICE**

---

If there is a malfunction with the TPMS, the Low Tyre Pressure Position Telltale will not be displayed even though the vehicle has an under-inflated tyre.

---

## **NOTICE**

---

The TPMS Malfunction Indicator may illuminate after blinking for one minute if the vehicle is near electric power supply cables or radio transmitters such as police stations, government and public offices, broadcasting stations, military installations, airports, transmitting towers, etc.

Additionally, the TPMS Malfunction Indicator may illuminate if snow chains, electronic devices such as computers, chargers, remote starters, navigation, etc. are used. These can all interfere with normal operation of the TPMS.

---

## **Changing a tyre with TPMS**

If you have a flat tyre, the Low Tyre Pressure and Position telltales will come on. We recommend that the flat tyre be repaired by an authorised Genesis repairer as soon as possible or replace the flat tyre with the spare tyre.



## NOTICE

---

Do not use a puncture-repair kit not approved by Genesis. Tyre sealant not approved by Genesis or the equivalent specified for your vehicle may damage the tyre pressure sensor.

---

The spare tyre (if equipped) does not come with a tyre pressure monitoring sensor. When the low pressure tyre or the flat tyre is replaced with the spare tyre, the Low Tyre Pressure Telltale will remain on. Also, the TPMS Malfunction Indicator will illuminate after blinking for one minute if the vehicle is driven at speed above 25 km/h for approximately 10 minutes.

Once the original wheel equipped with a tyre pressure monitoring sensor is reinflated to the recommended pressure and reinstalled on the vehicle, the Low Tyre Pressure Telltale and TPMS Malfunction Indicator will go off within a few minutes of driving.

If the indicators do not extinguish after a few minutes we recommend that you consult an authorised Genesis repairer.

Each wheel is equipped with a tyre pressure sensor mounted inside the tyre behind the valve stem (except for the spare tyre). You must use TPMS specific wheels. It is recommended that you always have your tyres serviced by an authorised Genesis repairer.

You may not be able to identify a tyre with low pressure by simply looking at it. Always use a good quality tyre pressure gauge to measure. Please note that a tyre that is hot (from being driven) will have a higher pressure measurement than a tyre that is cold.

A cold tyre means the vehicle has been sitting for 3 hours and driven for less than 1.6 km in that 3 hour period.

Allow the tyre to cool before measuring the inflation pressure. Always be sure the tyre is cold before inflating to the recommended pressure.



### WARNING

---

- The TPMS cannot alert you to severe and sudden tyre damage caused by external factors such as nails or road debris.
  - If you feel any vehicle instability, immediately take your foot off the accelerator, apply the brakes gradually with light force, and slowly move to a safe position off the road.
- 



### WARNING

---

Tampering with, modifying, or disabling the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) components may interfere with the system's ability to warn the driver of low tyre pressure conditions and/or TPMS malfunctions and may void the warranty.

---

## If you have a flat tyre (with spare tyre)

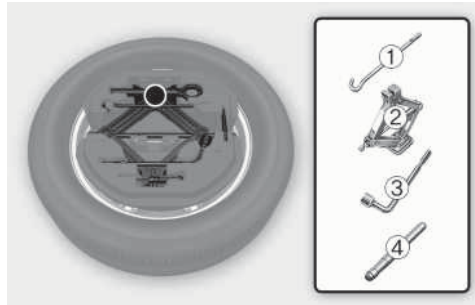
 if equipped



### WARNING

Follow the instructions in this section when replacing a tyre to reduce the risk of serious injury or death. Changing a tyre can be dangerous.

### Jack and tools



1. Jack handle
2. Jack
3. Wheel nut wrench
4. Centering pin

The jack, jack handle, and wheel nut wrench are stored in the luggage compartment under the luggage box cover.

The jack is provided for emergency tyre changing only.

Turn the winged hold down bolt anti-clockwise to remove the spare tyre.

Store the spare tyre in the same compartment by turning the winged hold down bolt clockwise.



To prevent the spare tyre and tools from "rattling", store them in their proper locations.

If it is hard to loosen the tyre hold-down wing bolt by hand, you can loosen it easily using the wheel nut wrench (1). Turn the tyre hold-down wing bolt anti-clockwise with the wheel nut wrench.



## Changing tyres



### WARNING

---

A vehicle can slip or roll off of a jack causing serious injury or death to you or those nearby. Take the following safety precautions:

- No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.
  - NEVER attempt to change a tyre in the lane of traffic. ALWAYS move the vehicle completely off the road on a level, firm ground away from traffic before trying to change a tyre. If you cannot find a level, firm place off the road, call a towing service for assistance.
  - Be sure to use the jack provided with the vehicle.
  - ALWAYS place the jack on the designated jacking positions on the vehicle and NEVER on the bumpers or any other part of the vehicle for jacking support.
  - Do not start or run the engine whilst the vehicle is on the jack.
  - Do not allow anyone to remain in the vehicle whilst it is on the jack.
  - Keep children away from the road and the vehicle.
- 

Follow these steps to change your vehicle's tyre:

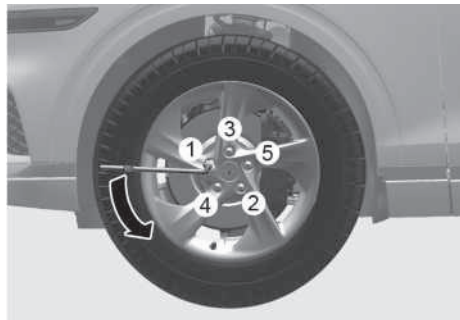
- 1 Park on a level, firm surface.
- 2 Shift the gear to P (Park), apply the parking brake, and press the Engine Start/Stop button to the OFF position.
- 3 Press the hazard warning flasher button.
- 4 Remove the wheel nut wrench, jack, jack handle, and spare tyre from the vehicle.

- 5 Block both the front and rear of the tyre diagonally opposite of the tyre you are changing.

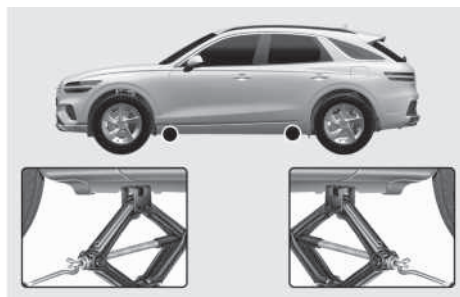


[A] Block

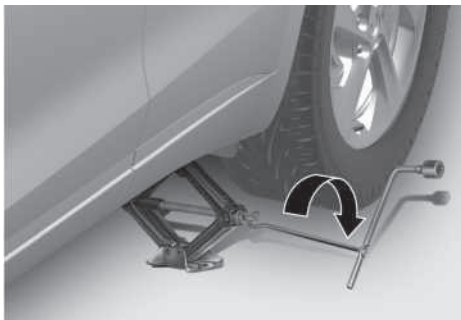
- 6 Loosen the wheel bolts anti-clockwise one turn each in the order shown below, but do not remove any wheel bolts until the tyre has been raised off of the ground.



- 7 Place the jack at the designated jacking position under the frame closest to the tyre you are changing. The jacking positions are plates welded to the frame with two notches. Never jack at any other position or part of the vehicle to prevent the vehicle slipping off of the jack or damaging the vehicle.



- 8** Insert the jack handle into the jack and turn it clockwise, raising the vehicle until the tyre clears the ground. Make sure the vehicle is stable on the jack.



- 9** Loosen a wheel bolt with the wheel nut wrench and remove it with your fingers.
- 10** Insert the centering pin (1) into the hole where the wheel bolt is removed. Remove the rest of the wheel bolts from the wheel.

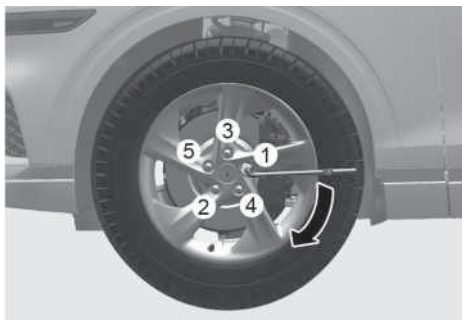


- 11** Remove the wheel from the studs and lay it flat on the ground out of the way. Remove any dirt or debris from the studs, mounting surfaces, and spare tyre.
- 12** Install the spare tyre over the centering pin (1) and then push in the spare tyre.



- 13** Tighten the wheel bolts with your fingers onto the studs with the smaller end of the wheel bolts closest to the wheel.
- 14** Pull out the centering pin (1) and tighten the last wheel bolt.

- 15 Lower the vehicle to the ground by turning the jack handle anti-clockwise.
- 16 Use the wheel nut wrench to tighten the wheel bolts in the order shown. Double-check each wheel bolts until they are tight. After changing tyres, we recommend that an authorised Genesis repairer tighten the wheel bolts to their proper torque as soon as possible. Tighten the wheel bolts to 14-16 kgf·m (101-116 lbf·ft).



**Check the tyre pressure after installing the compact spare tyre. The compact spare tyre should be inflated to 420 kPa (60 psi).**

If you have a tyre gauge, check the spare tyre pressure (refer to the "Tyres and wheels" section in chapter 2 for tyre pressure instructions.). If the spare tyre pressure is lower or higher than the recommended, drive slowly to the nearest service station and adjust it to the recommended pressure. Always reinstall the valve cap after checking or adjusting the tyre pressure. If the cap is not replaced, air may leak from the tyre. If you lose a valve cap, buy another and install it as soon as possible. After changing tyres, secure the flat tyre and return the jack and tools to their proper storage locations.

## NOTICE

---

Check the tyre pressure as soon as possible after installing a spare tyre. Adjust it to the recommended pressure.

---

## WARNING

---

Your vehicle has metric threads on the studs and wheel bolts. During tyre changing, make sure that the wheel bolts that were removed are reinstalled. If you have to replace your wheel bolts, make sure they have metric threads to avoid damaging the studs and make sure the wheel is properly secured to the hub. We recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer for assistance.

---

If any of the equipment such as jack, wheel bolts, studs, or other equipment is damaged or in poor condition, do not attempt to change the tyre and call for assistance.

### *Use of compact spare tyres*

 if equipped

Compact spare tyres are designed for emergency use only. Drive carefully on the compact spare tyre and always follow the safety precautions.



## WARNING

---

To prevent compact spare tyre failure and loss of control, possibly resulting in a collision:

- Use the compact spare tyre only in an emergency.
  - NEVER operate your vehicle over 80 km/h.
  - Do not exceed the vehicle's maximum load rating or the load carrying capacity shown on the sidewall of the compact spare tyre.
  - Do not use the compact spare tyre continuously. Repair or replace the original tyre as soon as possible to avoid failure of the compact spare tyre.
- 

When driving with the compact spare tyre mounted to your vehicle:

- Do not take this vehicle through an automatic car wash after the compact spare tyre has been installed.
- Do not use the compact spare tyre on any other vehicle because this tyre has been designed especially for your vehicle.
- The compact spare tyre's tread life is shorter than a regular tyre. Inspect your compact spare tyre regularly and replace worn compact spare tyres with the same size and design, mounted on the same wheel.
- Do not use more than one compact spare tyre at a time.
- Do not tow a trailer whilst the compact spare tyre is installed.

## Information

---

When the original tyre and wheel are repaired and reinstalled on the vehicle, the wheel bolt torque must be set correctly. The correct wheel bolt tightening torque is 14-16 kgf·m (101-116 lbf·ft).

---

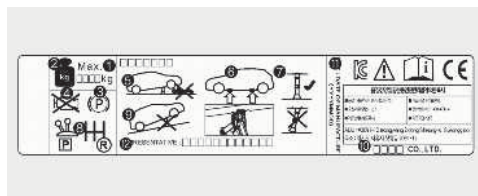
## NOTICE

---

To prevent damaging the compact spare tyre and your vehicle:

- Drive slowly enough for the road conditions to avoid all hazards, such as a potholes or debris.
  - Avoid driving over obstacles. The compact spare tyre diameter is smaller than the diameter of a conventional tyre and reduces the ground clearance about 25 mm.
  - Do not use tyre chains on the compact spare tyre. Because of the smaller size, a tyre chain will not fit properly.
  - Do not use the compact spare tyre on any other wheels, nor should standard tyres, snow tyres, wheel covers or trim rings be used with the compact spare wheel.
  - Do not suddenly accelerate or decelerate 0-40 km/h in any driving mode. Transfer case oil may leak.
-

## Jack label



The actual jack label in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.  
For more detailed specifications, refer to the label attached to the jack.

1. Model Name
2. Maximum allowable load
3. Always apply the parking brake before using a jack.
4. Always turn off the engine before using a jack.
5. Never put any portion of your body under the vehicle supported by a jack.
6. Only use the designated jacking locations on the frame.
7. When supporting the vehicle, have the base plate of the jack flat on the ground under the lifting point.
8. Shift to the Reverse gear with the manual transmission or shift to P (Park) position with the automatic transmission.
9. Do not jack the vehicle on an incline. Only jack the vehicle on a firm level ground.
10. Jack manufacturer
11. Production date
12. Representative company and address



## Towing

### Towing service

Flatbed Towing



Wheel lift Towing



[A] Dollies

If towing is necessary, contact an authorised Genesis repairer or a commercial tow-truck service.

AWD vehicles must be towed with a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed with all the wheels off the ground.

## NOTICE

---

To prevent damage when towing:

- Do not lift using the trailer towbar or body and chassis parts.
- Do not tow vehicles with sling-type equipment. Only use wheel lift or flatbed equipment.



---

When towing your vehicle without wheel dollies:

- 1 Release the EPB before turning off the engine.
- 2 Press the Engine Start/Stop button to the OFF position.
- 3 Change the gear to N (Neutral) by pressing the P release button whilst pressing the brake pedal. For more information, refer to the "**Automatic transmission**" section in chapter 6.
- 4 Press the Engine Start/Stop button to the ACC position.

## NOTICE

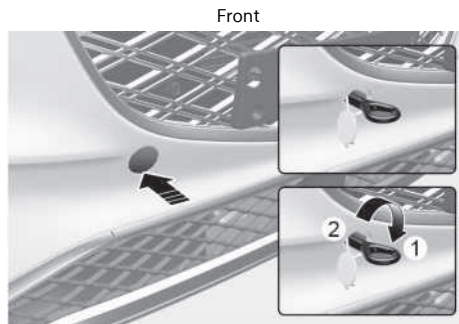
---

Always shift the gear to N (Neutral) to prevent damage to the transmission before towing.

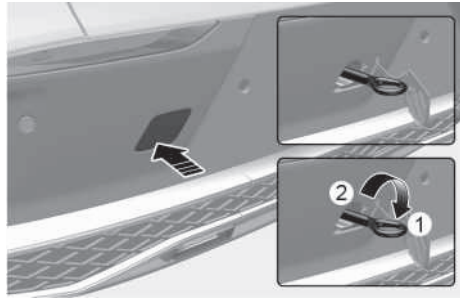
---

### Removable towing hook

- 1 Open the tailgate, and remove the towing hook from the tool case.



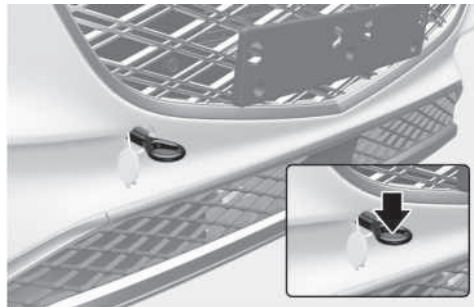
Rear



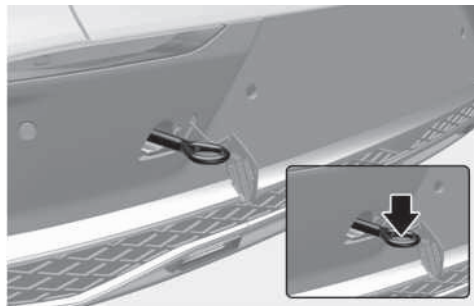
1. Install
  2. Remove
- 2 Remove the hole cover by pressing the cover on the bumper.
  - 3 Install the towing hook by turning it clockwise into the hole until it is fully secured.
  - 4 Remove the towing hook and install the cover after use.

## Emergency towing

Front



Rear



If emergency towing is necessary, we recommend that you contact authorised Genesis repairer or a commercial tow-truck service.

If a tow-truck service is not available in an emergency, your vehicle can be temporarily towed using a cable or chain secured to the removable towing hook at the front (or rear) of the vehicle.

Perform emergency towing using cables or chains on hard-surfaced roads for a short distance and at low speeds. The wheels, axles, powertrain, steering, and brakes must all be in good working condition.



## WARNING

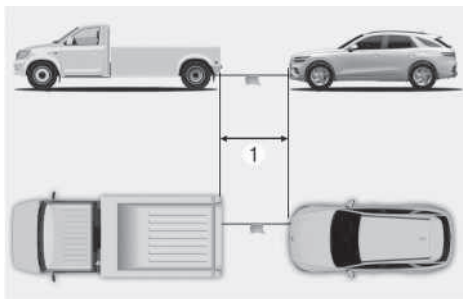
---

Use extreme caution when towing the vehicle with a cable or chain. A driver must be in the vehicle to steer it and operate the brakes. Passengers other than the driver must not be in the vehicle.

---

Always follow these emergency towing precautions:

- Press the Engine Start/Stop button to the ACC position so the steering wheel is not locked.
- Shift the gear to N (Neutral).
- Release the parking brake.
- Press the brake pedal with more force than normal because you have reduced braking performance.
- More steering effort is required because the power steering system is disabled.
- Use a vehicle heavier than your own to tow your vehicle.
- The drivers of both vehicles must communicate with each other frequently.
- Before emergency towing, check the removable hook is not broken or damaged.
- Fasten the towing cable or chain securely to the hook.
- Do not jerk the cables, chains, or removable hook. Apply steady and even force.



1. 5 m

- Use a towing cable or chain less than 5 m long. Attach a white or red cloth (about 30 cm wide) in the middle of the cable or chain for easy visibility.
- Drive carefully so the towing cable or chain remains tight during towing.

- Before towing, check the automatic transmission for fluid leaks under your vehicle. If the automatic transmission fluid is leaking, flatbed equipment or a towing dolly must be used.

## NOTICE

---

Accelerate or decelerate the vehicle in a slow and gradual manner whilst maintaining tension on the tow rope or chain to start or drive the vehicle. Otherwise, tow hooks and the vehicle may be damaged.

---

## NOTICE

---

To avoid damage to your vehicle and vehicle components when towing:

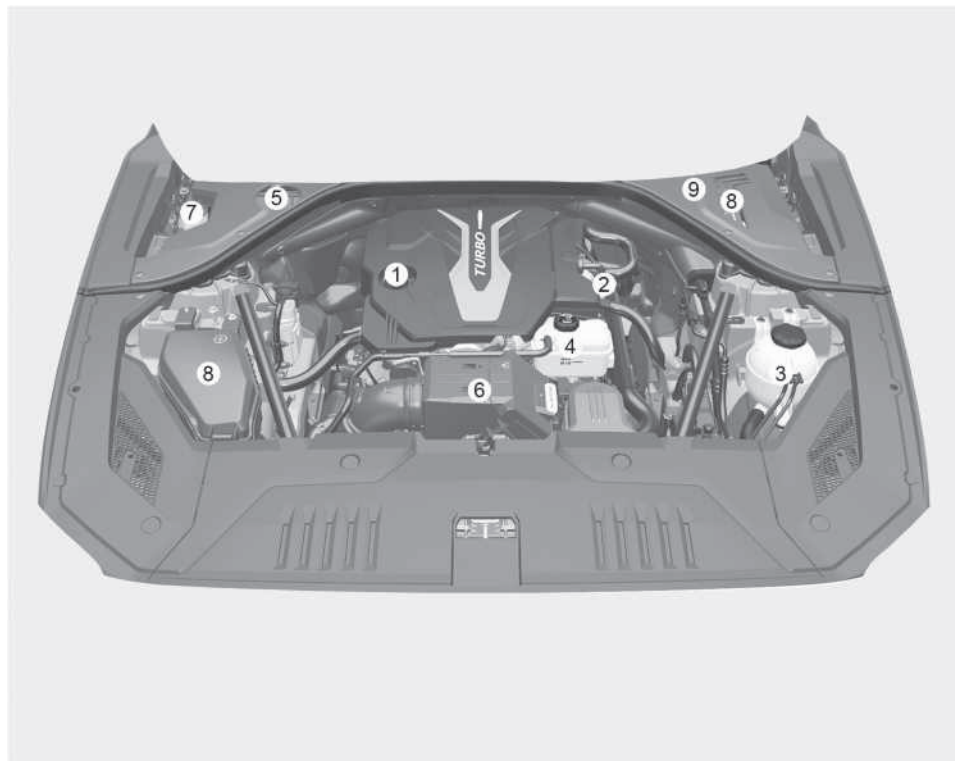
- Always pull straight ahead when using the towing hooks. Do not pull from the side or at a vertical angle.
  - Do not use the towing hooks to pull the vehicle out of mud, sand, or other conditions from which the vehicle cannot be driven out under its own power.
  - Limit the vehicle speed to 15 km/h and drive less than 1.5 km when towing to avoid serious damage to the automatic transmission.
-



# 9. Maintenance

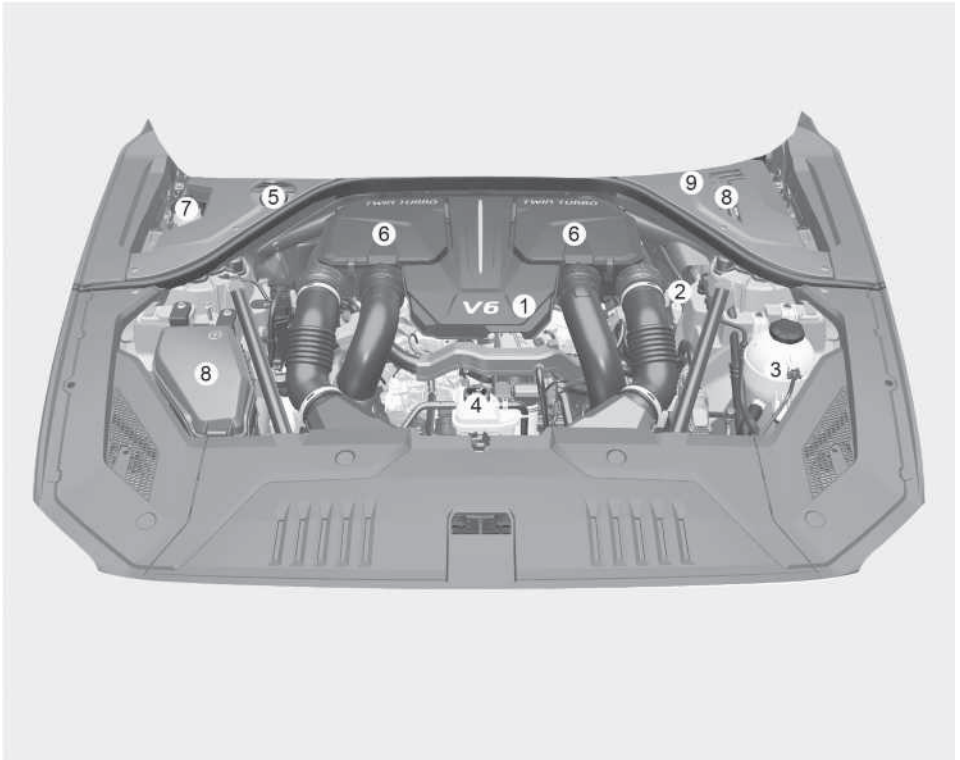
## Engine compartment

2.5 T-GDI



**The actual engine compartment in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.**

1. Engine oil filler cap
2. Engine oil dipstick
3. Engine coolant reservoir
4. Liquid-cooled intercooler coolant reservoir
5. Brake fluid reservoir
6. Air cleaner
7. Windscreen washer fluid reservoir
8. Fuse box
9. Cabin air filter



**The actual engine compartment in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.**

1. Engine oil filler cap (under the engine cover)
2. Engine oil dipstick
3. Engine coolant reservoir
4. Liquid-cooled intercooler coolant reservoir
5. Brake fluid reservoir
6. Air cleaner
7. Windscreen washer fluid reservoir
8. Fuse box
9. Cabin air filter



## Maintenance services

Exercise the utmost care to prevent damage to your vehicle and injury to yourself whenever performing any maintenance or inspection procedures.

We recommend you have your vehicle maintained and repaired by an authorised Genesis repairer. An authorised Genesis repairer meets Genesis' high service quality standards and receives technical support from Genesis to provide you with a high level of service satisfaction.

### Owner's responsibility

Maintenance service and record retention are the owner's responsibility.

Retain documents that show proper maintenance has been performed on your vehicle in accordance with the scheduled maintenance service charts on the following pages. You need this information to establish your compliance with the servicing and maintenance requirements of your vehicle warranties.

Detailed warranty information is provided in your Service Passport.

Repairs and adjustments required as a result of improper maintenance or a lack of required maintenance are not covered.

### Owner maintenance precautions

Inadequate, incomplete, or insufficient servicing may result in operational problems with your vehicle that could cause vehicle damage or a collision that results in serious injury or death.

Your vehicle must not be modified in any way. Such modifications may adversely affect the performance, safety, or durability of your vehicle and may, in addition, violate conditions of the limited warranties covering the vehicle.

### NOTICE

---

Improper owner maintenance during the warranty period may affect the warranty coverage. For more information, read the separate Service Passport provided with the vehicle.

---

## Owner maintenance



### WARNING

---

Performing maintenance on the vehicle can be dangerous. If you lack sufficient knowledge, experience, or proper tools and equipment to do the work, we recommend to have it done by an authorised Genesis repairer. Before performing maintenance:

- Park your vehicle on level ground. Shift the vehicle to P (Park), apply the parking brake, and press the Engine Start/Stop button to the OFF position.
  - Block the tyres (front and back) to prevent the vehicle from moving.  
Remove loose clothing or jewellery that can become entangled in moving parts.
  - If you must run the engine during maintenance, do it in an outdoor area or in an area with plenty of ventilation.
  - Keep flames, sparks, or smoking materials away from the battery and fuel-related parts.
- 



### WARNING

---

Touching metal parts



Do not touch metal parts (including strut bars) whilst the engine is operating or hot. Doing so could result in serious personal injury. Turn off the engine and wait until the metal parts cool down before working on the vehicle.

---

The following lists are vehicle checks and inspections that should be performed by the owner or an authorised Genesis repairer at the frequencies indicated to help ensure safe and dependable operation of your vehicle.

Any adverse conditions should be brought to the attention of your authorised Genesis repairer as soon as possible.

These Owner Maintenance vehicle checks are generally not covered by warranties and you may be charged for labour, parts, and lubricants used.

## **Owner maintenance schedule**

### ***When you stop for fuel:***

- Check the windscreen washer fluid level.
- Check for low or under-inflated tyres.

### ***Whilst operating your vehicle:***

- Note any changes in the sound of the exhaust or any smell of exhaust fumes in the vehicle.
- Check for vibrations in the steering wheel. Notice if there is any increased steering effort or looseness in the steering wheel, or change in its straight-ahead position.
- Notice if your vehicle constantly turns slightly or "pulls" to one side when travelling on smooth, level road.
- When stopping, listen and check for unusual sounds, pulling to one side, increased brake pedal travel, or "hard-to-push" brake pedal.
- If any slipping or changes in the operation of your transmission occurs, check the transmission fluid level.
- Check the automatic transmission P (Park) function.
- Check the parking brake.
- Check for fluid leaks under your vehicle (water dripping from the air conditioning system during or after use is normal).

### ***At least monthly:***

- Check the coolant level in the engine coolant reservoir.
- Check the operation of all exterior lights, including the headlamps, stop lamps, turn signals, and hazard warning flashers.
- Check the inflation pressures of all tyres including the spare for tyres that are worn, show uneven wear, or are damaged.
- Check for loose wheel nuts.



## **WARNING**

Be careful when checking your coolant level when the engine is hot. This may result in coolant being blown out of the opening and cause serious burns and other injuries.

### ***At least twice a year:***

- Check the radiator, heater, and air conditioning hoses for leaks or damage.
- Check the windscreen washer spray and wiper operation. Clean the wiper blades with a clean cloth dampened with washer fluid.
- Check the headlamp alignment.
- Check the muffler, exhaust pipes, shields, and clamps.

- Check the seat belts for wear and function.

***At least once a year:***

- Clean the body and door drain holes.
- Lubricate the door hinges and bonnet hinges.
- Lubricate the door, bonnet locks, and latches.
- Lubricate door rubber weather strips.
- Check the air conditioning system.
- Inspect and lubricate the automatic transmission linkage and controls.
- Clean the battery and terminals.
- Check the brake fluid level.

## Scheduled maintenance services

If any of the following conditions apply, follow the Maintenance Under Severe Usage Conditions.

- Repeatedly driving short distances of less than 8 km in normal temperatures or less than 16 km in freezing temperatures
- Extensive engine idling or low speed driving for long distances
- Driving on rough, dusty, muddy, unpaved, graveled, or salt-spread roads
- Driving in areas using salt or other corrosive materials or in very cold weather
- Driving in heavy dust conditions
- Driving in heavy traffic areas
- Driving on uphill, downhill, or mountain roads repeatedly
- Towing a trailer or using a camper, or driving with loads on the roof
- Driving as a patrol car, taxi, other commercial use or vehicle towing
- Frequently driving at high speeds or rapid acceleration/deceleration
- Frequently driving in stop-and-go conditions
- Using engine oil that is not recommended (mineral type, semi-synthetic, lower grade spec, etc.)

If your vehicle is operated under the above conditions, you should inspect, replace or refill more frequently than the following Normal Maintenance Schedule. After the periods or distance shown in the chart, continue to follow the prescribed maintenance intervals.

Information

- As it is normal for engine oil to be consumed during driving, the engine oil level should be checked on regular basis.
- The engine oil change interval under normal operating conditions is based on the use of engine oil that meets the recommended engine specification for your vehicle. If any other type of engine oil is used, replace the engine oil according to the maintenance schedule under severe operating conditions.
- The vehicle may be equipped with the Oil Life Management System that predicts engine oil life based on the driver's driving history and alerts the driver to change engine oil.
  - If the deterioration of the engine oil increases depending on the driver's driving severity, the remaining oil life alert appears on the instrument cluster before the normal engine oil replacement interval. We recommend that the engine oil and filter be changed by an authorised Genesis repairer.
  - Oil Life Management System works when the recommended engine oil is used. So, if recommended engine oil is not used, replace the engine oil according to the maintenance schedule under severe usage conditions.

Also, check the amount of engine oil regularly as this system assumes that the engine oil is being filled normally.
  - Always reset the remaining engine oil life whenever the engine oil is changed. Otherwise, the indication of remaining Oil life in the Oil Life Management System may not be accurate.

To reset the Oil Change Reminder, select "**RESET**" from the infotainment system screen. Then, select "**Yes**" when the message "**Has the engine oil been changed? Press [Yes] to reset the oil life.**" appears on the screen.
  - If there is no alert until the maximum maintenance interval, we recommend that vehicle be checked by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Normal maintenance schedule (Petrol engine)

I: Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean, or replace.  
R: Replace or change.

| Maintenance intervals                                                 | Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first |    |    |    |    |    |    |     |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|----|----|----|----|----|----|-----|-----|
|                                                                       | Months                                                      | 12 | 24 | 36 | 48 | 60 | 72 | 84  | 96  |
|                                                                       | km×1,000                                                    | 15 | 30 | 45 | 60 | 75 | 90 | 105 | 120 |
| Maintenance item                                                      |                                                             |    |    |    |    |    |    |     |     |
| Engine oil and engine oil filter <sup>*1 *2 *3</sup><br><sup>*4</sup> | Replace every 10,000 km or 12 months                        |    |    |    |    |    |    |     |     |
| Drive belts <sup>*5</sup>                                             |                                                             | I  |    | I  |    | I  |    | I   |     |
| Fuel additives <sup>*6</sup>                                          | Add every 10,000 km or 12 months                            |    |    |    |    |    |    |     |     |

| Maintenance intervals             | Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first |    |    |    |    |    |    |     |     |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|----|----|----|----|----|----|-----|-----|
|                                   | Months                                                      | 12 | 24 | 36 | 48 | 60 | 72 | 84  | 96  |
|                                   | km×1,000                                                    | 15 | 30 | 45 | 60 | 75 | 90 | 105 | 120 |
| Maintenance item                  |                                                             |    |    |    |    |    |    |     |     |
| Air cleaner filter                |                                                             | I  | I  | R  | I  | I  | R  | I   | I   |
| Spark plugs <sup>*7</sup>         | Replace every 75,000 km                                     |    |    |    |    |    |    |     |     |
| Vapour hose and fuel filler cap   |                                                             |    |    |    | I  |    |    |     | I   |
| Fuel tank air filter              |                                                             |    |    |    | I  |    |    |     | I   |
| Fuel lines, hoses and connections |                                                             |    |    |    | I  |    |    |     | I   |

\*1: The engine oil level should be checked regularly and maintained properly. Operating with an insufficient amount of oil can damage the engine, and such damage is not covered by warranty.

\*2: Check the engine oil level and for leaks every 500 km or before starting a long trip.

\*3: Requires <API SN PLUS (or above) Full synthetic> grade engine oil. If a lower grade engine oil (mineral oil including Semisynthetic) is used, then the engine oil and engine oil filter must be replaced as indicated severe maintenance condition.

\*4: Never add any additives to the engine oil. Engine oil additives can change the properties of engine oil and may cause serious engine failure.

\*5: Inspect drive belt tensioner, idler and alternator pulley and if necessary correct or replace.

\*6: If good quality petrols meet Europe Fuel standards (EN228) or equivalents including fuel additives are not available, one bottle of additive is recommended. Additives are available from your an authorised Genesis repairer along with information on how to use them. Do not mix other additives.

\*7: For your convenience, it can be replaced prior to it's interval when you do maintenance of other items.

## General items

I: Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean, or replace.

R: Replace or change.

| Maintenance intervals        | Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first                                     |    |    |    |    |    |    |     |     |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|----|----|----|----|----|-----|-----|
|                              | Months                                                                                          | 12 | 24 | 36 | 48 | 60 | 72 | 84  | 96  |
|                              | km×1,000                                                                                        | 15 | 30 | 45 | 60 | 75 | 90 | 105 | 120 |
| Maintenance item             |                                                                                                 |    |    |    |    |    |    |     |     |
| Cooling system               |                                                                                                 | I  | I  | I  | I  | I  | I  | I   | I   |
| Engine coolant <sup>*1</sup> | At first replace at 195,000 km or 120 months : after that, replace every 30,000 km or 24 months |    |    |    |    |    |    |     |     |
| All electrical systems       |                                                                                                 | I  | I  | I  | I  | I  | I  | I   | I   |
| Battery condition            |                                                                                                 | I  | I  | I  | I  | I  | I  | I   | I   |

| Maintenance intervals              | Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first |    |    |    |    |    |    |     |     |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|----|----|----|----|----|----|-----|-----|
|                                    | Months                                                      | 12 | 24 | 36 | 48 | 60 | 72 | 84  | 96  |
|                                    | km×1,000                                                    | 15 | 30 | 45 | 60 | 75 | 90 | 105 | 120 |
| Maintenance item                   |                                                             |    |    |    |    |    |    |     |     |
| Brake lines, hoses and connections | I                                                           | I  | I  | I  | I  | I  | I  | I   | I   |
| Brake pedal                        |                                                             | I  |    | I  |    | I  |    | I   |     |
| Parking brake                      |                                                             | I  |    | I  |    | I  |    | I   |     |
| Brake fluid                        |                                                             | R  |    | R  |    | R  |    | R   |     |

\*1: When adding coolant, use only deionized water or soft water for your vehicle and never mix hard water in the coolant filled at the factory. An improper coolant mixture can result in serious malfunction or engine damage. For your convenience, it can be replaced prior to it's interval when you do maintenance of other items.

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

R : Replace or change.

| Maintenance intervals                 | Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first                    |    |    |    |    |    |    |     |     |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|----|----|----|----|----|-----|-----|
|                                       | Months                                                                         | 12 | 24 | 36 | 48 | 60 | 72 | 84  | 96  |
|                                       | km×1,000                                                                       | 15 | 30 | 45 | 60 | 75 | 90 | 105 | 120 |
| Maintenance item                      |                                                                                |    |    |    |    |    |    |     |     |
| Disc brakes and pads                  | I                                                                              | I  | I  | I  | I  | I  | I  | I   | I   |
| Steering gear rack, linkage and boots | I                                                                              | I  | I  | I  | I  | I  | I  | I   | I   |
| Driveshaft and boots                  |                                                                                | I  |    | I  |    | I  |    | I   |     |
| Tyres (pressure & tread wear)         | Rotate every 15,000 km or 12 months                                            |    |    |    |    |    |    |     |     |
| Front suspension ball joints          | I                                                                              | I  | I  | I  | I  | I  | I  | I   | I   |
| Air conditioner refrigerant           | I                                                                              | I  | I  | I  | I  | I  | I  | I   | I   |
| Air conditioner compressor            | I                                                                              | I  | I  | I  | I  | I  | I  | I   | I   |
| Cabin air filter                      | Inspect every 15,000 km or 12 months, and replace every 30,000 km or 24 months |    |    |    |    |    |    |     |     |
| Automatic transmission fluid          |                                                                                | I  |    | I  |    | I  |    | I   |     |
| Exhaust system                        |                                                                                | I  |    | I  |    | I  |    | I   |     |



| Maintenance intervals                                   | Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first |    |    |    |    |    |    |     |     |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|----|----|----|----|----|----|-----|-----|
|                                                         | Months                                                      | 12 | 24 | 36 | 48 | 60 | 72 | 84  | 96  |
|                                                         | km×1,000                                                    | 15 | 30 | 45 | 60 | 75 | 90 | 105 | 120 |
| Maintenance item                                        |                                                             |    |    |    |    |    |    |     |     |
| Front differential oil (AWD) / Rear differential oil *1 |                                                             |    |    |    | I  |    |    |     | I   |
| Propeller shaft                                         |                                                             |    | I  |    | I  |    | I  |     | I   |
| Transfer case oil (AWD)                                 | No check, No service required                               |    |    |    |    |    |    |     |     |
| Electronic Limited Slip Differential (e-LSD) oil        | No check, No service required                               |    |    |    |    |    |    |     |     |

\*1: Front and rear differential oil should be changed anytime the front or rear differential has been submerged in water.

## Maintenance under severe usage conditions (Petrol engine)

The following items must be serviced more frequently on the vehicles mainly used under severe and low mileage driving conditions. Refer to the chart below for the appropriate maintenance intervals.

R: Replace

I: Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean, or replace

| Maintenance item                          | Maintenance operation | Maintenance Intervals                              | Driving condition   |
|-------------------------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| Engine oil and engine oil filter          | R                     | Replace every 5,000 km or 6 months                 | D, H, I, L          |
| Air cleaner filter                        | R                     | Replace more frequently depending on the condition | C, E                |
| Spark plugs                               | R                     | Replace more frequently depending on the condition | A, B, F, G, H, I, K |
| Steering gear rack, linkage and boots     | I                     | Inspect more frequently depending on the condition | C, D, E, F, G       |
| Suspension ball joints                    | I                     | Inspect more frequently depending on the condition | C, D, E, F, G       |
| Disc brakes and pads, calipers and rotors | I                     | Inspect more frequently depending on the condition | C, D, E, G, H       |

| Maintenance item                                     | Maintenance operation | Maintenance Intervals                              | Driving condition         |
|------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| Parking brake                                        | I                     | Inspect more frequently depending on the condition | C, D, G, H                |
| Driveshaft and boots                                 | I                     | Inspect more frequently depending on the condition | C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J    |
| Cabin air filter                                     | R                     | Replace more frequently depending on the condition | C, E, G                   |
| Automatic transmission fluid                         | R                     | Replace every 100,000 km                           | A, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, K |
| Front differential oil (AWD) / Rear differential oil | R                     | Replace every 120,000 km                           | C, D, E, G, H, I, J       |
| Propeller shaft                                      | I                     | Inspect more frequently depending on the condition | C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J    |
| Transfer case oil (AWD)                              | -                     | No check, No service required                      | -                         |
| Electronic Limited Slip Differential (e-LSD) oil     | -                     | No check, No service required                      | -                         |

### ***Severe driving conditions***

- A. Repeatedly driving short distances of less than 8 km in normal temperatures or less than 16 km in freezing temperatures
- B. Extensive engine idling or low speed driving for long distances
- C. Driving on rough, dusty, muddy, unpaved, graveled, or salt-spread roads
- D. Driving in areas using salt or other corrosive materials or in very cold weather
- E. Driving in heavy dust conditions
- F. Driving in heavy traffic areas
- G. Driving on uphill, downhill, or mountain roads repeatedly
- H. Towing a trailer or using a camper, or driving with loads on the roof
- I. Driving as a patrol car, taxi, other commercial use or vehicle towing
- J. Frequently driving at high speeds or rapid acceleration/deceleration
- K. Frequently driving in stop-and-go conditions
- L. Using engine oil that is not recommended (mineral type, semi synthetic, lower grade spec, etc.)

## Explanation of scheduled maintenance items

### Engine oil and filter

The engine oil and filter should be changed at the intervals specified in the maintenance schedule. If the vehicle is being driven in severe conditions, more frequent oil and filter changes are required.

### Drive belts

Inspect all drive belts for evidence of cuts, cracks, excessive wear, or oil saturation. Replace them if necessary.

Check the drive belts periodically for proper tension and adjust as necessary.

### Information

---

Always turn off the engine before inspecting the drive belts.

---

### Fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections

Check the fuel lines, fuel hoses, and connections for leakage and damage. We recommend an authorised Genesis repairer replace any damaged or leaking parts immediately.

### Fuel filter (for petrol engine)

The fuel filter is considered to be maintenance free but periodic inspection is recommended depending on the fuel quality. If there is fuel flow restriction, surging, loss of power, or hard starting, we recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer for details.

### Vapour hose and fuel filler cap

The vapour hose and fuel filler cap should be inspected at intervals specified in the maintenance schedule. Make sure a new vapour hose or fuel filler cap is correctly replaced.

### Air cleaner filter

We recommend that the air cleaner filter be replaced by an authorised Genesis repairer.

### Spark plugs (for petrol engine)

Be sure to install new spark plugs with the correct heat range.

When installing new spark plugs, make sure the ignition coils are clean and free of any oil or debris. Clean and wipe off the bottom portion of the ignition coil to prevent any contamination with the spark plug during installation.



### WARNING

---

Do not remove spark plugs from the vehicle when the engine is hot. You may damage the engine and may also risk burn injuries.

---

### Cooling system

Check the cooling system components, such as radiator, coolant reservoir, hoses, and connections for leakage and damage. Replace any damaged parts.

## Engine coolant/liquid-cooled intercooler coolant

The coolant should be changed at the intervals specified in the maintenance schedule.

## Automatic transmission fluid

The automatic transmission fluid level does not need to be checked under normal usage conditions.

If driven in severe operating conditions, we recommend that the automatic transmission fluid be changed by an authorised Genesis repairer according to the maintenance schedule under severe conditions.

## Information

---

The colour of new automatic transmission fluid is red. As the vehicle is driven, the automatic transmission fluid begins to look darker.

This is normal and the automatic transmission fluid does not need to be replaced based on this colour change.

---

## NOTICE

---

Only use the automatic transmission fluid specified in the "**Recommended lubricants and capacities**" section in chapter 2 to prevent transmission damage.

---

## Brake hoses and lines

Visually check for proper installation, chafing, cracks, deterioration, and any leakage. Replace any deteriorated or damaged parts immediately.

## Brake fluid

Check the brake fluid level in the brake fluid reservoir. The level should be between the MIN and the MAX marks on the side of the reservoir. Use only hydraulic brake fluid conforming to DOT 4 specification.

## Brake discs, pads, calipers, and rotors

Check the pads, and the discs for any excessive wear-out. Inspect calipers for any fluid leakage.

## Exhaust pipe and muffler

Visually inspect the exhaust pipes, muffler and hangers for cracks, deterioration, or damage. Start the engine and listen carefully for any exhaust gas leakage. Tighten connections or replace parts as necessary.

## Drive shafts and boots

Check the drive shafts, boots and clamps for cracks, deterioration, or damage. Replace any damaged parts and, if necessary, repack the grease.

## Propeller shaft and related

Check the propeller shaft, boots, clamps, rubber couplings, and center-bearing rubber for cracks, deterioration, or damage. Replace any damaged parts and if necessary, repack the grease.

### **Suspension mounting bolts**

Check the suspension connections for looseness or damage. Retighten to the specified torque.

### **Steering gear box, linkage & boots/lower arm ball joint**

With the vehicle stopped and the engine off, check for excessive free-play in the steering wheel. Check the linkage for bends or damage. Check the dust boots and ball joints for deterioration, cracks, or damage. Replace any damaged parts.

### **Air conditioning refrigerant**

Check the air conditioning lines and connections for leakage and damage.

## Engine oil

### Checking the engine oil level

Engine oil is used for lubricating, cooling, and operating various hydraulic components in the engine. Engine oil consumption whilst driving is normal, and it is necessary to check and refill the engine oil regularly. Also, check and refill the oil level within the recommended maintenance schedule to prevent deterioration of oil performance.

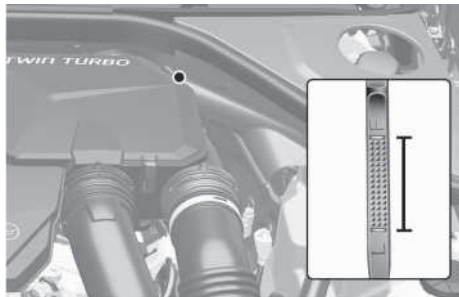
Check the engine oil following the below procedure.

- 1 Follow all of the oil manufacturer's precautions.
- 2 Make sure the vehicle is on the level ground in P (Park) with the parking brake set and the wheels blocked.
- 3 Turn on the engine and warm the engine up until the coolant temperature reaches a constant normal temperature.
- 4 Turn off the engine, remove the oil filler cap and pull the dipstick out. Wait for 15 minutes for the oil to return to the oil pan.
- 5 Wipe the dipstick clean and re-insert it fully.
- 6 Pull the dipstick out again and check the level. The level should be between F (Full) and L (Low).

2.5 T-GDI

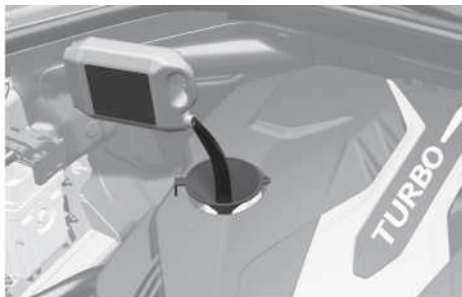


3.5 T-GDI

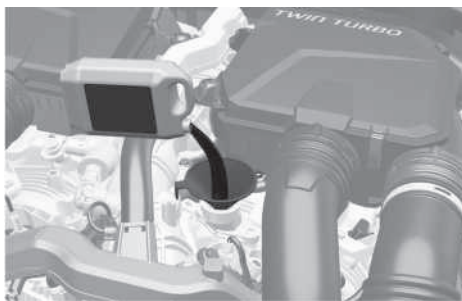


- 7 If the oil level is below L, add enough oil to bring the level to F.

2.5 T-GDI



3.5 T-GDI



## Information

---

Use only the engine oil specified in the "**Recommended lubricants and capacities**" section in chapter 2.

---

## NOTICE

---

To prevent damage to your engine:

- Do not spill engine oil when adding or changing engine oil. Wipe off spilled oil immediately.
  - The engine oil consumption may increase whilst you break in the new vehicle, and it should stabilize after driving 6,000 km.
  - The engine oil consumption may be affected by driving habits, climate conditions, traffic conditions, oil quality, etc. Therefore, it is recommended that you inspect the engine oil level regularly and refill if necessary.
-

## Checking the engine oil and filter



- The lubrication, rust prevention, cooling, and cleaning effect of the engine oil will gradually degrade during its use. We recommend that the engine oil and filter be changed by an authorised Genesis repairer according to the Engine Oil Life Management System Instructions or the Maintenance Schedule at the beginning of this chapter.
- If the maintenance schedule to replace engine oil is exceeded, the engine oil performance may deteriorate, and the engine condition may be affected. Therefore, replace the engine oil according to the maintenance schedule.
- To keep the engine in optimal condition, use the recommended engine oil and filter. If the recommended engine oil and filter are not used, replace them according to the maintenance schedule under severe usage conditions.
- The purpose of the maintenance schedule for engine oil replacement is to prevent oil deterioration and it is irrelevant to oil consumption. Check and refill engine oil regularly.

### Information

---

When the oil pressure is low due to insufficient engine oil, the Engine Oil Pressure (🛢️) warning light will illuminate. In addition, the enhanced engine protection system, which limits the engine's power is activated and the Malfunction (🔧) Indicator Lamp will illuminate when the vehicle is driven in this state continuously. When oil pressure is restored, the Engine Oil Pressure warning light will turn off and the engine power will no longer be limited. However, when the oil pressure is restored, the warning light and the enhanced engine protection system turns off after the engine is restarted.

---



### CAUTION

---

Allow the engine to cool before replacing the oil.

---



### WARNING

---

Used engine oil may cause irritation or cancer of the skin if left in contact with the skin for prolonged periods of time. Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing your hands thoroughly with soap and warm water as soon as possible after handling used oil.

---



## NOTICE

---

Never add any additives to the engine oil. Engine oil additives can change the properties of engine oil and may cause serious engine failure.

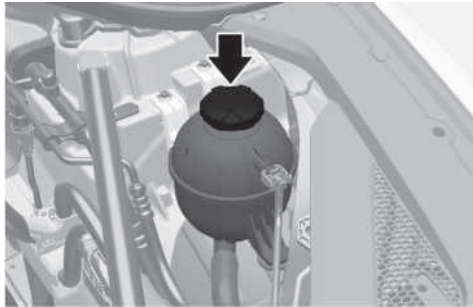
---

## Engine coolant/liquid-cooled intercooler coolant

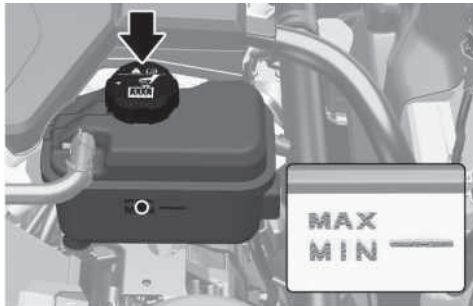
The high pressure cooling system has a reservoir filled with year-round antifreeze coolant. Check the antifreeze protection and coolant level at least once a year, before the winter season or before travelling to a colder climate.

### Checking the coolant level

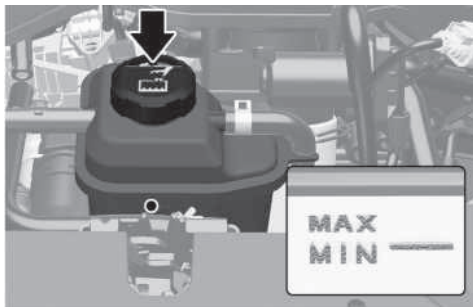
Engine coolant



Liquid-cooled intercooler coolant - 2.5 T-GDI



Liquid-cooled intercooler coolant - 3.5 T-GDI



Check the condition and connections of all cooling system hoses and heater hoses. Replace any swollen or deteriorated hoses.

The coolant level should be filled between the **MAX** (Maximum) and the **MIN** (Minimum) marks on the side of the coolant reservoir when the engine is cool.

If the coolant level is low, add enough distilled (deionized) water mixed with antifreeze to bring the level to the **MAX** (Maximum) mark. If frequent additions are required, we recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer for a cooling system inspection.



## WARNING

---



Never remove the engine coolant cap and/or liquid-cooled intercooler coolant cap or the drain plug whilst the engine and radiator are hot. Hot coolant and steam may blow out under pressure, causing serious injury.

Turn the vehicle off and wait until the engine cools down. Use extreme care when removing the engine coolant cap and/or liquid-cooled intercooler coolant cap. Wrap a thick towel around it, and turn it anti-clockwise slowly to the first stop. Step back whilst the pressure is released from the cooling system. When you are sure all the pressure has been released, press down on the cap, using a thick towel, and continue turning anti-clockwise to remove it.

---

## Information

---

The coolant level is influenced by the engine temperature. Before checking or refilling the coolant, turn off the engine and allow the engine to cool.

---



## WARNING

---



Keep hands, clothing, and tools away from the rotating fan blades of the cooling fan.

Always turn off the vehicle unless the vehicle has to be inspected with the engine on. The cooling fan may operate automatically if the negative (-) battery terminal is not disconnected.

---

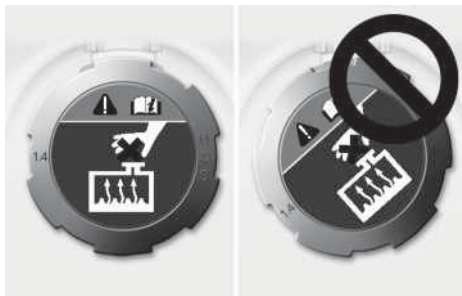


## WARNING

Make sure the coolant cap is properly closed after refilling coolant. Otherwise, the engine may overheat whilst driving.

- 1 Check if the coolant cap label is straight in front.

Engine compartment front view



- 2 Make sure that the tiny protrusions inside the coolant cap are securely interlocked.



### ***Recommended coolant***

- When adding coolant, use only deionized water, distilled water, or soft water for your vehicle and never mix hard water in the coolant filled at the factory.
- An incorrect coolant mixture may result in severe malfunction or engine damage.
- The engine in your vehicle has aluminium engine parts and must be protected by an phosphate-based ethylene glycol coolant to prevent corrosion and freezing.
- Do not use alcohol or methanol coolant or mix them with the specified coolant.
- Do not use a solution that contains more than 60 % antifreeze or less than 35 % antifreeze, which could reduce the effectiveness of the solution.

For mixing percentage, refer to the following table:

| Ambient temperature | Mixture percentage (volume) |       |
|---------------------|-----------------------------|-------|
|                     | Antifreeze                  | Water |
| -15 °C (5 °F)       | 35                          | 65    |

| Ambient temperature | Mixture percentage (volume) |       |
|---------------------|-----------------------------|-------|
|                     | Antifreeze                  | Water |
| -25 °C (-13 °F)     | 40                          | 60    |
| -35 °C (-31 °F)     | 50                          | 50    |
| -45 °C (-49 °F)     | 60                          | 40    |

Information

If in doubt about the mix ratio, a 50 % water and 50 % antifreeze mix is the easiest to mix together because it is the same quantity for each. It is suitable to use for most temperature ranges of -35 °C (-31 °F) and higher.

Changing coolant

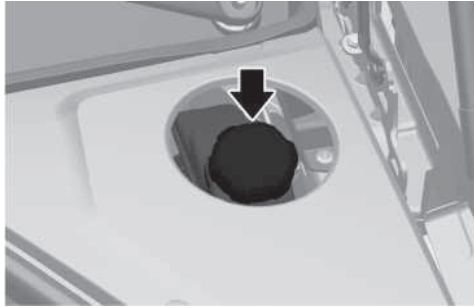
We recommend that the coolant be changed by an authorised Genesis repairer according to the Maintenance Schedule at the beginning of this chapter.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to engine parts, put a thick towel around the engine coolant cap and/or liquid-cooled intercooler coolant cap before refilling the coolant to prevent the coolant from overflowing into engine parts, such as the alternator.

## Brake fluid

### Checking the brake fluid level



Check the fluid level in the reservoir periodically. The fluid level must be between the **MAX** (Maximum) and **MIN** (Minimum) marks on the side of the reservoir.

Before removing the reservoir cap and adding brake fluid, clean the area around the reservoir cap thoroughly to prevent brake fluid contamination.

If the level is low, add the specified brake fluid to the **MAX** level. If the fluid level is excessively low or frequent additions are required, we recommend that the brake system be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.



#### **WARNING**

---

If brake fluid gets in your eyes, flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention.

---

#### **NOTICE**

---

- Do not allow brake fluid to contact the vehicle's body paint, because paint damage may occur.
  - Never use brake fluid that has been exposed to open air for an extended time and dispose of it properly.
  - Do not use a wrong type of brake fluid. A few drops of mineral based oil such as engine oil in your brake system may damage the brake system parts.
- 

#### **Information**

---

Use only the brake fluid specified in the "**Recommended lubricants and capacities**" section in chapter 2.

---

## Washer fluid

### Checking the washer fluid level



Check the fluid level in the washer fluid reservoir and add fluid if necessary. Plain water can be used if washer fluid is not available. However, use washer fluid with antifreeze in cold climates to prevent freezing.



### **WARNING**

---

To prevent serious injury or death:

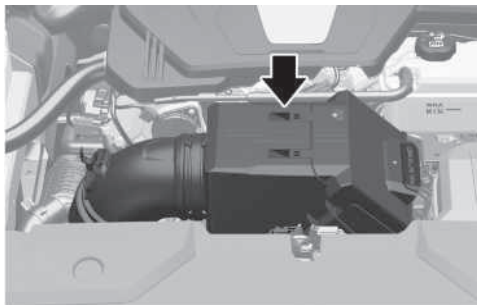
- Do not use engine coolant or antifreeze in the washer fluid reservoir. Engine coolant can severely limit your visibility when sprayed on the windscreen and may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in a collision.
  - Do not allow sparks or flame to contact the washer fluid or the washer fluid reservoir. Washer fluid may contain alcohol and can be flammable.
  - Do not drink washer fluid and avoid contact with skin.
  - Keep washer fluid away from children and animals.
-

## Air cleaner

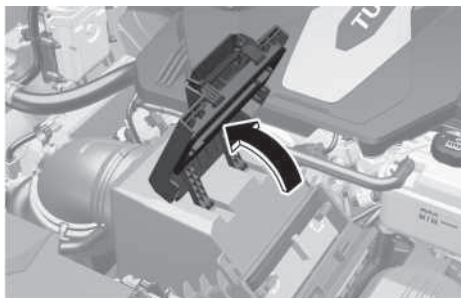
### Filter replacement

#### 2.5 T-GDI

The air cleaner filter can be cleaned for inspection using compressed air. Do not attempt to wash or rinse it, because water can damage the filter. If soiled, replace the air cleaner filter.



- 1 Pull up the air cleaner cover.

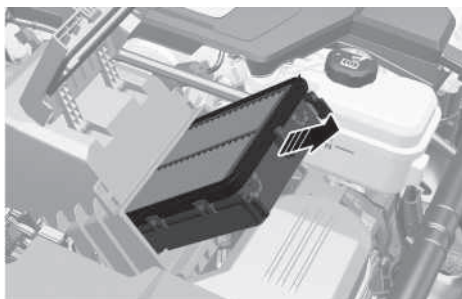


- 2 Pull down the lever to the UNLOCK position.



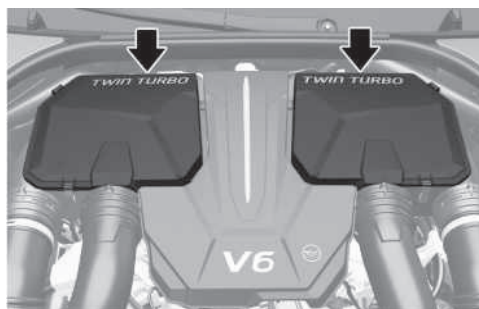


- 3 Replace the air cleaner filter.



- 4 Reassemble the air cleaner filter cover in the reverse order.
- Check that the cover is firmly installed.

### 3.5 T-GDI



Do not attempt to wash or rinse it, because water can damage the filter. If soiled, the air cleaner filter must be replaced. We recommend that you visit an authorised Genesis repairer to replace air cleaner filter. Replace the air cleaner filter according to the Maintenance Schedule.

### Information

---

If the vehicle is operated in extremely dusty or sandy areas, replace the air cleaner filter more often than the usual recommended intervals (Refer to the "**Maintenance under severe usage conditions (Petrol engine)**" section in this chapter).

---

### NOTICE

---

- Do not drive with the air cleaner filter removed. This may result in excessive engine wear.
  - When removing the air cleaner filter, be careful that dust or dirt does not enter the air intake. It may cause damage.
  - We recommend that you use Genesis genuine parts or the equivalent specified for your vehicle. Use of non-genuine parts may damage the air flow sensor.
-

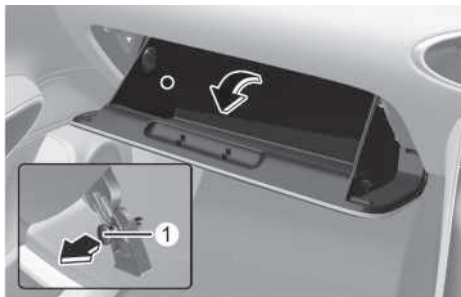
## Cabin air filter

### Filter inspection

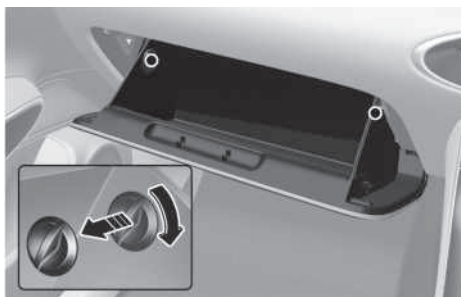
The cabin air filter must be replaced according to the Maintenance Schedule. If the vehicle operates in severely air-polluted cities or on dusty rough roads for a long time, have it inspected more frequently and replaced immediately. Replace the cabin air filter by following the procedure below and be careful to avoid damaging other components.

### Filter replacement

- 1 Open the glove box and remove the support rod (1).



- 2 Remove the stoppers on both sides to allow the glove box to hang open.



- 3 Press and hold the lock on the left side of the cover.

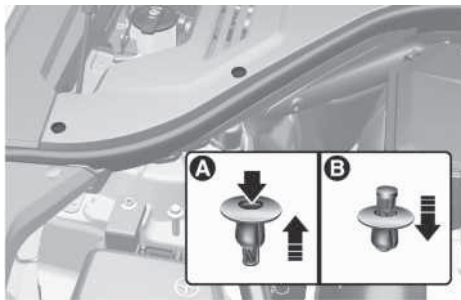


- 4 Pull out the cover.

- 5 Replace the cabin air filter.
- 6 Reassemble in the reverse order of disassembly.

### ***Engine compartment***

- 1 Open the engine bonnet.
- 2 Use a + screwdriver to remove the screws mounted on the air filter cover.



- [A] Screw removal  
[B] Screw mounting

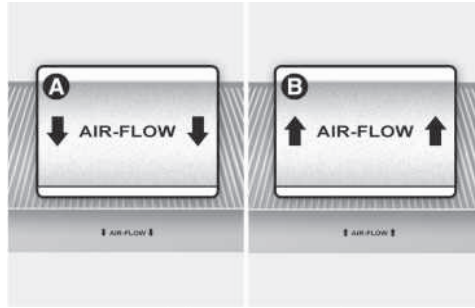
- 3 Press and hold the lock on the left side of the cover.



- 4 Pull out the cover.
- 5 Replace the cabin air filter.
- 6 Reassemble in the reverse order of disassembly.

## NOTICE

---



[A] Glove box

[B] Engine compartment

Install a new cabin air filter with the arrow symbol in the correct direction to improve effectiveness.

- Glove box: Install with the arrow symbol facing downward (↓).
  - Engine Compartment: Install with the arrow symbol facing up (↑).
-

## Wiper blades

### Blade inspection

Contamination of either the windscreen or the wiper blades with foreign substances may reduce the effectiveness of the windscreen wipers.

Common sources of contamination are insects, tree sap, and hot wax treatments used by some commercial car washes. If the blades are not wiping properly, clean both the window and the blades with glass cleaner or mild detergent, and rinse thoroughly with clean water.

### NOTICE

---

To prevent damage to the wiper blades, arms, or other components, do not:

- Use petrol, kerosene, paint thinner, or other solvents on or near them.
  - Attempt to move the wipers manually.
- 

### Blade replacement

When the wipers no longer clean adequately, the blades may be worn or cracked. Replace the wipers with new ones.

### NOTICE

---

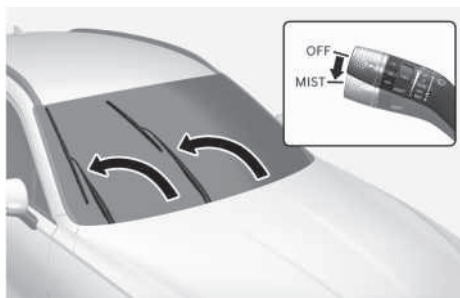
To prevent damage:

- Never use non-specified wiper blades.
  - Lift the wiper arms when in the top wiping position.
  - Always return the wiper arms to the windscreen before driving.
- 

### *Front windscreen wiper blade*

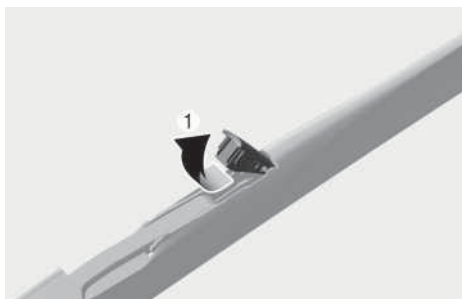
This vehicle has a “hidden” wiper design that cannot be lifted when in their bottom resting position.

- 1 Within 20 seconds of turning off the engine, push and hold the wiper lever down to the MIST position for about 2 seconds until the wipers move to the top wipe position.

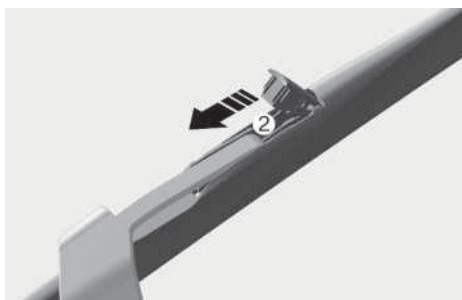


- 2 Lift the wipers off the windscreen.

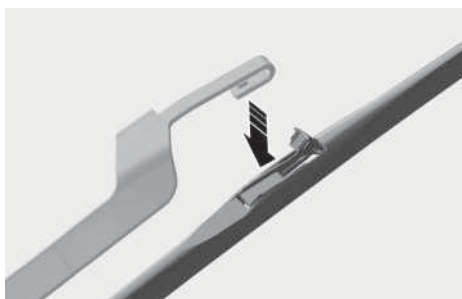
- 3 Lift up the wiper blade clip (1).



- 4 Then pull down the wiper blade (2).



- 5 Remove the wiper blade from the wiper arm.



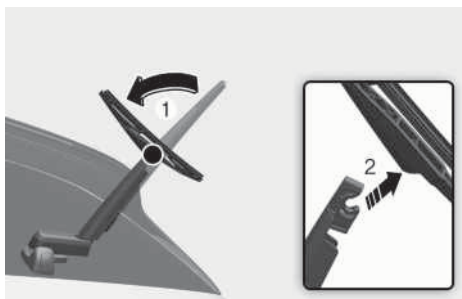
- 6 Install the new wiper blade assembly in the reverse order of removal.  
7 Gently put down the wiper back onto the windscreen.  
8 Turn the wipers to any ON position to return the wiper arms to the bottom resting position.

### ***Rear window wiper blade replacement***

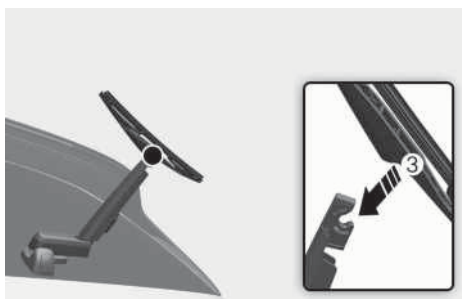
 If equipped

- 1 Raise the wiper arm.

- 2 Rotate the wiper blade assembly (1) and then pull out the wiper blade assembly (2).



- 3 Install the new blade assembly by inserting the centre part into the slot in the wiper arm until it clicks into place (3).



- 4 Rotate back the blade assembly so that it aligns with the wiper arm.
- 5 Gently put down the wiper back onto the rear windscreen, and turn the vehicle ignition ON and operate the wipers to check the blade is installed correctly.

## NOTICE

---

- Avoid the wipers from touching the windscreen when the wiper blade is disassembled to prevent windscreen damage.
  - The rear wiper may not operate for about 10 seconds if the wiper is operated without washer fluid or the blades are frozen to prevent damage to the motor.
- 

## Information

---

To prevent damage to the wiper arms or other components, we recommend that you have the wiper blades replaced by an authorised Genesis repairer.

---

## Battery



### WARNING

---

To prevent serious injury or death to you or bystanders when working near or handling the battery:

Always read and follow instructions carefully when handling a battery.



Wear eye protection designed to protect the eyes from acid splashes.



Keep all flames, sparks, or smoking materials away from the battery.



Hydrogen gas is always present in battery cells. It is highly combustible, and may explode if ignited.



Keep batteries out of reach of children.



Batteries contain sulphuric acid that is highly corrosive. Do not allow acid to contact your eyes, skin or clothing.

If acid gets into your eyes, flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention. If acid gets on your skin, thoroughly wash the area. If you feel pain or a burning sensation, get medical attention immediately.



- Lift a battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners. When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the case may cause battery acid to leak.



- Do not attempt to jump start your vehicle if your battery is frozen.
  - Never attempt to recharge the battery when the vehicle's battery cables are connected to the battery.
  - The electrical ignition system works with high voltage. Never touch these components with the engine running or when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position.
- 

## NOTICE

---

To prevent battery damage:

- Always fully charge the battery and store indoors when you do not plan to use the vehicle for a long time if the outside temperature is low enough to cause the battery to freeze.
  - Always fully charge the battery to prevent battery case damage in low temperature areas.
  - Prevent liquid from wetting the battery terminals.
  - Do not tilt the battery.
  - Never connect unauthorised devices to the battery.
- 

## For best battery service

### *12 V battery*



- Keep the battery securely mounted.
- Keep the battery top clean and dry.
- Keep the terminals and connections clean, tight, and coated with petroleum jelly or terminal grease.
- Rinse any spilled electrolyte from the battery immediately with a solution of water and baking soda.
- If the vehicle is not going to be used for an extended period of time, disconnect the battery cables.

## Information

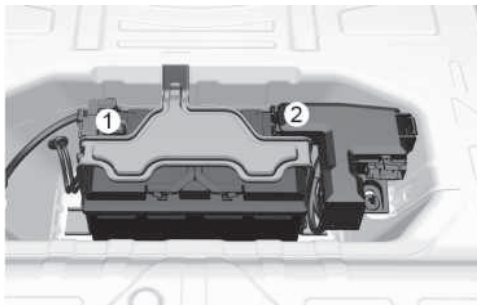
---

Open the battery cover to check the batteries.

---

## Battery replacement

### *12 V battery*



When replacing the battery, disconnect the negative (-) cable (1) and remove the positive (+) battery fuse box (2).

#### Information

---

To check the batteries, open the cover.

The clips must be removed first to open the cover.

---

### *12 V lithium auxiliary battery*

When there is a problem with the 12 V lithium auxiliary battery, such as the temperature or charge amount being too high, the warning message "**Check the battery**" may appear on the instrument cluster display.

If you have signed up for Genesis Connected Services, a text message is sent to your mobile phone. If the warning message appears on the instrument cluster display or a text message is sent to your mobile phone, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

#### Information

---

The 12 V lithium auxiliary battery is installed to provide power for electrical functions such as OTA software update, air conditioning auto-drying, etc. when the vehicle is parked.

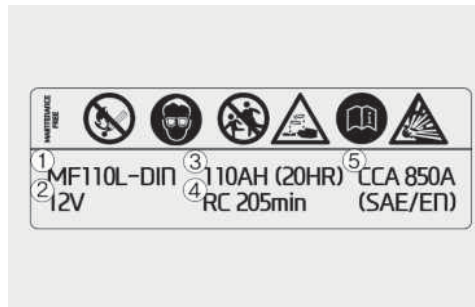
---

## Battery capacity label

Type A



Type B



The actual battery label in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

1. The Genesis vehicle model name of battery
2. The nominal voltage
3. The nominal capacity (in Ampere hours)
4. The nominal reserve capacity (in min.)
5. The cold-test current in amperes by SAE / EN

## Battery recharging

### *By battery charger*

Your vehicle has a maintenance-free, calcium-based battery.

- If the battery becomes discharged over a short time (because, for example, the headlamps or interior lamps are left on whilst the vehicle is not used), recharge it by slow charging (trickle) for 10 hours.
- If the battery gradually discharges because of high electrical load whilst the vehicle is being used, recharge it at 20-30 A for two hours.

## WARNING

---

To prevent the risk of serious injury or death from explosions or acid burns:

- Before performing maintenance or recharging the battery, turn off all accessories and stop the engine.
  - Keep all flames, sparks, or smoking materials away from the battery.
  - Always work outdoors or in an area with plenty of ventilation.
  - Wear eye protection when checking the battery during charging. Do not contact the battery. This may result in serious injury.
  - Remove the battery from the vehicle and place it in a well ventilated area.
  - Watch the battery during charging, and stop or reduce the charging rate if the battery cells begin boiling violently.
  - Remove the negative battery cable first and install it last when the battery is disconnected. Disconnect the battery charger in the following order:
    - 1 Turn off the battery charger main switch.
    - 2 Unhook the negative clamp from the negative battery terminal.
    - 3 Unhook the positive clamp from the positive battery terminal.
- 

## NOTICE

---

AGM battery (if equipped)

Absorbent Glass Mat (AGM) batteries are maintenance-free and should be serviced by an authorised Genesis repairer. Only charge using fully automatic battery chargers that are specifically for AGM batteries.

---

## CAUTION

---

Do not open or remove the cap on top of the battery. This may cause leaks of internal electrolyte that could result in serious injury.

---

### *By jump starting*

After a jump start from a good battery, drive the vehicle for 30 minutes or operate at idle for at least 60 minutes before it is shut off. The vehicle may not restart if you shut it off before the battery has a chance to adequately recharge. Refer to the "**Jump starting**" section in chapter 8 for more information on jump starting procedures.

## Information

---



An inappropriately disposed battery may be harmful to the environment and human health. Always dispose used batteries in accordance with local law(s) or regulations.

---

## Reset items

The following items may need to be reset after the battery has been discharged or disconnected:

- Current trip/Since refuelling/Since last reset (items in Normal view) (refer to chapter 4)
- **Integrated memory system** (refer to chapter 5)
- **Power windows** (refer to chapter 5)
- **Panoramic sunroof** (refer to chapter 5)
- **Power tailgate** (refer to chapter 5)
- **Automatic climate control system** (refer to chapter 5)
- **Rear side window sunshades** (refer to chapter 5)
- **Clock** (refer to the Infotainment system manual)
- **Infotainment system** (refer to the Infotainment system manual)

## Tyres and wheels



### WARNING

Tyre failure may cause loss of vehicle control and result in a collision. To reduce risk of serious injury or death:

- Inspect your tyres monthly for proper inflation as well as wear and damage.
- The recommended cold tyre pressure for your vehicle can be found in this manual and on the tyre label located on the driver's side centre pillar. Always use a tyre pressure gauge to measure tyre pressure. Tyres with too much or too little pressure wear unevenly causing poor handling.
- Check the pressure of the spare every time you check the pressure of the other tyres on your vehicle.
- Replace tyres that are worn, show uneven wear, or are damaged. Worn tyres may cause loss of braking effectiveness, steering control, or traction.
- Always replace tyres with the same size, type, construction, and tread pattern of tyre that was originally supplied with this vehicle. Using tyres and wheels other than the recommended sizes may cause unusual handling characteristics, poor vehicle control, or negatively affect your vehicle's Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS).

### Tyre care

For proper maintenance, safety, and maximum fuel economy, always maintain the recommended tyre inflation pressures and stay within the load limits and weight distribution recommended for your vehicle.



All specifications (sizes and pressures) can be found on a label attached to the driver's side centre pillar.

### Recommended cold tyre inflation pressures

Check all tyre pressures (including the spare) when the tyres are cold. "Cold tyres" mean the vehicle has not been driven for at least three hours or driven less than 1.6 km.

Warm tyres normally exceed the recommended cold tyre pressures by 28 to 41 kPa (4 to 6 psi). Do not release air from warm tyres to adjust the pressure. The tyres are under-inflated. For the recommended inflation pressure, refer to the "Tyres and wheels" section in chapter 2.

## **WARNING**

---

- Recommended pressures must be maintained for the best ride, vehicle handling, and minimum tyre wear.
  - Over-inflation or under-inflation can reduce tyre life, adversely affect vehicle handling, and lead to sudden tyre failure that may result in loss of vehicle control resulting in a collision.
  - Severe under-inflation may lead to severe heat build-up, causing blowouts, tread separation, and other tyre failures that result in the loss of vehicle control resulting in a collision. This risk is much higher on hot days and when driving for long periods at high speeds.
  - Under-inflation may cause excessive wear, poor handling, and reduced fuel economy. Wheel deformation is also possible. Keep your tyre pressures at the proper levels. If a tyre frequently needs refilling, we recommend that it be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.
  - Over-inflation produces a harsh ride, excessive wear at the centre of the tyre tread, and a greater possibility of damage from road hazards.
- 

### **Check tyre inflation pressure**

Check your tyres, including the spare tyre (if equipped), at least once a month or more.

#### ***How to check***

Use a good quality tyre pressure gauge to check the tyre pressure. You cannot tell if your tyres are properly inflated simply by looking at them. Radial tyres may look properly inflated when they are under-inflated.

Remove the valve cap from the tyre valve stem. Press the tyre gauge firmly onto the valve to get a pressure measurement. If the cold tyre inflation pressure matches the recommended pressure on the tyre and loading information label, no further adjustment is necessary. If the pressure is low, add air until it reaches the recommended pressure. Make sure to put the valve caps back on the valve stems. Without the valve cap, dirt or moisture could get into the valve core and cause air leakage. If a valve cap is missing, install a new one as soon as possible.

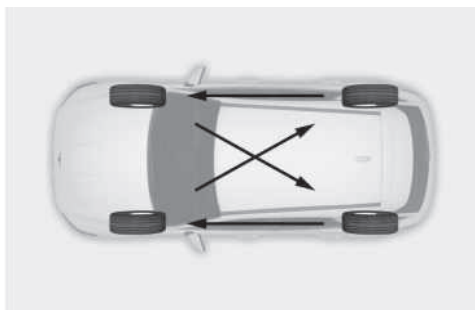
If you overfill the tyre, release air by pushing on the metal stem in the centre of the tyre valve. Recheck the tyre pressure with the tyre gauge. Be sure to put the valve caps back on the valve stems. Without the valve cap, dirt or moisture may get into the valve core and cause air leakage. If a valve cap is missing, install a new one as soon as possible.

### **Tyre rotation**

To equalize tread wear, Genesis vehicle recommends that the tyres be rotated every 12,000 km or sooner if irregular wear develops.

During rotation, check the tyres for correct balance.

When rotating tyres, check for uneven wear and damage. Abnormal wear is usually caused by incorrect tyre pressure, improper wheel alignment, out-of-balance wheels, severe braking, or severe cornering. Look for bumps or bulges in the tread or side of the tyre. Replace the tyre if you find any of these conditions. Replace the tyre if fabric or cord is visible. After rotation, be sure to bring the front and rear tyre pressures to specification and check wheel bolt torque (proper torque is 14-16 kgf·m [101-116 lbf·ft]).



Disc brake pads should be inspected for wear whenever tyres are rotated.

## Information

---

When installing an unsymmetrical tyre, install the side marked “outside” facing out.

---

## WARNING

---

- Do not use the compact spare tyre for tyre rotation.
  - Do not mix bias ply and radial ply tyres under any circumstances. This may cause unusual handling characteristics that may cause loss of vehicle control and result in a collision.
- 

## Wheel alignment and tyre balance

The wheels on your vehicle were aligned and balanced carefully at the factory and you may not need to have your wheels aligned again. If you notice unusual tyre wear or your vehicle pulling to one side, the alignment may need to be adjusted.

If you notice your vehicle vibrating when driving on a smooth road, your wheels may need to be rebalanced.

## NOTICE

---

Only use approved wheel weights or your vehicle’s aluminium wheels may be damaged.

---

## Tyre replacement





## [A] Tread wear Indicator

If the tyre is worn evenly, a tread wear indicator appears as a solid band across the tread. This shows there is less than 1.6 mm of tread left on the tyre. Replace the tyre when this happens.

Do not wait for the band to appear across the entire tread before replacing the tyre.

### **WARNING**

---

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death:

- Replace tyres that are worn, show uneven wear, or are damaged. Worn tyres may cause loss of braking effectiveness, steering control, and traction.
  - Always replace tyres with the same size of tyre that was originally supplied with this vehicle. Using tyres and wheels other than the recommended sizes may cause unusual handling characteristics, poor vehicle control, or negatively affect your vehicle's Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS).
  - When replacing tyres (or wheels), it is recommended to replace the two front or two rear tyres (or wheels) as a pair. Replacing just one tyre may seriously affect your vehicle's handling.
  - Tyres degrade over time, even when they are not being used. Regardless of the remaining tread, Genesis vehicle recommends that tyres be replaced after six (6) years.
  - Driving in hot climates or excessive loading may accelerate the tyre aging process.
- 

### ***Compact spare tyre replacement***

 If equipped

A compact spare tyre has a shorter tread life than a regular size tyre. Replace it when you can see the tread wear indicator bars on the tyre. The replacement compact spare tyre should be the same size and design of tyre as the one provided with your new vehicle and should be mounted on the same compact spare tyre wheel. The compact spare tyre is not designed to be mounted on a regular size wheel, and the compact spare tyre wheel is not designed for mounting a regular size tyre.

### **WARNING**

---

The original size tyre should be repaired or replaced as soon as possible to avoid failure of the spare and loss of vehicle control resulting in a collision. The compact spare tyre is for emergency use only. Do not operate your vehicle over 80 km/h when using the compact spare tyre.

---

## **Wheel replacement**

When replacing the metal wheels for any reason, make sure the new wheels are equivalent to the original factory units in diameter, rim width, and offset.

## **Tyre traction**

Tyre traction can be reduced if you drive on worn tyres or the tyres that are improperly inflated, or on slippery road surfaces. Replace the tyres when tread wear indicators appear. To reduce the possibility of losing control, slow down whenever there is rain, snow, or ice on the road.

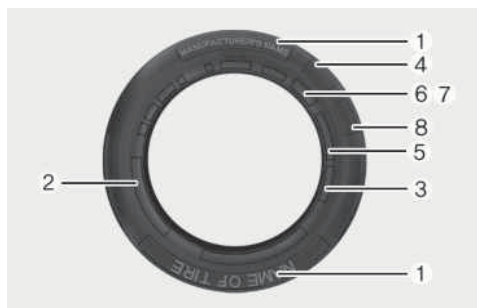
## Tyre maintenance

In addition to proper inflation, correct wheel alignment helps decrease tyre wear. If you find a tyre is worn unevenly, have your dealer check the wheel alignment.

When you have new tyres installed, make sure they are balanced. This may increase ride comfort and tyre life. Additionally, a tyre must always be rebalanced if it is removed from the wheel.

## Tyre sidewall labelling

This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tyre and also provides the tyre identification number (TIN) for safety standard certification. The TIN can be used to identify the tyre in case of a recall.



### ***1. Manufacturer or brand name***

Manufacturer or brand name is shown.

### ***2. Tyre size designation***

A tyre's sidewall is marked with a tyre size designation. You need this information when selecting replacement tyres for your vehicle. The following explains what the letters and numbers in the tyre size designation mean.

Example tyre size designation:

(These numbers are provided as an example only. Your tyre size designator may vary depending on your vehicle.)

#### **265/50R20 111W**

265 - Tyre width in millimeters.

50 - Aspect ratio. The tyre's section height as a percentage of its width.

R - Tyre construction code (Radial).

20 - Rim diameter in inches.

111 - Load Index, a numerical code associated with the maximum load the tyre can carry.

W - Speed Rating Symbol. See the speed rating chart in this section for additional information.

### **Wheel size designation**

Wheels are also marked with important information that you need if you ever have to replace one.

Example wheel size designation:

**8.5J X 20**

8.5 - Rim width in inches.

J - Rim contour designation.

20 - Rim diameter in inches.

**Tyre speed ratings**

The chart below lists many different speed ratings currently being used for passenger vehicle tyres. The speed rating is part of the tyre size designation on the sidewall of the tyre. This symbol corresponds to that tyre's designed maximum safe operating speed.

| Speed rating symbol | Maximum speed |
|---------------------|---------------|
| S                   | 180 km/h      |
| T                   | 190 km/h      |
| H                   | 210 km/h      |
| V                   | 240 km/h      |
| W                   | 270 km/h      |
| Y                   | 300 km/h      |

***3. Checking tyre life (TIN: Tyre Identification Number)***

Any tyres that are over six years old, based on the manufacturing date, (including the spare tyre) should be replaced by new ones. You can find the manufacturing date on the tyre sidewall (possibly on the inside of the wheel), displaying the DOT Code. The DOT Code is a series of characters on a tyre consisting of numbers and English letters. The manufacturing date is designated by the last four digits (characters) of the DOT code.

**DOT: XXXX XXXX 0000**

The front part of the DOT shows a plant code number, tyre size, and tread pattern and the last four numbers indicate week and year manufactured.

For example:

DOT XXXX XXXX 1524 represents that the tyre was produced in the 15th week of 2024.

***4. Genesis exclusive tyre***

Genesis vehicle recommends that tyres designed specifically for Genesis vehicles be used. You may find the marking "GOE" (Genesis Original Equipment) embossed on the tyre sidewall.

***5. Tyre ply composition and material***

The number of layers or plies of rubber-coated fabric in the tyre. tyre manufacturers also must indicate the materials in the tyre, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others. The letter "R" means radial ply construction; the letter "D" means diagonal or bias ply construction. The letter "B" means belted-bias ply construction.

## **6. Maximum permissible inflation pressure**

This number is the greatest amount of air pressure that should be put in the tyre. Do not exceed the maximum permissible inflation pressure. Refer to the tyre and Loading Information label for recommended inflation pressure.

## **7. Maximum load rating**

This number indicates the maximum load in kilograms that can be carried by the tyre. When replacing the tyres on the vehicle, always use a tyre that has the same load rating as the factory installed tyre.

## **8. Uniform tyre quality grading**

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tyre sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

For example:

TREADWEAR 200

TRACTION AA

TEMPERATURE A

### **Tread wear**

The tread wear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tyre when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tyre graded 150 would wear one-and-a-half times (1½) as well on the government course as a tyre graded 100.

The relative performance of tyres depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices, and differences in road characteristics and climate.

These grades are molded on the sidewalls of passenger vehicle tyres. The tyres available as standard or optional equipment on your vehicle may vary depending on the grade.

### **Traction - AA, A, B & C**

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. Those grades represent the tyre's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tyre marked C may have poor traction performance.



### **WARNING**

The traction grade assigned to this tyre is based on straight ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

### **Temperature - A, B & C**

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C representing the tyre's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature may cause the material of the tyre to degenerate and reduce tyre life, and excessive temperature may lead to sudden tyre failure. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

## **WARNING**

---

The temperature grade for this tyre is established for a tyre that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, under-inflation, over-inflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, may cause heat build-up and possible sudden tyre failure.

---

### **Low aspect ratio tyres**

 if equipped

The aspect ratio is lower than 50 on low aspect ratio tyres.

Because low aspect ratio tyres are optimised for handling and braking, their sidewall is a little stiffer than a standard tyre. Also, low aspect ratio tyres tend to be wider and consequently have increased contact with the road surface. In some instances, low aspect ratio tyres may generate more road noise compared with standard tyres.

## **CAUTION**

---

Low aspect wheels and tyres are easily damaged. To reduce the risk of damage:

- When driving on rough roads, passing over a pothole, speed bump, manhole, or kerb stone, drive the vehicle slowly not to damage the tyres and wheels. Damage is not covered by your vehicle warranty.
  - Inspect the tyre condition and pressure every 3,000 km.
  - It is difficult to visually inspect for tyre damage with your eyes. If any damage is found, we recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer.
- 

### **All season tyres**

 if equipped

Genesis vehicle specifies all season tyres on some models to provide good performance for use all year round, including snowy and icy road conditions. All season tyres are identified by ALL SEASON and/or M+S (Mud and Snow) on the tyre sidewall. Snow tyres have better snow traction than all season tyres and may be more appropriate in some areas.

### **Summer tyres**

 if equipped

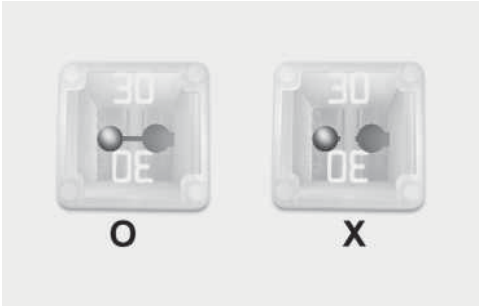
Genesis specifies summer tyres on some models to provide superior performance on dry roads. Summer tyre performance is substantially reduced in snow and ice. Summer tyres do not have the tyre traction rating M+S (Mud and Snow) on the tyre side wall. If you plan to operate your vehicle in snowy or icy conditions, Genesis recommends the use of snow tyres or all season tyres on all four wheels.

# Fuses

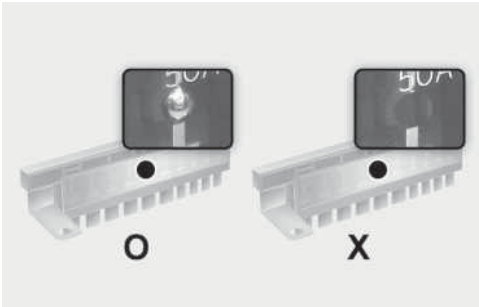
Blade type



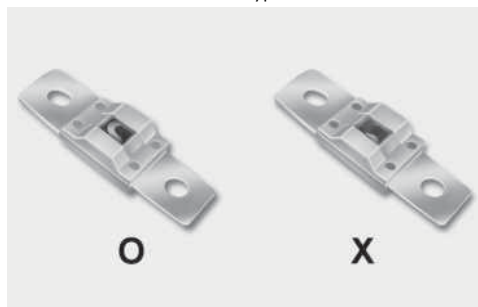
Cartridge type



Multi type



Midi type



A vehicle's electrical system is protected from electrical overload damage by fuses.

This vehicle has 5 fuse panels, one located in the driver's side panel bolster and the others in the engine compartment and luggage compartment.

If any of your vehicle's lights, accessories, or controls do not work, check the appropriate circuit fuse. If a fuse has blown, the element inside the fuse is melted or broken.

If the electrical system does not work, first check the driver's side fuse panel. Before replacing a blown fuse, turn off the engine and all switches, and then disconnect the negative battery cable. Always replace a blown fuse with one of the same rating.

If the replacement fuse blows, this indicates an electrical problem. Avoid using the system involved and we recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer.



## **WARNING**

---

Never replace a fuse with anything but another fuse of the same rating.

- A higher capacity fuse may cause damage and possibly cause a fire.
  - Do not install a wire or aluminium foil instead of the proper fuse - even as a temporary repair. It may cause extensive wiring damage and possibly a fire.
- 

## **NOTICE**

---

Do not use a screwdriver or any other metal object to remove fuses because it may cause a short circuit and damage the system.

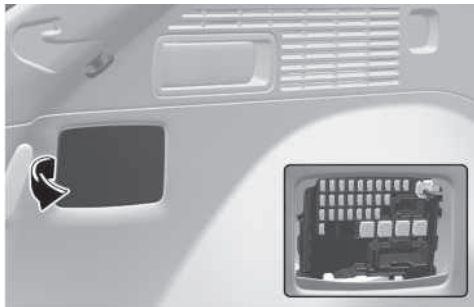
---

## Instrument panel fuse replacement

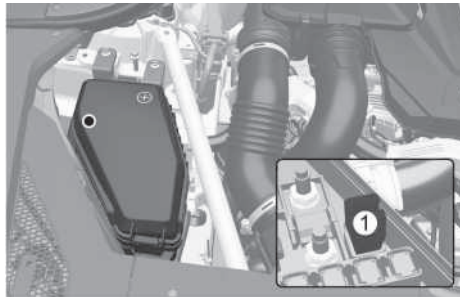
Driver's side



luggage compartment



- 1 Turn off the vehicle.
- 2 Turn off all other switches.
- 3 Open the fuse panel cover.
- 4 Refer to the label on the inside of the fuse panel cover to locate the suspected fuse location.
- 5 Pull the suspected fuse straight out. Use the removal tool (1) provided in the engine compartment fuse panel cover.





- 6 Check the removed fuse and replace it if it is blown. Spare fuses are provided in the instrument panel fuse panels (or in the engine compartment fuse panel).
- 7 Push in a new fuse of the same rating, and make sure it fits tightly in the clips. If it is not tight, we recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer.

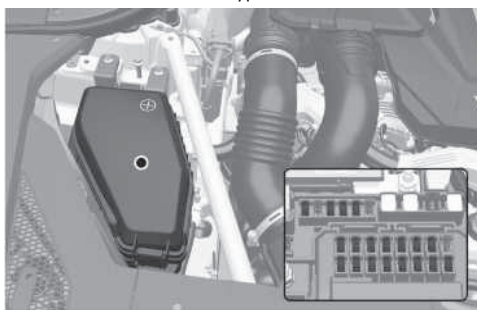
In an emergency, if you do not have a spare fuse, use a fuse of the same rating from a circuit you may not need for operating the vehicle.

If the headlamps or other electrical components do not work and the fuses are undamaged, check the fuse panel in the engine compartment.

## Engine compartment panel fuse replacement

### *Blade fuse/Cartridge fuse*

Blade type fuse



Cartridge type fuse



- 1 Turn off the vehicle.
- 2 Turn off all other switches.
- 3 Remove the fuse panel cover by pressing the tap and pulling up.
- 4 Refer to the label on the inside of the fuse panel cover to locate the suspected fuse location.
- 5 Pull the suspected fuse straight out. Use the removal tool provided in the engine compartment fuse panel cover.
- 6 Check the removed fuse and replace it if it is blown. To remove or insert the fuse, use the removal tool in the engine compartment fuse panel.

- 7 Push in a new fuse of the same rating, and make sure it fits tightly in the clips. If it is not tight, we recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer.

## NOTICE

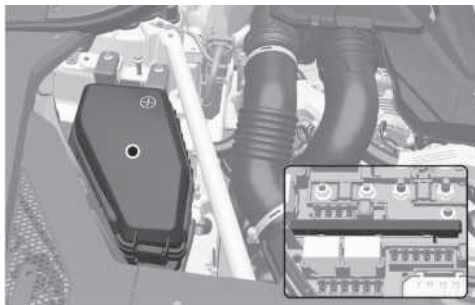
---

Always securely install the fuse panel cover. Water may contact the fuse and cause an electrical failure.

---

### ***Multi fuse/Midi fuse***

Multi type



Midi type



If the multi fuse or midi fuse is blown, we recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer.

## Fuse/relay panel description

### *Instrument panel fuse panel*



Inside the fuse panel cover, you can find the panel label describing fuse names and ratings.

### Information

---

Not all fuse panel descriptions in this manual may be applicable to your vehicle. When you inspect the fuse panel on your vehicle, refer to the fuse panel label.

---



## Instrument panel fuse panel

| Fuse Name    | Symbol              | Fuse Rating | Circuit Protected                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|--------------|---------------------|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| A/C3         | <sup>3</sup> A/C    | 7.5 A       | E/R Junction Block (RLY2,RLY3, RLY4), Front/ Rear A/C Controller, A/C Control Module, A/C PM Sensor, Incar Temperature Sensor                                                                                                                                                              |
| BRAKE SWITCH | BRAKE SWITCH        | 7.5 A       | Stop Lamp Switch, BDC                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| MEMORY1      | <sup>1</sup> MEMORY | 10 A        | BDC, Console Mood Lamp Unit, Mood Lamp Unit, CDCU, Driver/Passenger Door Mood Lamp, Front Monitor, Security Indicator, ETCS Unit, Built-In Cam Unit, Smart Phone Wireless Charger, Driver/Passenger Door Mood Lamp #1/2, Rear Door Mood Lamp LH/RH #1/2,Rear Radar LH, ADAS Unit (Parking) |

| Fuse Name            | Symbol                                                                                           | Fuse Rating | Circuit Protected                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| A/BAG IND            | <sup>IND</sup>  | 7.5 A       | Overhead Console Assembly                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| PRESAFETY SEAT BELT1 | <sup>1</sup><br>PRESAFETY SEAT BELT                                                              | 10 A        | Pre-Active Seat Belt Unit                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| AIR BAG2             | <sup>2</sup>    | 10 A        | SRS Control Module                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| E-SHIFTER2           | <sup>2</sup><br>E-SHIFTER                                                                        | 10 A        | Electronic ATM Shift Lever Dial                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| CCU                  | <b>CCU</b>                                                                                       | 10 A        | CCU                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| MEMORY2              | <sup>2</sup><br>MEMORY                                                                           | 7.5 A       | Front/Rear A/C Controller, Front Console Keyboard, A/C Control Module, Head-Up Display                                                                                                                                                         |
| BDC1                 | <sup>1</sup><br>BDC                                                                              | 7.5 A       | BDC, BMS Control Module                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| MODULE11             | <sup>11</sup><br>MODULE                                                                          | 10 A        | CCU, DCU, Stop Lamp Switch                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| POWER HANDLE         | POWER HANDLE                                                                                     | 15 A        | Steering Tilt & Telescopic Unit                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| wireless DCU         | wireless DCU                                                                                     | 7.5 A       | DCU                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| CHILD LOCK           |               | 15 A        | Rear Door Lock Actuator LH/RH                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| MULTI MEDIA          | MULTI MEDIA                                                                                      | 25 A        | Low DC-DC Converter, CCIC Head Unit                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| MODULE4              | <sup>4</sup><br>MODULE                                                                           | 10 A        | Smart Phone Wireless Charger, A/C Control Module, AMP, Low DC-DC Converter, Data Link Connector, ICC Unit, Built-In Cam Unit, CCIC Head Unit, UVC Lamp Unit, Electro Chromic Mirror, Crash Pad Switch, Overhead Console, Lamp, Front/ Rear A/C |

| Fuse Name       | Symbol                                                                               | Fuse Rating | Circuit Protected                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                 |                                                                                      |             | Controller, Front Console Switch, Low DC-DC Converter (AMP), Driver/Passenger Seat Module                                                                                                                                                                                |
| CLUSTER         | CLUSTER                                                                              | 7.5 A       | Head-Up Display, Front Monitor                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| S/HEATER<br>DRV |     | 20 A        | Driver Power Seat Module                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| MODULE7         | 7<br>MODULE                                                                          | 7.5 A       | 12V Lithium Auxiliary Battery, AC Inverter, AC Inverter Outlet, Head Lamp LH/RH                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| TRAILER1        | 1   | 20 A        | Trailer Connector                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| MODULE5         | 5<br>MODULE                                                                          | 10 A        | Driver Door Module, Multifunction Switch                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| E-SHIFTER1      | 1<br>E-SHIFTER                                                                       | 7.5 A       | Electronic ATM Shift Lever Dial                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| MODULE10        | 10<br>MODULE                                                                         | 10 A        | Front Monitor, CCU, Low DC-DC Converter, DCU, Built-In Cam Unit, Armrest Lamp, Electronic ATM Shift Lever Dial, CCIC Head Unit, BDC, Front Console Keyboard, Emergency Call Switch, ADAS Unit (Parking), E/R Sub Junction Block (RLY. 9), AMP, Low DC-DC Converter (AMP) |
| P/SEAT PASS1    | 1  | 30 A        | Passenger Power Seat Switch, Passenger Power Seat Module                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| SUNROOF         |   | 25 A        | Sunroof Control Unit (Master)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| WIPER           |   | 10 A        | Multifunction Switch, Rear Junction Block (Rear Wiper Relay)                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| MODULE9         | 9<br>MODULE                                                                          | 10 A        | Data Link Connector, Steering Tilt & Telescopic Unit, Driver/ Passenger Power Outside Mirror, Driver/ Passenger Power Seat Module, Driver/ Passenger Power Seat Switch, Power Tailgate Unit, Driver Door Module, TMS                                                     |

| Fuse Name    | Symbol                                                                                                  | Fuse Rating | Circuit Protected                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|--------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| BDC2         | <sup>2</sup><br>BDC                                                                                     | 10 A        | BDC, Ignition Switch, Bluetooth Unit #1 (Master), Bluetooth Unit #2 (Slave), Driver/Passenger Door Outside Handle, Rear Door Outside Handle LH/RH,UWB Antenna (Front LH/RH, Rear LH/RH)                      |
| MODULE8      | <sup>8</sup><br>MODULE                                                                                  | 10 A        | Multifunction Switch, Rain Sensor, ICC Unit                                                                                                                                                                  |
| AIR BAG1     | <sup>1</sup><br>       | 10 A        | SRS Control Module                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| USB CHARGER  | USB CHARGER                                                                                             | 10 A        | Rear USB Charger                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| LDC          | LDC                                                                                                     | 10 A        | Front/Rear Radar LH/RH, Smart Phone Wireless Charger, Front/Rear A/C Controller, ADAS (Parking),Head-Up Display                                                                                              |
| P/SEAT PASS2 | <sup>2PASS</sup><br>   | 25 A        | Passenger Power Seat Switch, Passenger Power Seat Module                                                                                                                                                     |
| MODULE6      | <sup>6</sup><br>MODULE                                                                                  | 7.5 A       | BDC                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| ECS          | ECS                                                                                                     | 15 A        | ECS Unit                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| MODULE3      | <sup>3</sup><br>MODULE                                                                                  | 10 A        | LKAS Unit, CDCU, ECS Unit, Crash Pad Switch,Steering Tilt & Telescopic Unit, Rear Spoiler Control Module, Rear Radar LH/RH, ADAS Unit (Driving/Parking),ELSD Control Module, Active Hood Lift Control Module |
| P/SEAT DRV1  | <sup>1</sup> DRV<br> | 30 A        | Driver Power Seat Module                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| P/WINDOW LH  | LH<br><br>FRT/REAR   | 30 A        | Rear Power Window Module LH, Driver Power Window Module                                                                                                                                                      |
| DOOR LOCK    |                      | 20 A        | Driver/ Passenger Door Lock Actuator,Rear Door Lock Actuator LH/RH, Fuel Filler Door Motor                                                                                                                   |

| Fuse Name         | Symbol                                                                                                 | Fuse Rating | Circuit Protected           |
|-------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|-----------------------------|
| S/HEATER<br>PASS1 | 1 <sup>PASS</sup><br> | 20 A        | Passenger Power Seat Module |
| START2            | 2                     | 7.5 A       | BDC, PCB Block (P/N Relay)  |
| P/SEAT DRV2       | <sup>2</sup> DRV<br>  | 25 A        | Driver Power Seat Module    |

***Engine compartment fuse panel (Engine compartment junction block)***



Inside the fuse panel cover, you can find the panel label describing fuse names and ratings.

**Information**

Not all fuse panel descriptions in this manual may be applicable to your vehicle. When you inspect the fuse panel on your vehicle, refer to the fuse panel label.





| Type  | Fuse Name    | Symbol                                                                                         | Fuse Rating | Circuit Protected                |
|-------|--------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|----------------------------------|
|       | ALT          | ALT                                                                                            | 225 A       | Alternator                       |
|       | B+8          | <sup>8</sup>  | 150 A       | [RHD] E/R Sub Junction Block     |
| MULTI | B+2          | <sup>2</sup>  | 40 A        | PDC (IPS11, IPS12)               |
|       | E-CVVT1      | <sup>1</sup> E-CVVT                                                                            | 40 A        | E-CVVT Relay (RLY.1)             |
|       | B+1          | <sup>1</sup>  | 40 A        | PDC (Fuse - F36/F46/F48/F26/F38) |
|       | OIL PUMP     | OIL PUMP                                                                                       | 50 A        | Electronic Oil Pump              |
|       | COOLING FAN2 | <sup>2</sup>  | 60 A        | Cooling Fan Motor (G4KR)         |
|       | COOLING FAN1 | <sup>1</sup>  | 100 A       | Cooling Fan Motor (G6DS)         |
| SB    | HEAD LAMP LH | HEAD LAMP LH                                                                                   | 40 A        | Head Lamp LH                     |
|       | START        |             | 30 A        | Start Relay (RLY.2)              |
|       | HEAD LAMP RH | HEAD LAMP RH                                                                                   | 40 A        | Head Lamp RH                     |
| MICRO | FUEL PUMP    | FUEL PUMP                                                                                      | 20 A        | Fuel Pump Relay (RLY.4)          |
|       | AWD          |             | 20 A        | AWD ECU                          |

| Type | Fuse Name   | Symbol                                                                                           | Fuse Rating | Circuit Protected               |
|------|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|---------------------------------|
|      | ECU1        | E <sup>1</sup>  | 15 A        | ECM                             |
|      | TCU1        | T <sup>1</sup>  | 20 A        | TCM                             |
|      | MODULE1     | <sup>1</sup> MODULE                                                                              | 10 A        | Active Air Flap Module          |
|      | ACTIVE HOOD |                 | 10 A        | Active Hood Lift Control Module |
|      | HORN        |                 | 15 A        | PCB Block (Horn Relay)          |
|      | A/C1        | <sup>1</sup> A/C                                                                                 | 15 A        | A/C Relay (RLY.5)               |
|      | E-CVVT2     | <sup>2</sup> E-CVVT                                                                              | 20 A        | ECM(G4KR)                       |
|      | E-CVVT3     | <sup>3</sup> E-CVVT                                                                              | 20 A        | ECM(G4KR)                       |

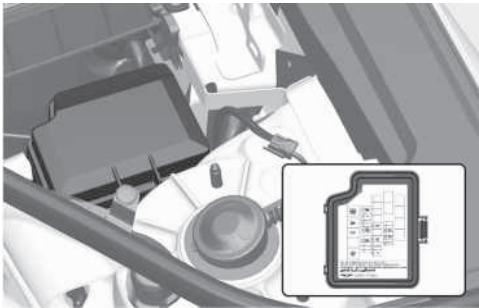
**Engine compartment fuse panel (PCB junction block)**

| Fuse Name | Symbol                                                                                             | Fuse Rating | Circuit Protected    |
|-----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|----------------------|
| IG1       | <b>IG1</b>                                                                                         | 30 A        | IG1 Relay            |
| ECU3      | E <sup>3</sup>  | 30 A        | Engine Control Relay |
| IG2       | <b>IG2</b>                                                                                         | 30 A        | IG2 Relay            |
| ACC       | <b>ACC</b>                                                                                         | 30 A        | ACC Relay            |

| Fuse Name | Symbol                                                                                               | Fuse Rating | Circuit Protected                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|-----------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ECU2      | <sup>E2</sup><br>   | 10 A        | ECM                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| MODULE2   | <sup>2</sup><br>MODULE                                                                               | 10 A        | Smart Cruise Control Radar, Front Radar LH/RH, AWD ECU                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| MDPS 2    | <sup>2</sup><br>    | 10 A        | MDPS Unit                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| SENSOR3   | <sup>S3</sup><br>   | 10 A        | [G4KR] Oxygen Sensor (Up/Down)<br>[G6DS] Not Used                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| SENSOR1   | <sup>S1</sup><br>   | 10 A        | [G4KR] Injector #1~#4, E/R Junction Block (RLY.4)<br>[G6DS] Injector #1~#6(MPI), E/R Junction Block (RLY.4)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| SENSOR4   | <sup>S4</sup><br>   | 15 A        | Cooling Fan Motor                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| WASHER    |                     | 15 A        | Washer Relay, E/R Junction Block (RLY.3)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| EWP       | EWP                                                                                                  | 20 A        | Electric Water Pump                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| IEB4      | <sup>4</sup><br>IEB                                                                                  | 10 A        | IEB Unit                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| TCU2      | <sup>T2</sup><br> | 15 A        | P/N Relay, TCM, Electronic Oil Pump                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| SENSOR2   | <sup>S2</sup><br> | 10 A        | [G4KR] E/R Junction Block (RLY.5), Oil Control Valve (Exhaust), Oil Pump Solenoid Valve, Purge Control Solenoid Valve, RCV Control Solenoid Valve, Canister Close Valve<br>[G6DS] E/R Junction Block (RLY.5), RCV Control Solenoid Valve #1/#2, Purge Control Solenoid Valve, Oil Pump Solenoid Valve, Oxygen Sensor #1~#4, Oil Control Valve #1~#4, Canister Close Valve |

| Fuse Name | Symbol                                                                                  | Fuse Rating | Circuit Protected                                        |
|-----------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| IGN COIL  | IGN COIL                                                                                | 15 A        | [G4KR] Ignition Coil #1~#4<br>[G6DS] Ignition Coil #1~#6 |
| ECU4      | E4<br> | 20 A        | ECM                                                      |

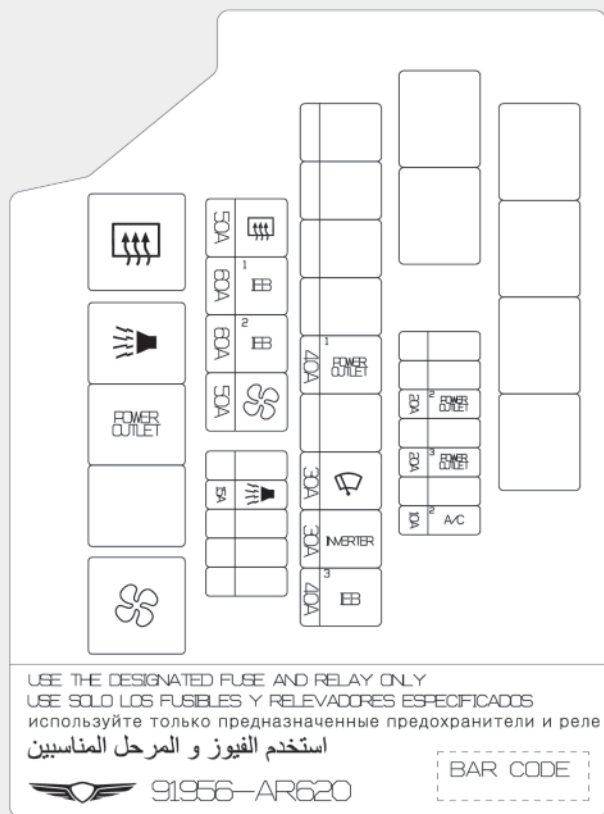
***Engine compartment fuse panel (Engine compartment sub junction block)***



Inside the fuse panel cover, you can find the panel label describing fuse names and ratings.

**Information**

Not all fuse panel descriptions in this manual may be applicable to your vehicle. When you inspect the fuse panel on your vehicle, refer to the fuse panel label.



Engine compartment fuse panel (Engine compartment sub junction block)

| Type | Fuse Name     | Symbol            | Fuse Rating | Circuit Protected           |
|------|---------------|-------------------|-------------|-----------------------------|
| SB   | POWER OUTLET1 | 1<br>POWER OUTLET | 40 A        | Power Outlet1 Relay (RLY.9) |
|      | WIPER FRT     | FRT<br>WIPER      | 30 A        | Wiper Motor                 |

| Type  | Fuse Name          | Symbol                                                                              | Fuse Rating | Circuit Protected                 |
|-------|--------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|-----------------------------------|
|       | INVERTER           | INVERTER                                                                            | 30 A        | AC Inverter                       |
|       | IEB3               | <sup>3</sup><br>IEB                                                                 | 40 A        | IEB Unit                          |
|       | REAR HEATED        |    | 50 A        | Rear Heated Relay (RLY.11)        |
|       | IEB1               | <sup>1</sup><br>IEB                                                                 | 60 A        | IEB Unit                          |
|       | IEB2               | <sup>2</sup><br>IEB                                                                 | 60 A        | IEB Unit                          |
|       | BLOWER             |    | 50 A        | Blower Relay (RLY.7)              |
| MICRO | A/C 2              | <sup>2</sup><br>A/C                                                                 | 10 A        | Front A/C Controller              |
|       | POWER OUTLET3      | <sup>3</sup><br>POWER OUTLET                                                        | 20 A        | Front Power Outlet                |
|       | POWER OUTLET2      | <sup>2</sup><br>POWER OUTLET                                                        | 20 A        | Luggage Power Outlet              |
|       | BULGLAR ALARM HORN |  | 15 A        | Burglar Alarm Horn Relay (RLY.10) |

### *Luggage compartment (Rear sub junction block)*



Inside the fuse panel cover, you can find the panel label describing fuse names and ratings.

### **Information**

---

Not all fuse panel descriptions in this manual may be applicable to your vehicle. When you inspect the fuse panel on your vehicle, refer to the fuse panel label.

---





### Luggage compartment (Rear sub junction block)

| Fuse Name       | Symbol                                                                                           | Fuse Rating | Circuit Protected                                                                                      |
|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| TRAILER3        | <sup>3</sup>  | 30 A        | Trailer Connector                                                                                      |
| POWER WINDOW RH | <br>RH        | 30 A        | Rear Power Window Module RH<br>[LHD] Passenger Power Window Module<br>[RHD] Driver Power Window Module |
| AMP             | <b>AMP</b>                                                                                       | 25 A        | [W/O ISG] AMP<br>[With ISG] Low DC-DC Converter (AMP)                                                  |

| Fuse Name            | Symbol                                                                                              | Fuse Rating | Circuit Protected                                                         |
|----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| PRESAFETY SEAT BELT3 | <sup>3</sup><br>PRESAFETY SEAT BELT                                                                 | 30 A        | Pre-Active Seat Belt Unit                                                 |
| TRAILER2             | <sup>2</sup>       | 25 A        | [W/O ISG] AMP<br>[With ISG] Low DC-DC Converter (AMP)                     |
| WIPER RR             |                    | 15 A        | Rear Wiper Motor                                                          |
| S/HEATER PASS2       | <sup>2</sup> PASS  | 15 A        | [W/O IMS] Passenger Power Seat Module                                     |
| PRESAFETY SEAT BELT2 | <sup>2</sup><br>PRESAFETY SEAT BELT                                                                 | 30 A        | Pre-Active Seat Belt Unit                                                 |
| E-LSD                | E-LSD                                                                                               | 20 A        | E-LSD Control Module                                                      |
| S/HEATER RR1         | <sup>1</sup> RR    | 20 A        | Rear Air Ventilation Seat Control Module, Rear Seat Warmer Control Module |
| POWER T/ GATE        |                    | 30 A        | Power Tailgate Module                                                     |
| S/HEATER RR2         | <sup>2</sup> RR    | 20 A        | Rear Air Ventilation Seat Control Module, Rear Seat Warmer Control Module |

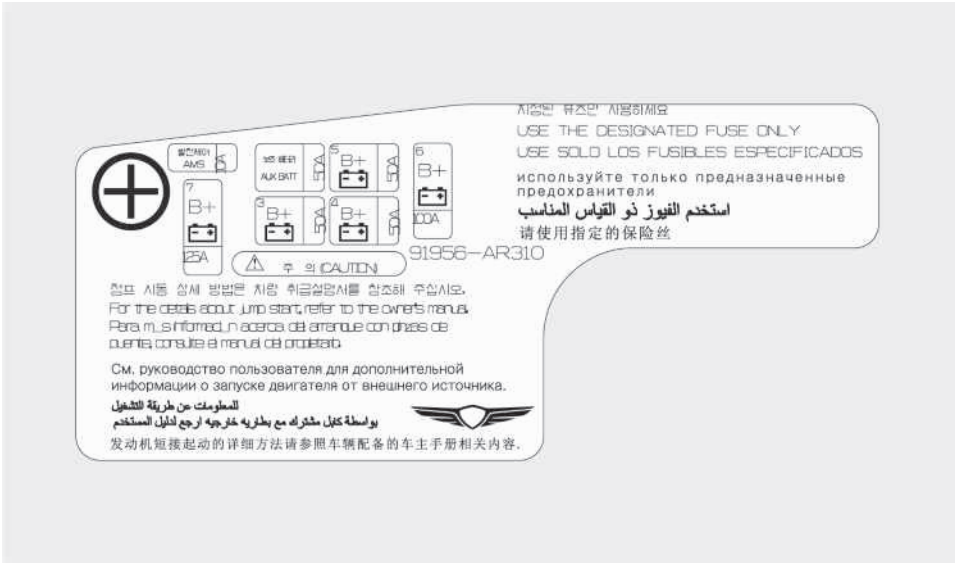
### ***Luggage compartment (Battery junction block)***



Inside the fuse panel cover, you can find the panel label describing fuse names and ratings.

Information

Not all fuse panel descriptions in this manual may be applicable to your vehicle. When you inspect the fuse panel on your vehicle, refer to the fuse panel label.



Luggage compartment (Battery junction block)

| Fuse Name | Symbol                                                                                | Fuse Rating | Circuit Protected                                                                 |
|-----------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| AUX BATT  | AUX BATT                                                                              | 50 A        | 12 V Lithium Auxiliary Battery                                                    |
| B+5       | 5  | 50 A        | PDC (IPS4, IPS5, IPS6, IPS7)                                                      |
| B+3       | 3  | 50 A        | PDC (Fuse - F9/F10/F17/F18/F25/F33/F34/F43/F51/F52/F59)                           |
| B+4       | 4  | 50 A        | PDC (IPS13, Long Term Load Latch Relay, Fuse - F4/F5/F12/F13/F20/F21/F37/F54/F55) |

| Fuse Name | Symbol                                                                              | Fuse Rating | Circuit Protected                                                          |
|-----------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| B+7       | 7  | 125 A       | Rear Junction Block (Fuse - S1/F6/F9/F12/F14/F16/F19/F20/ F22/F24/F25/F26) |
| B+6       | 6  | 100 A       | E/R Junction Block                                                         |
| AMS       | AMS                                                                                 | 10 A        | Battery Sensor                                                             |

## LED Lights

We recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer to replace most vehicle LED lamps. It is difficult to replace vehicle LED lamps because other parts of the vehicle must be removed before you can get to the lamp. This is especially true for removing the headlamp assembly to get to the lamps.

Removing/installing the headlamp assembly can result in damage to the vehicle.



### WARNING

---

- Prior to replacing a LED lamps, press the brake pedal, shift to P (Park), apply the parking brake, press the Engine Start/Stop button to the OFF position, and take the key with you when leaving the vehicle to avoid sudden movement of the vehicle and to prevent possible electric shock.
  - Be aware the bulbs may be hot and may burn your fingers.
- 

### NOTICE

---

- Be sure to replace the burned-out bulb with one of the same wattage to prevent damage to the fuse or electrical wiring system.
  - To prevent damage, do not clean the headlamp lens with chemical solvents or strong detergents.
- 

### Information

---

Headlamp desiccant (if equipped)

This vehicle is equipped with desiccant to reduce fogging inside the headlamp due to moisture. The desiccant is consumable and its performance may change based on the used period or environment. If fogging inside the headlamp due to moisture continues for a long time, we recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer.

---

### Information

---

The headlamp and tail lamp lenses could appear to have condensation inside if the vehicle is washed after driving or if the vehicle is driven in wet weather. This condition is caused by a higher temperature inside the light and a cooler outside temperature. Moisture that condenses in the lamp is removed after driving with the lamp on. If the moisture is not removed, we recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer.

---

### Information

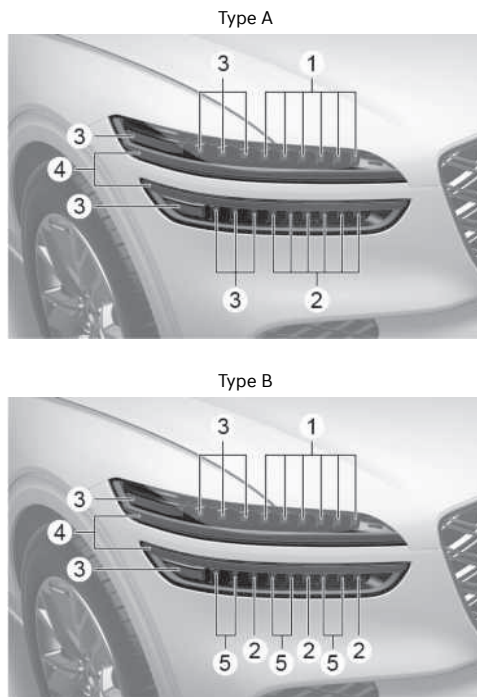
---

- A normally functioning lamp may flicker momentarily to stabilize the vehicle's electrical control system. If the lamp goes out, or continues to flicker, we recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer.
  - The parking lamp may not turn on when the parking lamp switch is turned on, but the parking lamp and headlamp switch may turn on when the headlamp switch is turned on. This may be caused by network failure or vehicle electrical control system malfunction. If this occurs, we recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer.
-

## Information

Adjust the headlamp aim after an accident or the headlamp is replaced.

### Headlamp, parking lamp, turn signal lamp, Daytime Running Light (DRL) replacement

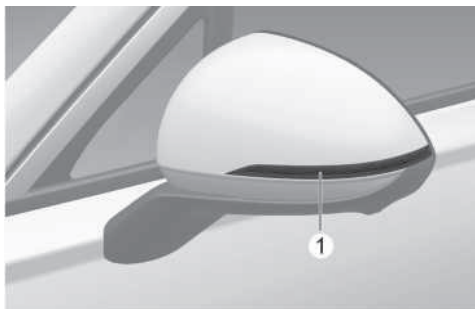


1. Headlamp (Low)
2. Headlamp (High)/Headlamp (Low beam assist)
3. Headlamp (Low beam assist)
4. Daytime running light/Parking lamp/Turn signal lamp
5. Intelligent front lighting system (High)/Headlamp (Low beam assist)

If the LED lamp does not operate, we recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer.

The LED lamp cannot be replaced as a single unit. A skilled technician should check or repair the LED lamp, or it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

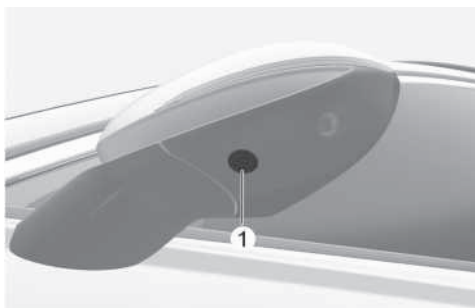
## Side repeater lamp replacement



If the LED lamp (1) does not operate, we recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer.

The LED lamp cannot be replaced as a single unit. A skilled technician should check or repair the LED lamp, or it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

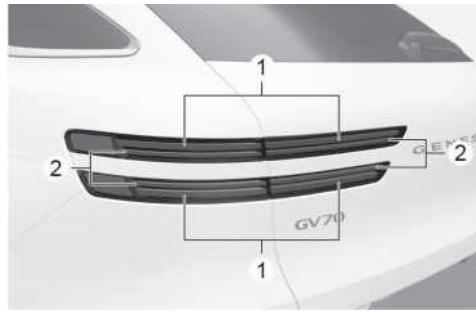
## Puddle lamp replacement



If the LED lamp (1) does not operate, we recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer.

The LED lamp cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. A skilled technician should check or repair the LED lamp, for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

## Rear combination lamp replacement

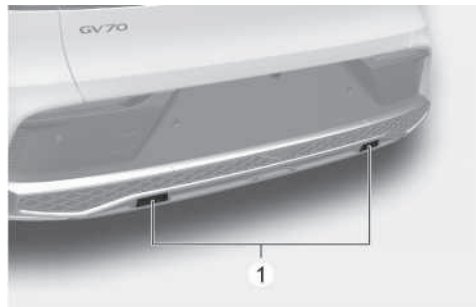


1. Tail lamp/Stop lamp
2. Turn signal lamp

If the LED lamp does not operate, we recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer.

The LED lamp cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. A skilled technician should check or repair the LED lamp, or it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

## Reverse lamp replacement



If the LED lamp (1) does not operate, we recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer.

The LED lamp cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. A skilled technician should check or repair the LED lamp, or it may damage related parts of the vehicle.



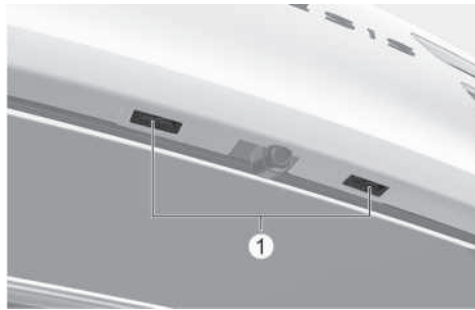
## High mounted stop lamp replacement



If the LED lamp (1) does not operate, we recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer.

The LED lamp cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. A skilled technician should check or repair the LED lamp, or it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

## Licence plate lamp replacement



If the LED lamp (1) does not operate, we recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer.

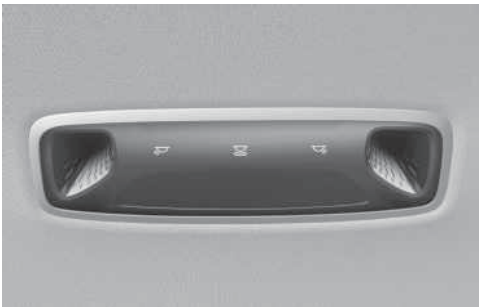
The LED lamp cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. A skilled technician should check or repair the LED lamp, or it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

# Interior light replacement

First row lamp



Rear interior lamp (without sunroof)



Personal lamp (with sunroof)



Vanity mirror lamp



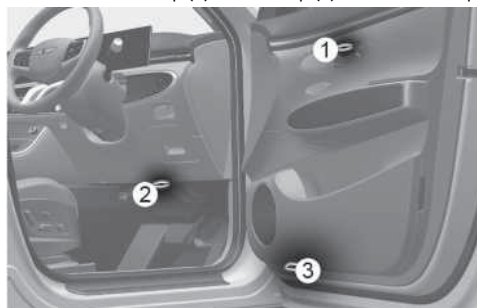
Centre console storage lamp



Glove box lamp



Inner door handle lamp (1) / Foot lamp (2) / Door foot lamp (3)



Mood lamp



Luggage compartment lamp



Tailgate emergency lamp



If the LED lamp does not operate, we recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer.

The LED lamp cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. A skilled technician should check or repair the LED lamp, or it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

## Appearance care

### Exterior care

#### NOTICE

---

If you park your vehicle near a stainless steel sign or glass facade building, the vehicle's exterior plastic parts such as a bumper, spoiler, garnish, lamp or outside rearview mirrors might be damaged due to sunlight reflected from the sign or building. To prevent damage of the exterior plastic parts, you should avoid parking in areas where light may be reflected or use a car cover. (The exterior plastic parts applied to your vehicle may vary.)

---

#### *Exterior general caution*

It is very important to follow the label directions when using any chemical cleaner or polish. Read all warning and caution statements that appear on the label.

#### *Finish maintenance*

##### Washing

To help protect your vehicle's finish from rust and deterioration, wash it thoroughly and frequently at least once a month with lukewarm or cold water.

If you use your vehicle for off-road driving, you should wash it after each off-road trip. Pay special attention to the removal of any accumulation of salt, dirt, mud, and other foreign materials. Make sure the drain holes in the lower edges of the doors and rocker panels are kept clear and clean.

Insects, tar, tree sap, bird droppings, industrial pollution, and similar deposits may damage your vehicle's finish if not removed immediately.

Even prompt washing with plain water may not completely remove all these deposits. Use a mild soap, safe for use on painted surfaces.

After washing, rinse the vehicle thoroughly with lukewarm or cold water. Do not allow soap to dry on the finish.

#### NOTICE

---

High pressure water may damage front and rear cameras, sensors, vehicle trim, and boots (rubber or plastic covers) or connectors.

---



#### WARNING

---

After washing the vehicle, dry the brakes by applying them lightly whilst maintaining a slow forward speed.

---

#### NOTICE

---

- Do not use strong soap, chemical detergents, or hot water, and do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight or when the body of the vehicle is warm.
  - To prevent damage to the plastic parts, do not clean with chemical solvents or strong detergents.
-

## NOTICE

---



- Water washing in the engine compartment including high pressure water washing may cause the failure of electrical circuits located in the engine compartment.
  - Never allow water or other liquids to come in contact with electrical/electronic components inside the vehicle to prevent damage.
- 

## Information

---

Matte paint finish vehicle (if equipped)

To prevent damage the matte finish:

- Do not go through an automatic car wash with rotating brushes.
  - Avoid using a steam cleaner. High temperature steam may leave stains that are difficult to remove.
  - Use a soft cloth (e.g. microfiber towel or sponge) when washing your vehicle and dry with a microfiber towel. When you hand wash your vehicle, do not use a cleaner that finishes with wax. If the vehicle surface is too dirty (sand, dirt, dust, contaminant, etc.), clean the surface with water before washing the vehicle.
- 

## Waxing

A good coat of wax helps protect your paint from contaminants.

Wax the vehicle when water no longer beads on the paint.

Always wash and dry the vehicle before waxing. Use a good quality liquid or paste wax, and follow the manufacturer's instructions. Wax all metal trim to protect it and to maintain its luster.

Removing oil, tar, and similar materials with a spot remover usually strips the wax from the finish. Be sure to re-wax these areas even if the rest of the vehicle does not yet need waxing.

## NOTICE

---

- Do not wipe dust or dirt off the body with a dry cloth to prevent scratching the finish.
  - Do not use steel wool, abrasive cleaners, or strong detergents containing highly alkaline or caustic agents on chrome-plated or anodized aluminium parts to prevent discolouration or paint deterioration.
-

## NOTICE

---

Matte paint finish vehicle (if equipped)

Do not use any polish protector such as detergent, abrasive, or polish. If wax is applied, remove the wax immediately using a silicone remover. If any tar or tar contaminant is on the surface, use a tar remover to clean. Be careful not to apply too much pressure on the painted area.

---

### ***Finish damage repair***

Deep scratches or stone chips on the painted surface must be repaired promptly. Exposed metal quickly rusts and may develop into a major repair expense.

## Information

---

If your vehicle is damaged and requires any metal repair or replacement, make sure the body shop applies anti-corrosion materials to the parts repaired or replaced.

---

## NOTICE

---

Matte paint finish vehicle (if equipped)

It is impossible to only repaint the damaged area. The whole part must be repainted as necessary. If the vehicle is damaged and painting is required, we recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer.

---

### ***Bright-metal maintenance***

- To remove road tar and insects, use a tar remover, not a scraper or other sharp object.
- To protect the surfaces of bright-metal parts from corrosion, apply a coating of wax or chrome preservative, and rub to a high luster.
- During winter weather or in coastal areas, cover the bright metal parts with a heavier coating of wax or preservative. If necessary, coat the parts with non-corrosive petroleum jelly or other protective compound.

### ***Underbody maintenance***

Corrosive materials used for ice and snow removal and dust control may collect on the underbody. If these materials are not removed, accelerated rusting may occur on underbody parts such as fuel lines, frame, floor pan, and exhaust system, even though they have been treated with rust protection.

Thoroughly flush the vehicle underbody and wheel openings with lukewarm or cold water once a month, after off-road driving and at the end of each winter. Pay special attention to these areas because it is difficult to see all the mud and dirt. It will do more harm than good to wet down the road grime without removing it. The lower edges of doors, rocker panels, and frame members have drain holes that must not be allowed to clog with dirt. Trapped water in these areas may cause rusting.

### ***Aluminium wheel maintenance***

The aluminium wheels are coated with a clear protective finish.

- Do not use abrasive cleaner, polishing compound, solvent, or wire brushes on aluminium wheels.



- Use only a mild soap or neutral detergent, and rinse thoroughly with water. Also, clean the wheels after driving on salted roads.
- Do not wash the wheels with high-speed car wash brushes.
- Do not use any cleaners containing acid or alkaline detergents.

## ***Corrosion protection***

### **Protecting your vehicle from corrosion**

By using the most advanced design and construction practices to combat corrosion, Genesis produces vehicles of the highest quality. However, this is only part of the job. To achieve the long-term corrosion resistance your vehicle can deliver, the owner's cooperation and assistance are also required.

### **Common causes of corrosion**

The most common causes of corrosion on your vehicle are:

- Road salt, dirt, and moisture that is allowed to accumulate underneath the vehicle.
- Removal of paint or protective coatings by stones, gravel, abrasion, minor scrapes, and dents that leave unprotected metal exposed to corrosion.

### **High-corrosion areas**

If you live in an area where your vehicle is regularly exposed to corrosive materials, corrosion protection is particularly important. Some of the common causes of accelerated corrosion are road salts, dust control chemicals, ocean air, and industrial pollution.

### **Moisture breeds corrosion**

Moisture creates the conditions in which corrosion is most likely to occur. For example, corrosion is accelerated by high humidity, particularly when temperatures are just above freezing. In such conditions, the corrosive material is kept in contact with the vehicle surfaces by moisture that is slow to evaporate.

Mud is particularly corrosive because it is slow to dry and holds moisture in contact with the vehicle. Although the mud appears to be dry, it can still retain moisture and promote corrosion.

High temperatures may also accelerate corrosion of parts that are not properly ventilated so moisture disperses. For all these reasons, it is particularly important to keep your vehicle clean and free of mud or accumulations of other materials. This applies not only to the visible surfaces but particularly to the underside of the vehicle.

### **To help prevent corrosion**

#### **Keep your vehicle clean**

The best way to prevent corrosion is to keep your vehicle clean and free of corrosive materials. Attention to the underside of the vehicle is particularly important.

- If you live in a high-corrosion area where road salts are used, near the ocean, areas with industrial pollution, acid rain, and the like, take extra care to prevent corrosion. In winter, hose off the underside of your vehicle at least once a month and be sure to clean the underside thoroughly when winter is over.
- When cleaning underneath the vehicle, pay particular attention to the components under the fenders and other areas that are hidden from view. Do a thorough job; just dampening the accumulated mud rather than washing it away may accelerate

corrosion rather than prevent it. Water under high pressure and steam are particularly effective in removing accumulated mud and corrosive materials.

- When cleaning lower door panels, rocker panels, and frame members, make sure that drain holes are kept open so that moisture can escape and not be trapped inside to accelerate corrosion.

### **Keep your garage dry**

Do not park your vehicle in a damp, poorly ventilated garage. This creates a favorable environment for corrosion. This is particularly true if you wash your vehicle in the garage or drive it into the garage when it is still wet or covered with snow, ice, or mud. Even a heated garage may contribute to corrosion unless it is well ventilated so moisture is dispersed.

### **Keep paint and trim in good condition**

Scratches or chips in the finish must be covered with "touch-up" paint as soon as possible to reduce the possibility of corrosion. If bare metal is showing through, the attention of a qualified body and paint shop is recommended.

Bird droppings are highly corrosive and may damage painted surfaces in just a few hours. Always remove bird droppings as soon as possible.

## **Interior care**

### ***Interior general precautions***

Prevent caustic solutions such as perfume and cosmetic oil, from contacting the interior parts because they may cause damage or discolouration. If they do contact the interior parts, wipe them off immediately. See the instructions for the proper way to clean vehicle interior surfaces.

## **NOTICE**

---

- Never allow water or other liquids to come in contact with electrical/electronic components inside the vehicle as this may damage them.
  - When cleaning leather products (steering wheel, seats etc.), use neutral detergents or low alcohol content solutions. If you use high alcohol content solutions or acid/alkaline detergents, the colour of the leather may fade or the surface may get stripped off.
  - During window tinting, make sure window tinting solution does not flow into electronic devices inside the vehicle. It may cause breakdown and malfunction of devices.
- 

### ***Cleaning the upholstery and interior trim***

#### **Vehicle interior surfaces**

 if equipped

Remove dust and loose dirt from interior surfaces with a whisk broom or a vacuum cleaner. If necessary, clean interior surfaces with a mixture of warm water and mild non-detergent cleaner (test all cleaners on a concealed area before use).

#### **Fabric**

 if equipped

Remove dust and loose dirt from fabric with a whisk broom or vacuum cleaner. Clean with a mild soap solution recommended for upholstery or carpets. Remove fresh spots

immediately with a fabric spot cleaner. If you do not pay attention to fresh spots immediately, the fabric may be stained and its colour may be affected. Also, its fire-resistant properties may be reduced if the material is not properly maintained.

## NOTICE

---

Using anything but recommended cleaners and procedures may affect the fabric's appearance and fire-resistant properties.

---

### Leather

 if equipped

- Features of seat leather
  - Leather is made from the outer skin of an animal, which goes through a special process to be available for use. Because it is a natural product, each part differs in thickness or density.  
Wrinkles may appear as a natural result of stretching and shrinking depending on the temperature and humidity.
  - The seat is made of stretchable fabric to improve comfort.
  - The parts contacting the body are curved and the side supporting area is high that provides driving comfort and stability.
  - Wrinkles may appear naturally from usage. It is not a fault of the products.

## NOTICE

---

- Wrinkles or abrasions that appear naturally from usage are not covered by warranty.
  - Belts with metallic accessories, zippers, or keys inside the back pocket may damage the seat fabric.
  - Be sure not to wet the seat. It may change the nature of natural leather.
  - Jeans or clothes that could bleed may contaminate the surface of the seat covering fabric.
- 

- Caring for the leather seats
  - Vacuum the seat periodically to remove dust and sand on the seat. It prevents abrasion or damage of the leather and maintain its quality.
  - Wipe the natural leather seat cover often with dry or soft cloth.
  - Use of proper leather protector may prevent abrasion of the cover and helps maintain the colour. Be sure to read the instructions and consult a specialist when using leather coating or protective agent.
  - Light coloured (beige, cream beige) leather may be easily contaminated and the stains may be noticeable.
  - Avoid wiping with a wet cloth. It may cause the surface to crack.
- Cleaning the leather seats
  - Remove all spills instantly.
  - For cosmetic products (sunscreen, foundation, etc.)  
Apply cleansing cream on a cloth and wipe the contaminated spot. Wipe off the cream with a damp cloth and then wipe with a dry cloth.

- For beverages (coffee, soft drink, etc.)

Apply a small amount of neutral detergent and wipe until it does not smear.

- For oil

Remove oil instantly with an absorbable cloth and wipe with stain remover used only for natural leather.

- For chewing gum

Harden the gum with ice and remove it gradually.

- Handling prime napa leather (if equipped)

Try to avoid excessive sunlight and heat exposure. Excessive sunlight and heat exposure naturally fades and dries out napa leather, causing wrinkles and discolouration. If the napa leather is wet with liquid, immediately clean it with lint-free cloth to minimise damage. Do not scratch the napa leather surface with a sharp object. If your napa leather seat is bright coloured, it may be contaminated or stained from dyed materials such as jeans.

### ***Interior wooden trim***

- Use a wooden furniture protector (e.g. wax, coating compound) to clean the interior wooden trim.
- Sharp objects (e.g. driver, knife), adhesive materials, or tapes may damage the interior wooden trim.
- Any strong impacts may damage the interior wooden trim.
- If the coating finish over the interior wooden trim is removed, moisture may damage or change wood traits.
- If the interior wooden trim is damaged, you may get a splinter from the wood surface. We recommend that the damaged interior wooden trim be replaced by an authorised Genesis repairer.

### ***Cleaning the seat belt webbing***

Clean the belt webbing with any mild soap solution recommended for cleaning upholstery or carpet. Follow the instructions provided with the soap.



#### **WARNING**

---

Do not bleach or re-dye the webbing because this may weaken the seat belt.

---

### ***Cleaning the interior window glass***

If the interior glass surfaces need to be cleaned, use a glass cleaner. Follow the directions on the glass cleaner container.

#### **NOTICE**

---

Do not scrape or scratch the inside of the rear window. This may result in damage to the rear window defroster grid.

---

## Emission control system

The emission control system of your vehicle is covered by a written limited warranty. Please see the warranty information contained in the Service Passport in your vehicle.

Your vehicle is equipped with an emission control system to meet all Australian Design Rules (ADR) requirements.

Your vehicle is equipped with an emission control system to meet all applicable emission regulations. There are three emission control systems, as follows:

- 1 Crankcase emission control system
- 2 Evaporative emission control system
- 3 Exhaust emission control system

In order to ensure the proper function of the emission control systems, it is recommended that you have your vehicle inspected and maintained by an authorised Genesis repairer in accordance with the maintenance schedule in this manual.

### NOTICE

---

For the Inspection and Maintenance Test (with Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system)

- To prevent the vehicle from misfiring during dynamometer testing, turn the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system off by pressing the ESC button (ESC OFF light illuminated).
  - After dynamometer testing is completed, turn the ESC system back on by pressing the ESC button again.
- 

### 1. Crankcase emission control system

The positive crankcase ventilation system is used to prevent air pollution caused by blow-by gases being emitted from the crankcase. This system supplies fresh filtered air to the crankcase through the air intake hose. Inside the crankcase, the fresh air mixes with blow-by gases, which then pass through the PCV valve into the induction system.

### 2. Evaporative emission control system

The evaporative Emission Control System is designed to prevent fuel vapours from escaping into the atmosphere.

#### *Canister*

Fuel vapours generated inside the fuel tank are absorbed and stored in the onboard canister. When the engine is running, the fuel vapours absorbed in the canister are drawn into the surge tank through the purge control solenoid valve.

#### *Purge Control Solenoid Valve (PCSV)*

The purge control solenoid valve is controlled by the Engine Control Module (ECM). When the engine coolant temperature is low during idling, the PCSV closes so that evaporated fuel is not taken into the engine. After the engine warms-up during ordinary driving, the PCSV opens to introduce evaporated fuel to the engine.

### 3. Exhaust emission control system

The Exhaust Emission Control System controls exhaust emissions whilst maintaining good vehicle performance.

When the engine starts or fails to start, excessive attempts to restart the engine may cause damage to the emission system.

### ***Engine exhaust (carbon monoxide) precautions***

- Carbon monoxide is present with other exhaust fumes. If you smell exhaust fumes in your vehicle, drive with all the windows fully open. Have your vehicle inspected and repaired immediately.
- Do not operate the engine in confined or closed areas (such as garages) any more than what is necessary to move the vehicle in or out of the area.
- When the vehicle is stopped in an open area for more than a short time with the engine running, adjust the ventilation system (as needed) to draw outside air into the vehicle.
- Never sit in a parked or stopped vehicle for an extended time with the engine running.
- When the engine stalls or fails to start, excessive attempts to restart the engine may cause damage to the emission control system.



### **WARNING**

---

Engine exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide (CO). Though colourless and odourless, it is dangerous and could be lethal if inhaled. Follow the instructions on this page to avoid CO poisoning.

---

### ***Operating precautions for catalytic converters***



if equipped



### **WARNING**

---

The exhaust system and catalytic system are very hot whilst the engine is running or immediately after the engine is turned off. To avoid serious injury or death:

- Do not park, idle, or drive the vehicle over or near flammable objects, such as grass, vegetation, paper, leaves, etc. A hot exhaust system can may ignite flammable items under your vehicle.
- Keep away from the exhaust system and catalytic converter or you may get burned.

Also, do not remove the heat sink around the exhaust system, do not seal the bottom of the vehicle, and do not coat the vehicle for corrosion control. It may present a fire risk under certain conditions.

---

Your vehicle is equipped with a catalytic converter emission control device.

## NOTICE

---

To prevent damage to the catalytic converter and to your vehicle, take the following precautions:

- Use only UNLEADED FUEL for petrol engines.
- Do not operate the vehicle when there are signs of engine malfunction, such as misfire or a noticeable loss of performance.
- Do not misuse or abuse the engine. Examples of misuse are coasting with the engine off and descending steep gradients in gear with the engine off.
- Do not operate the engine at high idle speed for an extended period of time (5 minutes or more).
- Do not modify or tamper with any part of the engine or emission control system.  
We recommend that all inspections and adjustments must be made by an authorised Genesis repairer.
- Avoid driving with an extremely low fuel level.

Running out of fuel may cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter. Failure to follow these precautions may void your vehicle warranty.

---





# 10.Index

## A

- Accessing your vehicle Accessing your vehicle
  - Immobiliser system Immobiliser system
  - Smart key Smart key
- Active Air Flap (AAF) Active Air Flap (AAF)
  - System malfunction System malfunction
- Active bonnet lift system Active bonnet lift system
  - System activation System activation
  - System limitation System limitation
  - System malfunction System malfunction
- Active sound design Active sound design
- Advanced Rear Occupant Alert (ROA) Advanced Rear Occupant Alert (ROA)
  - Declaration of Conformity Declaration of Conformity
  - Rear Occupant Alert precautions Rear Occupant Alert precautions
  - System operation System operation
  - System setting System setting
- Air cleaner Air cleaner
  - Filter replacement Filter replacement
- Air conditioner compressor label Air conditioner compressor label
- Air conditioning system Air conditioning system
- All Wheel Drive (AWD) All Wheel Drive (AWD)
  - All Wheel Drive (AWD) operation All Wheel Drive (AWD) operation
  - Emergency precautions Emergency precautions
- Appearance care Appearance care
  - Exterior care Exterior care
  - Interior care Interior care
- Australian design rules Australian design rules
- Automatic climate control system Automatic climate control system
  - Automatic heating and air conditioning Automatic heating and air conditioning
  - Manual heating and air conditioning Manual heating and air conditioning
  - System maintenance System maintenance
  - System operation System operation
- Automatic transmission Automatic transmission
  - Automatic transmission operation Automatic transmission operation
  - Good driving practices Good driving practices
  - LCD display messages (Instrument cluster) LCD display messages (Instrument cluster)
  - Paddle shifter (Manual shift mode) Paddle shifter (Manual shift mode)

## B

- Battery Battery
  - Battery capacity label Battery capacity label
  - Battery recharging Battery recharging
  - Battery replacement Battery replacement
  - For best battery service For best battery service
  - Reset items Reset items
- Before driving Before driving
  - Before entering the vehicle Before entering the vehicle
  - Before starting Before starting
- Before Using Driver Assistance System Before Using Driver Assistance System
  - Driver Assistance System sensors Driver Assistance System sensors
- Before Using Driver Assistance Systems Before Using Driver Assistance Systems
- Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist (BCA) Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist (BCA)
  - Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction and limitations Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction and limitations
  - Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist operation Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist operation
  - Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist settings Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist settings
- Blind-Spot View Monitor (BVM) Blind-Spot View Monitor (BVM)
  - Blind-Spot View Monitor malfunction Blind-Spot View Monitor malfunction
  - Blind-Spot View Monitor operation Blind-Spot View Monitor operation
  - Blind-Spot View Monitor settings Blind-Spot View Monitor settings
- Bonnet Bonnet
  - Closing the bonnet Closing the bonnet
  - Opening the bonnet Opening the bonnet
- Brake fluid Brake fluid
  - Checking the brake fluid level Checking the brake fluid level
- Braking system Braking system
  - Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)
  - Auto Hold Auto Hold
  - Brake Assistant System (BAS) Brake Assistant System (BAS)
  - Crosswind Stability Control (CSC) Crosswind Stability Control (CSC)
  - Disc brakes wear indicator Disc brakes wear indicator
  - Downhill Brake Control (DBC) Downhill Brake Control (DBC)
  - Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) Electronic Parking Brake (EPB)
  - Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Electronic Stability Control (ESC)
  - Emergency Stop Signal (ESS) Emergency Stop Signal (ESS)

- Good braking practices Good braking practices
- High performance brake High performance brake
- Hill-Start Assist Control (HAC) Hill-Start Assist Control (HAC)
- Multi-Collision Brake (MCB) Multi-Collision Brake (MCB)
- Power-assist brakes Power-assist brakes
- Vehicle Stability Management (VSM) Vehicle Stability Management (VSM)
- Bulb wattage Bulb wattage

## C

- Cabin air filter Cabin air filter
  - Filter inspection Filter inspection
  - Filter replacement Filter replacement
- Centre console overview Centre console overview
- Child Restraint System (CRS) Child Restraint System (CRS)
  - Installing a Child Restraint System Installing a Child Restraint System
  - Our recommendation: Children always in the rear Our recommendation: Children always in the rear
  - Selecting a Child Restraint System Selecting a Child Restraint System
- Climate control additional features Climate control additional features
  - Air conditioning auto-drying Air conditioning auto-drying
  - Auto defogging system Auto defogging system
  - Auto dehumidify Auto dehumidify
  - Automatic controls linked to climate control settings (for driver's seat) Automatic controls linked to climate control settings (for driver's seat)
  - Recirculating air when entering a tunnel Recirculating air when entering a tunnel
  - Recirculating air when washer fluid is used Recirculating air when washer fluid is used
  - Sunroof inside air recirculation Sunroof inside air recirculation
- Coasting Coasting
  - Coasting operating conditions Coasting operating conditions
  - Coasting release conditions Coasting release conditions
  - Coasting setting Coasting setting
- Convenience features Convenience features

## D

- Declaration of conformity Declaration of conformity
  - Front corner radar/Rear corner radar Front corner radar/Rear corner radar
  - Front radar Front radar
- Dimensions Dimensions
- Door locks Door locks
  - Automatic door lock and unlock features Automatic door lock and unlock features
  - Child-protector rear door locks Child-protector rear door locks

- Electronic child safety lock Electronic child safety lock
- Operating door locks from inside the vehicle Operating door locks from inside the vehicle
- Operating door locks from outside the vehicle Operating door locks from outside the vehicle
- Drive Mode Integrated Control System (AWD) Drive Mode Integrated Control System (AWD)
  - Drive mode Drive mode
  - Multi terrain mode Multi terrain mode
- Driver assistance systems Driver assistance systems
- Driver Attention Warning (DAW) Driver Attention Warning (DAW)
  - Driver Attention Warning malfunction and limitations Driver Attention Warning malfunction and limitations
  - Driver Attention Warning operation Driver Attention Warning operation
  - Driver Attention Warning settings Driver Attention Warning settings
- Driving your vehicle Driving your vehicle

## E

- Electronic control suspension Electronic control suspension
  - System malfunction System malfunction
- Electronic limited slip differential Electronic limited slip differential
  - Drive mode selection Drive mode selection
  - Warning messages Warning messages
- Electronically controlled suspension with road preview Electronically controlled suspension with road preview
  - Limitations of the system Limitations of the system
  - System malfunction System malfunction
- Emergency situations Emergency situations
- Emission control system Emission control system
  - 1. Crankcase emission control system 1. Crankcase emission control system
  - 2. Evaporative emission control system 2. Evaporative emission control system
  - 3. Exhaust emission control system 3. Exhaust emission control system
- Engine Engine
- Engine compartment Engine compartment
- Engine coolant/liquid-cooled intercooler coolant Engine coolant/liquid-cooled intercooler coolant
  - Changing coolant Changing coolant
  - Checking the coolant level Checking the coolant level
- Engine number Engine number
- Engine oil Engine oil
  - Checking the engine oil and filter Checking the engine oil and filter
  - Checking the engine oil level Checking the engine oil level

- Engine start/stop button Engine start/stop button
  - Engine Start/Stop button positions Engine Start/Stop button positions
  - Starting the engine Starting the engine
  - Turning off the engine Turning off the engine
- Explanation of scheduled maintenance items Explanation of scheduled maintenance items
  - Air cleaner filter Air cleaner filter
  - Air conditioning refrigerant Air conditioning refrigerant
  - Automatic transmission fluid Automatic transmission fluid
  - Brake discs, pads, calipers, and rotors Brake discs, pads, calipers, and rotors
  - Brake fluid Brake fluid
  - Brake hoses and lines Brake hoses and lines
  - Cooling system Cooling system
  - Drive belts Drive belts
  - Drive shafts and boots Drive shafts and boots
  - Engine coolant/liquid-cooled intercooler coolant Engine coolant/liquid-cooled intercooler coolant
  - Engine oil and filter Engine oil and filter
  - Exhaust pipe and muffler Exhaust pipe and muffler
  - Fuel filter (for petrol engine) Fuel filter (for petrol engine)
  - Fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections Fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections
  - Propeller shaft and related Propeller shaft and related
  - Spark plugs (for petrol engine) Spark plugs (for petrol engine)
  - Steering gear box, linkage & boots/lower arm ball joint Steering gear box, linkage & boots/lower arm ball joint
  - Suspension mounting bolts Suspension mounting bolts
  - Vapour hose and fuel filler cap Vapour hose and fuel filler cap
- Exterior features Exterior features
  - Roof side rails Roof side rails
- Exterior lights Exterior lights
  - Battery saver function Battery saver function
  - Headlamp moisture removal function Headlamp moisture removal function
  - Headlamps delay function Headlamps delay function
  - Headlamps levelling device Headlamps levelling device
  - High beam operation High beam operation
  - Lighting control Lighting control
  - Reverse guide lamp Reverse guide lamp
  - Turn signals and lane change signals Turn signals and lane change signals
- Exterior overview (Front view) Exterior overview (Front view)
- Exterior overview (Rear view) Exterior overview (Rear view)

## F

- Fingerprint authentication system Fingerprint authentication system
  - Fingerprint authentication system operation Fingerprint authentication system operation
  - Fingerprint authentication system settings Fingerprint authentication system settings
  - Limitations of the system Limitations of the system
  - When purchasing a used vehicle When purchasing a used vehicle
- Foreword Foreword
- Forward Attention Warning (FAW) Forward Attention Warning (FAW)
  - Forward Attention Warning malfunction and limitations Forward Attention Warning malfunction and limitations
  - Forward Attention Warning operation Forward Attention Warning operation
  - Forward Attention Warning settings Forward Attention Warning settings
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA) Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)
  - Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction and limitations Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction and limitations
  - Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist operation Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist operation
  - Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist settings Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist settings
- Forward/Side/Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist (PCA) Forward/Side/Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist (PCA)
  - Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction and limitations Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction and limitations
  - Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist operation Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist operation
  - Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist settings Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist settings
- Fuel filler door Fuel filler door
  - Closing the fuel filler door Closing the fuel filler door
  - Opening the fuel filler door Opening the fuel filler door
- Fuel label Fuel label
  - Petrol engine Petrol engine
- Fuel requirements Fuel requirements
  - Petrol engine Petrol engine
- Fuses Fuses
  - Engine compartment panel fuse replacement Engine compartment panel fuse replacement
  - Fuse/relay panel description Fuse/relay panel description
  - Instrument panel fuse replacement Instrument panel fuse replacement

## H

- Hazard warning flasher Hazard warning flasher
- Head-Up Display (HUD) Head-Up Display (HUD)
  - Head-up display information Head-up display information
  - Head-up display settings Head-up display settings
  - Precautions whilst using the head-up display Precautions whilst using the head-up display
- High Beam Assist (HBA) High Beam Assist (HBA)
  - High Beam Assist malfunction and limitations High Beam Assist malfunction and limitations
  - High Beam Assist operation High Beam Assist operation
  - High Beam Assist setting High Beam Assist setting
- Highway Driving Assist (HDA) Highway Driving Assist (HDA)
  - Highway Driving Assist malfunction and limitations Highway Driving Assist malfunction and limitations
  - Highway Driving Assist operation Highway Driving Assist operation
  - Highway Driving Assist settings Highway Driving Assist settings
- Highway Driving Assist (HDA):Highway Lane Change Assist Highway Driving Assist (HDA):Highway Lane Change Assist
- Hyundai Motor Company Hyundai Motor Company
- |
- If the engine does not start If the engine does not start
- If the engine overheats If the engine overheats
- If you have a flat tyre (with spare tyre) If you have a flat tyre (with spare tyre)
  - Changing tyres Changing tyres
  - Jack and tools Jack and tools
  - Jack label Jack label
- Important safety precautions Important safety precautions
  - Airbag hazards Airbag hazards
  - Always wear your seat belt Always wear your seat belt
  - Control your speed Control your speed
  - Driver distraction Driver distraction
  - Keep your vehicle in safe condition Keep your vehicle in safe condition
  - Never drink or take drugs and drive Never drink or take drugs and drive
  - Restrain all children Restrain all children
- In case of an emergency whilst driving In case of an emergency whilst driving
  - If the engine stalls at a crossroads or crossing If the engine stalls at a crossroads or crossing
  - If the engine stalls whilst driving If the engine stalls whilst driving
  - If you have a flat tyre whilst driving If you have a flat tyre whilst driving
- Infotainment system Infotainment system
  - Antenna Antenna

- BANG & OLUFSEN sound system BANG & OLUFSEN sound system
- Bluetooth® Wireless Technology Bluetooth® Wireless Technology
- Infotainment system Infotainment system
- Steering wheel remote controls Steering wheel remote controls
- USB Port USB Port
- Voice recognition Voice recognition
- Instrument cluster Instrument cluster
  - Gauges and meters Gauges and meters
  - Instrument cluster control Instrument cluster control
  - Instrument cluster display messages Instrument cluster display messages
  - Transmission shift indicator Transmission shift indicator
  - Warning and indicator lights Warning and indicator lights
- Instrument cluster display Instrument cluster display
  - Instrument cluster display control Instrument cluster display control
  - View modes View modes
- Integrated memory system Integrated memory system
  - Recalling memory positions Recalling memory positions
  - Resetting the system Resetting the system
  - Seat easy access Seat easy access
  - Storing memory positions Storing memory positions
- Intelligent Front-lighting System (IFS) Intelligent Front-lighting System (IFS)
  - System malfunction and limitations System malfunction and limitations
  - System operation System operation
  - System settings System settings
- Intelligent Speed Limit Assist (ISLA) Intelligent Speed Limit Assist (ISLA)
  - Intelligent Speed Limit Assist malfunction and limitations Intelligent Speed Limit Assist malfunction and limitations
  - Intelligent Speed Limit Assist operation Intelligent Speed Limit Assist operation
  - Intelligent Speed Limit Assist settings Intelligent Speed Limit Assist settings
- Interior features Interior features
  - Clock Clock
  - Coat hook Coat hook
  - Cup holder Cup holder
  - Floor mat anchors Floor mat anchors
  - Luggage net holder Luggage net holder
  - Luggage security screen Luggage security screen
  - Power outlet Power outlet
  - Rear side window sunshades Rear side window sunshades
  - Sunvisor Sunvisor
  - USB charger USB charger



- UV-C sterilizer system UV-C sterilizer system
- Wireless smartphone charging system Wireless smartphone charging system
- Interior lights Interior lights
  - Door handle lamp/Foot lamp/Door foot lamp Door handle lamp/Foot lamp/Door foot lamp
  - Front lights Front lights
  - Glove box lamp Glove box lamp
  - Interior light AUTO cut Interior light AUTO cut
  - Interior lights always on Interior lights always on
  - Luggage compartment lamp Luggage compartment lamp
  - Mood lamp Mood lamp
  - Puddle light Puddle light
  - Rear interior lamp Rear interior lamp
  - Tailgate emergency lamp Tailgate emergency lamp
  - Vanity mirror lamp Vanity mirror lamp
- Interior overview Interior overview
- Introduction Introduction

## J

- Jump starting Jump starting

## L

- Lane Following Assist (LFA) Lane Following Assist (LFA)
  - Lane Following Assist malfunction and limitations Lane Following Assist malfunction and limitations
  - Lane Following Assist operation Lane Following Assist operation
  - Lane Following Assist settings Lane Following Assist settings
- Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) Lane Keeping Assist (LKA)
  - Lane Keeping Assist malfunction and limitations Lane Keeping Assist malfunction and limitations
  - Lane Keeping Assist operation Lane Keeping Assist operation
  - Lane Keeping Assist settings Lane Keeping Assist settings
- Launch Control Launch Control
  - Launch Control activation Launch Control activation
  - Limited use of Launch Control Limited use of Launch Control
  - Prerequisite for activation Prerequisite for activation
- LED Lights LED Lights
  - Headlamp, parking lamp, turn signal lamp, Daytime Running Light (DRL) replacement Headlamp, parking lamp, turn signal lamp, Daytime Running Light (DRL) replacement
  - High mounted stop lamp replacement High mounted stop lamp replacement
  - Interior light replacement Interior light replacement
  - Licence plate lamp replacement Licence plate lamp replacement

- Puddle lamp replacement Puddle lamp replacement
- Rear combination lamp replacement Rear combination lamp replacement
- Reverse lamp replacement Reverse lamp replacement
- Side repeater lamp replacement Side repeater lamp replacement

## M

- Maintenance Maintenance
- Maintenance services Maintenance services
  - Owner maintenance precautions Owner maintenance precautions
  - Owner's responsibility Owner's responsibility
- Manual Speed Limit Assist (MSLA) Manual Speed Limit Assist (MSLA)
  - Manual Speed Limit Assist operation Manual Speed Limit Assist operation
- Mirrors Mirrors
  - Inside rear-view mirror Inside rear-view mirror
  - Outside rear-view mirrors Outside rear-view mirrors
  - Reverse parking aid Reverse parking aid

## N

- Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control (NSCC) Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control (NSCC)
  - Limitations of Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control Limitations of Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control
  - Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control operation Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control operation
  - Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control settings Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control settings

## O

- Open Source Software Notice Open Source Software Notice
- OTA software update OTA software update
  - Approving software update Approving software update
  - Downloading software Downloading software
  - Preparing software update Preparing software update
  - Updating software Updating software
- Owner maintenance Owner maintenance
  - Owner maintenance schedule Owner maintenance schedule

## P

- Panoramic sunroof Panoramic sunroof
  - Power sunshade Power sunshade
  - Resetting the sunroof Resetting the sunroof
  - Slide open/close Slide open/close
  - Sunroof open warning Sunroof open warning
  - Tilt open/close Tilt open/close
- Parking Distance Warning (PDW) Parking Distance Warning (PDW)

- Parking Distance Warning malfunction and limitations Parking Distance Warning malfunction and limitations
- Parking Distance Warning operation Parking Distance Warning operation
- Parking Distance Warning settings Parking Distance Warning settings
- Power tailgate Power tailgate
  - Emergency tailgate safety release Emergency tailgate safety release
  - Operating the power tailgate Operating the power tailgate
  - Power tailgate operating conditions Power tailgate operating conditions
  - Resetting the power tailgate Resetting the power tailgate
  - Setting the power tailgate Setting the power tailgate

## R

- Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist (RCCA) Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist (RCCA)
  - Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction and limitations Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction and limitations
  - Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist operation Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist operation
  - Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist settings Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist settings
- Rear Occupant Alert (ROA) Rear Occupant Alert (ROA)
  - System operation System operation
  - System setting System setting
- Rear View Monitor (RVM) Rear View Monitor (RVM)
  - Rear View Monitor malfunction and limitations Rear View Monitor malfunction and limitations
  - Rear View Monitor operation Rear View Monitor operation
  - Rear View Monitor settings Rear View Monitor settings
- Recommended lubricants and capacities Recommended lubricants and capacities
  - Recommended SAE viscosity number Recommended SAE viscosity number
- Reference weight and distance when towing a trailer Reference weight and distance when towing a trailer
- Remote Smart Parking Assist 2 (RSPA 2) Remote Smart Parking Assist 2 (RSPA 2)
  - Remote Smart Parking Assist malfunction and limitations Remote Smart Parking Assist malfunction and limitations
  - Remote Smart Parking Assist operation Remote Smart Parking Assist operation
  - Remote Smart Parking Assist settings Remote Smart Parking Assist settings
- Remote start Remote start

## S

- Safe Exit Assist (SEA) Safe Exit Assist (SEA)
  - Safe Exit Assist malfunction and limitations Safe Exit Assist malfunction and limitations
  - Safe Exit Assist operation Safe Exit Assist operation

- Safe Exit Assist settings Safe Exit Assist settings
- Safe Exit Warning (SEW) Safe Exit Warning (SEW)
  - Safe Exit Warning malfunction and limitations Safe Exit Warning malfunction and limitations
  - Safe Exit Warning operation Safe Exit Warning operation
  - Safe Exit Warning settings Safe Exit Warning settings
- Safety messages Safety messages
- Safety system Safety system
- Scheduled maintenance services Scheduled maintenance services
  - Maintenance under severe usage conditions (Petrol engine) Maintenance under severe usage conditions (Petrol engine)
  - Normal maintenance schedule (Petrol engine) Normal maintenance schedule (Petrol engine)
- Seat belts Seat belts
  - Additional seat belt safety precautions Additional seat belt safety precautions
  - Care of seat belts Care of seat belts
  - Pre-Active Seat Belt (PSB) Pre-Active Seat Belt (PSB)
  - Seat belt restraint system Seat belt restraint system
  - Seat belt safety precautions Seat belt safety precautions
  - Seat belt warning light Seat belt warning light
- Seats Seats
  - Air ventilation seats Air ventilation seats
  - Front seats Front seats
  - Headrests Headrests
  - Rear seats Rear seats
  - Safety precautions Safety precautions
  - Seat warmers Seat warmers
- Smart Cruise Control (SCC) Smart Cruise Control (SCC)
  - Smart Cruise Control malfunction and limitations Smart Cruise Control malfunction and limitations
  - Smart Cruise Control operation Smart Cruise Control operation
  - Smart Cruise Control settings Smart Cruise Control settings
- Smart tailgate Smart tailgate
  - Deactivating smart tailgate Deactivating smart tailgate
  - Detecting area Detecting area
  - Using smart tailgate Using smart tailgate
- Special driving conditions Special driving conditions
  - Driving at night Driving at night
  - Driving in flooded areas Driving in flooded areas
  - Driving in the rain Driving in the rain

- Hazardous driving conditions Hazardous driving conditions
- Highway driving Highway driving
- Reducing the risk of a rollover Reducing the risk of a rollover
- Rocking the vehicle Rocking the vehicle
- Smooth cornering Smooth cornering
- Steering wheel Steering wheel
  - Haptic warning / Steering Wheel Vibration Warning Haptic warning / Steering Wheel Vibration Warning
  - Heated steering wheel Heated steering wheel
  - Horn Horn
  - Motor Driven Power Steering (MDPS) Motor Driven Power Steering (MDPS)
  - Steering wheel grip sensor Steering wheel grip sensor
  - Tilt / Telescopic steering Tilt / Telescopic steering
- Steering wheel control overview Steering wheel control overview
- Storage compartment Storage compartment
  - Centre console storage Centre console storage
  - Glove box Glove box
  - Luggage tray Luggage tray
  - Sunglasses holder Sunglasses holder
- Supplemental restraint system - airbags Supplemental restraint system - airbags
  - Additional safety precautions Additional safety precautions
  - Airbag warning labels Airbag warning labels
  - Do not install a Child Restraint System on the front passenger seat Do not install a Child Restraint System on the front passenger seat
  - How does the airbags system operate? How does the airbags system operate?
  - SRS care SRS care
  - SRS components SRS components
  - SRS warning light SRS warning light
  - What to expect after an airbag inflates What to expect after an airbag inflates
  - Where are the airbags? Where are the airbags?
  - Why didn't my airbag go off in a collision? Why didn't my airbag go off in a collision?
- Surround View Monitor (SVM) Surround View Monitor (SVM)
  - Surround View Monitor malfunction and limitations Surround View Monitor malfunction and limitations
  - Surround View Monitor operation Surround View Monitor operation
  - Surround View Monitor settings Surround View Monitor settings

## T

- Theft alarm system Theft alarm system
- Towing Towing
  - Emergency towing Emergency towing

- Removable towing hook Removable towing hook
- Towing service Towing service
- Trailer towing Trailer towing
  - Driving with a trailer Driving with a trailer
  - If you do decide to pull a trailer (For Australia) If you do decide to pull a trailer (For Australia)
  - If you do decide to pull a trailer (For New Zealand) If you do decide to pull a trailer (For New Zealand)
  - Maintenance when towing a trailer Maintenance when towing a trailer
  - Trailer towing equipment Trailer towing equipment
- Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)
  - Changing a tyre with TPMS Changing a tyre with TPMS
  - Check tyre pressure Check tyre pressure
  - Low tyre pressure position and tyre pressure telltale Low tyre pressure position and tyre pressure telltale
  - TPMS (Tyre Pressure Monitoring System) malfunction indicator TPMS (Tyre Pressure Monitoring System) malfunction indicator
  - Tyre pressure monitoring system Tyre pressure monitoring system
- Tyre specification and pressure label Tyre specification and pressure label
- Tyres and wheels Tyres and wheels
  - All season tyres All season tyres
  - Check tyre inflation pressure Check tyre inflation pressure
  - Low aspect ratio tyres Low aspect ratio tyres
  - Recommended cold tyre inflation pressures Recommended cold tyre inflation pressures
  - Summer tyres Summer tyres
  - Tyre care Tyre care
  - Tyre maintenance Tyre maintenance
  - Tyre replacement Tyre replacement
  - Tyre rotation Tyre rotation
  - Tyre sidewall labelling Tyre sidewall labelling
  - Tyre traction Tyre traction
  - Wheel alignment and tyre balance Wheel alignment and tyre balance
  - Wheel replacement Wheel replacement

## V

- Vehicle break-in process Vehicle break-in process
- Vehicle certification label Vehicle certification label
- Vehicle data collection and event data recorders Vehicle data collection and event data recorders
- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
- Vehicle information Vehicle information

- Vehicle modifications Vehicle modifications
- Vehicle settings (infotainment system) Vehicle settings (infotainment system)
  - Setting your vehicle Setting your vehicle
- Vehicle weight Vehicle weight
  - Overloading Overloading
- Vehicle weight and luggage volume Vehicle weight and luggage volume

## W

- Washer fluid Washer fluid
  - Checking the washer fluid level Checking the washer fluid level
- Welcome system Welcome system
  - Dynamic welcome light Dynamic welcome light
  - Interior light Interior light
  - Puddle light and door handle light Puddle light and door handle light
- Windows Windows
  - Power windows Power windows
  - Remote window opening/closing feature (Remote Window Control) Remote window opening/closing feature (Remote Window Control)
- Windscreen defrosting and defogging Windscreen defrosting and defogging
  - Rear window defroster Rear window defroster
  - To defog inside windscreen To defog inside windscreen
  - To defrost outside windscreen To defrost outside windscreen
- Winter driving Winter driving
  - Snow or icy conditions Snow or icy conditions
  - Winter precautions Winter precautions
- Wiper blades Wiper blades
  - Blade inspection Blade inspection
  - Blade replacement Blade replacement
- Wipers and washers Wipers and washers
  - Front windscreen washers Front windscreen washers
  - Front windscreen wipers Front windscreen wipers
  - Rear window wiper and washer Rear window wiper and washer